

A  
SCHOOL HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES

BY

HENRY ALEXANDER WHITE, PH.D., D.D., LL.D.

FORMER PROFESSOR OF HISTORY IN THE WASHINGTON AND  
LEE UNIVERSITY, VIRGINIA; AUTHOR OF "LIFE OF ROBERT  
E. LEE," "LIFE OF STONEWALL JACKSON," ETC.

WITH MANY MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

*(Revised Edition)*



SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

NEW YORK                      BOSTON                      CHICAGO  
ATLANTA                      SAN FRANCISCO                      DALLAS

E 178  
/  
W 532

COPYRIGHT, 1904, 1910, 1917, BY  
SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY



MAR -1 1917

© Cl. A 457279

no. 1.

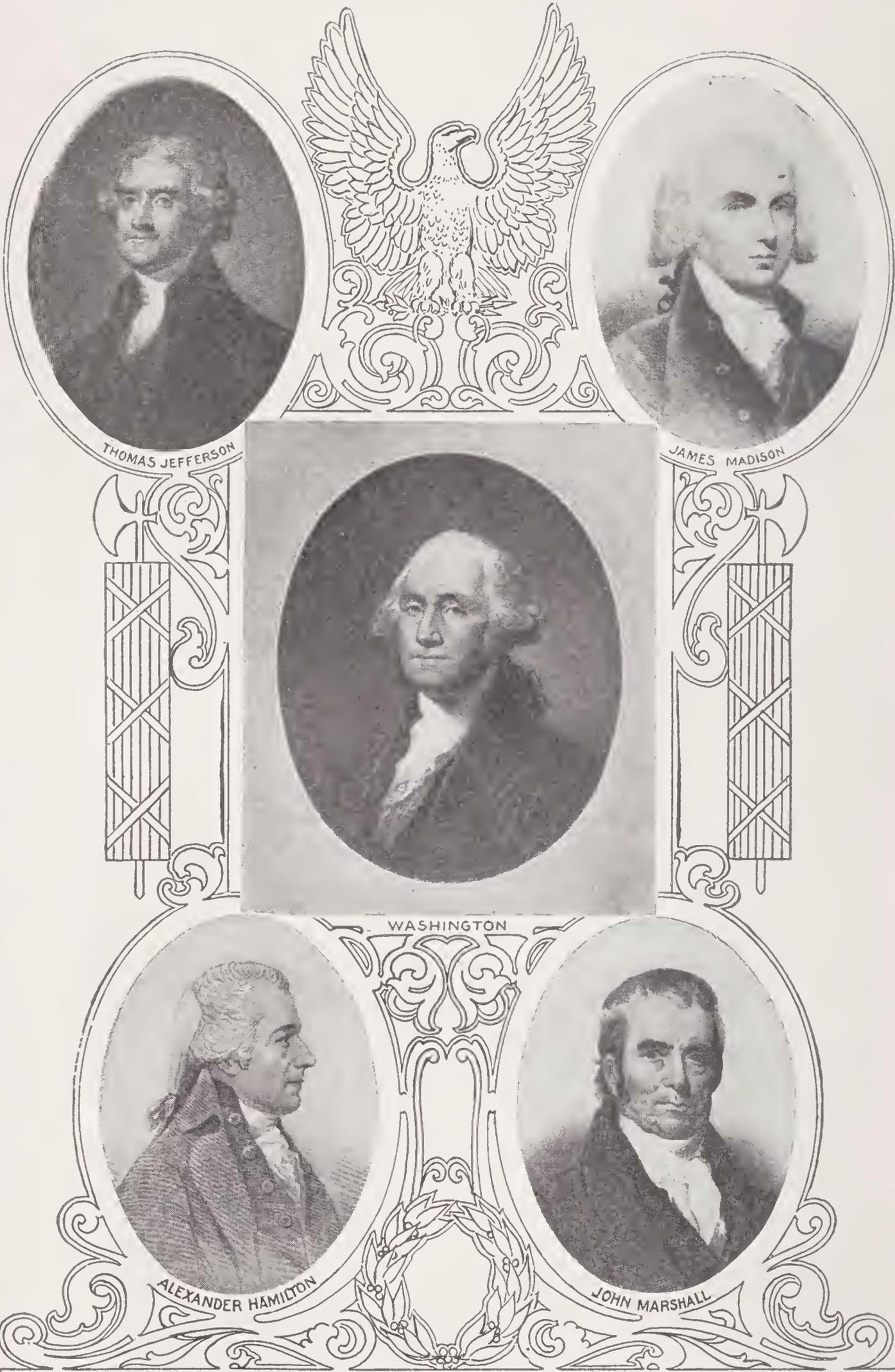
47.19. Mar. 3, 17,

THIS VOLUME IS DEDICATED

To My Wife

FANNY BEVERLEY WELLFORD WHITE





“ These five men, more than any others, have shaped the whole future of American history.”—JOHN FISKE.

## PREFACE.

THIS HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES aims to give in simple form the story of the founding and the growth of the states that make up our Federal Union. From the nature of the subject itself, this story ought to engage the interest of the boys and girls in their grammar school years. If, however, the text-book in history is overloaded with facts, then this natural interest in the subject will fade from the pupil's mind. In the present volume the effort has been to select only those facts that are essential to a general knowledge and understanding of the development of the United States, and to set forth the ideas entertained by the people as well as to describe their acts. Various features in the life of the people at all periods are presented — their social, religious, industrial, political and educational interests and progress. The attempt is made to group the facts in such a way as to make clear the relation of cause and effect in American history, to show how one event leads to another and how one idea among the people springs out of another idea.

With but few exceptions, the histories of the United States now used in the schools have been written by authors of Northern birth and education. For this reason alone, perhaps, it is natural that we find in all of these books the history of the author's home section fully treated, while much of historical interest concerning other sections is either briefly mentioned or omitted altogether. The pupils read also in poem and story of historical events associated with the Northern states, but little comes to their hands in the way of literature bearing on the South. Again, in discussing the causes and events leading up to the disastrous war between the states, the histories state clearly the point of view of the North, while the contention of the South is not fully presented. The author of this book has endeavored to write impartially of all sections, but has taken special pains that due attention should be given to the part played by the people of the South in all periods of American history.

There is much for the teacher to do in the matter of adding interest to the study of history. The pupil should be encouraged to picture in his mind the occurrences described in the text and to tell of them in his own words. The teacher must see that the pupil does not fall into the habit of committing to memory the statements made in the book. The young student must be led to understand the meaning of the facts set forth, and to appreciate the grouping of facts and the ideas they represent. The pupil's comprehension of the lesson may be discerned by asking him to repeat the substance of it or to write it in his own language. With the same purpose in view, the teacher should prepare his own questions in the first study of a chapter, using those in the book for later review.

In beginning the study of any portion of the book, the geographical location of places under consideration should first be explained by the teacher. Then, let the pupil reproduce on paper or blackboard the maps in the book, without elaborateness—merely a few lines to show the windings of the seacoast, the course of a river or a high-way, or the route followed by an army on the march.

At each meeting of the class a few minutes should be spent in reviewing the preceding lessons. As the study progresses, the review work may deal for the most part with the grouping of facts and their arrangement in periods. The Topical Reviews at the end of each Part in this History will aid in this important work.

By these and other methods let the teacher strive to develop the pupil's interest in the acts, the ideas and principles of the people whose lives have made up the history of our country.

HENRY ALEXANDER WHITE.

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### Period of Discovery and Exploration.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I.—Early Discoverers, 1000–1492 . . . .	1
II.—The Discovery of America, 1492–1520 . . . .	6
III.—Explorations, 1513–1590 . . . .	13
IV.—The American Indians . . . .	21

## PART II.

### Period of Colonization.

V.—The Founding of Jamestown, 1590–1624 . . . .	26
VI.—The Growth of the Colony in Tidewater Virginia, 1625–1689 . . . .	36
VII.—The Planting of Maryland, 1632–1689 . . . .	42
VIII.—The Settlement of New England, 1602–1643 . . . .	48
IX.—The New England Confederacy, 1643–1684 . . . .	58
X.—The Middle Colonies, 1609–1689 . . . .	63
XI.—The Carolinas, 1653–1689 . . . .	72
XII.—The Settlement of Georgia, 1732–1752 . . . .	79
XIII.—French Settlements in North America . . . .	86

## PART III.

### The English and French in North America.

XIV.—Growth of the English Colonies, 1689–1763 . . . .	93
XV.—France Driven Out of North America, 1689– 1763 . . . .	99
XVI.—Life in the Colonies in 1763 . . . .	109

## PART IV.

## Period of the Revolution, 1763-1789.

CHAPTER	PAGE
XVII.—Causes Leading to the Revolution . . . . .	121
XVIII.—The Colonies Claim Independence of Parliament, 1763-1774 . . . . .	127
XIX.—Beginnings of the War, 1774-1776 . . . . .	137
XX.—The Campaigns in the Middle States, 1776-1778 . . . . .	148
XXI.—The Closing Campaigns of the War, 1778-1783 . . . . .	160
XXII.—The Thirteen Confederate States, 1781-1789 . . . . .	171
XXIII.—Making the Constitution, 1785-1789 . . . . .	179

## PART V.

## Period of Expansion, 1789-1856.

XXIV.—The Early Years of the New Republic, 1789-1800 . . . . .	187
XXV.—Jefferson's Administrations, 1801-1809 . . . . .	202
XXVI.—War with England, 1809-1815 . . . . .	212
XXVII.—Monroe's Administrations, 1817-1825 . . . . .	224
XXVIII.—The Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825-1829 . . . . .	232
XXIX.—Jackson's Administrations, 1829-1837 . . . . .	238
XXX.—Slavery Becomes a Political Issue, 1837-1844 . . . . .	245
XXXI.—The War with Mexico and the Compromise of 1850, 1845-1850 . . . . .	257
XXXII.—Sectionalism and the Republican Party, 1850-1856 . . . . .	268

## PART VI.

## Secession and Reconstruction, 1856-1877.

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIII.—Events Leading to the War Between the States, 1856-1861 . . . . .	278
XXXIV.—Events of the War in 1861 . . . . .	288
XXXV.—Events of the War in 1862 . . . . .	302
I. The War in the West in 1862 . . . . .	302
II. The War in the East in 1862 . . . . .	308
XXXVI.—Events of the War in 1863 . . . . .	320
I. The War in the West in 1863 . . . . .	322
II. The War in the East in 1863 . . . . .	326
XXXVII.—Events of the War in 1864 . . . . .	335
XXXVIII.—The End of the War, 1865 . . . . .	349
XXXIX.—Reconstruction, 1865-1877 . . . . .	357

## PART VII.

## Period of the New Federal Union, 1877-1916.

XL.—Industrial Development . . . . .	375
XLI.—Territorial Expansion and Some Recent Events . . . . .	392
Chronology of Important Events . . . . .	417

## APPENDICES.

I. The Declaration of Independence . . . . .	3
II. The Articles of Confederation . . . . .	7
III. The Constitution . . . . .	16
IV. Presidents of the United States . . . . .	32
V. Table of the States: Admission, Area, Population, Representation . . . . .	33
VI. A Selected List of Reference Books . . . . .	34
Index . . . . .	39

## LIST OF MAPS.

	PAGE
Trade Routes to the East . . . . .	2
The World as Known in the Time of Columbus . . . . .	4
Toscanelli's Map, 1474 . . . . .	5
The Routes of Columbus's Voyages . . . . .	9
Explorations and Settlements on the Atlantic Coast . . . . .	15
The Location of the Indian Tribes . . . . .	22
The Virginia Grant of 1606 . . . . .	27
The Virginia Grant of 1609 . . . . .	32
The New England Colonies . . . . .	54
The Middle Colonies . . . . .	67
The Southern Colonies . . . . .	76
Colonies during the French and Indian Wars, 1763 (Colored) . . . . . <i>Following</i>	92
The Chain of French Forts . . . . .	102
The Campaign about Boston, 1775-76 . . . . .	141
The Campaigns of 1776 . . . . .	144
The Campaigns about New York and New Jersey . . . . .	151
The Campaigns in the Middle States . . . . .	153
Boone's Trail (1775) and Clark's Campaign (1778-79) . . . . .	157
The Campaigns in the South . . . . .	161
Yorktown . . . . .	166
The States and their Land Claims at Close of Revolution (Colored) . . . . . <i>Following</i>	170
The United States in 1800 (Colored). . . . . <i>Facing</i>	186
Western Explorations, 1804-06. . . . .	206
The War of 1812 . . . . .	216

	PAGE
The Missouri Compromise . . . . .	227
Territorial Growth of the United States (Colored) <i>Following</i>	256
The Mexican War . . . . .	258
The Mexican Cessions and the Oregon Country . . . . .	262
The Compromise of 1850 . . . . .	266
Result of the Kansas-Nebraska Act . . . . .	272
United States during the War between the States (Colored) <i>Following</i>	278
Charleston Harbor . . . . .	289
The War in Virginia in 1861 . . . . .	293
The War in the Southwest . . . . .	303
The War in the West . . . . .	305
The Battle of Hampton Roads . . . . .	310
Jackson's Campaign in the Valley of Virginia . . . . .	311
The Peninsula . . . . .	313
The First Invasion of the North . . . . .	315
The Vicksburg Campaign . . . . .	322
Chattanooga and Vicinity . . . . .	324
The Second Invasion of the North . . . . .	329
Gettysburg . . . . .	331
The Campaign from the Wilderness to Appomattox . . . . .	338
Sherman's Campaign . . . . .	344
United States in 1914, with Alaska (Colored) . <i>Following</i>	374
Territorial Dependencies of the United States (Colored) <i>Facing</i>	392
A Map of the World Showing the United States and De- pendencies . . . . .	401

# A SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

## PART I.

### PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### EARLY DISCOVERERS.

1000-1492.

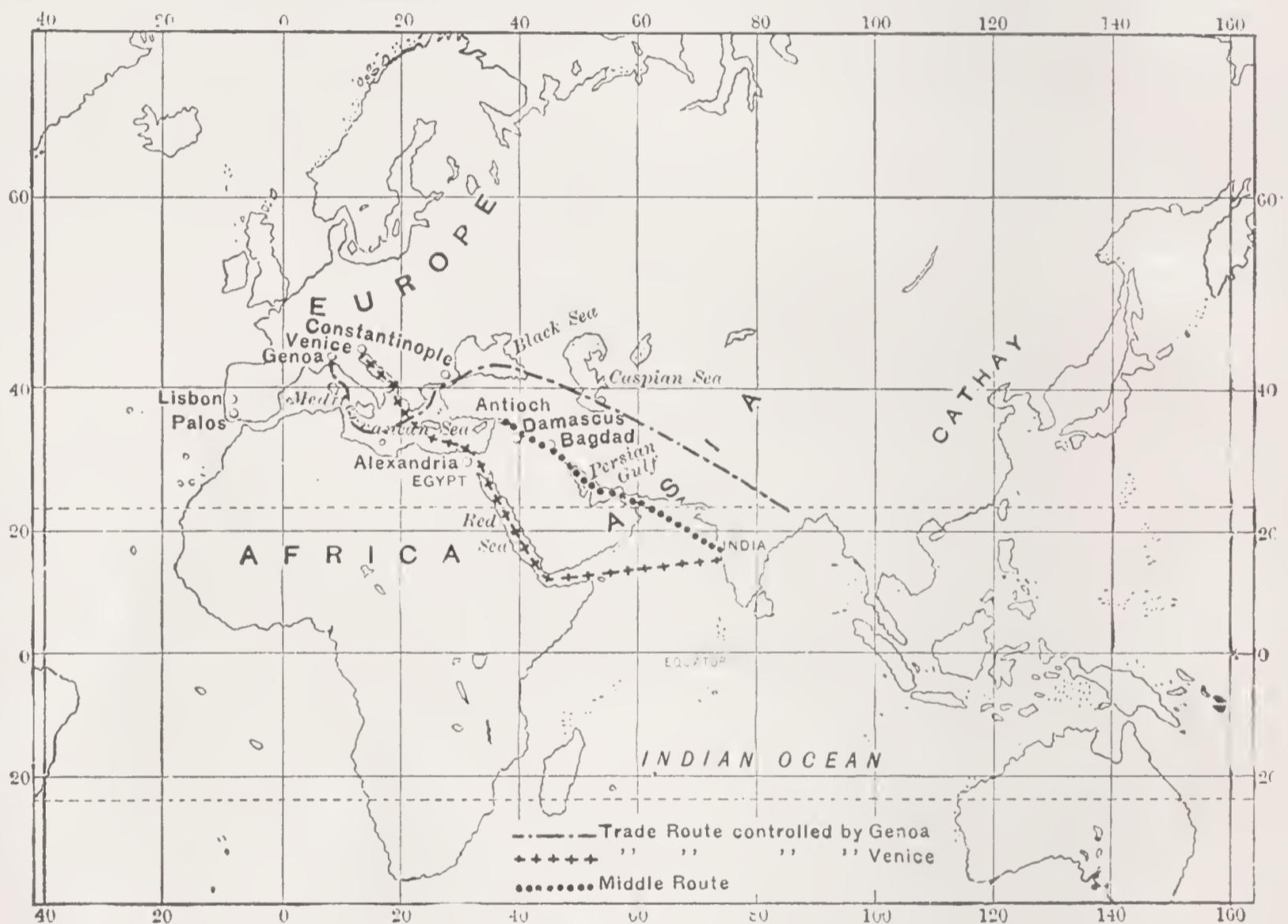


LEIF ERICSON.

**1. Leif, the Son of Eric. 1000.**—Our story begins at a time when Europe, western Asia and northern Africa were the only known countries of the world. The Atlantic Ocean was called the Sea of Darkness, for no man had yet sailed far upon its waters. Something more than one thousand years ago (874 A.D.); the bold seamen of Norway found their way into the western Atlantic as far as the island of Iceland, where they planted a colony. In the year 986, Eric (Er'ik) the Red, a chieftain of Iceland, sailed farther westward and established a colony of Northmen in Greenland, an island which lies at the very threshold of northern America.

In the year 1000, Leif (Līf), the son of Eric, set forth from Greenland and steered his vessel fearlessly toward the setting sun. The long ship was driven through the angry waters

with both oar and sail. After a voyage of many days Leif found a coast which furnished his crew quantities of wild grapes. They called the country Vinland, meaning Vineland. Other voyages were made by the Northmen to Vinland, which was probably that region of North America now called New England. The discoveries made by Leif, the son of Eric, did not bring any great benefit to his countrymen, and soon all knowledge con-



TRADE ROUTES TO THE EAST.

cerning these voyages of the Northmen passed out of the minds of the people of Europe.

**2. Marco Polo in Eastern Asia. 1271-1295.**—For many years after Leif discovered new lands to the westward, the countries of eastern Asia still remained unknown to the people of Europe. Between the years 1096 and 1291, the Christians of Europe made several warlike expeditions, called crusades, into Asia to recover the Holy Land (Palestine) from the Turks. The crusaders did not win control of the Holy Land, but they gained some

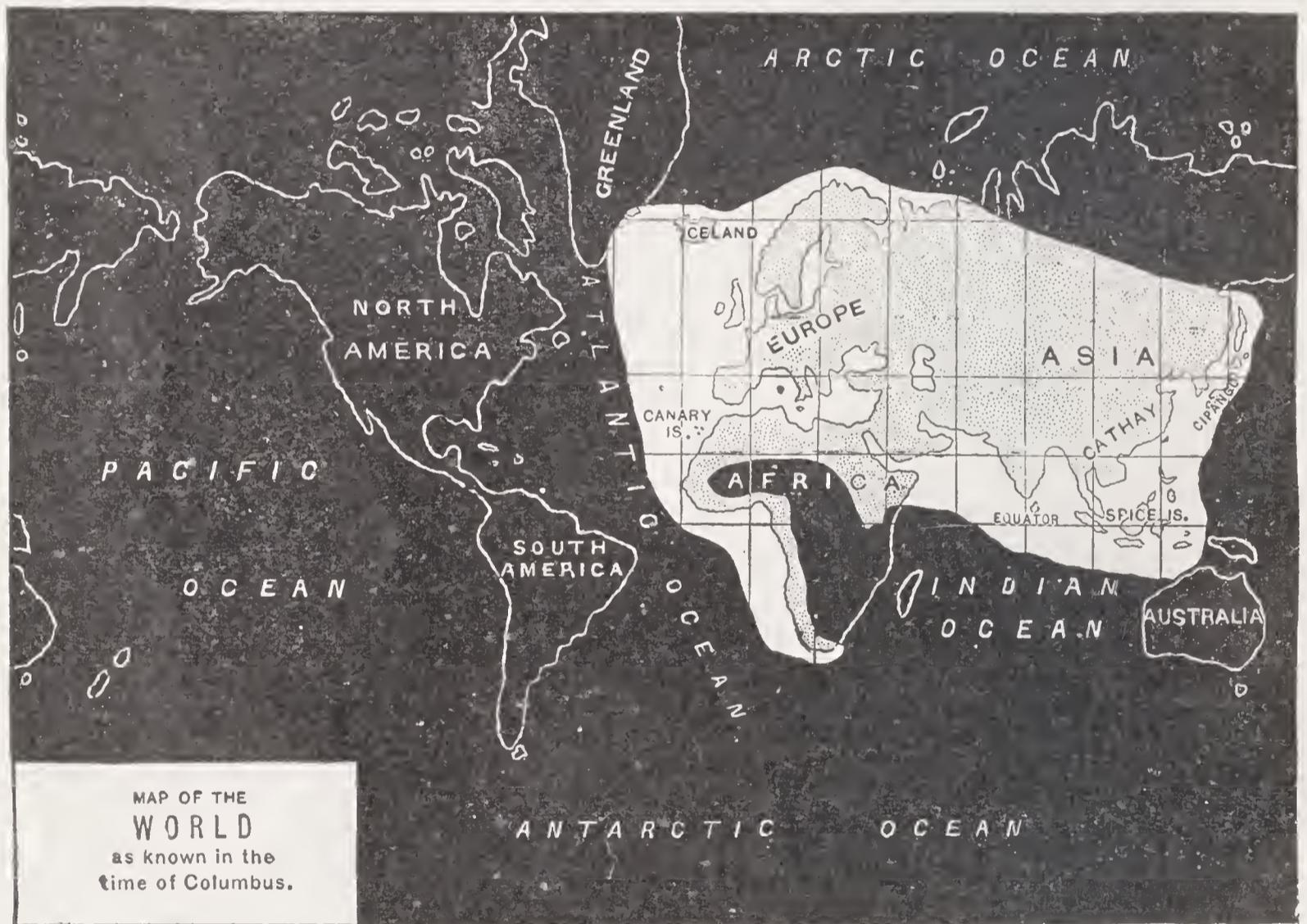
knowledge of the people of the East. In the thirteenth century, Marco Polo, a Venetian, made a land journey to India, China and Japan, and remained there more than twenty years. Four years after his return to Europe (1299) he published the story of his travels. The eyes of Polo's fellow-countrymen opened in wonder when they read his description of the riches of the great Khan, the Emperor of China. To Japan Polo gave the name Cipango, and he declared that the floors of the palaces of the king of Cipango were of pure gold. Marco Polo's book stirred the traders of Venice and of Genoa to seek the treasures of India, China and Japan. The merchants of these two cities, therefore, sent vessels to the eastern ports of the Mediterranean and the Black Sea, and grew rich through their trade with the caravans which came overland from India, bringing silks, shawls, muslins, pearls and spices.

**3. Henry the Navigator. 1418-1463.**—The highways of trade thus established between Europe and Asia were gradually closed by the Turks. These warlike people swarmed into the lands near the eastern Mediterranean, and in the year 1453 they completed the conquest of all western Asia by seizing the city of Constantinople. The Europeans saw that other trade-routes to the East must be found. Prince Henry of Portugal, known as Henry the Navigator, led the way in the search for a route around the barrier set up by the Turks. From the year 1418 until his death in 1463, he continued to send his sailors down the west coast of Africa. These Portuguese seamen went farther and farther at each attempt, until, in the year 1471, a Portuguese vessel crossed the line of the equator. But as the southern end of Africa was not yet found, Europeans could not make the journey to the East upon the sea. The Turks continued to hold the only known ways of reaching the lands of eastern Asia, and the merchants were still compelled to look for a new trade route.

**4. The Early Years of Columbus. 1446-1473.**—Christopher Columbus was born at Genoa in Italy, about the year 1446. His father was a wool-comber. At school the young Christopher

learned to read Latin and became a good penman. At the age of fourteen he became a sailor, and took part in many bold adventures among the pirates and the war-ships and the trading-vessels on the Mediterranean. He gave much time to the study of geography and became skillful in making maps and charts. About 1470, Columbus went to Portugal and sailed down the African coast with some of the Portuguese expeditions that were attempting to find a new way upon the sea to India and Japan.

**5. The Great Plan of Columbus.**—From ancient times the theory had been held by a few scholars that the earth is round and not flat. Columbus adopted this view, and about 1473

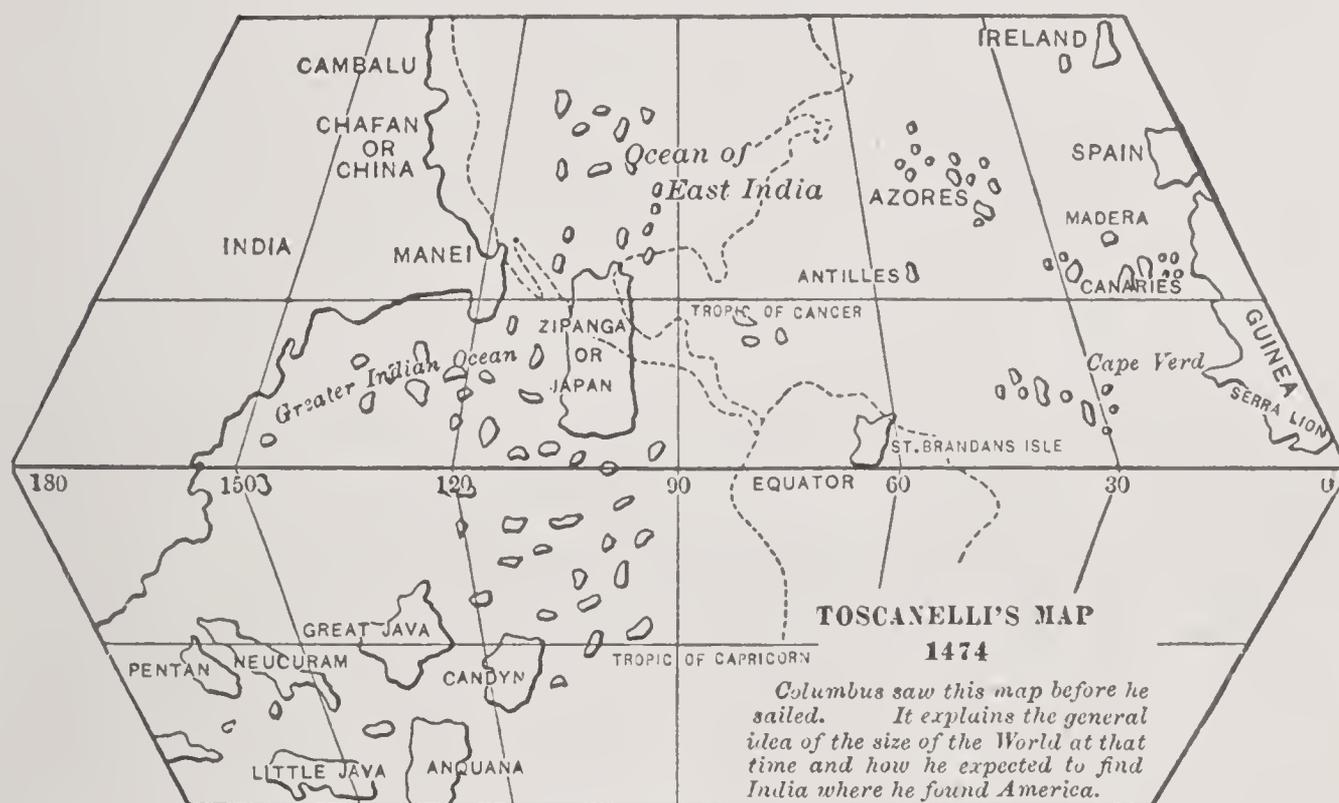


THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN THE TIME OF COLUMBUS.

determined to test the question of the roundness of the earth by sailing westward in search of eastern Asia. In 1474 he received a letter from Toscanelli, the astronomer of Florence, Italy, declaring that the way to India was westward across

the Atlantic. Toscanelli also sent a map, upon which Cipango (Japan) was located within the limits of the present Gulf of Mexico.

For nearly twenty years, with the great purpose held fast in his mind, Columbus traveled from one European kingdom to another, in search of money to fit out ships for the voyage west-



ward in search of Cipango. He laid his plans in vain before the rulers of his native city, Genoa. Then he sought aid from the sovereigns of Portugal and Spain. Bartholomew, brother of Columbus, went to seek assistance in England and in France. At length Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain agreed to send three ships under the command of Columbus upon the great adventure.

### Questions.

1. What countries of the world were known in the year 1000? How much honor is due to the Northmen as discoverers of America?
2. What treasures did Marco Polo claim to have seen in the East? What lines of trade were established between western Europe and Asia? What articles were brought from Asia by the European traders?
3. What progress was made by the Portuguese in the work of finding a sea route to the East?
4. Tell about the early years of Columbus.
5. What was the belief of Columbus about the shape of the earth?

What was the plan which he formed? Tell of his efforts to get aid for his voyage.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Norway, Iceland, Greenland, Palestine, China, Japan, India, Portugal, Spain, France, England, Italy, Turkey, Black Sea and Gulf of Mexico. Find Venice, Genoa, Constantinople and Florence.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

1492-1520.

**6. The Departure of Columbus. 1492.**—Half an hour before sunrise on Friday, August 3, 1492, Columbus gave orders to raise the anchors of his three small ships in the port of Palos, Spain. The *Santa Maria*, the flagship of Columbus, could carry a burden of only one hundred tons. She had a complete deck and was about sixty-three feet in length. The other two caravels, the *Pinta* and the *Niña*, were smaller still.<sup>1</sup> Ninety sailors made up the active crews of the vessels, and in addition thirty adventurers and priests were aboard. The fleet was steered southward along the coast of Africa to the Canary Islands, where nearly a month was spent in repairing a rudder and in changing some of the sails. The sixth day of September saw the three ships turned westward from the Canaries into the "Sea of Darkness." Hardly had the islands faded from view, when a great terror seized upon many of the sailors. They feared the perils of the unknown waters into which they were rushing; but Columbus was full of confidence, for he had the mariner's compass and an instrument with which to calculate his position. He also carried Toscanelli's map of the world, upon which was represented Cipango, or Japan. Columbus believed that he could reach this island by sailing westward a distance of less than three thousand miles.

<sup>1</sup> The *Pinta* was commanded by Martin Alonso Pinzon (Pēn-thōn'), and the *Niña* by his brother, Vicente Yañez Pinzon.

**7. Columbus Discovers the Bahama Islands.**—Nearly a month went by after the departure from the Canaries and then the sailors lost hope of discovering land. They were laying plans to throw Columbus overboard, when sea-fowl began to appear in numbers. A green branch full of red berries and other objects indicating land were observed in the water. About ten o'clock in the evening of October 11, 1492, Columbus saw a distant, moving



*From a sixteenth-century print.*

COLUMBUS DEPARTING ON HIS FIRST VOYAGE, TAKES LEAVE OF THE KING  
AND QUEEN.

light. At two o'clock the next morning, in the clear moonlight, a sailor on the *Pinta* caught sight of land. Thirty-five days had passed since the departure from the Canaries, and seventy days since the little fleet had sailed from Spain. Friday morning, October 12, 1492, Columbus went ashore, set up a cross and gave to the place the name of San Salvador. It was one of the Bahama group of islands. From San Salvador Columbus sailed southward until he discovered the island of Cuba. He afterwards visited

Haiti, where he left a garrison of forty men. He thought that these islands lay close to the eastern coast of Asia. When Columbus returned to Spain, Ferdinand and Isabella lavished great honor upon him. He displayed gold ornaments, strange plants and birds, curious weapons, and six of the natives whom he called Indians, for he was sure that he had reached India in the far East.

**8. The Last Voyages of Columbus. 1493-1504.**—In September, 1493, Columbus set forth upon a second voyage. A great

company of adventurers sailed with him. They expected to find precious stones and silks in the land of magic which Columbus called the Island of India. He sailed along the southern coast of Cuba and afterwards discovered Jamaica. The men left in Haiti on the first voyage had perished, but Columbus established there a second company which became a flourishing colony.

A third voyage in 1498 brought the explorer into the mouth of the Orinoco River and

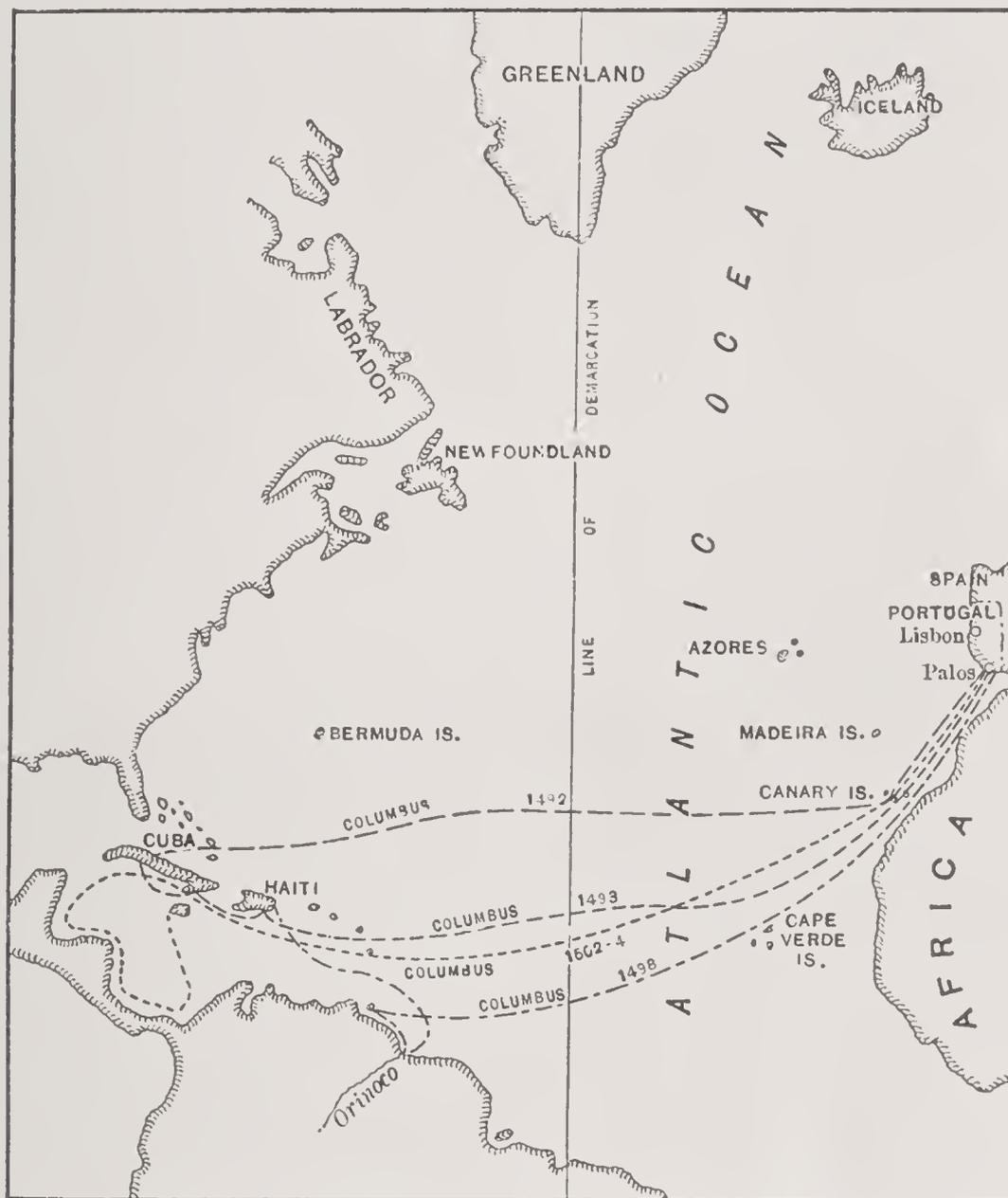
to the mainland of South America, which he supposed to be the continent of Asia. Columbus then returned to Haiti where he aroused such enmity against himself that he was arrested by the colonists and sent back to Spain in chains. He was at once set free by the king and queen.

A fourth and last voyage was made in 1502-1504. Columbus sailed between Cuba and South America, and thence along the coast of the mainland (Central America) from Honduras to Panama, in search of a water passage to the Indian Ocean. He secured none of the famed wealth of the East, and he lost the favor of Ferdinand and Isabella. Poverty, neglect and sorrow were the last portion



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

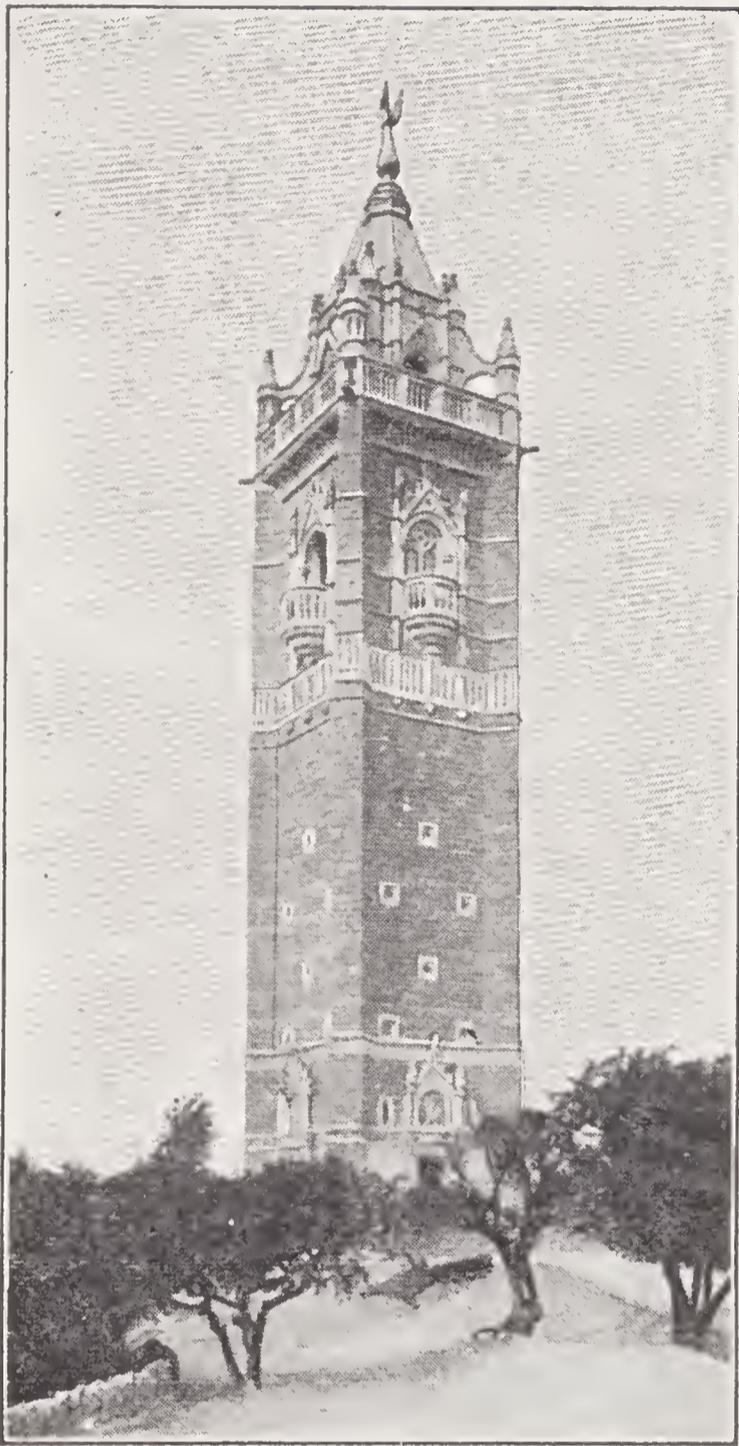
of this great man, who died at Valladolid,<sup>1</sup> Spain, May 20, 1506. He never knew that he had found a new continent, but to the end believed that he had discovered the shortest route from Spain to eastern Asia.



THE ROUTES OF COLUMBUS'S VOYAGES.

**9. John Cabot. 1497-1498.**—The story of the discoveries made by Columbus on his first voyage stirred the spirit of John Cabot (Cab'ot) to take part in the work of exploration. Cabot

<sup>1</sup>Columbus requested that he might be buried in Santo Domingo, Haiti, and, therefore, thirty years after his death, his body was borne across the Atlantic to this island. Haiti was afterwards ceded to France, and in 1796 the supposed remains of Columbus were placed by Spain in the Cathedral of Havana, Cuba. On the 21st of November, 1898, when the Spaniards were leaving Cuba, these remains were removed from the Cathedral of Havana and sent to Spain. Some have claimed, however, that a mistake was made in 1796 and that the body of a son of Columbus was then carried from Santo Domingo to Havana. If this view is correct, the ashes of the explorer repose in Santo Domingo to this day.



THE CABOT MEMORIAL TOWER AT  
BRISTOL, ENGLAND.

was a native of Genoa, but he was then living in the city of Bristol, England. In early life he had made a visit to Arabia and there saw great caravans bringing spices from the regions beyond India. Cabot sought an interview with King Henry VII. of England, and offered to find a route to East India shorter than that followed by Columbus. He secured a ship at Bristol, with a crew of eighteen men, and sailed westward in May, 1497. On the 24th of June, Cabot sighted land at some point near the Gulf of St. Lawrence, either Cape Breton or Labrador. At this time, Columbus had not yet reached the mainland of the new world. John Cabot was, therefore, the first European, after Leif, son of Eric the Red,

to look upon the continent of North America.

Cabot went ashore, planted the English flag and took possession of the land in the name of King Henry VII. It is probable that John Cabot and his son Sebastian came again to Labrador in 1498, with five or six ships. They sailed southward along the coast, which they supposed to be a part of Asia. The explorers saw only icebergs, polar bears and great forests of timber. The English dream of a rich Asiatic trade thus passed away, to be replaced a century later by the plan of establishing a great English commonwealth in North America.

**10. Vespuccius. 1497.**—In June, 1497, while Cabot was unfurling the English flag on the coast of Labrador, another Italian

touched the mainland of the new continent near Cape Honduras, in what we now call Central America. This was Americus Vesputius (Ves-pu'che-us) who was making explorations in company with Pinzon, one of the captains who had sailed with Columbus in 1492.

**11. Vasco da Gama. 1497-1499.**—In the same year, 1497, Vasco da Gama (Vahs'cō dā Gä'mä) steered a Portuguese fleet around the Cape of Good Hope, the extreme southern point of Africa, and thence eastward. By the summer of 1499 he was back in Portugal with great cargoes of silks, jewels and ivory. He had reached India by the eastern sea route. The idea was at once set forth that the new islands and coasts in the western Atlantic were not a part of Asia, but lands lying between Asia and Europe. The effort was henceforth made to reach Asia by finding a waterway through these lands, or around them.

**12. Cortereal and Cabral. 1500.**—In 1500 Cortereal (Cor-tā-rā-äl') ran his Portuguese vessel into the entrance of Hudson Strait, near Labrador. He was seeking a northern route to China. In the same year Cabral (Cä-bräl') brought a Portuguese fleet to anchor off the coast of Brazil. As this land lay east of the Line of Demarcation,<sup>1</sup> it was thereafter held by Portugal.

<sup>1</sup> **The Line of Demarcation.**—Since the mariners of Spain and of Portugal were foremost in exploring the southwestern Atlantic, an agreement



THE STATUE OF VESPUCIUS.

**13. The Naming of America.**—About the year 1501 Vespu-  
cius sailed southward along the coast of Brazil. A German  
geographer, Waldseemüller (Vält'-zā-mül'ler), who published an  
account of the voyages of Vespu-  
cius, suggested, in the year  
1507, that in honor of Americus Vespu-  
cius the new regions to  
the southward should be called America. The name was ac-  
cepted and placed, at first, upon maps of South America. Some  
years later it was applied to North America also.

**14. Balboa and Magellan. 1513-1520.**—In 1513 Balboa  
(Bäl-bō'ä), the Spaniard, climbed to the crest of a mountain on  
the Isthmus of Panama. Southwestward from the point where  
he stood Balboa saw the gleaming of the waters of a vast ocean,  
which he named the South Sea. The year 1520 saw the ships of  
Spain enter the South Sea by passing around South America.<sup>1</sup>  
Magellan, commander of the fleet, called the great sea the Pacific,  
which name it still bears. He sailed westward across the Pacific  
to the Philippine Islands, where he was slain by the natives.  
Some of his comrades continued the voyage and reached Spain  
in 1522. They were the first to sail around the globe, thus prov-  
ing beyond dispute that the world is round. And they were  
the first also to see the new world, America, lying apart by itself  
with a wide ocean on each side.

### Questions.

1. Tell of the first voyage of Columbus.
2. What were the first islands discovered? What did Columbus  
carry back to Spain at the end of his first voyage? What land did  
Columbus think he had reached?
3. What lands were actually reached by Columbus during his last

was established by decree of Pope Alexander VI., regarding the division of  
lands that should be discovered. A meridian 370 leagues west of the Cape  
Verde Islands was taken as the "line of demarcation"; all new lands dis-  
covered east of this line were to belong to Portugal, all west of it to Spain.  
The Portuguese, therefore, made their explorations to the eastward.

<sup>1</sup> They left Spain in 1519. In the latter part of the year 1520 they passed  
through the Strait of Magellan into the Pacific Ocean.

three voyages? How was Columbus treated in Haiti? What became of the remains of Columbus?

4. Tell of the voyages of the Cabots.

5. Tell about the voyages made by Da Gama, Cortereal, Americus Vesputius and Cabral. Why was the new world called America and not Columbia? What was the Line of Demarcation?

6. Who first discovered the Pacific Ocean? Tell of Magellan and his journey.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Palos, Canary Islands, Bahama Islands, Cuba, Haiti, Jamaica, Orinoco River, Honduras, Panama, Havana, Santo Domingo, Cape Verde Islands, Bristol, Labrador, Cape of Good Hope, Cape Breton, Hudson Strait, Brazil, Strait of Magellan and Philippine Islands.

## CHAPTER III.

### EXPLORATIONS.

1513-1590.

**15. The Discovery of Florida. 1513-1521.**—The year 1513, which witnessed the discovery of the Pacific Ocean by Balboa, marked also the voyage of **Ponce de Leon** (Pōn'thā dā Lā-ōn'). He sailed northward from the island of Cuba in search of a magical fountain called the Fountain of Youth, which would bring back youth, it was said, to every man who bathed in its waters. On Easter Day he came in sight of a coast which he named Florida, from the Spanish name for Easter, "Pascua Florida" (the flowery passover). In 1521 Ponce de Leon came again and attempted to plant a colony in Florida, but the Indians



PONCE DE LEON.

forced him away, and the wound left by an Indian arrow speedily caused his death.<sup>1</sup>

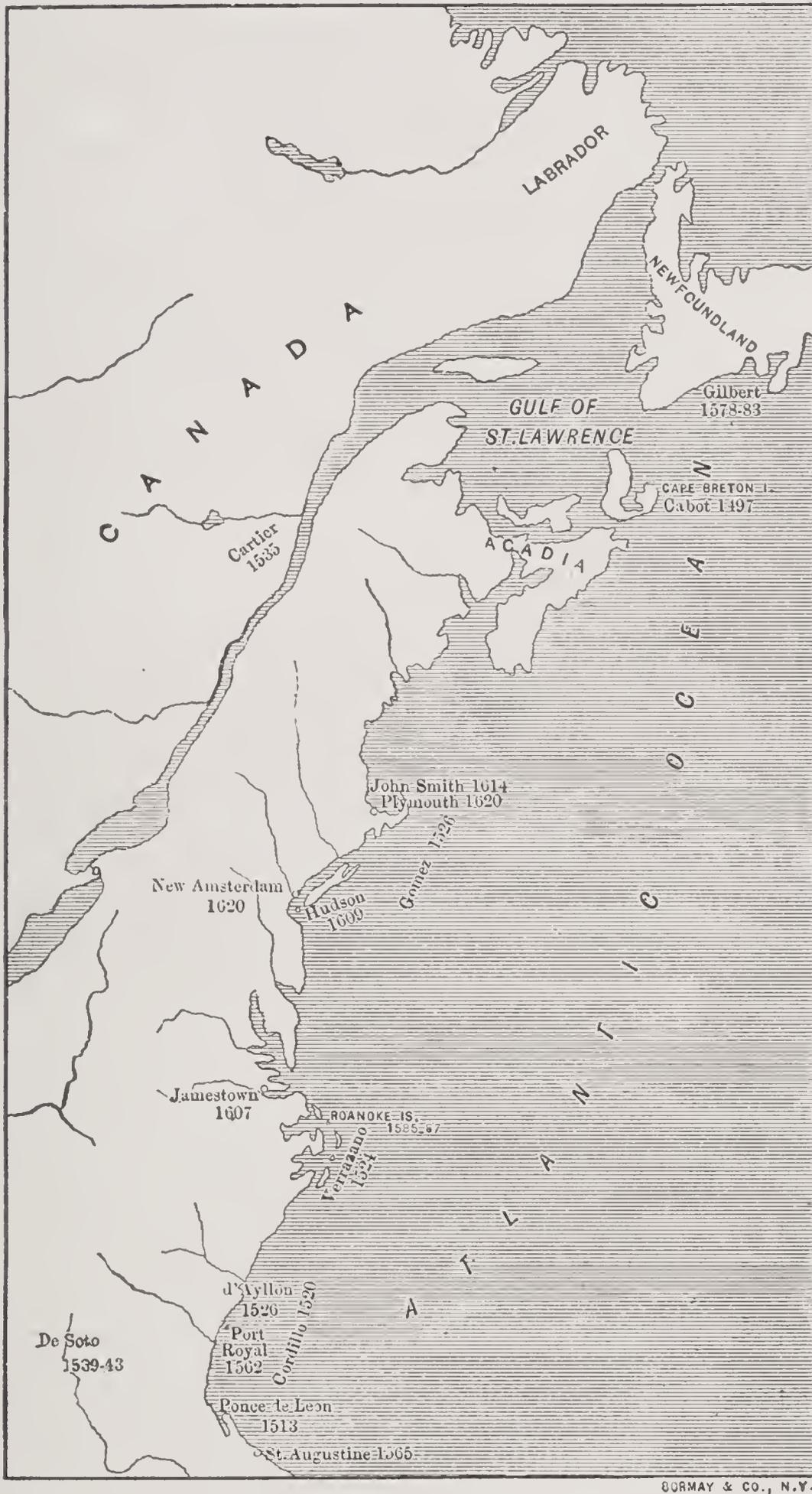
**16. Early French Explorers. 1524-1541.**—As early as 1504 the fishermen of Normandy and Brittany, in France, ventured as far westward as Newfoundland to catch codfish. They gave to Cape Breton Island its name, and in 1506 a Frenchman explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence. When King Francis I. came to the throne of France (1515), he determined to have his share of the New World, and he sent an Italian, **Verrazano** (Vër-rä-tsä'nō), with a French fleet to seek for treasure. Verrazano captured a great quantity of Spanish gold on its way eastward from Mexico, and then searched the American shore from Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, to Nova Scotia (1524). It is interesting to note that these French sailors made a brief visit inside the limits of what are now the harbors of New York and Newport.

From 1534 to 1541 the French were attempting to find a water-route to China by sailing up the St. Lawrence. **Jacques Cartier** (Zhäk Kär-tyā') pushed his way up this stream to the head of navigation for large vessels and gave the name Montreal to a high, steep hill on its northern bank.

**17. Spanish Explorations in the Southwest. 1528-1542.**—The desire to find gold brought many bold men from Spain to America. In 1528 **Narvaez** (När-vä-eth') led four hundred Spaniards into the region north of the Gulf of Mexico, but most

<sup>1</sup> While Ponce de Leon was preparing his second expedition to Florida, another Spaniard, Pineda, discovered the mouth of the Mississippi River (1519). **Gordillo** (Gor-dël'yō) coasted along the eastern shore of the continent from Florida to South Carolina in 1520. He was followed in 1526 by **Vasquez d'Ayllon** (d'il-yōn'), who attempted to plant a colony of six hundred persons on the James River, in Virginia, but disease and hunger destroyed them. About the same time, Spanish ships under **Estavan Gomez** (Gō'meth) passed along the entire coast from Labrador to Carolina. In 1519 **Cortez** (Kōr'tez) conquered Mexico. The **Pizarro** brothers seized Peru in 1531. Spanish laws and religion were introduced into both countries, and with the help of the gold and silver found in her Mexican and South American mines Spain soon became the strongest kingdom in Europe.

of the company lost their lives. **Cabeza de Vaca** (Cä-bä'thä dā Vä'cä) survived the perils of the expedition and brought back

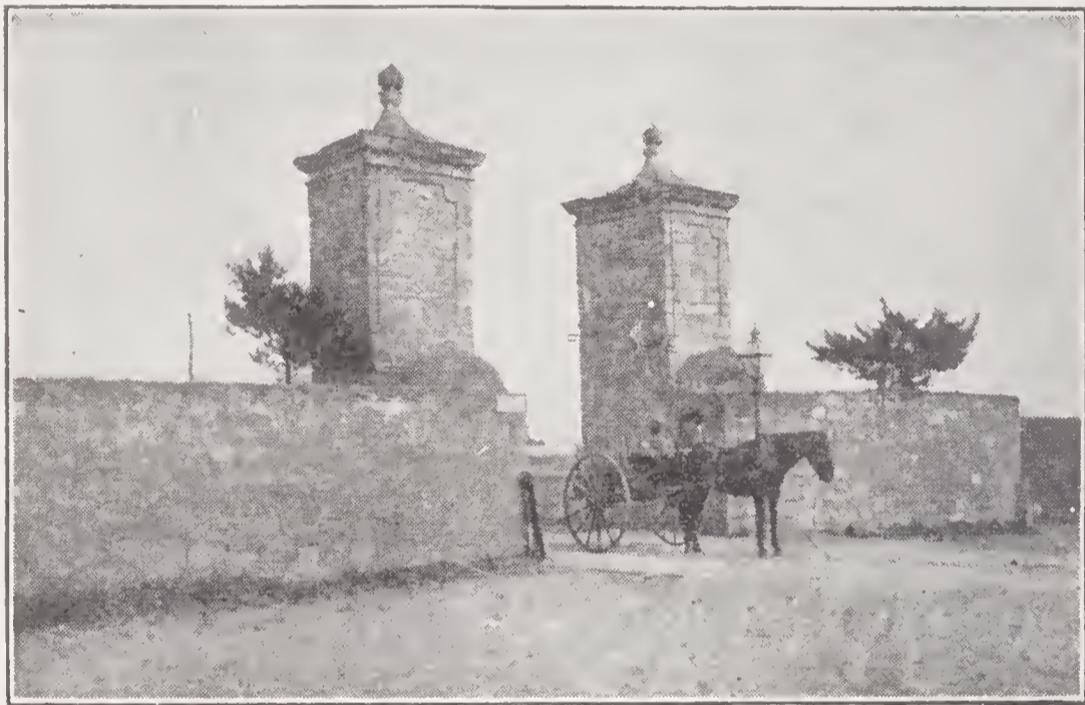


EXPLORATIONS AND SETTLEMENTS ON THE ATLANTIC COAST.

reports of the towns built by the Indians of New Mexico and Arizona. The year 1540 saw **Coronado's** departure from Mexico with a small army, in search of the Indian towns and the treasure

they were supposed to contain. He found the cañon of the Colorado River, and pushed on northward to the southern boundary of Nebraska.

**18. De Soto's Journey to the Mississippi. 1540-1542.**—While Coronado was looking for gold in the lands west of the Mississippi River (1540-1542), Fernando de Soto was making the same fruitless search in the regions east of that stream (1539-1543). The Creek Indians offered desperate resistance to De Soto's 570 men as they pushed their way from Florida to the eastern slopes of the Alleghanies. The company afterwards crossed



THE OLD SPANISH GATE AT ST. AUGUSTINE.

the Mississippi River near the place where Memphis is now located, and moved thence up the western bank of the river. Not an ounce of gold was discovered, and De Soto himself died and was buried in the Mississippi. The survivors of the expedition floated down the river in boats and at length reached Mexico.

**19. Spanish and French Attempts at Colonization. 1526-1568.**—The first attempt to establish a colony in North America was made by the Spaniards. We have already read of the unsuccessful effort of Vasquez d'Ayllon to plant a colony on the James River in 1526.

In 1562 Gaspard de Coligny (Co-lēn'yē), leader of the French Protestants, who were known as Huguenots, settled a colony under Jean Ribault (Zhān Rē-bō') at Port Royal in the present

State of South Carolina. Some of the colonists died and the rest returned to France. Two years later other Huguenots built a village and a fort at the mouth of the St. John's River, Florida. The Spaniards regarded the Huguenots as intruders within their territory, and Pedro Menendez (Mā-nen'deth) was sent by King Philip II. to drive them out. Menendez went ashore on the coast of Florida and laid the foundation of **St. Augustine** (1565). He then killed or enslaved most of the French colonists. Only a few escaped to tell the story in France. St. Augustine is still standing, the oldest town within the limits of the United States.

**20. Hawkins and Drake. 1562-1577.**—During the early part of Queen Elizabeth's reign an active slave trade was conducted by Sir John Hawkins. Negroes were carried from the coast of Africa and sold to the Spanish colonists in the West Indies. The chief assistant of Hawkins was Sir Francis Drake. When war afterwards broke out between England and Spain, Drake and Hawkins seized many of Spain's treasure-ships which were bearing gold and silver from Mexico and Peru. Drake sailed in the track of Magellan around South America into the Pacific Ocean (1577) and attacked the Spanish towns on the western coast of South America. He there seized large quantities of gold and silver, and sailed thence northward along the coast as far as Oregon. He searched for a passage eastward through the continent, but failing to find one<sup>1</sup> he sailed across the Pacific and made his way homeward around the globe.

<sup>1</sup>**The Northwest Passage.**—It was only after the lapse of many years that the explorers were able to find a passage around the northern end of North America. The first part of the work consisted in tracing the northern Pacific coast-line. **Cabrillo** (Cä-brēl'yo) and **Ferillo** (Fa-rēl'yo), Spaniards, sailed as far north as Oregon in 1543. In 1579 Drake gave the California coast the name of New Albion, Albion being an old name for England. **Juan de Fuca** (Jö'an de Fū-kä) pushed his way, in 1592, as far as the strait that bears his name. Long years afterward, in 1728, **Vitus Bering**, a Dane in the service of Russia, discovered the strait that divides Asia and America. In 1854 **Sir Robert M'Clure** sailed through the islands of the Arctic Ocean from Bering Strait to Davis Strait, and thence into the Atlantic. This Englishman was the first mariner to steer a vessel around the northern end of the continent.

**21. Gilbert and Raleigh.**—In 1578 Sir Humphrey Gilbert attempted to plant an English colony in Newfoundland, but the effort was a failure. In 1583 Gilbert came again to Newfoundland with three vessels. His largest ship ran against the rocks; he turned the other two homeward, and, on the way, his own small ship sank in a storm. The last time the sailors in the other vessel saw Gilbert he was joyously calling out to them, “The way to Heaven is as near by sea as by land.”

Gilbert had a half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, who was a courtier of Queen Elizabeth. He is said to have won the favor of the queen by throwing his plush cloak over some mud in the path



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

where she was walking. In 1584 Raleigh received permission from the queen to make a settlement in America and he at once sent two sea-captains, Amidas and Barlow, to search out a good location for a colony. These sailors went ashore on Roanoke Island on the coast of the present State of North Carolina. When they returned to England and told the story of the goodly American land full of pines and cedars and friendly Indians,

Elizabeth bestowed knighthood upon Raleigh and named the country Virginia, in honor of herself, the Virgin Queen.

**22. Raleigh's Colonies at Roanoke Island. 1585-1590.**—In the year 1585 Raleigh sent one hundred and eight men to build a town on Roanoke Island. The colonists began at once to search for gold and neglected the work of settlement. Famine soon threatened them, and when Sir Francis Drake came sailing along the coast from the West Indies they were glad to be taken back to England. They took with them tobacco leaves, Indian corn and potatoes, which were all new to the English.

In 1587 Raleigh sent to Roanoke Island another group of settlers, composed of a number of families under Captain John White as governor. Soon after the arrival of these colonists,

Virginia Dare was born, the first English child whose birthplace was in America. Governor White soon went to England to get supplies for the colony, but as war against the Spaniards<sup>1</sup> was keeping every English ship busy at home, he could not return to the colony with assistance. When White came again to Roanoke Island in 1590, not one of the settlers was found. Only the empty cabins were there, and the word Croatoan (Croat-to-an') cut in the bark of a tree. These settlers were never found, and no man knows to this day whether the word Croatoan refers to another island or to a tribe of Indians who carried away as prisoners the colonists of Roanoke Island.

### Questions.

1. What was Ponce de Leon seeking when he found Florida? Who was the first man to attempt to plant a colony on James River



STONE MARKING THE SITE OF OLD FORT RALEIGH.

### INSCRIPTION.

On this site in July-August, 1585 (O. S.), colonists, sent out from England by Sir Walter Raleigh, built a fort, called by them "The New Fort in Virginia."

These colonists were the first settlers of the English race in America. They returned to England in July, 1586, with Sir Francis Drake.

Near this place was born, on the 18th of August, 1587, Virginia Dare, the first child of English parents born in America—daughter of Ananias Dare and Eleanor White, his wife, members of another band of colonists, sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh in 1587.

On Sunday, August 20, 1587, Virginia Dare was baptized. Manteo, the friendly chief of the Hatteras Indians, had been baptized on the Sunday preceding. These baptisms are the first known celebrations of a Christian sacrament in the territory of the thirteen original United States.

<sup>1</sup>In the year 1588 Philip II. of Spain sent a great fleet called the Armada to carry an invading army across the Channel into England. When the Spanish ships to the number of 130 entered the English Channel, Drake and Hawkins fell upon them from the west. Superior seamanship and gunnery on the part of the English destroyed a large number of King Philip's war-vessels and drove off the others. Spain's naval power was thus completely broken.

in Virginia? Who was the first to discover the Mississippi River? Tell of Gordillo, Gomez, Cortez and Pizarro.

2. What purpose first brought Frenchmen to Newfoundland? What was the purpose of Verrazano's voyage? What was the purpose of Cartier in sailing up the St. Lawrence?

3. What was the chief desire of the Spanish explorers? What did they find in the Southwest? Name the chief Spanish explorers.

4. Trace on the map De Soto's famous journey.

5. Tell the story of the founding of St. Augustine in Florida. Describe the attempts of the French to plant colonies in Carolina and Florida. What was the reason for the war between the Spaniards and the French in Florida?

6. What was the slave-trade as it was carried on by Sir John Hawkins? Compare Drake's pathway round the world with that of Magellan. Why did Drake give to California the name of New Albion? Where is Bering Strait? Trace on the map Sir Robert M'Clure's voyage through the Arctic Ocean in 1854.

7. Describe Sir Humphrey Gilbert's attempts to plant a colony. What were the last known words of Gilbert? How did Raleigh's explorers describe the North Carolina coast? Tell how Virginia got its name.

8. Draw a map of Roanoke Island and vicinity. What American products were carried to England by Raleigh's first colonists? Why was Raleigh's second colony left without assistance? What became of the settlers on Roanoke Island?

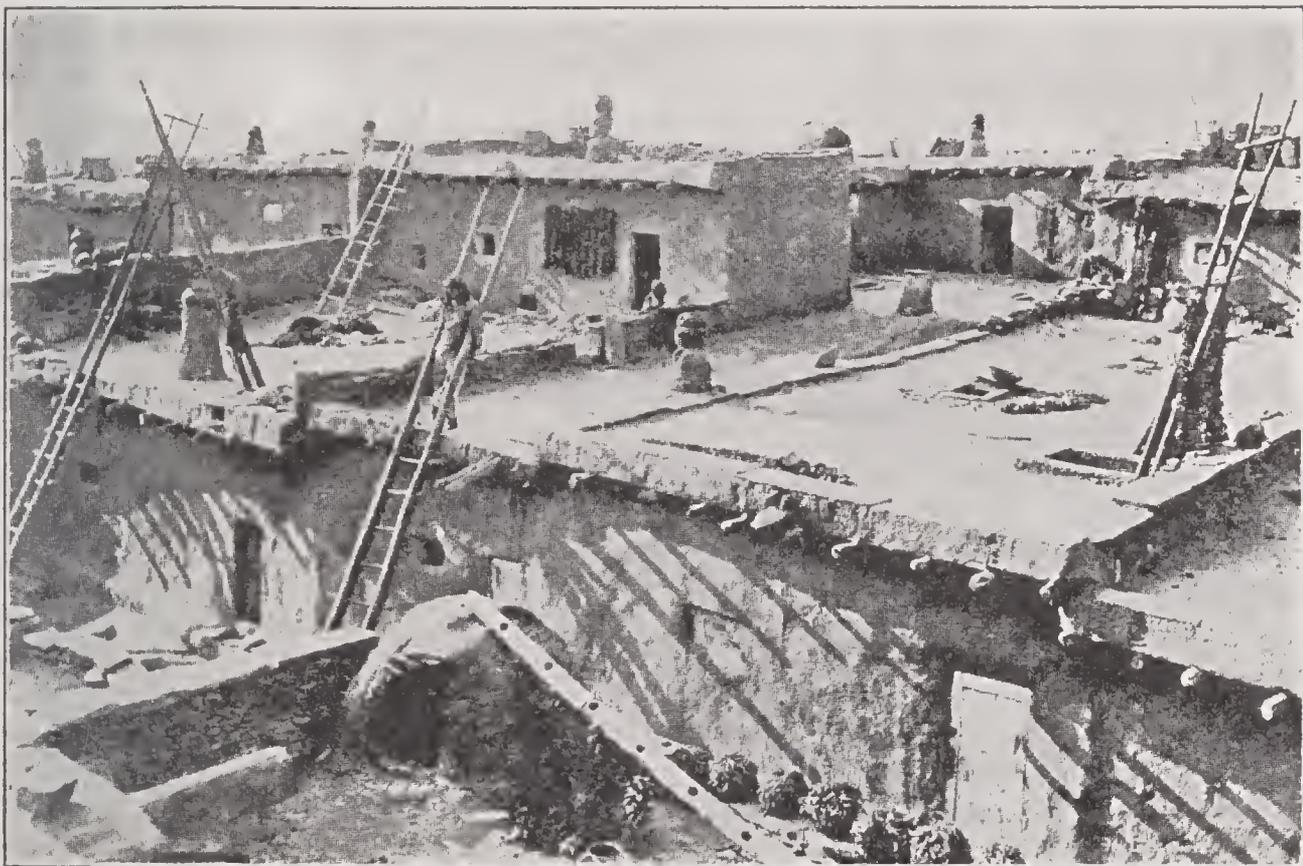
### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Florida, South Carolina, North Carolina, Cape Hatteras, Virginia, Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, St. Lawrence River, Montreal, Newport, St. Augustine, James River, Roanoke Island, St. John's River, Colorado River, Mississippi River, Mexico, Peru, Arizona, New Mexico, Nebraska, California, Bering Strait, Davis Strait, Strait of Juan de Fuca.

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE AMERICAN INDIANS.

**23. The Inhabitants of America.**—Columbus gave the name Indians (natives of India) to the copper-colored people whom he found in the New World. The different tribes of red men were then spread all over the territory of North and South America. How long they had been living there no one knows. Some students suppose that the aborigines came to America from



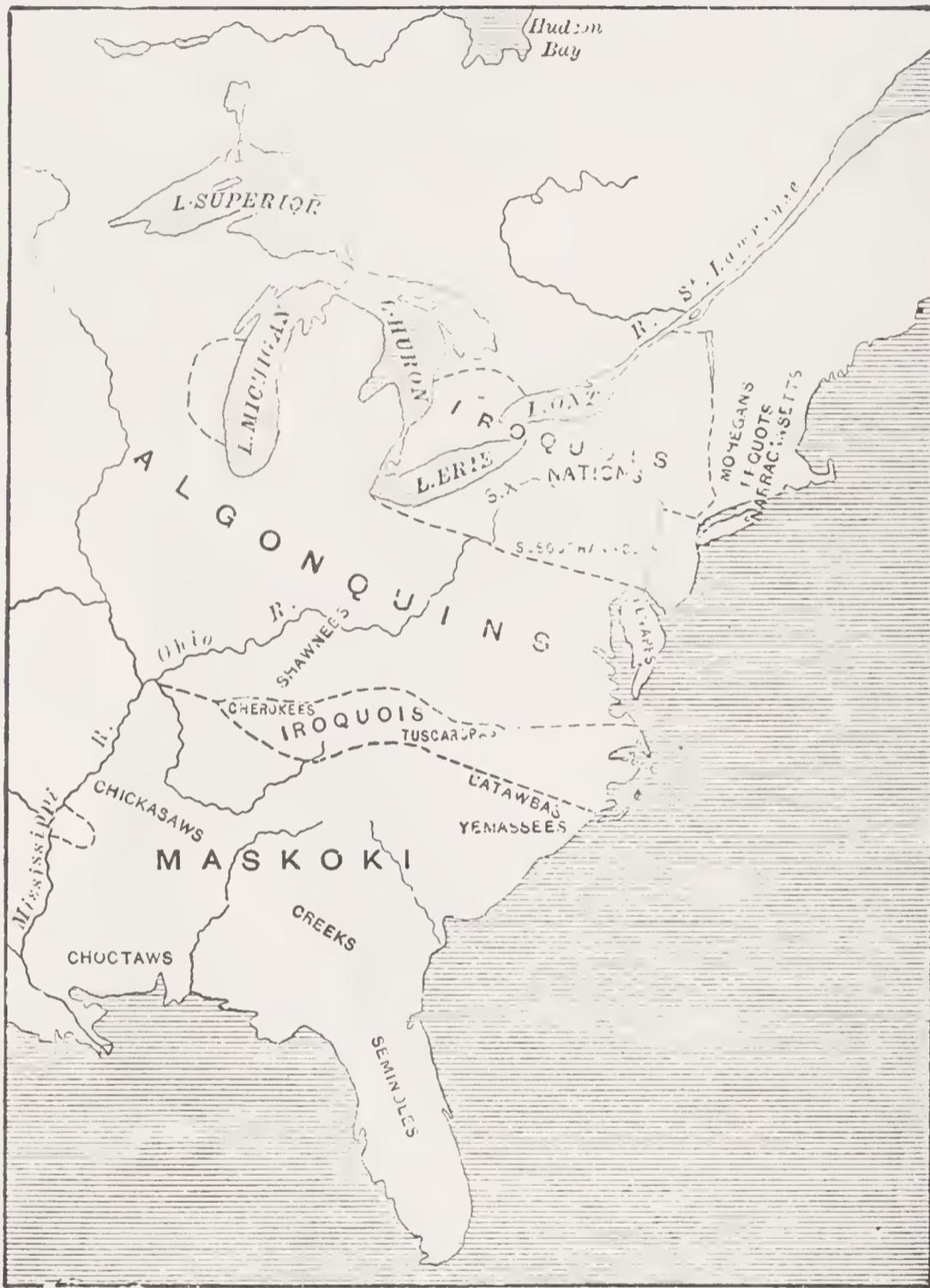
AN INDIAN SETTLEMENT.

Asia, centuries ago, by way of the Pacific. These people were of three classes—savage, barbarous and half-civilized.

**24. Savage Indians.**—The savage Indians occupied the country north of Mexico, between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean. The Apaches, Bannocks and Athabaskans of the present day are savage tribes. They move restlessly from place to place, build rude wigwams, and live on fish, birds and antelopes.

**25. Barbarous Indians.**—The most important class of red

men were the barbarous Indians who roamed through that part of North America lying east of the Rocky Mountains. They were divided into three races, each having its own language and customs. These were the Maskoki, Iroquois and Algonquins. The **Maskoki** lived in the region south of the Tennessee River and



THE LOCATION OF THE INDIAN TRIBES.

between the Atlantic Ocean and the Mississippi River. The chief tribes were the Catawbas of North Carolina, the Yemasseees of South Carolina, the Creeks of Georgia, the Chickasaws and Choctaws of Mississippi and Louisiana, and the Seminoles of Florida.

The **Iroquois** were spread from the Carolinas to the region north of Lake Ontario. They consisted of the Tuscaroras and Cherokees of North

Carolina and Tennessee, the Susquehannocks of Pennsylvania, and the Five Nations of New York, who became the Six Nations when the Tuscaroras were driven northward from Carolina. The **Algonquins** were widely scattered from the Atlantic to the Rocky Mountains. Among their tribes were the Powhatans of Virginia, the Pequots, Narragansetts and Mohegans of

New England, the Lenape of Delaware, and the Shawnees of the Ohio Valley.

The number of Indians in the country east of the Mississippi, at the time when Columbus discovered America, was perhaps as many as 200,000. The number at the present time in the United States is said to be about 260,000.

**26. The Half-civilized Indians.**—The half-civilized Indians lived in Mexico and Peru. In Peru they had good roads, erected buildings of sun-baked brick, cultivated corn and potatoes, and kept flocks of llamas and alpacas. They knew how to make vases, weapons and tools of metal. They used lead, copper, silver and gold. The Indians of Mexico, called Aztecs, lived in fortresses of adobe, or sun-burnt brick. The Pueblo Indians of Arizona and of New Mexico are descendants of these ancient Mexicans.

**27. The Mound Builders.**—The Mound Builders were, probably, the ancestors of the Indians found here by the white men. The Mound Builders left behind them many great mounds or heaps of earth, the burial-places of their dead. These mounds have been found in large numbers in the Ohio Valley. Many of them have been opened and in them have been found stone tools, weapons, urns and pipes, in addition to the skeletons of dead chieftains. A mound in Illinois opposite St. Louis is ninety feet high and covers eight acres of ground. Another, in Ohio, is 1,000 feet long, and has the form of a serpent.

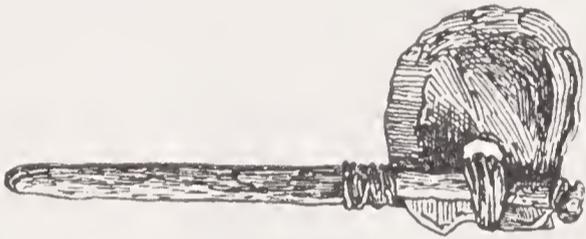
**28. The Indian Clan.**—The Algonquin and Iroquois Indians were composed of many tribes subdivided into a number of clans.



TOTEM POLES.

Each clan elected two sachems or rulers, one for war and the other for peace. It carried its own emblem, or totem, in the form of a wooden figure of some animal, as the Wolf, the Turtle, the Bear. A council of clan-sachems governed the tribe. The clan worshiped its dead ancestors and also the powers of nature, such as the Sun and Thunder.

**29. Indian Characteristics.**—The Indian women cultivated small patches of corn with hoes made of stone or clam-shell. The men of the barbarous tribes were skilled in trapping animals and in catching fish. In birch-bark canoes they moved swiftly over the rivers and lakes, and they had well-marked trails through the forests. They could tan deerskins, make moccasins, snowshoes, canoes and maple sugar. They knew how to spear fish through the ice and how to fertilize corn by putting fish in each hill. For money they used beads made from clam-shells and strung together, called wampum. Fish and furs were bought from the



AN INDIAN SHELL AXE.

Indians by the European settlers who gave in exchange knives, hatchets, blankets and liquor.

The Indian was swift of foot and keen of sight. He could endure cold, hunger and fatigue. He was full of courage. At the same time he was treacherous and often practised the most awful cruelty.

### Questions.

1. Why did Columbus give the name Indians to the people whom he found in the New World?
2. Tell all that you know about the savage Indians.
3. Tell of the barbarous Indians. What tribes of Indians, if any, once lived in your own state? How does the total number of Indians in our country now compare with the number in the time of Columbus?
4. Tell of the half-civilized Indians.
5. Who were the Mound Builders? For what purpose did they build the mounds? What has been found inside some of the mounds?

6. What was the Indian clan? The sachem? The totem? The Indian religion?

7. What was the work of the Indian women? Describe the mode of life among the barbarous Indians.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the Rocky Mountains, the Alleghany Mountains, the Mississippi River, the Ohio River, the Tennessee River, Hudson Bay, and the states that lie east of the Mississippi River.

## PART I.

### PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION. 1000-1590 A.D.

#### TOPICAL REVIEW.

	SECTIONS
1. Voyages of the Northmen . . . . .	1
2. Trade-Routes between Europe and Asia . . . . .	2, 3
3. The Search for India . . . . .	3
4. Columbus and His Voyages . . . . .	4-8
5. The Discovery of North America . . . . .	9
6. The Voyages of Vespuccius . . . . .	10, 13
7. Sailing to India . . . . .	11
8. The Naming of America . . . . .	13
9. Sailing around the World . . . . .	14
10. Spanish Explorations and Colonies in North America	15, 17, 19
11. French Explorations and Attempts at Colonization .	16, 18, 19
12. English Explorations and Colonizing . . . . .	9, 20-22
13. The Ancient Inhabitants of America . . . . .	23-29

#### SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND.

Henry VII. . . . .	1485-1509
Henry VIII. . . . .	1509-1547
Edward VI. . . . .	1547-1553
Mary . . . . .	1553-1558
Elizabeth . . . . .	1558-1603

PART II.  
PERIOD OF COLONIZATION.

CHAPTER V.

THE FOUNDING OF JAMESTOWN.

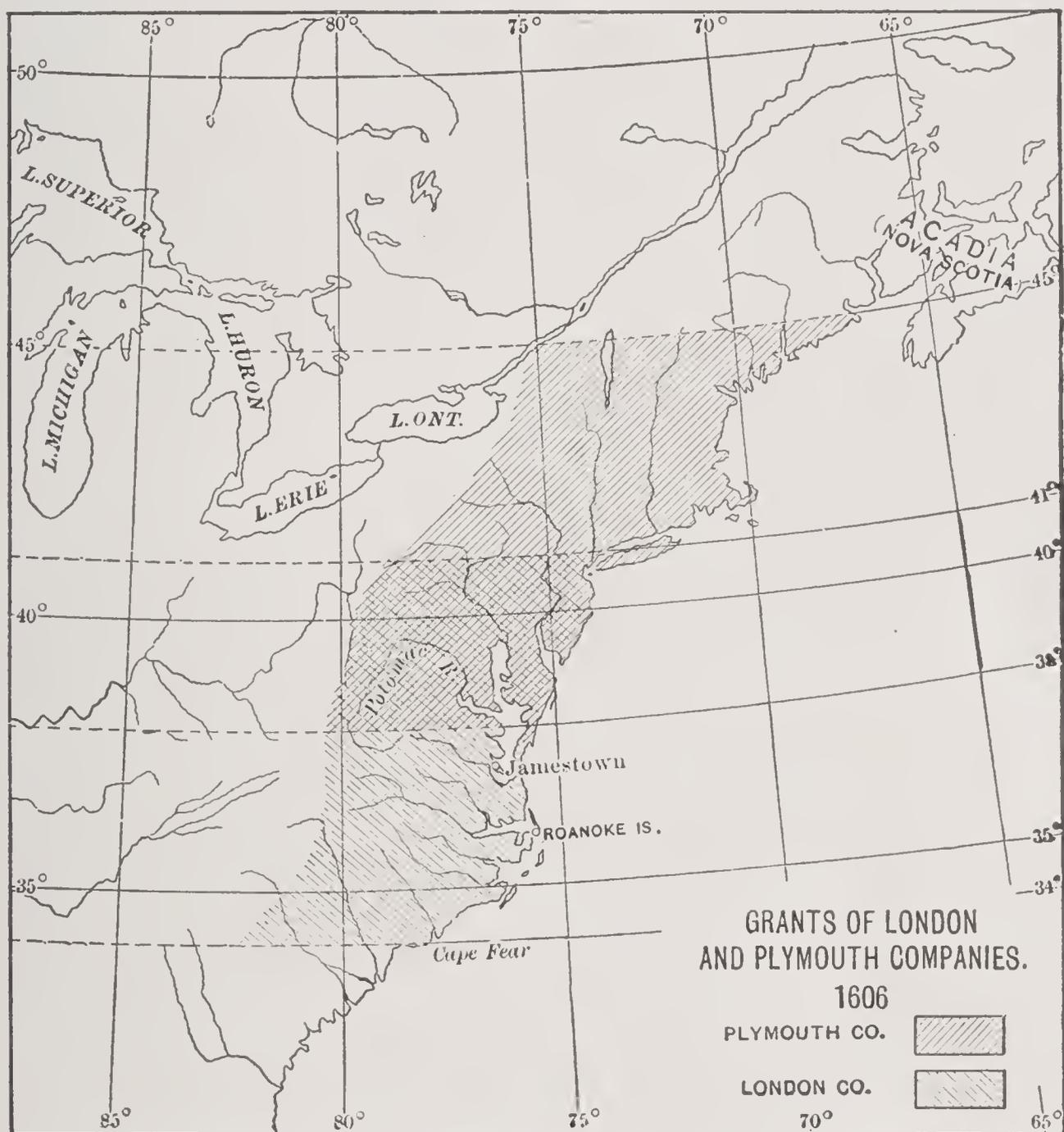
1590-1624.

**30. Raleigh's Plan for an English State in America.**—In the time of Queen Elizabeth the spirit of rivalry was strong between Spain, France and England. Each of these great powers wished to gain control of North America. France was making ready to seize Canada, and Spain already held Florida. When Queen Elizabeth gave the name Virginia to the territory lying between Florida and Canada, Raleigh said, "Let us overthrow Spain's dominion by making another English nation in Virginia." He began at once to carry out this plan by sending his first colony to Roanoke Island (1585).

Sir Walter, himself, as we have seen, did not succeed in planting an English state in America. When King James I. ascended the throne of England, he cast Raleigh into prison upon a false charge of treason, and Raleigh's charter to lands in Virginia was taken from him and transferred to others. He remained a prisoner in the Tower of London for more than twelve years and was at last executed by King James in 1618. Before his death, however, Raleigh<sup>1</sup> saw his great plan made successful in the planting of the colony at Jamestown in the year 1607.

<sup>1</sup>The State of North Carolina has done honor to this great Englishman by giving to her capital city the name Raleigh.

**31. The London Company. 1606.**—It was evident that England must act speedily if she would establish her flag upon this continent. The French were claiming control of the trade in fish and furs in Canada, and in 1603 a French commercial company received permission from King Henry IV. to locate a colony



THE VIRGINIA GRANT OF 1606.

in Acadia, now called Nova Scotia. A number of merchants and men of wealth in London, led by the Rev. Richard Hakluyt, Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Somers, Captain Edward Wingfield, and Sir Thomas Smith, were anxious to carry out Raleigh's plan of founding an English state in Virginia. They expected, in addition, to gather gold in abundance and to find a water-route through the new country to the Pacific.

In 1606 King James I. signed a charter defining Virginia as

extending from the Cape Fear River (North Carolina) to Nova Scotia. He granted to the Virginia Company of London, usually known as the London Company, the right to plant a colony between degrees thirty-four and thirty-eight north latitude, or between Cape Fear and the mouth of the Potomac.

**The Plymouth Company.**—Another group of men at Plymouth, headed by Sir Ferdinando Gorges and George Popham, wished to establish colonies in America, and to this Plymouth Company King James I. assigned the coast between  $41^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$ , or from the Hudson River to Nova Scotia. The intervening strip of territory, between  $38^{\circ}$  and  $41^{\circ}$ , was left open for settlement by either of the Companies, provided that neither Company made a settlement within fifty miles of the other.

**32. The Settlement of Jamestown. 1606-1607.**—On December 19, 1606, three small vessels, the *Susan Constant*, the *God-Speed* and the *Discovery*, sailed down the Thames bound for Virginia. One hundred and five emigrants were on board. Fifty-five of these ranked as “gentlemen,” and the others were tradesmen and mechanics. The dogwood and redbud were coloring the forests with white and purple blooms when the colonists passed between the Capes of the Chesapeake, which they named Cape Henry and Cape Charles in honor of the two sons of King James. James was the name which the colonists bestowed upon the broad river that flows into Hampton Roads, and Jamestown was the name they gave to the landing-place, a little peninsula thirty-two miles from the mouth of the river. To them it was a land of delight, where they found “all the ground bespread with many sweet and delicate flowers of divers colors and kinds.”

On May 13, 1607, the colonists went ashore and began to build Jamestown. A fort and log cabins were built, a field of wheat was sown, orange trees were set out, and cotton-seed, potatoes, melons and pumpkins were planted. Every day the Rev. Robert Hunt called the company together to join in the service of the Episcopal Church of England. His reading desk was a board nailed between two trees, with a piece of canvas stretched above it. From the same desk he preached two sermons every Sunday.

Captain Newport took the three ships to England and the colonists soon found themselves without food. Moreover, slow fevers carried off many of the settlers, and the Indians began to show enmity toward the colony. In January, 1608, Newport came again with what was called the First Supply, consisting of 120 additional colonists and a new stock of provisions.

**33. Captain John Smith.**---Prominent in the colony at Jamestown was Captain John Smith, a native of Lincolnshire, England. In his earlier years Smith had many stirring adventures in war in eastern Europe, but he returned to London in time to sail with the first expedition to Jamestown. Captain Smith became a leader in the work of exploring the country, but he was soon captured by the Indians and led before the chief, Powhatan. He was sentenced to death, but Powhatan's thirteen-year-old daughter, Pocahontas, rushed forward and pleaded for the life of the prisoner. Captain John Smith's life was spared and he was allowed to return to the colony (January, 1608).<sup>1</sup>



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

In September, 1608, John Smith was made president of the Council, and in this way he became the chief ruler of the colony. The month of December found the settlers without food. Their dauntless leader went to the village of Powhatan, who had adopted him as a son, and secured corn and venison in suffi-

<sup>1</sup>In the summer of 1608 Smith made two voyages in a small open boat on Chesapeake Bay and its tributary rivers. His explorations were outlined in an excellent map of the bay. When Newport came, in September, with the Second Supply of 70 emigrants, bearing the London Company's instructions to find the way to the South Sea, or a lump of gold, or one of Raleigh's lost colonists, Smith was ready to send to the Company his map of the fertile shores of Chesapeake Bay and to ask for a supply of mechanics and farmers. In obedience to the command of the Company, Smith and Newport went to Powhatan's village, Werowocomoco, and placed a crown upon the head of the Indian chieftain.

cient quantities to keep the colonists alive through the winter. During all this time the little Pocahontas<sup>1</sup> remained the friend of Smith and the colony. Three hundred emigrants, known as the Third Supply, were added in August, 1609. Some of the colonists now became jealous of Smith and interfered with his management of the settlement. While these troubles were thickening about him, Smith received a wound that compelled him



*From the painting by Chapman.*

THE LANDING OF SETTLERS AT JAMESTOWN.

to sail for England (October, 1609), leaving 500 people in the colony.

**34. Lord Delaware's Administration. 1610.**—During the entire winter that followed Captain Smith's departure, hunger

<sup>1</sup> Pocahontas was brought to Jamestown in 1612 by Captain Argall and there held as a hostage to insure Powhatan's keeping the peace. She was then about seventeen years old. She accepted the Christian faith and at her baptism was given the name Rebekah. In 1614 she was married in the church at Jamestown to John Rolfe, an Englishman, who took her to England two years later. There she was presented as a princess at the court of King James I. She died in 1617 and was buried in the parish church at Gravesend near the mouth of the Thames. Her son, Thomas Rolfe, received his education in England and came to Virginia, where he left a long line of descendants.

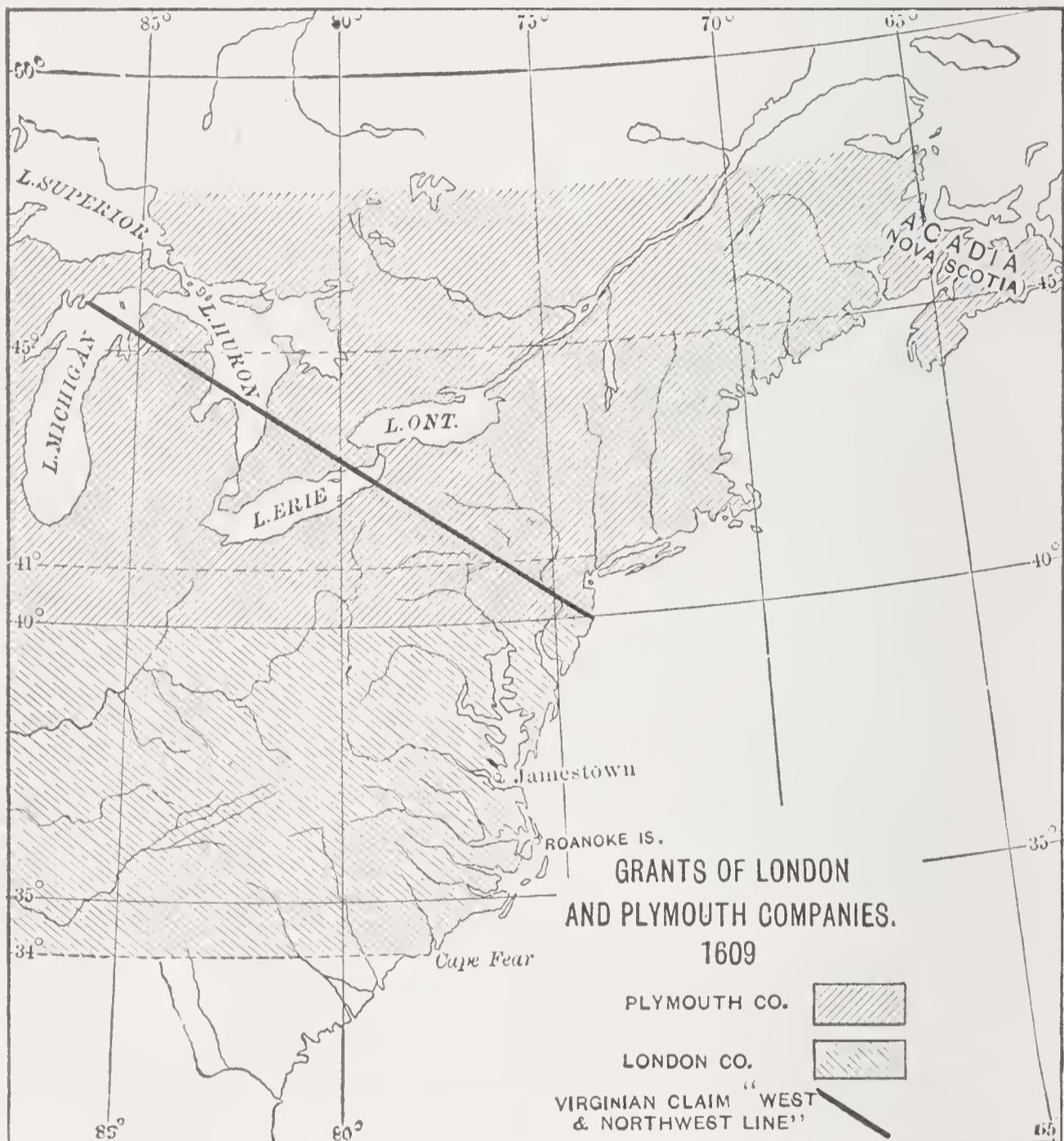
was the daily foe in Jamestown. "The Starving Time" left only sixty-five out of five hundred souls in the colony. In May, 1610, Newport, Gates and Somers arrived from the Bermuda Islands, where their vessel, the *Sea Venture*, had been driven upon the rocks. Out of the wreckage they made two boats and sailed to Jamestown. On June 7, 1610, the colony was abandoned, and every man was taken aboard the two pinnaces; but on the following day, three vessels from England were sighted at the mouth of the James. Lord Delaware, commander of the three ships, led the colonists back to Jamestown, set them to work, and began to govern Virginia under a new charter granted to the London Company by King James in 1609.<sup>1</sup>

**35. Dale's Administration. 1611-1616.**—There were few families as yet in the colony. The land was owned in common, and all of the corn raised was held together as a common supply to be divided evenly among the settlers. This system, known as communism, threw most of the labor upon the industrious members of the colony. There was little planting of corn and much searching after gold. An attack of fever finally caused Lord Delaware to sail back to England, and in 1611 the stern soldier, Sir Thomas Dale, came to rule the colony for five years with a rod of iron. Dale abolished the plan of holding all things in common, and assigned to each colonist a tract of three acres of land. In the year 1612 John Rolfe, who married Pocahontas, began the cultivation of tobacco and thenceforth this plant became the chief product of the colony. When Dale sailed away, in 1616, he left in Virginia only 326 men and twenty-five women and children. These colonists were provided with horses, cattle,

<sup>1</sup>On May 23, 1609, King James I. signed a second charter enlarging the membership of the London Company. To this corporation he gave all the territory lying 200 miles northward and 200 miles southward from Old Point Comfort and extending thence "from sea to sea, west and northwest." Under this charter, Virginia claimed, at the close of the Revolution, the vast territory lying west and northwest of the Ohio River. In 1612 the king gave permission to the members of the Company to meet together in London four times a year, and also authorized them to establish in Virginia any form of government that seemed good to them.

goats and hogs. The idea now grew stronger that permanent homes must be built and that wealth must be sought in the cultivation of the soil.

**36. Sir Edwin Sandys.**—In 1618 Sir Edwin Sandys (Sands) became treasurer of the London Company, and through his



THE VIRGINIA GRANT OF 1609.

influence farmers, mechanics, merchants, lawyers, physicians and rich land-owners, most of them of high intelligence, sailed away to Jamestown. Full title to a separate tract of land was given to each planter. By the year 1619 about a thousand sturdy English planters were living on both banks of the James River from its mouth as far up as Dutch Gap. From 1619 to 1624 more than four thousand persons were added to the colony. In 1619 a company of ninety young women was sent out by the company "to be

disposed in marriage" among the planters. Through the influence of Sandys, **Sir George Yeardley** (Yēr'dli) was appointed governor of Virginia with instructions to establish a better form of government. Yeardley arrived in Virginia in April, 1619, and immediately instituted a representative government.

**37. The First Legislative Assembly in America. 1619.**—The 30th of July, 1619, witnessed the opening session of the first American legislature, called the House of Burgesses. In this Assembly sat Governor Yeardley, the councillors, and twenty-two Burgesses chosen by the people of the eleven boroughs or districts into which the colony was divided. The business of the House was opened with prayer. The Church of England was adopted as the church of Virginia and a tax was laid for the support of its ministers. A law was passed requiring every person in the colony to attend the church on Sunday. Steps were taken by the Burgesses to found a university at Henrico (now known as Dutch Gap) on the James River. Ten thousand acres of land were assigned to the school, but the plan was not successfully carried out until the founding of the College of William and Mary in 1693.<sup>1</sup>



RUINS OF THE SETTLEMENT AT  
JAMESTOWN.

**38. Servants in Virginia.**—The increase of trade in tobacco

<sup>1</sup>Two departments of this proposed university were actually established at Henrico. These were a College for Indians (1619) and a Free School or Preparatory Department (1622). Subscriptions were made to the College in 1619 to the amount of £2,043. The school was entirely destroyed in the Indian massacre of March, 1622. From lands and from subscriptions it had at that time a yearly income of about £1,000, or about five thousand dollars.

led many men of wealth to come from England to Virginia. The forests were cut away and large fields of the new soil were planted in tobacco. The work on the plantations was done by white men from England who were called indentured servants, because the conditions under which they rendered service were written out in papers called indentures. Many of these were energetic young men who paid for their passage across the ocean



*James I.*

by binding themselves to labor for a term of years. Some idle men and some vicious men in England were kidnapped and sent to Virginia as servants. King James also sent to Virginia from his overcrowded prisons a few men convicted of minor offences. The great body of the laborers in Virginia, however, were English plowmen and serving men, honest and respectable, who came to be tillers of the soil for the planters of Virginia. After serving their apprenticeship, they became landholders and respectable citizens.

In August, 1619, a Dutch vessel sold to the settlers of Jamestown twenty negroes—the first Africans brought to an English colony. The number of negroes did not for many years increase rapidly in Virginia. The colonists preferred white servants, and these greatly outnumbered the Africans until after 1700.

**39. The Fall of the London Company. 1624.**—The London Company, which founded the colony at Jamestown and established free government in Virginia, was speedily overthrown by the king of England. James I. was jealous of the power held by

the Company. He claimed that, under the direction of Sandys, it was giving too much freedom to Virginians. The king falsely charged the Company with bad management of affairs in the colony and declared that it was responsible for the Indian massacre of 1622.<sup>1</sup> For these reasons, therefore, the king took the charter away from the Company in the year 1624. Only 1275 people were then dwelling in the colony as survivors of the 6,000 sent out since 1607. The Company thus came to an end, but it left in Virginia a well-trained body of people, capable of making their own laws. King James intended, perhaps, to destroy the House of Burgesses also, but he died in 1625, and the legislature of Virginia has continued to exist even to this day.

### Questions.

1. What was Raleigh's plan in regard to English territory in America? What was the connection between the Spanish Armada and Raleigh's plan? Tell of Raleigh's imprisonment and death. In what way was Raleigh's plan made successful even before his death?

2. What was the London Company? What was the Plymouth Company? What is a charter? How much land was given to each of these Companies by King James I.? In what way did the king have the right to give away this land?

3. What was the character of the first emigrants to Virginia? Describe the country near the James River as they found it in 1607. What crops were planted at Jamestown in 1607? Describe the first church and the first pulpit at Jamestown.

4. Tell of Smith's early life. Tell the story of Pocahontas. What explorations did Smith make? Tell of his services to the colony.

5. What was the condition of the colony in 1610? In what way did Lord Delaware preserve the colony?

6. What was the system of communism followed at Jamestown? Tell of Virginia under Dale's administration.

7. What did Sir Edwin Sandys do for the colony? Tell how wives

<sup>1</sup>This massacre was a great disaster to the colony. The new Indian chief-tain, Opekankano, urged his people to attack the scattered plantations. At midday of the 22nd of March, the Indians suddenly began the work of death. They murdered 347 persons in the most cruel manner. The Virginians, however, were strong enough to inflict a speedy and severe punishment upon the savages.

were provided. What was the character of the colonists sent to Virginia after 1618?

8. Describe the first session of the House of Burgesses. Tell what you know about the first university proposed in America.

9. What were indentured servants? What nation brought the first company of negroes to North America?

10. Describe the Indian massacre of 1622. What were the reasons that led James I. to dislike the London Company? What became of the London Company? Tell of the condition of Virginia in 1624.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map London, the Thames River, the states of the Union on the Atlantic coast, Hudson River, Cape Fear River, Cape Charles, Cape Henry, Chesapeake Bay, Hampton Roads, James River, Old Point Comfort and Jamestown.

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE GROWTH OF THE COLONY IN TIDEWATER VIRGINIA.

1625-1689.

**40. Virginia as a Royal Province. 1625.**—With the passing of the London Company the colony of Virginia came under the personal management of the king of England. A colony governed directly by the king was usually called a royal province. In 1625, when Charles I. succeeded his father on the throne, he did not change the free government built up by the Company, but claimed only the right to name the governors of the colony. In 1627 the king sent a special message directed to “Our trusty and well-beloved Burgesses of the Grand Assembly of Virginia,” in which he acknowledged the House of Burgesses as the law-making body of Virginia. He looked upon the colony as a separate part of his realm and called it “Our Kingdom of Virginia.”<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The London Company had adopted a coat-of-arms for the colony with the motto *En dat Virginia quintum*, “Behold, Virginia gives the fifth [kingdom].” This was a recognition of Virginia as a fifth kingdom added to the four already contained on the royal shield: viz., England, France, Scotland and Ireland.

**41. The Cavalier Emigration. 1642-1660.**—In 1642 war began in England between Charles I. and his Parliament. In the same year Sir William Berkeley came to Jamestown to represent Charles as governor of the Kingdom of Virginia. At Green Spring, Berkeley's home near Jamestown, the mode of life was much like that of the king in his palace. Berkeley's manner was marked by grace and courtliness, and his robes of office were rich with gold lace. A great multitude of royalists, or cavaliers, now came to build homes in Virginia.

In 1649 the English Parliament sent Charles I. to die on the scaffold. His execution was strongly disapproved in Virginia, and from 1649 until 1652, although Cromwell was in control of the English government, Charles II. was recognized by the Burgesses as king in England and in Virginia. By reason of this loyalty and also on account of Berkeley's mes-



CHARLES I.

sage to Charles II., with the offer of the crown in Virginia, the colony was given the title of The Old Dominion. Berkeley offered shelter and homes to the cavaliers who had drawn sword in England for King and Church. A thousand came almost at once. This emigration was kept up as long as the Puritans held sway in England.<sup>1</sup> In the year 1670 the population of Vir-

<sup>1</sup> Among the cavalier emigrants we find the names of Washington, Lee, Madison, Monroe, Randolph, Mason, Tyler, Pendleton, Cary and Marshall. The Cavaliers settled near the rivers that seek the Chesapeake, and there reproduced the country homes they had known in merry England.

The Burgesses passed a law (1643) banishing Puritans and Roman Catholics, and in 1649 about 1000 Puritans went out of Virginia into Maryland. In 1648 there were 15,000 Englishmen and 300 negro servants in the royal province between the James and the York rivers.

ginia reached the number of 32,000, with 6,000 white servants and 2,000 negro servants in addition.

**42. The Independent Commonwealth of Virginia. 1652-1660.**—When Oliver Cromwell became the chief ruler of England, his Parliament appointed commissioners to visit the colonies and to bring them into submission. When these commis-



*From the painting by Kelly.*

BACON CONFRONTS GOVERNOR BERKELEY.

sioners arrived in Jamestown, in 1652, the House of Burgesses agreed to surrender the Royalist Colony to the Parliament on condition "that Virginia shall be free from all taxes, customs, and impositions whatsoever, and none to be imposed on them without consent of the Grand Assembly [The House of Burgesses]."

For the next eight years the Burgesses were the supreme rulers of the colony. The Burgesses appointed the Council of State and elected three different governors. One of the governors became displeased with the Burgesses and ordered them to adjourn and return home. Their reply was framed in these words: "We are not dissolvable by any power yet extant in Virginia but our own." In March, 1660, the Burgesses elected Sir William Berkeley to the governorship. On the 8th day of May, Charles II. was restored to the throne in England, and on the 20th of September he was again declared king in Virginia. Thus ended the period when the colony of Virginia was an independent commonwealth, governed entirely by the Burgesses, the representatives of the people.

**43. The Tyranny of Governor Berkeley. 1660-1676.**—

Beneath Berkeley's silken robes of office there was hidden the purpose to rule the colony with a very strong hand. He prevented the election of new members to the House of Burgesses. Oppressive taxes were laid upon the people, and all of the offices in the colony were filled by a few rich landholders. Puritans were not allowed to teach and Quakers were driven out of Virginia. Berkeley injured the colony by incorrectly reporting in 1671 that there were no free schools in Virginia. The English Act of Navigation (1660) kept the colonists from selling their tobacco to the Dutch, and the English merchants were allowed to put up the price of foreign goods and put down the price of tobacco. King Charles II. injured the landholders of Virginia by giving away for thirty-one years to two of his favorites, Lord Arlington and Lord Culpeper, the title to all of the territory of the colony. Moreover, Berkeley was carrying on a trade in furs with the Indians and, when the Indians made war against the planters, he would not allow the Virginians to use their rifles to drive away the red men. Against all of these injustices the people arose in protest under Nathaniel Bacon.

**44. Bacon's Rebellion. 1676.**—Nathaniel Bacon was a kinsman of Lord Bacon, the great lawyer and writer of the time of King James I. He studied law in London, traveled on the continent of Europe, and then came to live in Virginia where he held a seat in the Governor's Council. Bacon was a very bold man and a persuasive speaker.

In May, 1676, Indians came to Bacon's plantation at James River Falls (Richmond) and killed the overseer and one of the servants. When the news was borne down the river, Bacon's neighbors rode away with him in pursuit of the Indians, whom they speedily defeated in battle. Berkeley declared that Bacon and his men had taken up arms without his permission and that he would punish them as traitors. Thereupon Bacon marched to Jamestown and stood before Berkeley, who at once ceased to make threats. A new House of Burgesses was called together and Berkeley's oppressive laws were abolished.

Berkeley then sought to stir up the people to make war against Bacon. He wrote a letter to King Charles II. asking for English troops to aid him. In answer, Bacon called a public assembly on the 3rd of August, 1676, at Middle Plantation, where Williamsburg is now located. A large number of the Virginians came to this meeting. The discussion was kept up until midnight, by the light of great blazing pine-torches. The principal men of the assembly then signed a paper prepared by Bacon, pledging themselves to fight against any royal troops that might be sent to the aid of Governor Berkeley. The assembly also issued an order in the name of "the inhabitants of Virginia," calling for the election of another House of Burgesses.

There was now a state of open warfare. When Bacon led his followers against Berkeley in Jamestown, he encouraged his men by saying, "Come on, my hearts of gold; he that dies in the field lies in the bed of honor." Several of Bacon's supporters set fire to their own dwellings in Jamestown in order to drive Berkeley away.

The death of Bacon by fever on the 1st of October, 1676, left the people without a leader. His followers went back to their homes, but many of them were dragged away to suffer death at the hands of Berkeley. The governor was soon recalled to England by King Charles II. Bacon's movement ended in failure for the time, but it gave encouragement to the people of Virginia to offer resistance to any act of injustice committed against them by the king of England or by the governors whom the king appointed.

**45. The College of William and Mary. 1693.**—In 1689 about 60,000 people were dwelling on the banks of the James, York, Rappahannock and Potomac rivers, in the tide-water section of Virginia. They were all of the English race and were engaged in reproducing on Chesapeake Bay the homes and customs of the mother country. The Reverend James Blair, a Scot, who had been appointed commissioner of the colonial Established Church in 1689, revived the old plan of founding a college

in Virginia. The sum of £2,500 (about \$12,500) was collected in the colony. Mr. Blair then went to England and obtained more money and also a charter from the new sovereigns of England, William and Mary. This charter, dated 1693, gave authority to



A VIEW OF THE COLLEGE OF WILLIAM AND MARY.

establish the College of William and Mary at Williamsburg. Blair was the first president of the college and he remained in this office for fifty years, until his death in 1743. The College of William and Mary became the intellectual center of the colony on Chesapeake Bay. Supported by a vigorous and keen-minded people it soon became a great school.<sup>1</sup>

### Questions.

1. What was a royal province? How did Charles I. treat the Virginia House of Burgesses? What title did he give to Virginia? What was the motto on the Virginia coat-of-arms?

2. What was the character of Sir William Berkeley? Who were the Cavaliers? Why was Virginia called The Old Dominion?

<sup>1</sup> It has furnished to our country fifteen senators and seventy representatives in Congress; thirty-seven judges, and Chief Justice Marshall; seventeen governors of states, and three Presidents of the United States, Jefferson, Monroe and Tyler.

3. What agreement was made between England and Virginia in 1652? How much power did the Burgesses have in Virginia from 1652 until 1660? What effect did the accession of Charles II. to the throne have in Virginia?

4. Make a list of the grievances of the people of Virginia against Berkeley and Charles II. in 1676.

5. Who was Bacon? Why did Berkeley declare him to be a traitor? What was done by Bacon's House of Burgesses? What oath was taken at the Middle Plantation? What happened after Bacon's death? Was Bacon's rebellion justifiable?

6. Who was James Blair? When was the College of William and Mary founded? What has this college done for our country?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the James, York, Rappahannock and Potomac rivers, Jamestown, Williamsburg and James River Falls (Richmond).

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE PLANTING OF MARYLAND.

1632-1689.

46. **George Calvert.**—While Virginia was still in the beginning of her life as a royal province, another colony was planted on the



THE FIRST LORD BALTI-  
MORE.

northern shore of the Potomac. This was the colony of Maryland, whose founders were George and Cecilius Calvert. George Calvert was a gentleman of Yorkshire, England, who was eager to take part in the work of planting colonies. King James I., in 1625, made Calvert an Irish nobleman, with the title of Baron or Lord Baltimore.

In 1623 Calvert sent a company of settlers to establish a colony in Newfoundland, and followed, himself, in 1627. On account of the climate, however, he was forced to abandon Newfoundland. In 1629 he landed at

Jamestown with forty Roman Catholic followers. The Virginians refused to receive men of that creed, and Baltimore was therefore turned away from Jamestown and sent back to London. He asked for a grant of land south of the James River, to be called Carolina in honor of the king, but a protest from the Virginians prevented his getting it.

**47. The Maryland Charter. 1632.**—Two years later (1632), Charles I. gave to Lord Baltimore and his heirs the region north and east of the Potomac River and south of the fortieth parallel of latitude. The king gave to this territory the name Maryland in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria. George Calvert died in April, 1632, and in the following June the charter was signed by the king. Maryland was thus bestowed upon George Calvert's son, Cecilius Calvert, second Lord Baltimore.

**48. The Proprietary Form of Government in Maryland.**—The form of government in Maryland was called a palatinate<sup>1</sup> because the ruler of the colony was given as much power as the king had in his palace. Lord Baltimore was appointed Lord Proprietary, or proprietor of the province. He paid to the king two Indian arrows each year in token of allegiance. He was expected also to send to the king a fifth part of all the gold and silver found in Maryland. Lord Baltimore was practically the king of the colony.<sup>2</sup> His authority was limited by the colonial assembly. This same form of government, with the proprietor appointed to act as ruler of the colony, was afterwards used in the founding of New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, the Carolinas and Georgia.

**49. The Founding of St. Mary's. 1634.**—In November, 1633, Leonard Calvert, brother of Cecilius, set sail from London in two small vessels, the *Ark* and the *Dove*, with nearly two hundred colonists. About twenty of these were wealthy Roman

<sup>1</sup>Palatinate, meaning the province of a palatine, one who possesses royal privileges.

<sup>2</sup>He could wage war, coin money, levy taxes, establish courts of justice, appoint judges and grant titles of nobility. All laws, however, were to be made with the advice and consent of the freemen of the colony.

Catholic gentlemen; most of the remainder were Protestant laborers and mechanics. They entered the mouth of the Potomac River and, on the 25th of March, 1634, went ashore on a small wooded island, which they named St. Clement's. Two priests, members of the party, celebrated mass and erected a great cross hewn from a tree. An Indian village on the northern bank of the Potomac, surrounded by gardens and corn-fields, was bought from its owners by the payment of cloth, hoes and hatchets. The name of St. Mary's was given by the settlers to the new town. An Indian wigwam was consecrated as a church; this was the first Roman Catholic Church established by Englishmen in America.

**50. The Settlement of Kent Island. 1631.**—One year before the granting of the charter to Lord Baltimore, **William Claiborne**, of Virginia, planted a colony on Kent Island, in Chesapeake Bay, near the present city of Annapolis. Claiborne had received from the king a written title to the island. His settlement was represented in the year of the charter (1632) by a delegate in the Virginia House of Burgesses. In April, 1635, Leonard Calvert seized one of Claiborne's vessels, and this act was followed by skirmishes in which several men were slain. The Virginians were ready to assist Claiborne in upholding their claim to the territory of Maryland as a part of Virginia. The strife which thus began between the two sisters, Leah and Rachel, as Virginia and Maryland were called, continued to exist for a score of years, but Claiborne was finally driven from Kent Island and it became a portion of Lord Baltimore's province.

**51. The Maryland Assembly. 1638.**—One year after the planting of the colony at St. Mary's, Leonard Calvert, who had been appointed governor, called a mass meeting of all the freemen in the colony (February, 1635). They drew up a body of laws and asked Cecilius Calvert, Lord Baltimore, to approve them. At first he refused, but the freemen insisted upon their rights, and Lord Baltimore yielded. In 1638 a change was made in the form of government by the establishment of an as-

sembly. It was no longer convenient to hold a mass meeting of the colonists.<sup>1</sup> The province was, therefore, divided into districts called hundreds, and each hundred sent a representative to the Assembly, which met at St. Mary's.<sup>2</sup>

**52. The Maryland Manor.**—The manorial system was organized by Lord Baltimore in 1636. This was a method of landholding by which very large tracts of land were assigned to individual owners. Each land grant of 2,000 acres or more was called a manor. The owner, or lord of the manor, was authorized to hold law courts and, with his tenants, to make rules to govern the plantation.<sup>3</sup>

**53. The Toleration Act. 1649.**—The chief purpose of George and Cecilius Calvert in founding the colony of Maryland was to open a place of refuge for Roman Catholics. The laws of England were, at that time, oppressive to Puritans and to Roman Catholics alike. The Maryland charter, however, did not bind Lord Baltimore to establish any special form of worship in the colony. Cecilius Calvert was a man of broad and liberal opinions, and he was glad to offer the privileges of religious worship to both Roman Catholics and Protestants. Men of every creed flocked into Maryland as into a haven of peace. The number of Protestants in the colony soon became much greater than the number of Roman Catholics. To preserve harmony, the Toleration Act was adopted by the Assembly of Maryland in 1649. This law required belief in Christ, but it provided that no one professing to be a Christian should be molested on account of his

<sup>1</sup> The earlier form of government in Maryland by all the freemen assembled in mass meeting is that known as a pure democracy; government by an assembly of chosen delegates is called a representative democracy.

<sup>2</sup> In 1650 the people's representatives began to sit apart by themselves as a lower house of legislation, while the governor's council formed an upper house.

<sup>3</sup> One of the most famous of these old Maryland manors was the large and beautiful estate of Charles Carroll of Carrollton, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. The old mansion, the chapel and the rest of the manorial group of buildings are still standing.

religious opinions. This is the first legislative act of its kind upon record.

**54. War in Maryland. 1652-1658.**—In 1652 William Claiborne came to Maryland armed with a commission from Oliver Cromwell to bring Maryland under Cromwell's authority. Claiborne established a Puritan government, by which the rights of



THE SEAL OF THE PROVINCE OF MARYLAND.

(In use from 1658 to 1776.)

Lord Baltimore were not acknowledged. A Puritan assembly was chosen (1654), which annulled the Toleration Act of 1649. A severe battle took place on the Severn River, March 25, 1655, and there the Puritans defeated the supporters of Lord Baltimore. The whole matter was appealed to Cromwell, who arranged a compromise. Baltimore was restored to his old place of authority over the colony (1658), the Toleration Act was again enforced, and hostility ceased between Maryland and Virginia.

**55. Maryland a Royal Province. 1689-1715.**—In 1689 there were about 20,000 people in Maryland, of whom about three-fourths were Protestants. These Protestants arose in rebellion, overturned the proprietary government and made the Puritan town, Annapolis, the capital. Maryland now became a royal province, and in 1691 Sir Lionel Copley came over as the first royal governor. The Church of England was established in the colony and a general tax was levied for its support. This caused a feeling of dissatisfaction, for the great majority of the people were Puritans. In addition, severe laws were enacted against all

Roman Catholics. In 1715 the proprietary government of Maryland was restored to Benedict, the fourth Lord Baltimore,<sup>1</sup> in consideration of the fact that he had left the Roman Catholic Church and embraced the Protestant faith.

### Questions.

1. Tell something of the life of George Calvert, and how he became Lord Baltimore.
2. Give an account of the Maryland charter of 1632.
3. Explain what is meant by a proprietary government. What other colonies had the same form?
4. Tell of the settlement of St. Mary's.
5. What right did Claiborne have to settle on Kent Island? Why were the names Leah and Rachel given to Virginia and Maryland?
6. How were the first laws of Maryland made? What is a pure democracy? What changes were made in the form of government?
7. What was a manor? Tell how it was governed.
8. What was the policy of the Calverts with reference to religion?
9. By what means did Claiborne overturn the government of Maryland in 1652? How was the trouble settled?
10. What was the population of Maryland in 1689? Describe the period when Maryland became a royal province. What change was made in 1715? Why?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Yorkshire in England, Newfoundland, the Carolinas, Maryland, the Potomac, the Severn, St. Mary's and Annapolis.

<sup>1</sup>There were six members of the Calvert family who held the title of Lord, or Baron, Baltimore :—

I. George Calvert . . . . .	1632	Roman Catholic.
II. Cecilius Calvert . . . . .	1675	“ “
III. Charles Calvert . . . . .	1715	“ “
IV. Benedict Leonard Calvert . . . . .	1715	Protestant.
V. Charles Calvert . . . . .	1751	“
VI. Frederick Calvert . . . . .	1771	“

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.

1602-1643.

**56. Early Attempts to Plant Colonies in New England. 1602-1614.**—Let us now turn our attention to the series of events connected with the planting of colonies in New England. This work began in 1602, when **Bartholomew Gosnold** built a trading-house on Cuttyhunk Island, at the mouth of Buzzard's Bay, now in Massachusetts. He had taken a course directly across the Atlantic and landed on Cape Cod. At the end of a month Gosnold and his thirty-two men left their house and returned to England, bearing a cargo of sassafras roots and cedar logs.

The year 1605 saw **George Weymouth** sailing up the Kennebec River in Maine. He kidnapped five Indians and carried them to England. He also reported that he had found many signs of gold there. Two years later a company of 120 colonists arrived at the mouth of the Kennebec, having been sent out by the Plymouth Company. Under the leadership of **George Popham** these emigrants built a fort and about fifty cabins. Their first search was for gold, but none was found. The Indians remembered Weymouth's treatment of them and were therefore ready to offer resistance. Moreover, the severe cold of the winter chilled the spirit of the emigrants and they returned to England in the spring of 1608. The Atlantic seaboard north of the Hudson River was thus still unsettled. It continued to be known as North Virginia. In 1614 **Captain Jchn Smith** came from England and made a close examination of the coast from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod. He gave to the country the name New England and marked his map with the names Cape Elizabeth, Cape Ann, Charles River and Plymouth.

**57. The English Puritans.**—When the people of western

Europe, under the leadership of Martin Luther, began that movement known as the Reformation, England was drawn into the struggle between the Roman Catholic Church and the Protestants. In 1534 King Henry VIII., instead of the Pope, was declared to be the head of the Church of England. Queen Elizabeth completed (1562) the work of organizing the State Church by the adoption of the Episcopal form of government, the prayer-book and the thirty-nine articles of belief. A large body of the



*From the painting by Boughton.*

PILGRIMS GOING TO CHURCH IN THE NEW WORLD.

people of England, however, were not willing to yield so much authority to church officers appointed by the queen. They were not satisfied with the forms of worship used in the churches. These people said that they wished to “purify” the church and they were, for that reason, called Puritans. Some of the Puritans who wished to make only a few changes in the church were known as Non-conformists. Other Puritans wished a great many changes made in Elizabeth’s system of religion and, since these changes were not made, they refused to stay in the Established (or Episcopal) Church. These were called Separatists, or Independents.

**58. The Pilgrims.**—The first company of Separatists to leave the Church of England lived in the village of Scrooby, in Northamptonshire, England. King James I. began to treat them with great cruelty in order to force them back into the Established Church. The Separatists then fled across the sea to Holland (1607), and thus became Pilgrims, or wanderers from their old English home. The Pilgrims did not remain long in the land of the Dutch, for they desired a home where their own Eng-

lish speech and their own form of religion could be kept alive. Plans were therefore laid for another pilgrimage. A large tract of land south of the Hudson River, in the northern part of what was then called Virginia, was given to the Pilgrims by Sir Edwin Sandys of the London Company. Sandys drew up a charter which authorized the Pilgrims to organize a govern-



A CHAIR AND A CRADLE THAT CAME OVER IN THE "MAYFLOWER."

ment for themselves in their new home.

**59. The *Mayflower*.**—On the 6th of September, 1620, the *Mayflower* sailed westward from Plymouth, England, with about one hundred persons on board. Most of these were Pilgrims, but some of them were white servants from London. The ship was not able to reach the coast of north Virginia, which was her destination, for the winds drove her into Cape Cod Bay on the coast of New England. Land was sighted on the 19th of November, 1620. Forty-one of the Pilgrims then signed an agreement binding themselves to carry out the terms of the charter given them by Sir Edwin Sandys, and to enact just

and equal laws for the general good of the colony. **John Carver** was chosen governor.

On the 21st of December, 1620, a company of Pilgrims led by Captain Myles Standish left the *Mayflower* in a small boat and entered the harbor which Captain John Smith had already called Plymouth.

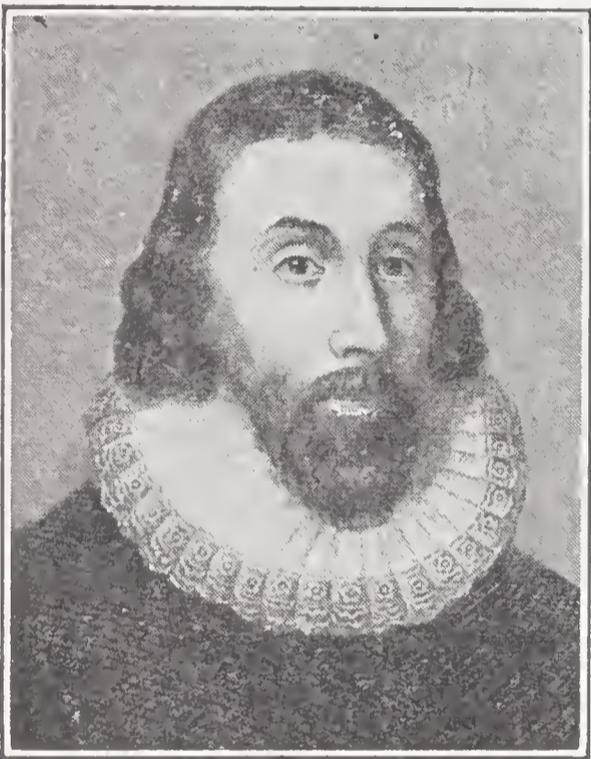
**60. The Settlement at Plymouth. 1620.**—When Standish and his party went ashore at Plymouth they found a beautiful spring of drinking water. This led the Pilgrims to select Plymouth as the location of their settlement, and the work of building a log house was begun. Deep snow covered the ground. The entire company was at first crowded together in one long house. The supply of food was short and a mortal sickness broke out among the colonists. The early spring found only forty-nine persons left alive. Additional Pilgrims came in the summer of 1621, a fort was built, and seven houses were erected along the single street that led from the fort to the water's edge. Twenty-six acres of land were cleared, a crop was gathered and in the autumn the first Thanksgiving was celebrated. A treaty of peace was made with the Indian chieftain Massasoit, and it was never broken so long as Massasoit lived. Other Pilgrims from England came in small numbers; at the end of ten years there were only three hundred people in the colony. After the death of John Carver, **William Bradford** was chosen governor each successive year, for a period of more than thirty years. Several towns were built on the coast near Plymouth, and these were together called the Old Colony, which afterwards became a part of the larger colony of Massachusetts Bay (1692).

**61. The Founding of Salem. 1628.**—In November, 1620, the old Plymouth Company of 1606 was reorganized and given the new name of The Council for New England. This Council gave (1628) to a company of Non-conformists in England, called the **Massachusetts Bay Company**, all the land lying between the Merrimac and the Charles rivers in New England. Some of the Non-conformists of eastern England at once set forth across the

Atlantic for the purpose of establishing a Puritan state in America.

A small company of these Non-conformists, under the leadership of **John Endicott**, arrived on the coast of New England in September, 1628, and established themselves at the Indian village of Naum-Keag, to which Endicott gave the name Salem, meaning peace.<sup>1</sup>

**62. John Winthrop and the Royal Charter. 1630.**—Endicott prepared the way for the real emigration of the Non-con-



*Jo: winthrop*

formists to New England, which began in 1630. More than one thousand of them came in that year under the leadership of John Winthrop, a native of Groton, in Suffolk. Winthrop was elected to the position of governor of the Massachusetts Bay Company, and he immediately sailed away to America with the royal charter in his possession. The entire Massachusetts Bay Company, both officers and members, came bodily from London to New England. The charter gave them the right to elect each year a governor,

deputy governor and eighteen assistants, who were to make all laws necessary for the government of the colony.

**63. The Colony of Massachusetts Bay.**—The followers of Winthrop went ashore in the beautiful harbor south of Salem. They built homes on Tri-mountain, or Tremont (Three Hills), to which was given the name **Boston**, in honor of the city of Boston,

<sup>1</sup>Endicott was very strict in making his people keep all the rules of the Puritan Church. The women of Salem were compelled to keep their faces veiled in the house of worship. It was Endicott who afterward cut the cross out of the English flag carried by the Salem militia, declaring that this painted cross was merely a relic of Roman Catholicism.

England, which was the native place of some of the emigrants. Hundreds of Puritans soon followed Winthrop, and other settlements were made at Charlestown, Newtown, Watertown, Roxbury and Dorchester. All of these places, together with Salem, were called the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, Massachusetts being the Indian name for the Blue Hills near Boston.

From 1630 until 1649, the year of his death, John Winthrop was the ruling spirit in Massachusetts. In 1634 the colony contained some four thousand colonists dwelling in sixteen towns.

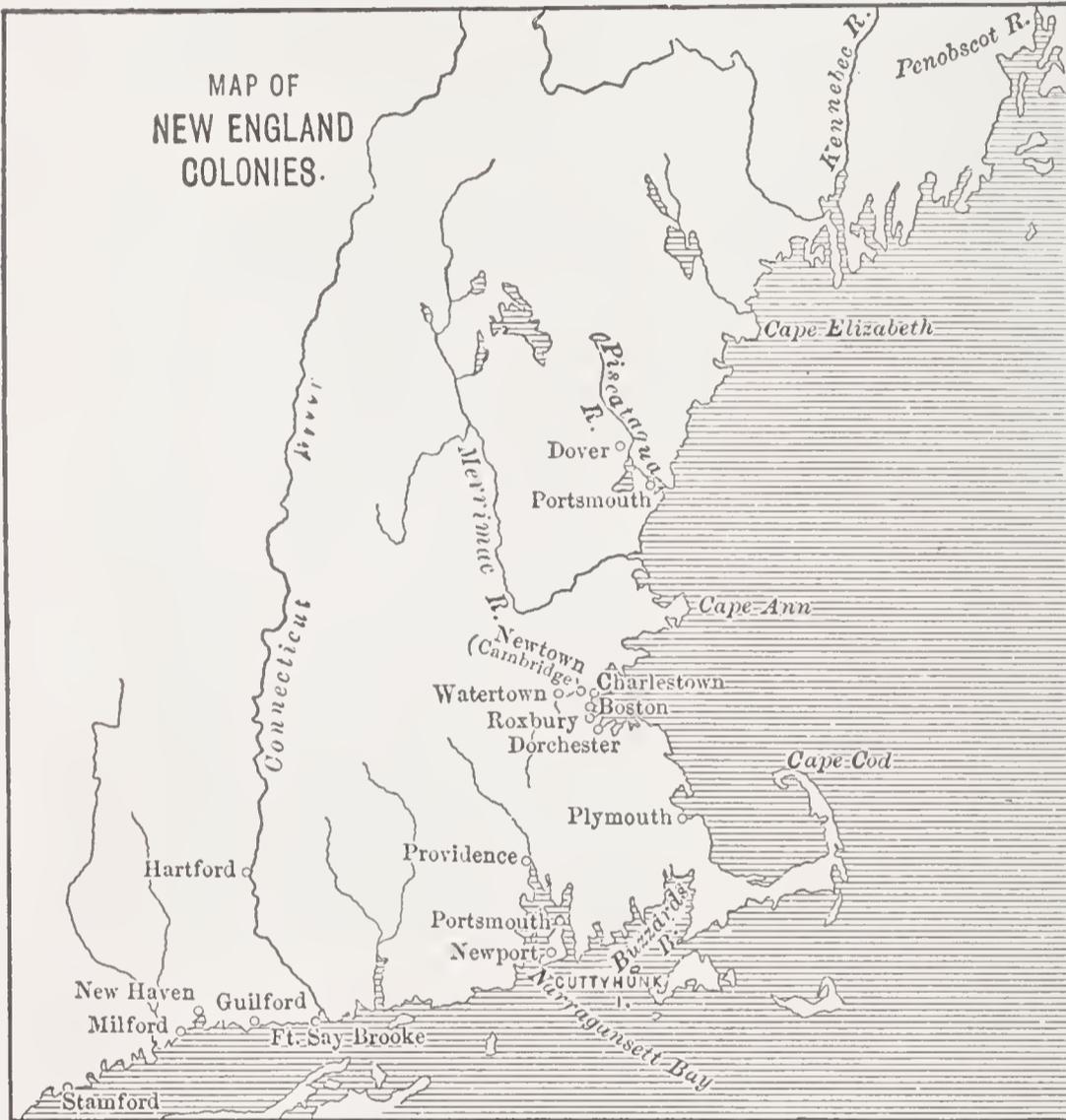
**64. Roger Williams. 1599-1683.**—Roger Williams was the son of a tailor of London. He left Cambridge University to enter the ranks of the Puritan ministry, and in 1633 became one of the pastors of the church in Salem. Williams denied the power of the magistrate to force the colonists to attend church on Sunday, and he opposed the law which compelled men to pay a tax for the support of public worship. He declared, also, that the soil of New England was the property of the Indians. For these reasons he was banished from the colony of Massachusetts Bay (1636), and went on foot through the deep snow to Narragansett Bay, where he found a place of refuge in the wigwam of Massasoit, the Indian chieftain.

**65. Rhode Island and Providence Plantations. 1636-1663.**—In the spring of 1636 Williams was joined by four friends from Massachusetts Bay. They secured some land from an Indian chieftain named Canonicus, and began to build the city of Providence at the head of Narragansett Bay.

**Mrs. Anne Hutchinson**, a member of the Puritan church in Boston, claimed that women had the right to preach and to take part in the government of the church. Mrs. Hutchinson also claimed to be divinely inspired to teach some other religious views, and Winthrop forced her to leave Massachusetts. With the aid of friends she began to build the towns of Newport and Portsmouth on the island of Rhode Island, not far from Providence. Roger Williams united all of these settlements under one government, and in 1663 a royal charter was given to them as one

colony under the name of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations. This charter granted to every inhabitant of the colony the right to worship God in any way that he wished.

**66. New Hampshire and Maine.**—The territory lying on the New England coast north of the Merrimac River was granted to two Englishmen, **Gorges** and **Mason**, in 1622. A settlement



THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

was begun at the mouth of the Kennebec, and then the land was divided by the two proprietors. The line of division was the Piscataqua River. The region east of that stream was called Maine, and the country to the westward, between the Piscataqua and the Merrimac, was named New Hampshire, from

Mason's native county of Hampshire, England. Dover and Portsmouth, on the Piscataqua, were founded by English settlers, and Hampton by colonists from Massachusetts. Some followers of Mrs. Hutchinson, driven from Massachusetts, built Exeter. These four towns were formed into the royal province of New Hampshire, in 1679. In 1638 Gorges was made Lord Proprietor of Maine. He was appointed supreme ruler in Church and State over the settlers whom he brought into the forests near the Kennebec River. In 1692 Maine became a part of Massachusetts.

**67. The Founding of Connecticut. 1633-1640.**—The

profit connected with the fur-trade led the English and the Dutch into the Connecticut Valley about the same time. The Dutch treated the Indians unjustly and built a fort at Hartford (1633) to defend themselves against the wrath of the red men. English traders sailed up the Connecticut River, passed the guns of the Dutch fort, and established a trading-house at Windsor (1633). The first home-builders to enter the Connecticut Valley came from Watertown, Massachusetts. They founded the town of Wethersfield in 1634. Half of the people of Dorchester followed them the next year and began to build the town of Windsor. The Dutch were kept out of the Connecticut River by the guns of Fort Say-Brooke, which was built at the river's mouth by John Winthrop, Jr.

**Thomas Hooker**, pastor of the church in Newtown (Cambridge), found that he could not agree with the view of John Winthrop that the government should be in the hands of those only who were members of the church. Hooker believed that the government should be carried on with the consent of all the people. He, therefore, assembled about one hundred men, women and children from the congregation of Cambridge, and set forth, in 1636, through the forests toward the west. The journey was long and toilsome. The emigrants drove their cattle with them as far as the Connecticut Valley, where they established the town of **Hartford**. Hooker's emigrants were soon followed by other congregations from Massachusetts.

In the year 1637 the Pequot Indians began to wage war against the settlers in the Connecticut Valley. Captain John Mason led ninety men from Windsor to destroy the savages. Underhill led twenty men from Massachusetts to Mason's aid. They broke into the Pequot fort, set fire to the wigwams and slew about seven hundred Indians. The remnant of the tribe was hunted down, and about 180 Indian prisoners were sold as slaves to planters in the West Indies.

On the 14th of January, 1639, a public meeting of all the free-men of Windsor, Wethersfield and Hartford was held at Hartford. They adopted a written constitution and proceeded to

organize the colony of Connecticut. No reference was made in this constitution either to King or to Parliament. The governor and council were elected by a majority vote of all the people. A legislative assembly was also chosen, composed of representatives of the townships. Connecticut was thus made a republic. The right to vote was not limited to church members, as was the case in Massachusetts.

**68. The Colony of New Haven. 1638-1665.**—John Davenport, a graduate of the University of Oxford and pastor of a Puritan congregation in London, was selected as the leader of a company of wealthy Puritan merchants who entered Boston harbor in the autumn of 1637. These merchants desired a good situation near the sea. A favorable harbor was found on Long Island Sound, and in the spring of 1638 the town of New Haven was established by Davenport's congregation. Other Puritans came from England to join them, and the towns of Milford, Guilford and Stamford were also built. In 1643 the four towns were brought together as the colony of New Haven.<sup>1</sup> The anger of King Charles II. was visited upon the colony of New Haven, because Davenport and his congregation helped to conceal Goffe and Whalley, two of the judges who sent his father, Charles I., to die on the scaffold. In 1665, therefore, New Haven was made a part of Connecticut.

### Questions.

1. Tell the story of the settlements attempted by Gosnold and Pop- ham. How did New England get its name?
2. Who organized the Church of England? Who were the Puritans? The Non-conformists? The Separatists?
3. Who were the Pilgrims? Tell of their wanderings.
4. Describe the voyage of the *Mayflower*. What was the agreement signed by the Pilgrims?

<sup>1</sup>New Haven was organized like the government of the ancient Hebrews in the time of King David. None but church members were allowed to vote. "Seven Pillars," selected from the members of the church, were the rulers of the people. The laws administered by these Pillars were the Jewish laws, written in the Old Testament.

5. Who was Myles Standish? Tell of the first settlement at Plymouth in New England.

6. What was the Council for New England? Tell of Endicott and the Salem settlement.

7. Who was John Winthrop? What was his character? How much power was given to the Massachusetts Bay Company by its royal charter? What did Winthrop do with this charter?

8. Tell of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. Explain its form of government.

9. Tell of the personal character of Roger Williams. Why was he banished from Massachusetts?

10. Tell of the settlement of Providence, Newport and Portsmouth (R. I.). Who was Mrs. Hutchinson?

11. When and by whom were Maine and New Hampshire founded?

12. How did the English keep the Dutch from getting possession of the Connecticut Valley? Why did Thomas Hooker and his congregation leave Massachusetts? Describe their journey to the Connecticut Valley. What was done with the Pequot Indians? Describe the organization of the republic of Connecticut.

13. What reasons brought John Davenport to New Haven? What was the form of government in New Haven? Why was New Haven united with Connecticut?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map London, Scrooby (England), Dorchester (England), Groton (England), Holland, the Hudson River, Connecticut River, Penobscot River, Kennebec River, Merrimac River, Piscataqua River, Charles River, Cape Cod, Cape Ann, Cape Elizabeth, Buzzard's Bay, Narragansett Bay, Cuttyhunk Island, Plymouth, Salem, Boston, Charlestown, Newtown (Cambridge), Watertown, Roxbury, Dorchester, Providence, Newport, Portsmouth (Rhode Island), Portsmouth (New Hampshire), Wethersfield, Windsor, Hartford, Springfield, Milford, Guilford, Stamford, New Haven.

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE NEW ENGLAND CONFEDERACY.

1643-1684.

**69. Harvard College. 1636.**—After 1643 few Puritans came to America; they remained in England to fight against King Charles I. Twenty thousand Puritans from the eastern counties of England had settled in New England between 1628 and



THE COLLEGE YARD AT HARVARD.

1643. Among them were many men of talent and of influence, some large landholders and several eminent Puritan ministers who had received training at Cambridge University. In the year 1635 provision was made for the establishment of a public school in Boston. The necessity of higher education, also, was urged by the graduates of Cambridge and Oxford universities, who came over with John Winthrop. In 1636 the General Court, or legislature, composed of representatives of the people of Massachusetts, set apart the sum of £450 (about \$2,000)

for the founding of a college at Newtown. Two years later (1638) **John Harvard**, a minister, bequeathed his library and the half of his estate to this school, which was called Harvard College, and later, Harvard University.<sup>1</sup> The name of the village of Newtown was changed to Cambridge.

**70. Formation of the New England Confederacy. 1643.—**The safety of the New England colonies was threatened from Canada by the French, and from the Hudson River by the Dutch. The Indians also hovered near them in the great forests. In 1643, the four colonies of Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven entered into a political and religious confederacy. They refused to admit Rhode Island and the scattered settlements on the coast of New Hampshire and Maine because the Puritan church was not established in these colonies. The purposes of the league were four: (1) to defend the Connecticut Valley against invasion by the Dutch, (2) to protect the frontier from the Indians, (3) to assist slave-holders in recovering runaway slaves,<sup>2</sup> and (4) to maintain the liberties of New England against a possible attack by King Charles I. The affairs of this confederacy were placed under the control of eight commissioners, two from each colony. The league continued in existence only about forty years.

**71. The Quakers in New England. 1656-1677.—**In 1644, the Society of Friends was founded by George Fox. Its members, usually called Quakers, refused (1) to take any form of oath, (2) to bear arms in war, (3) to pay taxes for the support of a church, and (4) to show respect for any official rank or title. In the year 1656 two female Quaker missionaries came to Boston.

<sup>1</sup> The people of all the New England colonies, in 1645, gave corn and money for the support of the college. This great school has trained a multitude of men for high service in every department of the life of our country. Among these are three presidents of the United States, John Adams, John Quincy Adams and Theodore Roosevelt.

<sup>2</sup> The first Massachusetts Code of Laws, drawn up in the year 1641, allowed the colonists to hold in slavery both Indians and negroes. This was the first statute establishing slavery in America.

They attempted to preach their doctrines, but were seized, thrown into prison, and finally sent to the West Indies. Other Quakers came, but they were scourged, imprisoned and banished, and four were hanged on Boston Common (1661). One of these was a woman.

**72. The Extermination of the Indians of New England. 1675-1678.**—The Indian tribes of New England were taught



*From the painting by Certei.*

JOHN ELIOT PREACHING TO THE INDIANS.

Christianity by **John Eliot**, of Roxbury, for nearly thirty years (1646-1675). Eliot translated the Bible into the Indian language, and persuaded about four thousand Indians to accept the Christian faith. The colonists, meanwhile, purchased land from the red tribes until the latter were forced into a few narrow strips of territory projecting into the sea. The wrath of the savages finally burst forth and, in the year 1675, the Narragansetts, the Wampanoags and the Nipmucks began to murder and to burn. The Indians were led by **King Philip**, son of old Massasoit, the early friend of the Puritans. The red glare of Philip's war extended from the Connecticut River almost to Boston. The colonists took up arms to defend their homes; they slew great numbers of the savages, and burned their forts and wigwams. Many Indians were captured. Some of the red chieftains were

hanged or beheaded. Hundreds of the captured Indians were sold into slavery, some among the New England colonists and some among the planters of the West Indies. The year 1676 marked the death of King Philip, the extermination of his followers, and the end of **King Philip's War**. Two years later (1678) the savages of the coast of Maine were suppressed. A thousand New Englanders laid down their lives to secure all these victories over the red men, and when the struggle was over, twelve New England towns were lying in ruins and forty other towns showed the marks of fire.

**73. Charles II. and New England.**—When Charles II., son of Charles I., ascended the throne of England, in 1660, he determined to tame the spirit of the Puritans of Massachusetts. He commanded them to obey his Navigation Act, which meant that they must trade only with English merchants. He ordered them to allow the use of the Episcopal form of worship. They were told, also, that they must send Quakers to England for trial. The people of Massachusetts made answer to these demands by drawing up the Declaration of Rights (1661), claiming full power to make their own laws and to govern themselves. The anger of the king against Massachusetts was increased. He, therefore, took a part of her territory and formed it into the royal province of New Hampshire (1679). Afterwards (1684) he cancelled the charter of Massachusetts.

New Haven also was punished, as we have seen, because she had helped to conceal two of the judges who signed the death warrant of Charles I. In 1665 the entire colony of New Haven was made a part of Connecticut. Connecticut, on the other hand, had acknowledged Charles II. in 1661, and had received from the king a liberal grant of land. So complete was the power of self-government which was given to Connecticut in 1665, that the charter, written out for the people by Charles II., continued to be the constitution of the state until 1842.

**74. Andros as Governor of New England. 1685-1689.**—In the year 1685, King Charles II. died and was succeeded on the

throne of England by his brother James II. The new king united New England, New York and New Jersey, and called these combined colonies the Dominion of New England. Sir Edmund Andros was set over the Dominion as the king's representative. Andros made laws, levied taxes and appointed all officers and judges. He also established the Church of England in these colonies. In 1687, Andros went to Hartford and attempted to seize the Connecticut charter. But this document was carried off by Captain Wadsworth and hidden in the hollow trunk of an oak tree, which has been known ever since as the Charter Oak. The liberties of the colonists in the Dominion of New England were taken from them. Andros sent men to prison without trial, took private property and restricted the liberty of printing.

The month of March, 1689, brought the news that King James II. had been driven from England and that William of Orange and his wife, Mary, had been placed upon the throne by Parliament. Armed men of Boston seized Andros and thrust him into prison, and the people re-organized the old charter government, which had been cancelled in 1684, and awaited the commands of the new sovereigns. Andros was released from prison and sent by King William to govern the people of Virginia for the space of six years (1692-1698). In 1692 William annexed Plymouth, Maine and Nova Scotia to Massachusetts and made the latter a royal colony. Connecticut and Rhode Island were allowed to retain their system of self-government, under their former charters.

### Questions.

1. What caused the Puritan emigration to cease? To what extent was John Harvard the founder of Harvard College?

2. What was contained in the Massachusetts code of laws of 1641? What were the purposes of the New England Confederacy? How long did it last?

3. What were the views of the Quakers? How were they treated in Boston?

4. What was the result of the work of John Eliot among the

Indians? What was King Philip's war? How did the colonists suffer in this war? How were the captured Indians treated?

5. Why did Charles II. take away the charter of Massachusetts? Why did he make New Haven a part of Connecticut in 1665? Why did the king give a liberal charter to Connecticut in 1665?

6. What was the Dominion of New England? Tell of Andros as governor. What became of him? What was done by King William in 1692?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Cambridge and Oxford in England, Cambridge in New England, and the boundaries of all the New England states.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE MIDDLE COLONIES.

1609-1689.

**75. Sir Henry Hudson.**—During the reigns of the English sovereigns James I. and Charles I. (1603-1649), Holland became the mistress of the sea, through the work of the Dutch East India Company. This corporation secured control of half the commerce of Europe, and from the island of Java in the East to Brazil in the West, Dutch ships were seen upon the ocean. The Dutch Company was anxious to find the Northwest Passage around or through the new continent of America, and in 1609, its officers sent Sir Henry Hudson, an Englishman, in the Dutch ship *Half Moon*, to search for this supposed sea-route at some point north of Chesapeake Bay. Hudson sailed up the great river now known by his name, until he reached shallow water near the site of Albany. He made a lasting peace between the Dutch and the Iroquois Indians, who then lived in the territory of the present State of New York.

**76. The Founding of New Netherland. 1614-1621.**—Hudson returned to Holland and told the Dutch people about the friendly spirit of the Iroquois. His story at once brought a fleet

of Dutch trading-ships to open a traffic in furs with the Indians. Trading-posts were built along the Hudson River, and Fort Amsterdam, now **New York**, was built on Manhattan Island (1614). Fort Orange was set up at the head of tidewater (Albany), and Fort Nassau was built to command the Delaware River near the present site of Philadelphia. The region which now includes New York and New Jersey was named New Netherland. The Dutch West India Company was organized and received a charter from Holland in 1621, with authority to trade and to plant colonies



*From an old print.*

THE INDIAN VILLAGE ON MANHATTAN ISLAND.

in New Netherland. Two years later some Belgian Protestants, called Walloons, came to build permanent homes on Manhattan Island and at Fort Orange. Peter Minuit, who was made governor of the colony in 1626, bought the Island of Manhattan from the Indians, for beads and ribbons valued at about twenty-four dollars.

Traders came from all parts of Europe in such numbers that eighteen different languages were heard in the streets of New Amsterdam. Eleven negroes were brought from Africa in 1625, a part of that great company of slaves imported into the new world by the Dutch. In 1629, the West India Company sought to hasten the growth of the colony by establishing patroonships.

Each member of this Company who brought in fifty colonists was given the title of Patroon (Patron). He received a grant of land with a water frontage of sixteen miles, extending back from the water as far as he wished.<sup>1</sup>

**77. Peter Stuyvesant.—**

The four governors of New Netherland appointed, one after the other, by the Dutch West India Company, were harsh rulers. One of them, William Kieft (1643-1644), led the settlers into a fierce war with the Indians, during which the savages entered New Amsterdam and slew some of the people inside of the stockade. In 1647, Peter Stuyvesant, last of the Dutch governors, was sent out. He was a soldier who had lost a leg in the service of the Company, and he was familiarly known as "Old Silverleg,"<sup>2</sup> because of his wooden leg ornamented with silver bands.



PETER STUYVESANT.

<sup>1</sup>The patroon held courts of justice, appointed all officers and magistrates and made all the laws. The settlers upon the patroon's estate (1) bound themselves to him as servants, (2) ground their corn in his mill and paid for the grinding, (3) caught fish or game only with their master's permission, and (4) bought all their cloth from the West India Company. The Company itself furnished African slaves to render service to the patroons.

<sup>2</sup>Stuyvesant was hot-tempered and easily made angry, but he was honest and full of courage. He imposed a heavy burden of taxation upon the people. He had no sympathy with government by the people and prevented the establishment of a house of lawmakers chosen by the colonists. He refused freedom of worship to any Christians who were not members of the Dutch Reformed Church, but the Company overruled this and ordered him to allow all citizens to worship in any way they pleased. He kept Quakers out of the

**78. The Swedes on the Delaware.**—In the year 1638, some settlers came from Sweden to the southwestern shore of Delaware Bay, where they made a settlement within the limits of the present city of Wilmington, then a part of Lord Baltimore's grant. To this settlement they gave the name Christiana, in honor of the young queen of Sweden. It was intended as the beginning of a state, which was called New Sweden. The colonists were industrious and peaceful, and they enjoyed their freedom for nearly twenty years. Then Stuyvesant buckled on his sword and made war against them. In 1655, he led a company of soldiers to the western bank of the Delaware and compelled the fort at Christiana to surrender; thus New Sweden was made a part of New Netherland.

**79. The English Conquest of New Netherland. 1664.**—After the conquest of New Sweden by Stuyvesant, the Dutch claimed all that part of the country on the Atlantic coast which lies between the Delaware and the Connecticut rivers. This region, which separated the English colonies in the South from those of New England, was claimed by King Charles II. of England on the ground that the English had discovered the country before the coming of the Dutch under Sir Henry Hudson. An English fleet was, therefore, sent to the mouth of the Hudson, in the year 1664, to demand the surrender of New Netherland. Stuyvesant was about the only man in New Amsterdam who wished to fight the English, and without a blow the seven thousand colonists yielded their country to King Charles II. A war broke out in 1665 between England and Holland, but the English continued to hold New Netherland, and ten years later (1674) Holland formally ceded the entire region to England.

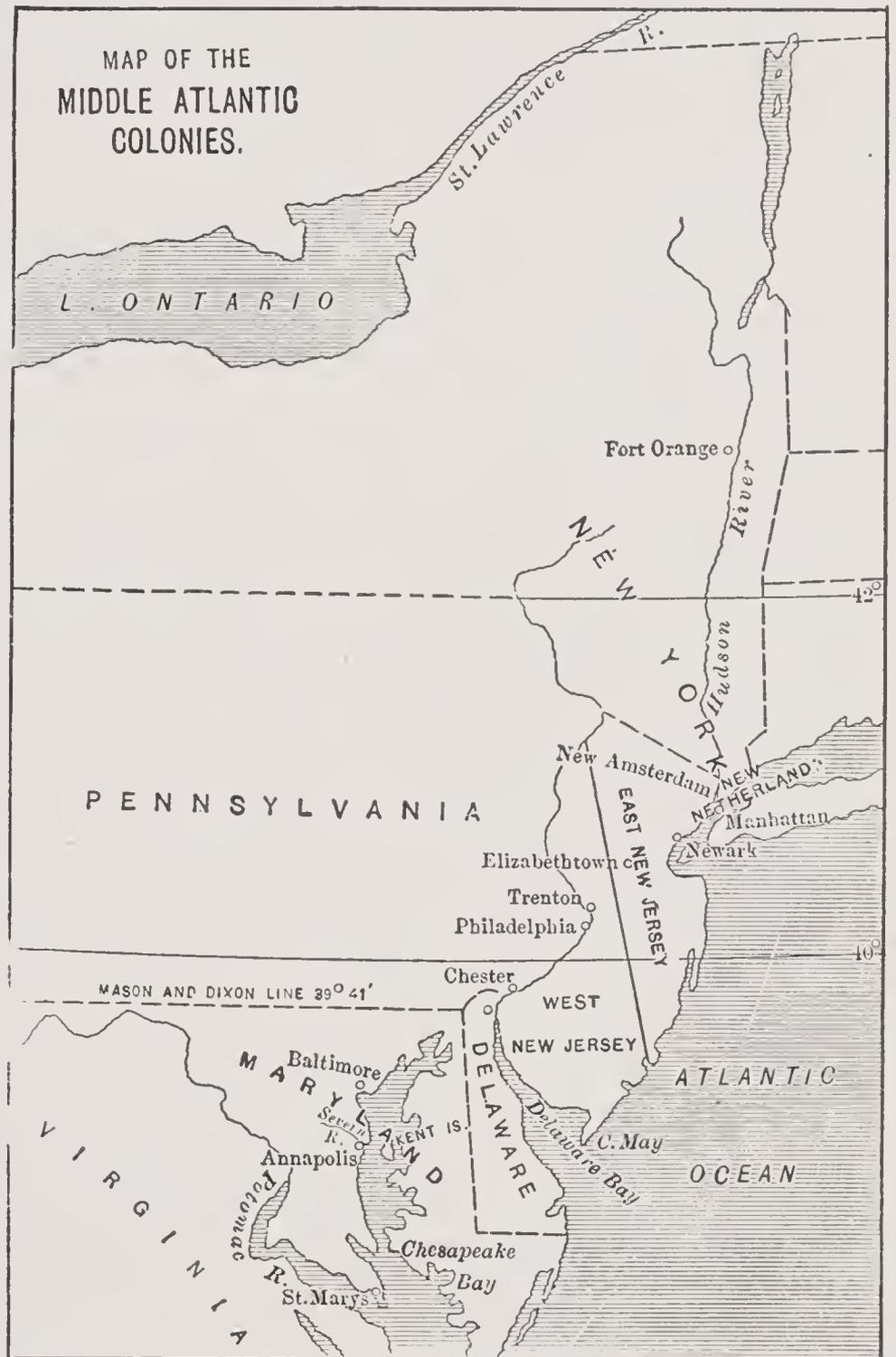
colony under threat of scourging and imprisonment. The stern old Dutch governor did much to improve the condition of New Amsterdam, which in 1656 contained only about 1,000 people, many of whom were negro slaves. On the north of the town he built a palisade entirely across the island. This wall of defense ran where the present Wall Street is located. Stuyvesant's "Bowerie," or farm, where he died in 1682, is kept fresh in our memory by the Bowery, the well-known street in the present city of New York.

**80. English Rule in New York.**—When Charles II. advanced the claim of ownership to the country along the Hudson, he gave away, at the same time (1664), the entire province of New Netherland to his brother James, Duke of York and Albany. It was James who sent the English fleet to haul down the Dutch flag at New Amsterdam.

After this act of conquest, New Netherland was given the name of New York, and Fort Orange was called Albany, in honor of the Duke. The Dutch landholders were left in possession of their estates, and they continued to keep up their old habits of living. Trial by jury, religious freedom and negro slavery were allowed. A legislative assembly chosen by the people was not permitted until 1684. In 1685, the Duke of York became king of England, with the title James II.,

and his duchy on the Hudson became a royal province. Henceforth its governors were appointed by the king. He made New York a part of the Dominion of New England under Andros, who had his official residence in Boston, and left New York under the control of his lieutenant, Francis Nicholson.

**81. Jacob Leisler.**—When William of Orange became king



THE MIDDLE COLONIES.

of England, after the flight of James II. to France, Governor Nicholson of New York refused to proclaim William as the successor of James. The tradesmen and farmers of the province of New York took up arms under the leadership of Jacob Leisler, a German merchant, expelled Governor Nicholson, and set up a new government (1689). The patroons and rich merchants opposed Leisler, and a period of bitter contention followed. Two years later (1691) Governor Sloughter, appointed by King William, came to New York and Leisler yielded the province to him. Leisler was then arrested and brought to trial by Governor Sloughter, and sent to die on the scaffold under the unjust charge of treason. After three years of strife, however, the people were granted the right to make their own laws and to tax themselves through their own chosen representatives. King William also ordered Governor Sloughter to allow all persons, except Roman Catholics, to worship God in any way they pleased.

**82. The English in East and West Jersey. 1664-1689.—**

The portion of New Netherland which lay between the Hudson and the Delaware rivers was given by the Duke of York, in 1664, to two court favorites, Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. The entire province was called New Jersey, because Carteret had been governor of the island of Jersey in the English Channel. Philip Carteret planted a colony, Elizabethtown, in East Jersey. He gave to every settler one hundred and fifty acres of land for himself, and the same number of acres for every servant or slave brought with him. In 1676, William Penn and some other English Quakers bought West Jersey and established a settlement near Burlington (1677). In 1682, Penn and his associates bought Carteret's proprietary rights in East Jersey, and emigrants from England, Scotland and New England swarmed into the Jersey plains. In 1689, a number of towns were in process of rapid growth. East and West Jersey remained separate until 1702, when they were united and became the royal province of New Jersey.

**83. The Beginnings of Pennsylvania. 1681-1701.—**

**William Penn**, a Quaker, the son of Sir William Penn, an English Admiral, obtained from Charles II. a tract of land in North America in payment of a debt of £16,000 (about \$80,000) due from the king to the estate of Penn's father. The charter gave to Penn and his successors the wilderness lying west of Delaware Bay, between forty and forty-two degrees of north latitude. The king named this region Pennsylvania (Penn's Woods), although Penn himself wished to call it New Wales. The proprietor was to appoint all officers and judges and to act with the free-men of the colony in making laws. These laws, however, must receive the approval of the king.

Several hundred English Quakers were at once brought by Penn across the Atlantic, in order that they might escape the persecution of their sect in England. In 1682, Penn called an assembly of the people at Chester, on the Delaware, and this body made a series of statutes called "The Great Law." The right to vote and hold office was granted only to those who professed the Christian faith. No man was to be molested, however, on account of his opinion concerning religious worship. A tract of 5,000 acres of land was sold to any settler for £100 (about \$500) and an annual rental of fifty shillings.<sup>1</sup> In 1682, Penn selected a site for the capital of his colony, to which he gave the Biblical name **Philadelphia**, meaning Brotherly Love.

On the 23rd of June, 1683, Penn met the chiefs of the Lenape tribe of Indians under a spreading elm tree, and bought



*Wm Penn*

<sup>1</sup> In 1685, the population was 7,200, distributed in some fifty villages. One half of these were English and Welsh Quakers. There were many Germans and Scots, with some Swedes, Dutch, French and Finns.

the Indian title to the land, thus securing the lasting friendship of the red men. The next year Penn returned to England and left a Provincial Council to rule in his stead. In 1695, more than 20,000 people were engaged in agriculture, manufactures and commerce, on the banks of the Delaware. Penn



PENN TREATING WITH THE INDIANS.

made a second visit to his colony in 1699–1701. Philadelphia was then a city of 7,000 inhabitants. As every form of religious worship was allowed in the colony, great numbers of people in the Old World, persecuted because of their religious opinions, began to emigrate to Pennsylvania.

**84. Delaware. 1638-1703.**—Settlements on the Delaware Bay were first made, as we have seen, by the Swedes in the year 1638. Stuyvesant made them a part of New Netherland (1655). After these settlements passed under the control of the English in

1664, they were called the three lower counties on the Delaware. Penn bought the whole region from the Duke of York in 1682, annexed the counties to Pennsylvania and called them the Territories of Pennsylvania. Penn gave the people of the Territories a charter in 1703, and they established a separate legislature of their own. In 1776, the Territories of Pennsylvania declared themselves to be the independent "Delaware State."

**85. Mason and Dixon's Line.**—The southern boundary line of Pennsylvania was long a matter of dispute with Maryland. Penn's charter fixed the line at the fortieth degree of latitude, but this shut Pennsylvania and Delaware off from Delaware Bay. Penn's successors continued to demand a part of the seacoast, and in 1763–1767 Mason and Dixon, two English surveyors, fixed the southern boundary of Pennsylvania at  $39^{\circ} 43'$ , a line which crosses Delaware Bay.<sup>1</sup> Many years later Mason and Dixon's line became the supposed line of division between what were called the free and the slave states.

### Questions.

1. What is meant by the Northwest Passage? Why did the Dutch wish to find it? What was accomplished by Sir Henry Hudson?
2. What region was embraced in New Netherland? At what places did the Dutch establish trading-posts? Tell of the patroon system.
3. Who was Stuyvesant? What were his services to the colony?
4. What was New Sweden? When and how was it annexed to New Netherland?
5. Why did Charles II. claim the right to take New Netherland from the Dutch?
6. Explain the change of the name of the province to New York. Tell of the condition of the Dutch settlers under English rule. When was the first body of lawmakers chosen in New York?
7. Tell of Leisler's rebellion in New York. What was the state of religious worship in New York?

<sup>1</sup>Throughout a distance of 280 miles west of the Delaware, stones were set up to mark the boundary between Maryland and Pennsylvania. Every fifth stone bore the arms of the Penn family on the northern side and the arms of the Baltimore family on the southern side.

8. Describe the origin of the colonies of East and West Jersey. What different people came into the Jerseys as settlers?

9. Give an account of Penn's life.

10. How did Penn secure from Charles II. the territory of Pennsylvania? How much land was included in the grant? How much power was given to Penn as proprietor of the colony?

11. What was the purpose of Penn in founding Pennsylvania? What was Penn's position with reference to religion? What nationalities were represented among the early settlers?

12. When and how was the Delaware region made a part of Pennsylvania?

13. Why did Penn wish to extend his original territory farther southward? Tell of the Mason and Dixon line.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the island of Java, Brazil, Chesapeake Bay, Hudson River, Delaware Bay, Delaware River, Connecticut River, New York, Albany, Philadelphia, Chester, Wilmington, Elizabethtown, Newark, Burlington, Mason and Dixon's Line.

## CHAPTER XI.

### THE CAROLINAS.

1660-1689.

**86. The Lords Proprietors of Carolina. 1663.**—Let us now return to the region in which Sir Walter Raleigh made the first serious attempt to plant an English colony in North America—the land of the Carolinas. In 1663, King Charles II. granted the region on the Atlantic coast south of Virginia to eight leading men of his kingdom, who had rendered him personal service.<sup>1</sup>

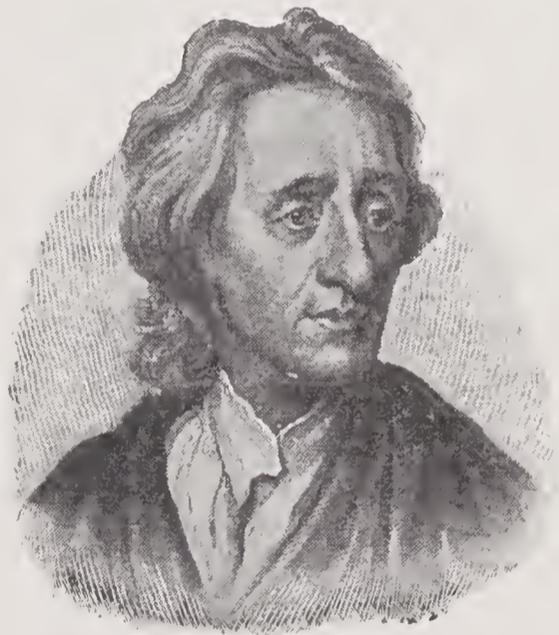
<sup>1</sup> These men were Lords Albemarle, Berkeley and Craven, Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon, Anthony Ashley Cooper, who afterwards became the Earl of Shaftesbury, with Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkeley, governor of Virginia. The memory of these names is preserved in Albemarle Sound, and in the counties of Hyde, Craven and Carteret in North Carolina; in the counties of Clarendon and Colleton, the county of Berkeley, and the Ashley and Cooper rivers in South Carolina. The name of Charles II.

As we have seen, Jean Ribault attempted in 1562 to plant a colony of French Huguenots in this region, which was then called Carolina in honor of Charles (Carolus) IX. of France. The Spaniards also claimed this same country. In 1606, however, King James I. included it in the territory given to the Virginia Company of London. In 1629, Charles I. granted the same region to his Attorney General, Sir Robert Heath, but this grant was disregarded in the royal charter of 1663. The name Carolina was then given to the country in recognition of the gift made by Charles II. to the Lords Proprietors.

**87. The Carolina Charters. 1663-1665.**—The territory first granted to the eight Proprietors extended from the St. John's River in Florida to the Albemarle Sound in North Carolina ( $31^{\circ}$  to  $36^{\circ}$  north latitude). This embraced a portion of what had been included in Virginia. The two Carolina counties of Albemarle and Clarendon were organized under this charter in 1663. In 1665, Charles extended the northern boundary of Carolina to  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , to take in a larger portion of the territory of Virginia, and the southern boundary was thrust down to the twenty-ninth parallel. Carolina extended westward between these parallels across the continent.

**88. John Locke's Constitution.**

**1669.**—John Locke, the English philosopher, aided the Earl of Shaftesbury, one of the Lords Proprietors of Carolina, in drawing up a form of government for the colony. It was called the Fundamental Constitution. Under this constitution, the Proprietors



JOHN LOCKE.

were granted permission to give away landed estates and to confer titles. The body of representatives chosen by the people

appears in Charleston and Carolina. The capital of North Carolina, Raleigh, was named in honor of the statesman who attempted to found the first English colony in America upon Roanoke Island off the coast of North Carolina.

of the colony was to have the power of laying all taxes upon the people. Any seven or more persons might erect a church for worship according to any mode that seemed best to them. Locke's constitution was not suited to the needs of the first settlers of a large country and it was never put into complete operation in Carolina.

**89. The Beginnings of North Carolina. 1660-1689.—**

Three separate communities were established at about the same time on the coast of Carolina. These were (1) Albemarle, near the Virginia border, 1660; (2) Clarendon, on the Cape Fear River, in what is now North Carolina, 1664; (3) the Ashley River colony, in the present State of South Carolina, 1670.



LORD ALBEMARLE.

About 1660, some adventurers from Virginia settled on the shores of Albemarle Sound, buying the land from the Indians. The governor of Virginia required them to take out grants from that province (1662), but the settlement was organized as a colony by the Proprietors of Carolina. They called it **Albemarle**, and appointed William

Drummond, a planter of Virginia, the first governor (1664). The first body of representatives elected by the people met in 1665. George Catchmaid, Gentleman, of Touslick, was the Speaker of the Second Assembly. Samuel Stephens was the second governor (1667). Tobacco was largely cultivated; a brisk trade sprang up with New England, and settlers flocked in from Virginia and New England. In 1677, this colony, the parent settlement of North Carolina, contained nearly 3,000 people.

Roger Green, clerk, explored the Chowan and Roanoke rivers, and the Assembly of Virginia offered 10,000 acres of land there to the first body of one hundred settlers. This offer of a grant never took effect.

At that time the colonists rebelled against the Proprietors and set up a government of their own under John Culpeper (1677-1679). Seth Sothel, a new Lord Proprietor, was then sent over as governor, but he fell into ways of injustice. In 1688, the people drove him out, and Philip Ludwell of Virginia was appointed governor for "that part of the province north of Cape Fear," or North Carolina, as the Albemarle colony was now called.

Some New England explorers came to the Cape Fear River before 1663, but when they heard of the grant to the Lords Proprietors they went away. On May 20, 1664, a settlement called **Clarendon** was made on the Cape Fear by people from Barbadoes and New England. An Indian war came on, and three years later the colony was broken up. Most of the settlers returned to Massachusetts; some of them went to Virginia.

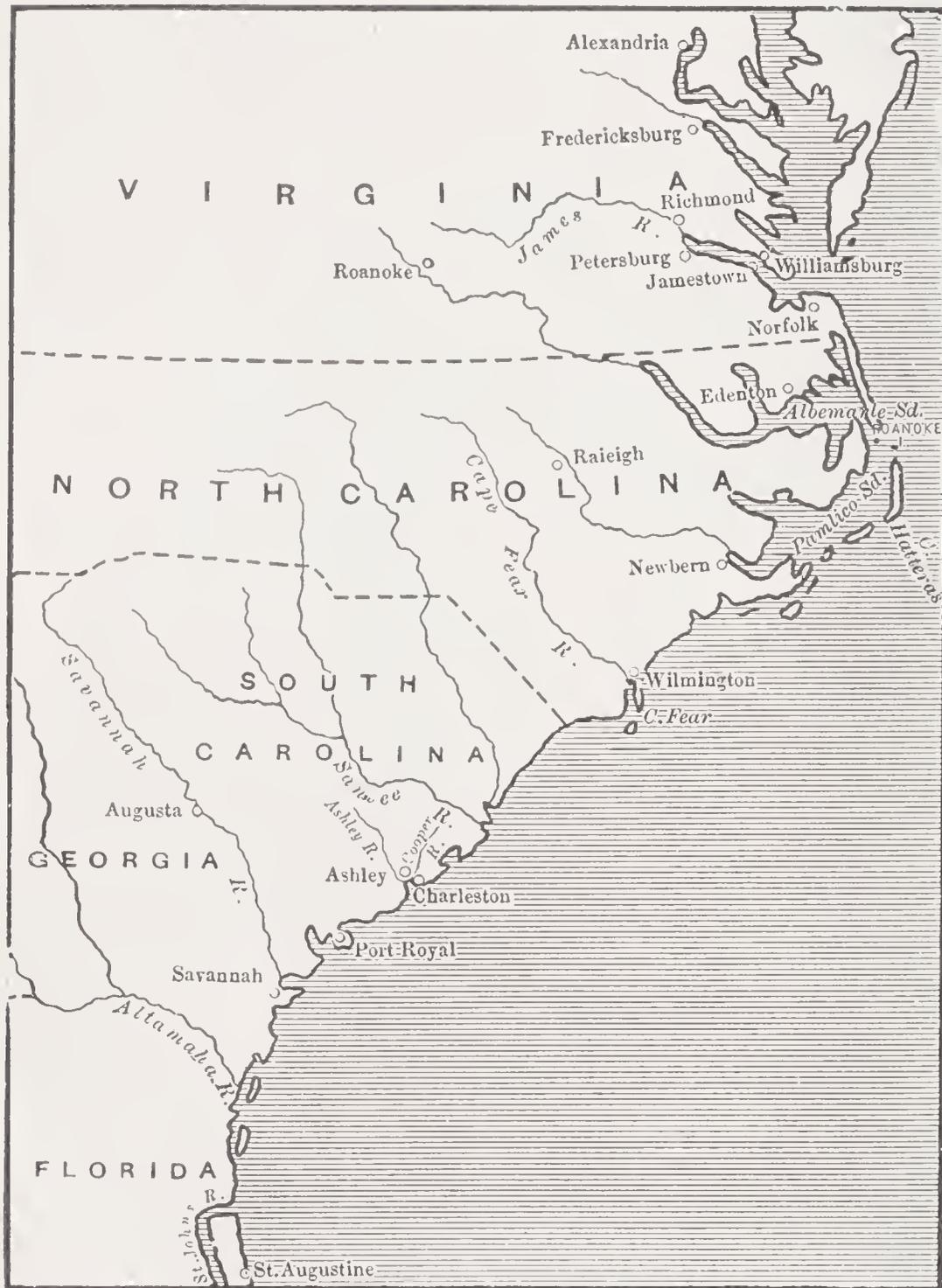
There was little wealth among the 4,000 settlers on the shore of Albemarle Sound in 1689. Most of them were probably Dissenters, but they had no ministers and did not build any churches. William Edmunson and George Fox, ministers of the Quaker faith, came to Albemarle and preached. Other Quaker ministers came afterwards, and the adherents of that faith were largely increased. In 1699, a minister of the Church of England was established in the colony, and in 1703 a church building was erected.

The planters dwelt far apart on small plantations, their highways being the streams. Ship-building was carried on. Tobacco, cattle, lumber, and turpentine were sold at the water's edge to New England sea-captains. The first town started was Bath, in 1704, but it had only a few houses. New Bern was begun in 1711. In 1722, a town was laid off on the Chowan, called Edenton. It became the seat of government, but after ten years it contained only thirty or forty houses.

North Carolina may be called almost the oldest English commonwealth in America, for she was the seat of Raleigh's colonies.

The eighteenth century brought the sturdy Scots into her rich upland regions and they helped to make North Carolina one of the most vigorous opponents of England in the days of the Revolution.

**90. The Beginnings of South Carolina. 1670-1689.**—In



THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.

1670, the third movement to settle Carolina was begun by William Sayle, who brought a company of English Puritans from the Island of Bermuda to Port Royal in the present State of South Carolina. The colonists soon turned away from this exposed situation on the coast and sailed up the Ashley River until they found a commanding highland called Albemarle Point. Here they erected

houses and gave to the settlement the name Charleston in honor of King Charles II. Spain sent a warship from St. Augustine to drive out the settlers, whom they regarded as intruders within their territory. The strength of the position of the new town, however, caused the Spaniards to return without making an attack.

Sir John Yeamans brought additional colonists and also some negro slaves from Barbadoes in 1672, and a new settlement was begun at Oyster Point, at the end of the peninsula formed by the Ashley and Cooper rivers. In the same year Yeamans was made governor. In 1674, under Governor Joseph West, the first legislature was selected by the freemen of the colony. In 1680 there were 2,500 people dwelling at Oyster Point. The name **Charleston** was given to this place, after the settlement by that name at Albemarle Point was abandoned. The colonists were English Puritans, Scotch Presbyterians, French Huguenots and German Lutherans. Some Scotch settlers began to build homes at Port Royal in 1683, but the Spaniards came up from St. Augustine and destroyed their village. In 1691, the colony at Charleston was placed under the control of Governor Philip Ludwell and began to receive the title of South Carolina.

Most of the 3,000 inhabitants of South Carolina in 1689 dwelt in Charleston, on the peninsula between the Ashley and Cooper rivers. A few of them were wealthy English gentlemen who owned large plantations cultivated by negro slaves. Some of these gentlemen were connected with noble families in England.<sup>1</sup> The Church of England was established by the charter of 1663.

The majority of the people, however, were Dissenters, among them being many English Puritans. French Huguenots were



THE EARL OF SHAFTESBURY.

<sup>1</sup> They were all characterized by hospitality and by a gracious, courtly manner. Handsome mansions with broad porches commanded a fine view of the waters of the rivers and of the Bay. The water-oak was planted to form long avenues, and in the springtime the jasmine and the rose made the air fragrant.

present in large numbers, and in 1690 they began to take possession of the country on the Santee River, north of Charleston.

**91. The End of Proprietary Government in the Carolinas.**—The people of South Carolina would not accept the constitution written by Locke and Shaftesbury for the Proprietors. They claimed and exercised the right to be governed by their own elected representatives.<sup>1</sup> The struggle against the authority of the Proprietors grew more and more bitter until the year 1719, when that authority was rejected and the people proclaimed James Moore governor of South Carolina. Two years later the king appointed a royal governor.

The two colonies, Albemarle and Charleston, were always separate and distinct. About 1690, a governor was appointed for Carolina, and he in turn appointed a deputy-governor for North Carolina. This continued until 1712, when Edward Hyde, a cousin of Queen Anne, was made governor of North Carolina. His successors were all appointed in England.

South Carolina bravely defended herself against the repeated attacks of the Spaniards and Indians. In North Carolina there was a severe struggle with the Tuscaroras, who were finally driven out of the province. In 1729, the king purchased from seven of the Proprietors their rights in Carolina. The two colonies were continued as the separate royal provinces of North and South Carolina.

**Piracy on the Atlantic Coast.**—During the early years of the eighteenth century the Atlantic coast was greatly troubled by pirates, whose principal places of refuge were in the West Indies. Captain William Kidd, of New York, was sent out in 1695 to put down the pirates that infested the Indian Ocean. He became a pirate himself, but was captured in Boston, sent to London, and there executed. In 1717, Bonnet and Worley, two pirates with their crews, took possession of the mouth of Cape Fear River in North Carolina. They were captured by Colonel Rhett and Governor Johnson, of South Carolina.

<sup>1</sup> The local government was based upon the parish system introduced from England. The vestrymen were chosen each year by all the tax-payers of the parish. The vestry had the care of the poor and looked after roads, the assessment of local taxes and the election of representatives to the colonial House of Commons.

Blackbeard, whose real name was Teach, had his refuge also in the shallow waters of the North Carolina coast. Lieutenant Maynard sailed from Virginia and slew Blackbeard and his crew in Ocracoke Inlet. Maynard sailed back home with Blackbeard's head hanging at his bowsprit.

### Questions.

1. How many times did the country of Carolina receive its name? In whose honor was it named each time? Who claimed the Carolina territory? How many grants were made of it?

2. Describe the changes that were made in the territory granted to the Proprietors of Carolina.

3. Who was John Locke? What form of government was set forth in his constitution? Why was it not put into operation in the Carolinas?

4. Describe the Albemarle settlement in Carolina. What was done by the people of Albemarle in 1679? In 1688? Describe the settlement at Clarendon. Describe the people of North Carolina in 1689.

5. Who made the first settlement on the Ashley River? Why did the Spaniards attack this settlement? Describe the town of Charleston in 1680. Describe the people of South Carolina in 1689.

6. What was the character of the local government in South Carolina? What movement took place in South Carolina in 1719? What change in government took place in both South and North Carolina in 1729?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map St. John's River, Ashley and Cooper rivers, Santee River, Cape Fear River, Chowan River, Roanoke River, Albemarle Sound, Ocracoke Inlet, Raleigh, Wilmington, Edenton, Bath, Newbern, Brunswick, Charleston.

## CHAPTER XII.

### THE SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA.

1732-1752.

**92. The Country South of the Savannah River.**—About the time that the Carolinas were made into two royal provinces, trouble began to spring up between Spain and South Carolina with reference to the boundary between Florida and Carolina.

Spain made the claim that Florida extended as far north as the Savannah River, and yet the Spaniards made no effort to colonize the country. They were seeking for gold and continued to stir up the Indians against the people of the Carolinas. In 1715, the Spaniards incited the Indians (the Yemassees, Creeks, Cherokees and Catawbias) to send 7,000 warriors against the people of South Carolina, but Governor Craven routed the invaders and forced them back into Florida. The Indians and the Spaniards kept up their warfare against the border settlers of South Carolina until Oglethorpe planted the colony of Georgia, which served as a barrier to keep them out of the Carolinas.

**93. Oglethorpe and the Georgia Charter.**—James Edward Oglethorpe<sup>1</sup> spent his early years in the English army. When he became a member of the British House of Commons (1722), he began to look more closely into the condition of that large number of unfortunate Englishmen who were confined in prison because they could not pay their debts. The misfortune of poverty alone was at that time sending four thousand men each year into the jails of England. Oglethorpe determined to plant in the country south of Carolina a colony composed in large part of these honest, poor men. A company was incorporated in June, 1732, under the title, “The Trustees for Establishing the Colony of Georgia in America.” The king granted to these Trustees the territory lying between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers, and extending due west from their headwaters to the “South Seas.”<sup>2</sup>

The Trustees were to have entire control of the affairs of the province for a period of twenty-one years. They began their work of administration by prohibiting slavery and the importation of rum into the colonies. They then selected in England the

<sup>1</sup> Oglethorpe, the last of the founders of the thirteen colonies, was born about 1696 and lived until 1785,—long enough to see the independence of the United States established.

<sup>2</sup> In 1763, the grant of land to the people of Georgia was greatly enlarged to embrace the territory west of the Savannah River between the 31st and 35th parallels.

settlers who were to be sent out to the colony. Special care was taken in this work of selection, that none but men of worthy character, who were at the same time in need of assistance, should be admitted into the colony of Georgia.

**94. The Founding of Savannah. 1733.**—In the fall of 1732, Oglethorpe himself led out the first company of emigrants in the good ship *Anne*. These numbered one hundred and twenty, and among them were mechanics, farmers, bricklayers and car-



Copyright, 1901, by the Detroit Photographic Company.

THE RIVER AT SAVANNAH, AS IT APPEARS TO-DAY.

penters. On the 12th of February, 1733, they went ashore at Yamacraw Bluff, a high bank overlooking the Savannah River, eighteen miles from the mouth of that stream. The first act of Oglethorpe and his people, after landing, was to offer worship unto God. Four large tents were pitched upon the bluff and this was the beginning of the city of Savannah. The settlers found the soil covered with a heavy growth of pine trees, oaks and magnolias, and the yellow jasmine filled the air with fragrance. The trees were cut away, cabins were built, fields were planted, and a fort was established with guns arranged to command the

river. Beneath four great pine trees, Oglethorpe pitched a tent for himself and there he continued to dwell during the first year of his colony of Georgia.

**95. Treaties with the Indians.**—Oglethorpe made a treaty of peace and friendship with a confederacy of Indians, consisting of about eight separate tribes of the Maskoki race. He

secured from them, by this treaty, the title to the soil of Georgia as far south as the St. John's River. A few guns and other articles were sent by the Trustees every year as gifts to the Indians, and the friendship of the red men was thus retained. A second settlement was made by Oglethorpe, eighteen miles from this first settlement at Savannah. The new town, called Fort Argyle, was in the heart of the Indian country, on the Great Ogeechee River. Oglethorpe also took measures to have the Christian faith taught to the Indians by missionaries from England.

In 1734, Oglethorpe took the In-

dian chief Tomochichi and several other Indian warriors upon a friendly visit to London. Tomochichi was then about ninety years of age, but tall and strong. He gave to King George II. a bunch of eagle feathers "as a sign of everlasting peace" between the English people and the Indians.



*James Oglethorpe*

**The Wesleys.**—In 1736, when Oglethorpe came again from London to Georgia, he brought with him John Wesley, as missionary to the Indians. Charles Wesley, his brother, came as Oglethorpe's secretary. John Wesley preached to the colonists and to the Indians, and his own religious faith, he said, was made stronger by the piety and courage which he observed in

some of the settlers in Georgia. After his return to England, John Wesley became the founder of the Methodist Episcopal Church.

**96. Growth of the Colony.**—Under the protection and favor of the Indians, the colony of Georgia grew rapidly along the coast and up the Savannah River. Upon the same ship that carried the Wesleys to Savannah, in 1736, Oglethorpe brought a large company of German and English colonists. German colonists known as Salzburgers and Moravians settled upon the upper Savannah. Scotch Highlanders built New Inverness upon the Altamaha. **Augusta** was laid out on the upper Savannah in 1735, and soon became the most important trading post in the far South. Frederica was built, chiefly by German Protestants, as a military outpost near one of the mouths of the Altamaha. In 1752, a company of Puritans from New England established homes in that part of Georgia now known as Liberty County.

**97. Trouble with Spain. 1739-1742.**—The Spaniards made many threats to destroy the colonists on the Savannah. Finally, in 1739, England declared war against Spain and sent troops to protect Georgia. Oglethorpe, as commander of the royal forces, led an army of 2,000 men to attack the Spanish stronghold of St. Augustine. He failed, however, to capture the place. In 1742, he drove off a large Spanish fleet and army from an assault against his colony, and thus, by his courage and skill, saved from Spain the two provinces of Georgia and South Carolina. In 1763, Spain gave Florida to England and the St. John's River was made the southern boundary of Georgia.

**98. Whitefield in Georgia. 1738-1751.**—George Whitefield, the great Methodist missionary, came to preach in Georgia in 1738. Between that time and 1751 he crossed the Atlantic Ocean six times, and traveled through the colonies from Georgia to Massachusetts, preaching the Gospel everywhere with great effect. His teaching influenced all the churches in America.

Chiefly through the efforts of Whitefield and James Habersham, negro slavery was introduced into Oglethorpe's colony. The charter forbade the employment of slaves, but Whitefield

declared that the transportation of the African from his home of barbarism to a Christian land, where he could be humanely treated and required to perform his share of toil common to the lot of humanity, was advantageous. Habersham asserted that the colony could not prosper without slave-labor, since white servants could not withstand the malaria of the swamps.

Whitefield founded an orphan asylum near Savannah in the year 1741. In order to secure money for the erection of buildings, he returned to England and preached to great assemblies in the open air. He brought back to Georgia gifts of more than five thousand dollars. For the purpose of raising money for the support of the asylum, Whitefield bought a plantation in South Carolina (1747), collected a large number of slaves upon it, and gave the profits from the farm to his orphans' home, which he called the House of Mercy.

**99. Georgia as a Royal Province. 1752.**—About the year 1741, the Trustees divided Georgia into two counties, Savannah and Frederica. William Stephens was appointed governor of the county of Savannah, which included all territory north of the town of Darien. In 1743, Stephens was made governor of the entire colony, but the control of affairs was still in the hands of the Trustees. In 1752, the Trustees surrendered their charter, and Georgia passed at once under the direct control of the king of England, as a royal province. John Reynolds was the first royal governor.

On the 7th of January, 1755, the first legislative assembly of Georgia, composed of representatives elected by the people, began to make laws for the colony. The white population numbered only about twenty-three hundred and there were one thousand negro slaves. The rule of Governor Reynolds was not satisfactory and the people of Georgia had him removed from office. Henry Ellis was the second governor of the province (1757). During his administration, Georgia was divided into eight parishes, for purposes of local government. The Church of England was established and a tax was levied for its support. Laws were passed to compel the observance of Sunday and attendance at church in each of the parishes. In 1760, the population of

Georgia was 6,000 white people, with 3,500 slaves. The colony owned forty-two trading vessels and sent out large quantities of rice, indigo, tar and turpentine.

The third and last royal governor of Georgia, James Wright, began his administration in 1760. He met delegates from five tribes of Indians and made treaties of peace at Augusta, just before the beginning of the quarrel between Great Britain and her colonies.

### Questions.

1. Tell of the country south of the Carolinas and the troubles there.
2. What led Oglethorpe to found the colony of Georgia? To what extent was an increase made in the territory of Georgia in 1763? What power was given to the Trustees of Georgia? What kind of people were selected as the first settlers?
3. Describe the founding of Savannah.
4. What relations with the Indians were established by Oglethorpe?
5. Describe the visit of Tomochichi, the Indian chieftain, to London. Tell of the work of the Wesleys.
6. What European races came to Georgia? Give the names of the towns built by these races.
7. Describe Oglethorpe's war with the Spaniards.
8. When and where, in America, did George Whitefield preach the Gospel? When and why was negro slavery introduced into Georgia? What was Whitefield's opinion with reference to African slavery? How did he make use of slave labor to support his orphans' home?
9. When and how did Georgia become a royal province? What changes in the form of local government were made in Georgia during the administration of Governor Ellis? Describe the state of affairs in Georgia in 1760.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the Savannah River, the Altamaha River, the Ogeechee River, St. John's River, Savannah, Darien, Augusta, Frederica, New Inverness, St. Augustine.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## FRENCH SETTLEMENTS IN NORTH AMERICA.

**100. The French in Canada.**—In the course of our story thus far, we have had glimpses of French fishermen at Cape Breton near the banks of Newfoundland (1504), of Verrazano's French fleet making a voyage along the Atlantic coast (1524), and of Jacques Cartier's exploration of the St. Lawrence (1534–1536). We have seen, also, the failure of the Huguenots to plant a French colony in Florida and in the present State of South Carolina (1562–1565).

A settlement was made by French colonists at Port Royal near the Bay of Fundy in the year 1604. The country thus claimed by the French, now called Nova Scotia, was at first given the name of Acadia.

In 1608, **Champlain**<sup>1</sup> began to build a trading-post at Quebec, which continued to be his home as governor of Canada until 1635. Champlain made a journey into the region south of Quebec, and there discovered the beautiful body of water which is still called, in his honor, Lake Champlain. This discovery took place in the same year that the Dutch ship *Half-Moon* entered the Hudson River (1609). Champlain was also the first explorer to sail over the waters of Lakes Ontario and Huron.

**101. The French in the Lake Country.**—In 1634, the year before Champlain's death, **Jean Nicolet** ascended the Great Lakes until he found his canoes checked by the rapids called

<sup>1</sup> Samuel de Champlain was a man of piety and of noble spirit. From 1604 to 1635 he was the chief figure among the French explorers and fur-traders in North America. He made a voyage down the coast from Port Royal as far as Plymouth in the present State of Massachusetts, but these shores did not seem suitable for a French colony.

Champlain sought the friendship of the Algonquin Indians of the St. Lawrence Valley, and in 1609 aided them in a war against the Iroquois. The assistance of the French enabled the Algonquins to defeat the Iroquois, and the latter never failed afterwards to show their hatred towards Frenchmen.

Sault Ste. Marie (Sō Sānt Mä-rē'), at the entrance to Lake Superior, in what is now the State of Michigan. At that time there were only some sixty Frenchmen in Canada—traders and Jesuit priests. Several French trading-posts were afterwards planted in the Wisconsin country south of Lake Superior. In the presence of a company of traders and Indians at the Sault, in 1671, a Frenchman, St. Luson, claimed for his king a vast region in North America to which he gave the name **New France**. He meant this to include all the country whose streams flow into the St. Lawrence and the Lakes.<sup>1</sup>

**102. The French on the Upper Mississippi.**—Jesuit priests came in large numbers from France to aid the French fur-traders in gaining control of Canada and the country to the westward. These priests were brave and patient in their long-continued efforts to teach the Gospel to the Indians. In 1672, when Count Frontenac became governor of Canada, he sent **Father Marquette**, a Jesuit priest, and **Joliet**, a French fur-trader, to



THE CHEVALIER DE LA SALLE.

seek their way into the country west of the Lakes. These two bold men entered Green Bay, at the northern end of Lake Michigan, paddled their two canoes up the Fox River, dragged them a short distance across the land and floated down the Wisconsin River into the Mississippi (1673). They descended the Mississippi as far as the mouth of the Arkansas, made their way back up the Illinois and crossed the Chicago portage into Lake Michigan. They had found that the headwaters of the Wisconsin and of the Illinois are almost in touch with Lake Michigan.

<sup>1</sup> The English put forth a claim to this region by chartering the Hudson Bay Company in 1670. They asserted that the fur-trade in the Hudson Bay country must remain under their control.

In 1680 **Father Hennepin**, another French priest, went down the Illinois to its mouth. He then pushed his way up the Mississippi beyond the location of the present city of St. Paul, until he reached a cataract which he named the Falls of St. Anthony. In 1695 a French settlement was made at Kaskaskia, in the present State of Illinois. Detroit was founded in 1701, and Vincennes, the oldest town in Indiana, was established in 1702.

**103. The French in Louisiana.**—The greatest of all the French explorers of this early period was **La Salle**, a French officer in command of Fort Frontenac on Lake Ontario. In the year 1681, with three canoes, his party floated down the Illinois River into the Mississippi, and thence down that great river. They reached its mouth on the 9th of April, 1682. La Salle set up a wooden column at the edge of the river, and proclaimed Louis XIV. of France as ruler over the entire country drained by the Mississippi and its tributaries. To all this vast region, the chief part of the continent of North America, extending from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains, La Salle gave the name Louisiana, in honor of his sovereign, Louis XIV.

La Salle was quick to see the value of the vast empire in which he found himself. He was made the first governor of Louisiana, and at once brought out from France a company of 250 colonists. He expected to establish them on the lower Mississippi, but his vessels sailed past the mouth of the river and entered Matagorda Bay, on the coast of Texas. La Salle went ashore and built Fort St. Louis in the year 1686. One year later (1687) he was murdered by two members of his own party, and Fort St. Louis, the first colony founded in the present State of Texas, was abandoned by the French settlers.

In the year 1699, La Salle's plan was carried to success by a French Canadian named **Iberville**, who brought his ships to anchor in Biloxi Bay, which lies east of the mouths of the Mississippi. He gave their names to Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain, and then made a settlement at Biloxi on the coast of the present State of Mississippi.

In the year 1717, Louisiana was given to a commercial organization in France, called the Mississippi Company. This Company

sent out colonists under Iberville's brother, **Bienville**, who cleared away the wild canebrakes on the eastern bank of the Mississippi, at a point where a curve in the river forms a great crescent. He there laid out **New Orleans**, the "Crescent City," in 1718. The permanent settlers of New Orleans and of the adjacent regions of Louisiana were French gentlemen, artisans, tradesmen, lawyers and physicians. These were of high character and of great



*From the painting by Gaudin in the Versailles Gallery.*

THE FRENCH FLEET ON THE LOUISIANA COAST.

energy, and from them have sprung many of the influential people of the Louisiana of to-day.

**104. North America at the Close of the Period of Colonization. 1689.**—The story of the planting of colonies in North America has brought us from the Atlantic coast to the great valley of the West. We have passed over a period of more than one hundred years in the history of our country. At this time (1689) the French were in possession of the Mississippi and of the St. Lawrence, the two gateways to the heart of the continent. The Spanish continued to hold Florida, and they were also making

the claim that the Gulf of Mexico was Spain's own sea, into which other countries must not steer their ships. The English colonies were hemmed in between the Alleghany Mountains and the Atlantic Ocean. We must now enter upon that part of our story which runs from the year 1689 to 1763, a period of seventy-four years. Our eyes must rest in one glance upon the whole of that portion of North America lying east of the Mississippi River. We shall not be able to follow the life and the work of many individual men. But we shall attempt to watch the movements of two great bodies of American colonists, the French and the English, as they engage in a deadly struggle for the possession of the Ohio and Mississippi valleys.

### Questions.

1. Mention the early attempts made by the French to establish a colony in North America. Describe the explorations made by Champlain. Why did the Iroquois Indians become the enemies of the French?

2. Describe the advance of the French into the region of the Lakes. What was included in New France? When and by whom was this territory claimed for the king of France?

3. How did Joliet and Marquette reach the upper Mississippi? To what point did they descend the Mississippi? Describe the journey of Hennepin toward the source of the Mississippi.

4. Who was La Salle? What journey did he make in 1681? How did La Salle reach the mouth of the Mississippi? To what region did he give the name Louisiana? What right to the ownership of all this region was held by France? Tell of La Salle's colony of St. Louis in Texas. Tell of the founding of Biloxi and New Orleans.

5. What were the American possessions of the French in 1689? Of the Spaniards? Of the English? What struggle is next to be considered?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the St. Lawrence River, Cape Breton, Bay of Fundy, Nova Scotia, Port Royal, Plymouth, Quebec, Montreal, Lakes Champlain, Ontario, Erie, Huron, Superior and Michigan, Hudson Bay, Green Bay, Niagara River, Fox River, Wisconsin River, Illinois River, Miami River, Ohio River, Arkansas River, Mississippi River,

Falls of St. Anthony, city of St. Paul, Chicago, Detroit, Vincennes, Kaskaskia, Matagorda Bay, Mobile Bay, Biloxi Bay, Biloxi, Mobile, New Orleans.

PART II. PERIOD OF COLONIZATION.

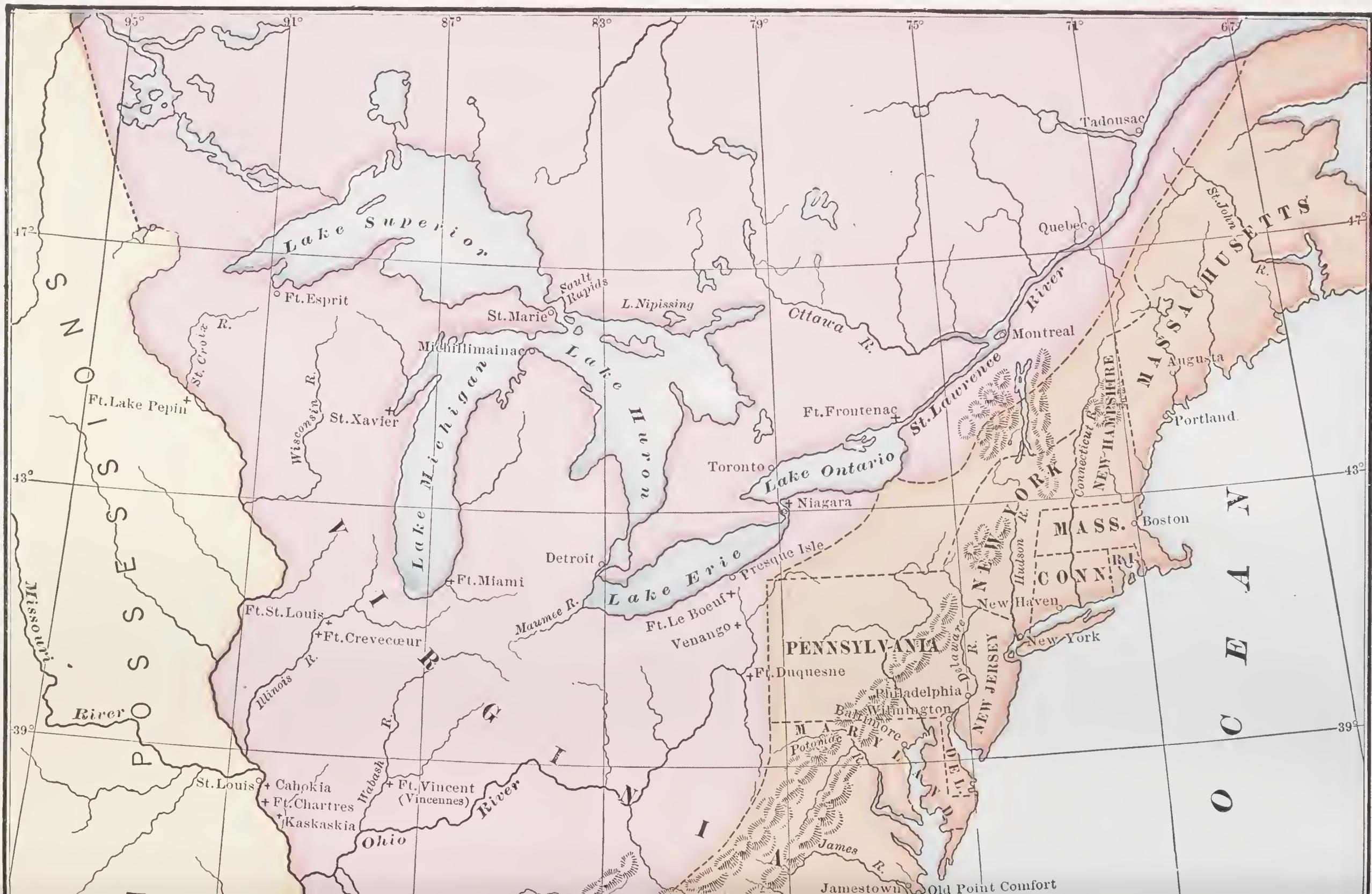
TOPICAL REVIEW.

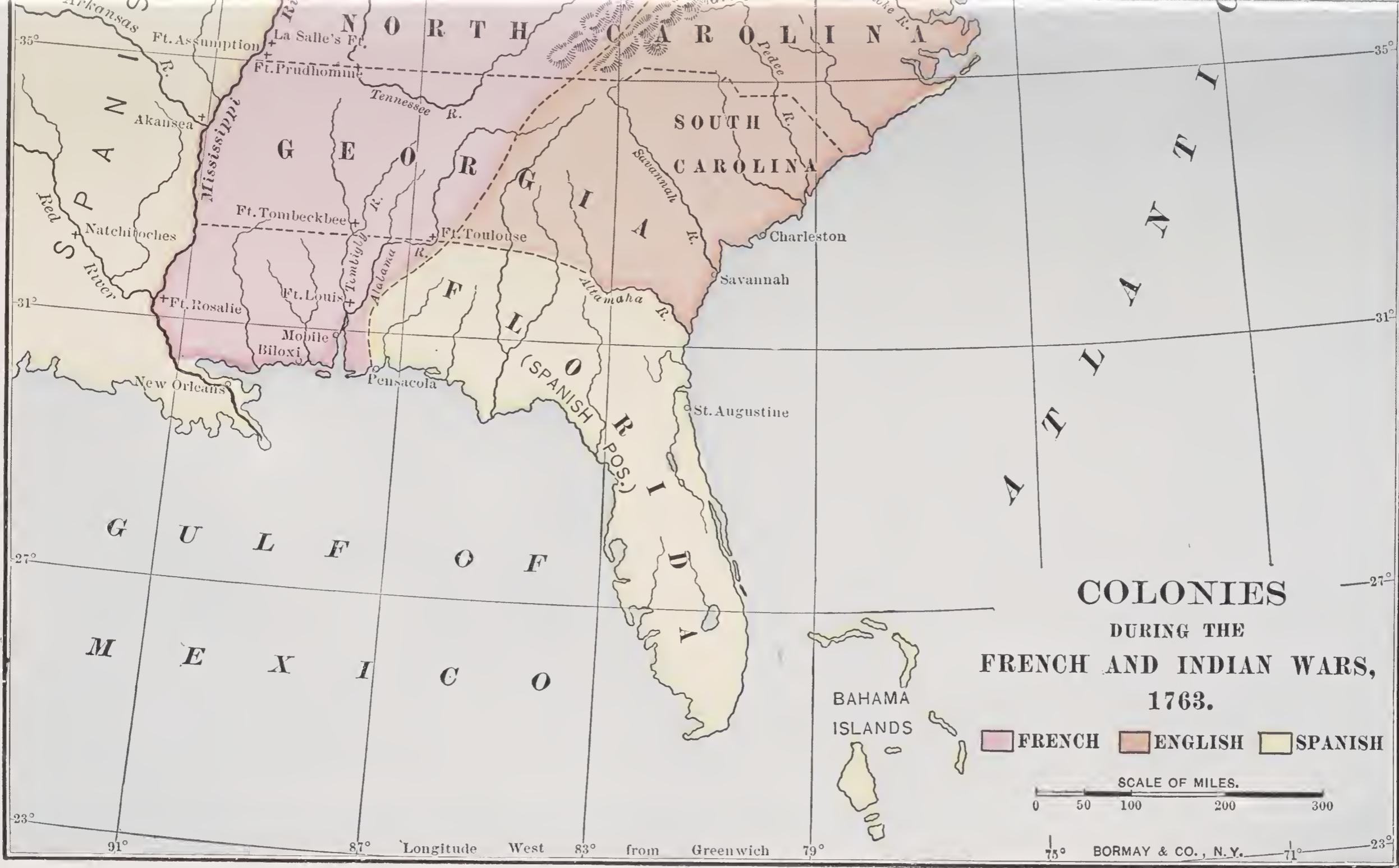
	SECTION
1. The First Plan for an English State in America . . . . .	30
2. Royal Land Patents granted to English Commercial Companies . . . . .	31
3. Founding of Virginia, the First Permanent English Colony in America . . . . .	32-36
4. The First Legislative Assembly in America . . . . .	37
5. White Servants and African Slaves . . . . .	38
6. The First Royal Province in America . . . . .	39, 40
7. Governor Berkeley in Virginia . . . . .	41-43
8. Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia . . . . .	44
9. The College of William and Mary . . . . .	45
10. The Roman Catholics and Religious Toleration in Maryland . . . . .	46, 47, 53
11. Maryland, the First Proprietary Province in America . . . . .	48-52
12. Struggles in Maryland with Reference to Religion and Territory . . . . .	54-55
13. Early Attempts to plant Colonies in New England . . . . .	56
14. The Pilgrims and the Plymouth Colony . . . . .	57-60
15. Colony of Massachusetts Bay . . . . .	61-63
16. Roger Williams and Religious Toleration in Rhode Island . . . . .	64-65
17. The Provinces of New Hampshire and Maine . . . . .	66
18. Settlements in the Connecticut Valley . . . . .	67
19. The Written Constitution of Connecticut . . . . .	67
20. New Haven . . . . .	68
21. Harvard College . . . . .	69
22. The New England Confederacy . . . . .	70
23. The Quakers in New England . . . . .	71
24. The Indians of New England . . . . .	72
25. New England under Charles II. and James II. . . . .	73, 74
26. Establishment of New Netherland by the Dutch . . . . .	75-77
27. Establishment of New Sweden by the Swedes . . . . .	78
28. The English in New York . . . . .	79-81
29. The Founding of New Jersey . . . . .	82
30. The Founding of Pennsylvania . . . . .	83-85
31. The Beginning of the Colony of North Carolina . . . . .	86-89, 91

	SECTION
32. The Beginning of the Colony of South Carolina . . . . .	86-88, 90, 91
33. The Settlement of Georgia . . . . .	92-99
34. French Settlement of Canada . . . . .	100
35. The French in the Lake Country . . . . .	101
36. The French on the Upper Mississippi . . . . .	102
37. The French in Louisiana . . . . .	103

## SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND.

Elizabeth . . . . .	1558-1603
James I. . . . .	1603-1625
Charles I. . . . .	1625-1649
Commonwealth (Cromwell) . . . . .	1649-1660
Charles II. . . . .	1660-1685
James II. . . . .	1685-1689





NORTH CAROLINA  
 SOUTH CAROLINA  
 GEORGIA  
 FLORIDA  
 (SPANISH POS.)  
 FLORIDA  
 SPANISH POS.  
 MISSISSIPPI  
 TENNESSEE R.  
 SAVANNAH R.  
 ALABAMA R.  
 ATLANTA R.  
 RED RIVER  
 AKANSEA  
 NATCHITOCHE  
 FT. ASSUMPTION  
 LA SALLE'S FT.  
 FT. PRUDHOMME  
 FT. TOMBECKBEE  
 FT. TOULOUSE  
 FT. ROSALIE  
 FT. LOUIS  
 MOBILE  
 BILOXI  
 NEW ORLEANS  
 PENSACOLA  
 ST. AUGUSTINE  
 CHARLESTON  
 SAVANNAH  
 ATLANTA

GULF OF MEXICO  
 ATLANTIC OCEAN

35°  
 31°  
 27°  
 23°  
 91° Longitude West 87° from Greenwich 83° 79°

## PART III.

# THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH IN NORTH AMERICA.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### GROWTH OF THE ENGLISH COLONIES.

1689-1763.

**105. The Revolution in England. 1688, 1689.**—A great revolution took place in England in 1688–1689. The reason for the change in government was that King James II. did not regard the laws passed by Parliament concerning the Roman Catholic Church. Therefore the English people forced James II. to flee into France and invited William of Orange, President of the Dutch Republic, and his wife, Mary, to become king and queen. It was also enacted that, henceforth, the sovereigns of England must be Protestants.

The election of William of Orange as king was the signal for a renewal of war between France and England. The two great prizes for which these kingdoms began to contend were North America and India. A large number of settlers from Europe now began to enter the English colonies, and the latter were thus made strong for the battle against the French.

**106. Emigration of the Huguenots.**—In 1685 King Louis XIV. revoked an old law of France known as the Edict of Nantes. This act of revocation on the part of Louis meant that the Huguenots, or French Protestants, would no longer have the right to worship in his kingdom. Half a million of them fled

from France. These exiles were skilled in the manufacture of paper, leather, lace, silk-stuffs, woolens and fine linen. Many of them were ship-masters and soldiers, and among them were seven hundred ministers of the Gospel. Many of the Huguenots continued their flight from France directly across the Atlantic, to find refuge in Massachusetts, New York, South Carolina and Virginia.

**107. Emigration of the Germans.**—The Germans began to enter Pennsylvania in 1684. They gave the name of German-



A COLONIAL HOME AT GERMANTOWN.

town to their settlement near Philadelphia. In 1709 five thousand Germans entered the Mohawk Valley in western New York. In 1710 some Swiss and German families began to build the town of New Berne in North Carolina. In 1714–1717

Governor Spotswood located some German families near his furnace at Germanna, on the Rapidan River in Virginia, and set them to making wine. Other Germans came from New York into Pennsylvania, and thence into Maryland and Virginia. Nearly all of these early German settlers were Protestants.

The year 1734 brought a company of Salzburger Germans into the colony of Georgia. Afterwards, another German sect called United Brethren, or Moravians, settled in Georgia, and in North Carolina at Salem, and in Pennsylvania at Bethlehem.

**108. Emigration of the Scots.**—From 1713 to 1775 many Scots established themselves in the highland country that formed

the western frontier of the English colonies. These Scots are usually called Scotch-Irish for the reason that most of them dwelt for a long period in the province of Ulster in northern Ireland before they sailed to North America.

In the year 1713 the English Parliament passed severe laws against the Scotch Presbyterians of northern Ireland. Many of them came from Ireland to New England and began to build Worcester in Massachusetts and Londonderry in New Hampshire. Large numbers of the Scots entered the colony of Pennsylvania, and then moved southward into Maryland, Virginia and North Carolina. Another stream of Scots found its way into Charleston Harbor and moved thence westward into the highlands of South Carolina and Georgia. Scotch Highlanders came to the Cape Fear River, North Carolina, in 1736. They continued to arrive until 1775. Among them was the famous Flora Macdonald.

In 1763 the Scots held complete possession of the table-lands and mountains of the Appalachian or Alleghany system, extending from New Jersey to Georgia. As many as five hundred thousand of them, and probably more, dwelt in the colonies at the beginning of the war of the Revolution in 1775.

**109. Development of the Colonial Legislatures. 1689-1763.**—From 1689 to 1763 a distinct system of government grew up in the American colonies. The people of each colony managed their own home affairs, although all of the colonists acknowledged themselves as subjects of the English crown. The people of Connecticut and of Rhode Island selected their own governors. In Pennsylvania, Delaware and Maryland, the governor was appointed by the Proprietors. In the other colonies, known as royal provinces, the governor was appointed directly by the king. In every colony, however, the governor was the representative of the king. As such he (1) commanded the military forces of the colony, (2) appointed all officers and judges, (3) made grants of land, (4) bestowed pardons, and (5) summoned the legislative assemblies and exercised the veto over their enactments.

The general oversight of the colonies was not under the personal management of the king. This work was assigned to a Board of Trade and Plantations, first appointed by King William III. in 1696. These Lords of Trade, as they were usually called, required annual reports from the colonial governors.



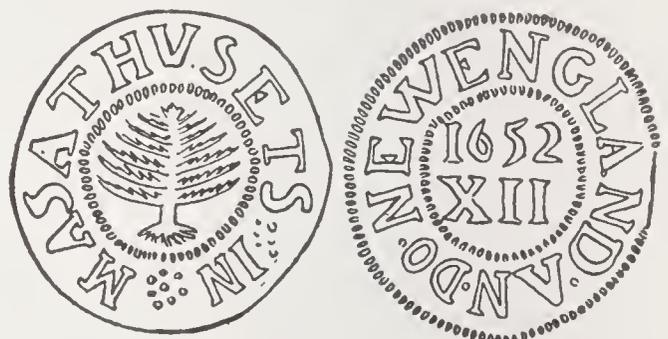
KING WILLIAM III.

The most important part of each colonial government was the local assembly made up of representatives chosen by the people. Each colonial assembly managed the army, navy and currency of the colony; levied tariff duties; laid an internal tax; built lighthouses; punished piracy and taxed ships; paid bounties for

manufactures and for the scalps of wolves and bears; and made treaties with the Indians and with other colonies.

Questions connected with the governors' salaries stirred up frequent quarrels between governors and legislatures. Burnett in Massachusetts, Cornbury in New York and Sharpe in Maryland engaged in prolonged warfare with the lawmakers. The legislatures won each battle and held the governors in subjection.

**110. English Trade and Navigation Laws. 1702-1732.**—In the reign of Queen Anne (1702-14) the British Parliament established a postal service in the colonies and fixed the rates of postage. Parliament also passed a law providing that colonial goods should be carried only in English or colonial ships manned by English seamen; tobacco, cotton, sugar, indigo, copper ore and furs must be exported only to England; lumber, salt, fish, and flour might go directly to other foreign



A PINE-TREE SHILLING.

countries, but rice destined for ports in northern Europe must first be landed in England. The manufacture of iron and of hats in the colonies was prohibited. Wool, or any manufactured article, could not be exported at all, even from one colony to another. The Sugar Act of 1732 laid a heavy tax upon the importation of sugar and molasses from the Dutch and French West Indies into any port in the colonies. Most of these laws were not enforced, and the Sugar Act was entirely disregarded. It was estimated that, even in that early period, England lost \$500,000 each year through the evasion of her trade laws by the colonies north of Delaware Bay.

**111. The English Colonists Enter the Mississippi Basin.**—As the colonists moved westward from the Atlantic coast, certain gaps were found in the Alleghany range of mountains. The fur-traders of Carolina went through these mountain passes to visit the Indians of Tennessee, while Pennsylvania's traders passed from the upper Susquehanna to the headwaters of the Ohio. In 1716 Governor Spotswood, of Virginia, led a company of explorers from Chesapeake Bay across the Blue Ridge into the Valley of Virginia. To preserve the memory of this first journey into the mountain country, Spotswood gave to each member of the company a small horseshoe made of gold. They were, therefore, called the Knights of the Golden Horseshoe. Spotswood laid claim to all the lands westward as far as the Mississippi, and northward as far as the Lakes, in the name of King George I. He supposed that Lake Erie was only five days' march from the Valley of Virginia, and urged that settlers should be led through the Potomac gap to cut the French military line extending from Canada to Louisiana.

In 1722 Governor Spotswood and Governor Keith of Pennsylvania made an agreement with the Iroquois Indians that the latter should remain on the western slope of the Alleghanies. New England rum was carried across the mountains and given to the Indians in exchange for furs. Brandy was the chief article of exchange offered to the red men by the French traders.

England and France thus began to use liquors as weapons in the battle to win the favor of the Indians.

In May, 1749, King George II. granted to the **Ohio Company** 200,000 acres of land on the south side of the Ohio River, between the Kanawha and Monongahela rivers. The president of the company was Thomas Lee of the Virginia Council, and Lawrence and Augustine Washington became prominent members. In June, 1749, the **Loyal Land Company** secured a grant for 800,000 acres in Virginia, west of the mountains and north of the Carolina line. This company sent an expedition through the Cumberland Gap (1750) under Dr. Thomas Walker, of Virginia. His log cabin on the Cumberland River was the first house built in Kentucky. Other explorers made visits to the Ohio country until the French became alarmed. The French advanced from the Lakes into the Ohio Valley, planting leaden plates as boundary marks, and claiming the entire region for the king of France.

### Questions.

1. Why was King James II. forced to leave England? What was the signal for the outbreak of war between France and England in 1689?

2. Who were the Huguenots? Why did they flee from France after 1685? In which of the American colonies did they seek homes?

3. Tell in what colonies the Germans settled.

4. Who were the Scotch-Irish? Tell where they settled.

5. Explain the form of government in each one of the thirteen colonies. How much power was held by the governor of the colony? Who were the Lords of Trade? What was the power and what was the work of the colonial legislature? What question often arose between the colonial legislature and the colonial governor?

6. Tell about the laws passed by the British Parliament for the regulation of colonial commerce. What was the Sugar Act of 1732?

7. Who were the Knights of the Golden Horseshoe? How much territory north of the Ohio River was claimed by Governor Spotswood of Virginia? What treaty was made with the Indians in 1722? What was the Ohio Company? The Loyal Land Company? When and by whom was the first house built in Kentucky?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map France, Switzerland, Holland, Germany, England, Scotland, Ireland, the states of the Union on the Atlantic coast, the Alleghany Mountains, the Mohawk Valley, the Rapidan River (Va.), Delaware River, Charleston Harbor, the Potomac River, the Susquehanna River, Shenandoah River, Ohio River, Kanawha River, Cumberland River, Mississippi Valley.

## CHAPTER XV.

### FRANCE DRIVEN OUT OF NORTH AMERICA.

1689-1763.

**112. The Claims of France and England.**—In 1689 England claimed the entire continent of North America because of (1) Cabot's discovery, and (2) the English occupation of the Atlantic coast. France claimed the entire region west of the Alleghany Mountains by reason of (1) her exploration of the great valleys and also (2) because she held the outlets of the two great rivers, the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi. France had the advantage in position. Her king, Louis XIV., was at the height of his power, and he was ready to send a fleet to help the 10,000 Frenchmen of New France. The English colonists numbered about 200,000, but the English government left them to fight their own battles.

**113. The Claim of the Indians.**—The Indians claimed the American continent as their property. Some of the English colonists bought the soil from them; some defrauded them of it; others drove them out by force. The advance of the English meant retreat or death for the Indian. The French, on the other hand, wished to hold the Indian's country for the fur-trade. They neither felled the forests nor planted fields, and the French fort became a hunting-lodge for the Indian. The Frenchmen intermarried with the savages and adopted the Indian dress and mode of life.

The Indians were divided in their allegiance. Some of them preferred the French; others chose to aid the English. None of them were constant to either side. The large gifts of the English, perhaps, won the most helpful alliances from the red men. The Iroquois, of Central New York, for the most part remained faithful in their allegiance to the English, while nearly all of the Algonquins fought in behalf of the French.

**114. King William's War. 1689-1697.**—France began the war against the English in America. Louis XIV. made Count Frontenac governor of Canada in 1689, and ordered him



KING LOUIS XIV.

to do two things: to expel the English from the Hudson Bay country, and to conquer New York. The Iroquois Indians, however, attacked the French in Canada, besieged Montreal and roasted French captives under its walls. Frontenac made several return blows, burning houses and slaying colonists in the frontier villages of New York and New England. In return for this, Massachusetts attacked and destroyed the

French stronghold, **Port Royal**, in Acadia (1690). Frontenac kept up the reign of terror for seven years, and eight New England towns were laid waste with fire and sword. This first period of conflict between England and France, known as King William's War, was ended in 1697 by the **Treaty of Ryswick**, when Port Royal was given back to the French.

**115. Queen Anne's War. 1702-1713.**—The second colonial struggle between the French and the English, known as Queen Anne's War, began over the question whether a French prince should ascend the throne of Spain. During its progress, a combined French and Spanish fleet sailed from Cuba to attack Charleston, but the Carolinians forced it to sail away. In 1711 the Carolinians made successful war against the Tuscarora Indians and drove them out of their frontier country. The New Englanders captured Port Royal in Acadia (Nova Scotia), but

an attempt against Quebec failed. The **Treaty of Utrecht** (1713) set a limit to French territory in America, for the Hudson Bay region, Acadia and Newfoundland were yielded to the English.

**116. King George's War. 1744-1748.**—In 1744, during the reign of King George II., war broke out for the third time between France and England. This conflict is usually known in America as King George's War. **Louisburg**, on Cape Breton Island, was captured by New England troops, but in 1748 the place was restored to France. The treaty made in that year between England and France was destined to last only a short time. The rivals began to gird on their armor for the final struggle.

**117. The French Enter the Ohio Valley.**—After the close of King William's War (1697) France began to construct a chain of sixty forts, from the mouth of the Mississippi to the Lakes.<sup>1</sup> This chain was drawn to keep the English away from the Lakes.

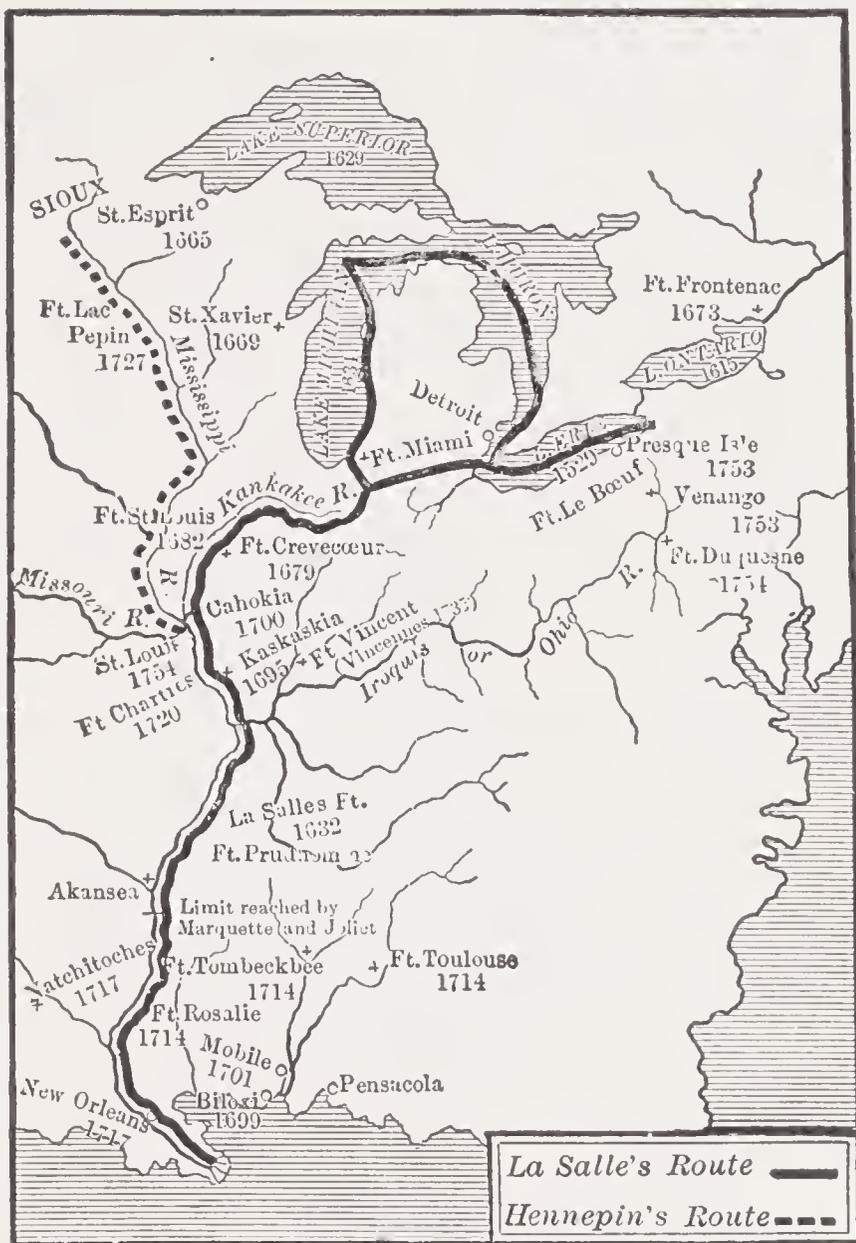
In 1749 the French determined to move their military line eastward, and Bienville was sent by the French governor of Canada to take possession of the Ohio Valley.<sup>2</sup> In 1752 the French began to build forts in the territory owned by Virginia. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia at once sent George Washington<sup>3</sup> to demand the withdrawal of these French troops.

<sup>1</sup> The first post was established at Kaskaskia in Illinois, in the year 1695. We have witnessed already the beginning of the French settlements that came next in order at Biloxi, Mississippi (1699); at Cahokia, Illinois (1700); Detroit, Michigan (1701); Vincennes, Indiana (1705); Mobile, Alabama (1706); and New Orleans (1718). Other forts were constructed before 1725. Fort Niagara was built in 1726 and Crown Point in New York in 1731.

<sup>2</sup> Sheets of tin bearing the coat of arms of France were nailed to trees at various points along the journey. Leaden plates were buried in the ground, with an inscription claiming for Louis XIV. all the lands drained by the Ohio and its tributaries.

<sup>3</sup> George Washington, son of Augustine and Mary Washington, was born on a plantation near the mouth of the Potomac River in Virginia, Feb. 22, 1732. His father died when George was eleven, and his mother superintended his education. From sixteen to twenty, Washington surveyed lands in western Virginia. At nineteen he became a major in the Virginia militia, and three years later fought in the first battle of the French and Indian War. He was

**118. Virginia Begins the French and Indian War.**—When Dinwiddie's commission was given him, Washington, at



THE CHAIN OF FRENCH FORTS.

twenty-one years of age, was adjutant of the Virginia militia. He set forth from Wills Creek (Cumberland) on the Potomac about the middle of November (1753), with seven companions. He crossed snow-clad mountains and swollen rivers to the forks of the Ohio, where the city of Pittsburg now stands. Washington selected this as the site for the Ohio Company's proposed fort. He then led his party up the Allegheny to Fort Le Boeuf, and presented Dinwiddie's demand.

When the French commandant declared that he intended to hold Fort Le Boeuf, Washington made all haste through ice and snow to Williamsburg, to carry the reply of the French governor.

over six feet tall, strong and athletic. In 1759 he married Martha Parke Custis, who owned large estates, and he inherited from his brother the fine plantation of Mt. Vernon, where he spent many years of his life. His services as commander-in-chief of the American armies during the Revolution, as president of the Constitutional Convention of 1787, and as President of the United States from 1789 to 1797, made him one of the most important figures in American history. He died at Mt. Vernon, Dec. 14, 1799.

“Of all the great men in history he was the most invariably judicious, and there is scarcely a rash word or action or judgment recorded of him. . . . He was always the same calm, wise, just and single-minded man, pursuing the course which he believed to be right, without fear or favour or fanaticism. . . . He was in the highest sense of the words a gentleman and a man of honour, who carried into public life the severest standards of private morals.” Lecky's *England*, III. 470.

Dinwiddie at once sent men to the forks of the Ohio to begin the erection of a fort, but a party of French and Indians drove them away (April, 1754). The French completed the stockade and named it Fort Duquesne (Dü-kān'), in honor of the French governor of Canada. Washington as lieutenant colonel, with seventy-five riflemen, constructed Fort Necessity at Great Meadows, in the present State of Pennsylvania, on the line of march between the headwaters of the Potomac and Fort Duquesne.

The French and Indians surrounded the fort and Washington was forced to yield, but he was allowed to march away, July 4, 1754, with flags flying and drums beating. The conflict that was known in America as the French and Indian War was thus begun by Dinwiddie and Washington.

**119. The Albany Congress. 1754.**—In June, 1754, while the Virginian forces were engaged in the struggle with the Indians in the Ohio Valley, delegates from the seven Northern colonies assembled at Albany, New York, in accordance with the request of the English Lords of Trade, to make a treaty with the Iroquois Indians. The Southern colonies did not send delegates, declaring that it was of greater importance to them to treat with the Indians on their own frontiers, who were more numerous than the Indians in New York. Benjamin Franklin, a delegate to the Congress from Pennsylvania, presented to the members a plan of Union for all the colonies, proposing the formation of a central council of forty-eight members to represent the colonies, and a president general to represent the English Crown. The plan was rejected by the colonies because it gave too much power to the president, and the English government would not accept it because of the large legislative powers given to the Colonial council.

**120. Braddock's Defeat. 1755.**—In October, 1754, the Virginia Assembly voted £20,000 for the war, and in February, 1755, the British general, Edward Braddock, arrived at Williamsburg with men and money to take charge of all military operations. In a conference held at Alexandria, Virginia, between

Braddock and some of the colonial governors, it was decided to organize four expeditions against the French. (1) New England was to send troops against the French towns in Acadia; (2) William Johnson was to lead New York militia to seize Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain; (3) Shirley of Massachusetts was to move through the Mohawk Valley and capture Niagara; (4) Braddock was to march from the Potomac across the mountains and capture Fort Duquesne.

In May, Braddock had 2,200 men at Cumberland, of whom 1,200 were colonial riflemen. Washington was an aide on Braddock's staff. In June the army took up the slow march through the forest, and on the 7th of July, at Turtle Creek, about eight miles from Fort Duquesne, Braddock was assailed by three hundred Frenchmen and six hundred Indians concealed in the woods. Braddock was slain and his army was driven from the field. Washington and his colonial riflemen saved the British regulars from complete destruction.

**121. Campaigns Against the French. 1755.**—Johnson's New York troops defeated a French force on Lake George and there built Fort William Henry: Shirley's campaign against Niagara was a failure. New England troops took possession of Acadia, and some six thousand French Acadians, who refused to take the oath of allegiance to England, were forcibly removed from their homes and distributed among the English colonies. Some of them journeyed down the Ohio Valley and found homes among their countrymen in Louisiana.<sup>1</sup> The year 1755 came to an end with the French still in possession of the Ohio and St. Lawrence valleys, and with the Indians engaged in slaughtering the people along the borders of the colonies.

**122. Two Years of Border Warfare. 1756, 1757.**—Actual fighting went on for two years in America before England openly declared war against France (May, 1756).<sup>2</sup> In America the

<sup>1</sup> Longfellow's "Evangeline" is based upon this episode.

<sup>2</sup> This was the beginning of the Seven Years' War in Europe, in which England and Prussia were arrayed against France, Austria, Saxony, Sweden and Russia.

French were led by an able general, Montcalm, who, with the assistance of the Algonquin Indians, captured Oswego. The English were at a disadvantage because their commanders, Loudon and Abercrombie, were not competent. A misunderstanding between Governor Lyttleton and the Cherokees brought the latter in savage warfare against the Carolinas. Men, women and children were murdered by the red men. Fort Loudon, built by South Carolina on the Tennessee River, was captured by the Indians, and the garrison of two hundred men slain. The colonists organized a force under Middleton, Laurens, Moultrie, Marion, Huger (Ū-jē') and Pickens, marched into the great forests of the Alleghanies, and at length broke the power of the Cherokees.



GENERAL WOLFE.

During these two years, Washington defended three hundred and fifty miles of the frontier of Virginia. The Shawnees several times marched eastward on murderous raids, and in return, Andrew Lewis, of Virginia, led some riflemen against the Shawnees on the Big Sandy River (April, 1756), and John Armstrong, with a force of Pennsylvanians, destroyed Kittanning, an Indian town on the Allegheny River (August, 1756).

The cruel strife on the frontier finally led to the tragedy of August, 1757, when Fort William Henry on Lake George was captured by Montcalm, and all of the English prisoners were murdered by the Indians who were in alliance with the French.

**123. The English Win the Ohio Valley. 1758.**—The elder William Pitt, who was Secretary of State in England and had full control of all her military affairs, devised the plan of sending Amherst and Wolfe against Louisburg in Nova Scotia, Abercrombie against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, while Forbes

was ordered to capture Fort Duquesne.<sup>1</sup> In July, 1758, Forbes marched across the Alleghanies in Pennsylvania by way of Carlisle toward the Ohio. In his army, besides the British regulars, there were twenty-seven hundred Pennsylvanians, sixteen hundred Virginians, two hundred riflemen from Maryland and about one hundred from North Carolina. Washington was made commander of Forbes's vanguard. When he led his Virginians against **Fort Duquesne**, the French set fire to the fortifications and fled. Washington entered and raised the English flag above the



THE HEIGHTS OF QUEBEC.

smoking ruins (November 25, 1758), to which the name Fort Pitt (Pittsburg) was given in honor of England's great statesman. The valley of the Ohio was thus won from France.

**124. The Conquest of Canada. 1759-1761.**—The capture of Fort Duquesne broke the spirit of the French in Canada, and no aid was sent from France to Montcalm. On the other hand, Pitt raised a large force and placed it under Amherst and Wolfe, for the purpose of gaining possession of the St. Lawrence and of the Lakes. Sir William Johnson, of New York, captured Niagara

<sup>1</sup> Amherst and Wolfe seized their fortress, but Abercrombie failed. The capture of Fort Frontenac by colonial troops gave the command of Lake Ontario to the English.

and cut off the French from the hope of retreat toward Louisiana. Amherst captured Ticonderoga, and Wolfe sailed up the St. Lawrence to find Montcalm within the strong fortress of **Quebec**. He took his ships up the river above the town, and anchored them under cover of the night (September 12, 1759). Wolfe then brought his troops in a long line of small boats to the foot of the elevation upon which Quebec stands, and they at once climbed the face of the bluff until they reached the plains of Abraham, the plateau in the rear of Quebec. The French advanced to attack the English. Wolfe himself led a charge in return and was shot down just as the French began to turn and flee. Montcalm fell mortally wounded while his troops were pouring through the gates into the town. The French fled from the city and Quebec was left in the hands of the English. Two years later (1761) the whole valley of the St. Lawrence and of the Lakes passed from the control of France.

**125. The Treaty of Paris. 1763.**—The Seven Years' War between France and England continued until the year 1763, when the Treaty of Paris blotted New France from the map of North America. France ceded to England all of Canada and all of the region east of the Mississippi, except the city of New Orleans. The territory west of the Mississippi, called Louisiana, with New Orleans, passed into the hands of Spain, who gave up Florida to England. France kept not a foot of soil on the North American continent. Two small islands off Newfoundland were assigned her as a refuge for her fishermen. England became by this treaty the chief kingdom of Europe. Her navy was supreme on the ocean, and she held possessions in India, in America, in Europe and among the islands of the sea.

### Questions.

1. Upon what did England base her claim to North America? What was the basis of the French claim?
2. What was the claim of the Indians to the land in North America? Why did some of the Indians aid the English, and some the French?

3. Who began the war between the English and the French in North America? Who was Frontenac and what was his plan of war against the English? In what way did he wage war? When and how did King William's War come to an end?

4. What was the origin of Queen Anne's War? Tell about the defeat of the Tuscarora Indians by the Carolinians.

5. What was the cause of King George's War? By whom was Louisburg captured?

6. Name the chief military posts established by the French in the Mississippi Valley and in the Lake country. In what way did the French declare their claim to the Ohio Valley?

7. Tell the story of the early training of George Washington. Describe his journey from Williamsburg to the Allegheny River in 1753. Who began the construction of Fort Duquesne? Where was it located? Why was its position important? Describe the battle at Great Meadows. What results followed this battle?

8. What was the purpose of the Albany Congress? What plan of union among the colonies was proposed? Why was this plan rejected?

9. What plan of campaign against the French was adopted in 1754? Describe Braddock's expedition and his defeat.

10. Who were the Acadians? Why were they removed from their homes? What became of them? What is the story of Evangeline as written by Longfellow?

11. Who were engaged in the Seven Years' War in Europe? Describe the struggle with the Indians in the Carolinas. Describe the massacre at Fort William Henry in 1757.

12. Describe the capture of Fort Duquesne. Why was it important?

13. Describe the capture of Quebec. What results followed it?

14. What territory did England gain in 1763? What did Spain gain? What did France lose?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the St. Lawrence River, the Mississippi, the Hudson, the Ohio, the Allegheny, the Monongahela, the Tennessee, Louisburg, Port Royal, Carthage, Santiago, Quebec, Montreal, Albany, Pittsburg, Alexandria, Crown Point, Ticonderoga, Williamsburg, Lake Champlain, Lake George.

## CHAPTER XVI.

## LIFE IN THE COLONIES IN 1763.

**126. Growth of Population. 1689-1763.**—During the period of seventy-four years from 1689 to 1763, the number of people in the English colonies increased from about 200,000 to 1,600,000.<sup>1</sup> The oldest of the thirteen colonies and also the largest in extent of territory and in population was Virginia. Georgia was the youngest colony, but her growth was rapid. The largest rate of increase in the population after the year 1689 was found in the Middle and Southern colonies, by reason of the extensive immigration of the Scots.

**127. Towns and Cities on the Atlantic Coast.**—In the year 1763, Boston, Massachusetts, contained only some 25,000 people. Providence, Rhode Island, had a population of 5,000. Hartford, Connecticut, was a mere village. New York City contained only about 18,000 people, but she had the largest trade in the colonies. Philadelphia, with 30,000 inhabitants, was the largest city on the Atlantic coast. A growing trade in wheat and flour had multiplied the number of people in Baltimore to nearly 15,000. Norfolk, with 7,000, was the only town of any considerable size in Virginia. Williamsburg contained only two hundred houses, and Richmond, the future capital of Virginia, had been in existence only since the year 1736. The North Carolina towns were small in size. As many as 15,000, however, dwelt in Charleston, South Carolina. 1,200 people made up the town of Savannah, Georgia.

Few of the towns were paved or lighted. In many places a watchman went about at night with lantern and rattle, and called out the hours and the state of the weather. Boats plied between all the seacoast towns, but traveling within each colony

<sup>1</sup> Four hundred thousand of these were negro slaves who were found in all of the thirteen colonies; some three hundred thousand in the South, and one hundred thousand in the North.

was chiefly done on horseback or by stage-coach. A stage-coach made the journey from Philadelphia to New York in three days.

**128. The Western Frontier in 1763.**—In 1763 Pensacola, Florida, and Mobile, Alabama, were occupied by French settlers. The flag of Spain floated over New Orleans. St. Louis, on the western bank of the Mississippi River, was a French village belonging to Spain, and Detroit was as yet only a group of French huts with a wooden wall around them.

The vast region lying between the Alleghany Mountains and



WESTOVER, A VIRGINIA COLONIAL HOME.

the Mississippi River was an unbroken forest inhabited by wild beasts and Indians. A wilderness occupied the site of the future city of Atlanta. There was only one log cabin in Kentucky and this stood near the Cumberland River; Pittsburg was a rude log fort. There were as yet no public roads. The traveler had to seek the way on foot or on horseback over wooded hills and through the valleys.

**129. Newspapers and Post Offices.**—In 1763 there were few newspapers in the colonies. The first newspaper established in America was the *Boston News Letter* (1704).<sup>1</sup>

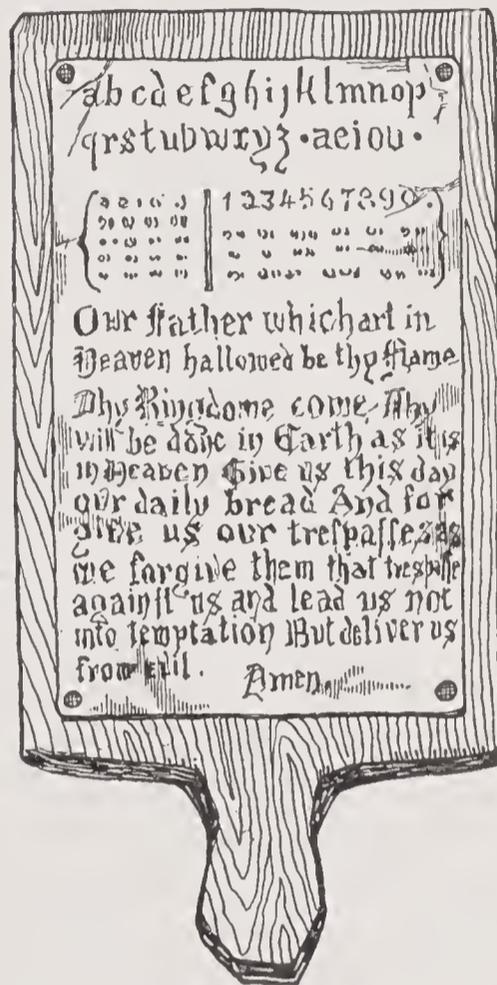
<sup>1</sup> The first newspaper in Philadelphia was printed in 1716; the first in New York, in 1725; in Maryland, 1727; in South Carolina and Rhode Island, 1732;

The first mail route was established in 1672 between New York and Boston, and the trip was made once a month. In 1729 mail was carried once a week between Philadelphia and New York. When Alexander Spotswood became the postmaster general in 1738, he arranged a regular mail from Boston to Williamsburg. The recipient had to pay a dollar an ounce upon letters which were sent from Boston only as far as New York. The mail carriers were sent on horseback, and their saddle bags were large enough to hold all the mail sent in those days.

**130. Education.**—The oldest college in the colonies was Harvard (1636). The next in order of age was William and Mary, organized in 1693.<sup>1</sup> Yale College was founded in 1700, and a charter was granted in 1701, which entrusted the guidance of the school to Congregationalist ministers. A public school system was begun in New England as early as 1647. In the schools there only the rudiments of reading, writing and ciphering were taught. In the South, public schools, in this period before the Revolution, were few in number. Instruction was given by parents, by ministers and by private tutors. Academies known as Log

in Virginia, 1736; in North Carolina and Connecticut, 1755; in New Hampshire, 1756.

<sup>1</sup>The chief purpose of the founders of Harvard and William and Mary College was to train clergymen for the churches established in their respective sections. Harvard was supported by public and private gifts. William and Mary was endowed with 20,000 acres of land and the revenue from certain special duties upon tobacco and furs. It sent a burgess to the Virginia Assembly and was allowed also to appoint the surveyor general of the colony. George Washington held this office in 1749.



A HORN BOOK.

The horn book, used in teaching reading, was a sheet of paper covered with transparent horn and framed. On it were printed the alphabet, the digits and the Lord's Prayer.

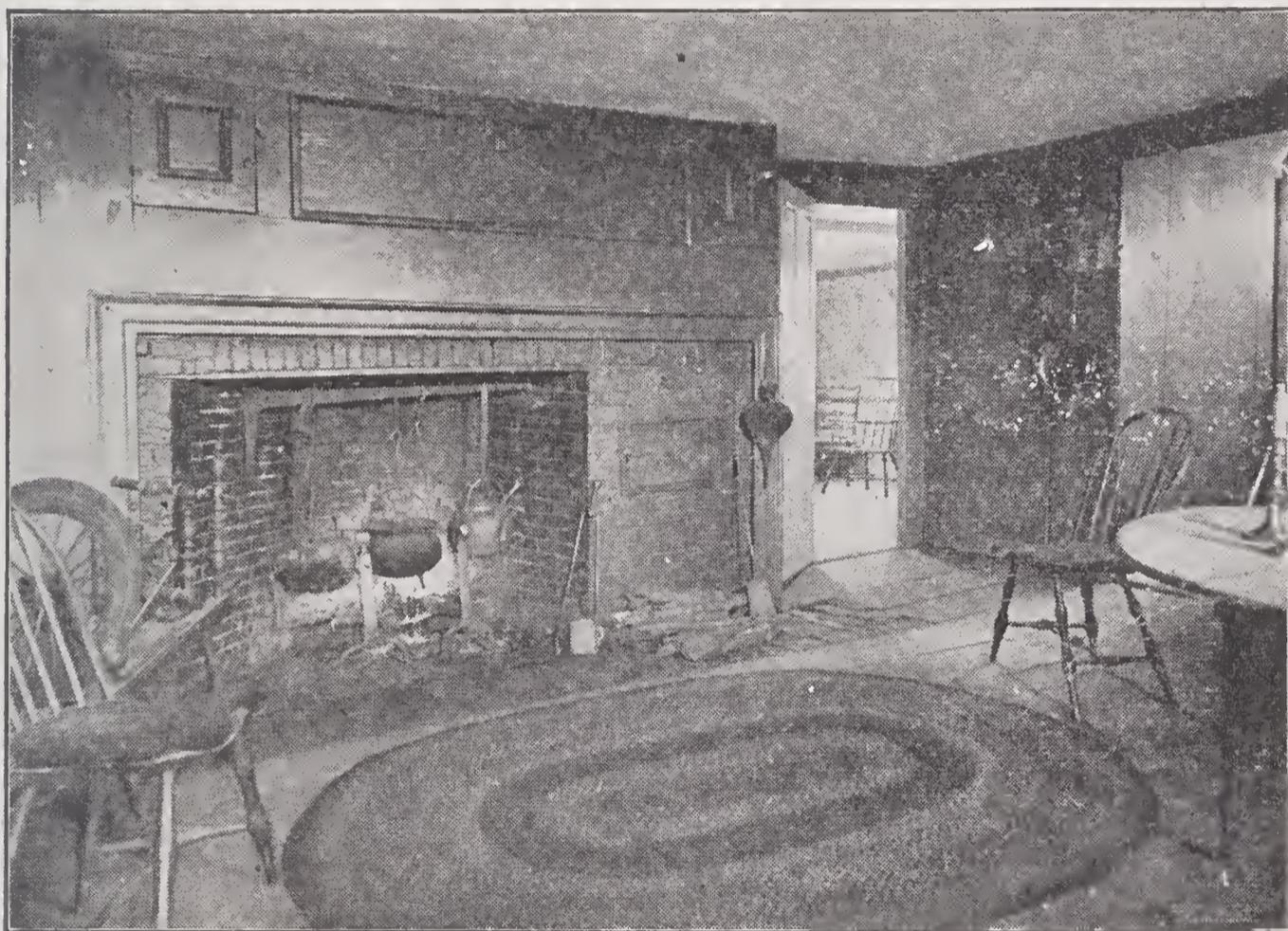
Colleges were erected in the Middle and Southern colonies for the education of Presbyterian ministers.<sup>1</sup>

The Academy at Philadelphia grew into the University of Pennsylvania (1751). King's College, New York, the present Columbia University, was founded in 1754. The University of North Carolina was organized in 1789, and the College of South Carolina, at Columbia, in 1801. The University of Georgia was opened in 1801, and the University of Virginia was founded by Thomas Jefferson in 1819.

**131. Occupations in New England.**—The people of the New England colonies were almost entirely from the eastern part of England, but with them were mingled some Scots and Huguenots. The tilling of the soil was the chief occupation in Connecticut and New Hampshire. The whale and cod fisheries, ship-building, the coast-trade and foreign commerce were the chief pursuits in Rhode Island and Massachusetts. Six hundred ships were engaged in the foreign trade of the city of Boston, and a thousand in her fishing and coast traffic. Dried fish were carried to Spain and Portugal; timber was sent to England and Holland; hay, grain and cattle were sold in New York and Pennsylvania. A growing fleet was engaged in the African slave-trade. The regular circuit of the New England slave-ship was as follows: a cargo of sugar and molasses was brought from the West Indies to New England ports and there made into rum; the rum was taken to Africa and exchanged for negroes; and these were borne across the Atlantic and sold to the colonists. New England was thus engaged with England and Holland in bringing a multitude of Africans into all the colonies.

<sup>1</sup> Among these were Tennent's log college at Neshaminy in Pennsylvania, and Finley's school at Nottingham, Maryland. In 1746 a charter was granted to a body of Presbyterians, incorporating the College of New Jersey, which was first located at Elizabethtown and afterwards at Princeton. In 1749 a Presbyterian log-college was founded in the Valley of Virginia, called Augusta Academy, which afterwards (1871) became the Washington and Lee University. Hampden Sidney College was founded also by the Presbyterians in Virginia in 1776. Queen's Museum, afterwards named Liberty Hall, was organized in Charlotte, North Carolina, in 1770.

**132. Occupations in the Middle Colonies.**—In the middle colonies the soil was more fertile than in New England, and farming was the chief occupation. New York and Philadelphia became great ports for the exportation of grain, cattle and lumber to the West Indies and to Europe. The people of the middle colonies were emigrants from several different countries of Europe. In New York dwelt Dutch, English, Scotch, Huguenot and German colonists, who made use of a large



A NEW ENGLAND KITCHEN.

number of vessels to send away the products of their farms and forests in the Hudson and Mohawk valleys. The people of New Jersey were Scots and Englishmen. On the coast of Pennsylvania dwelt English, Dutch, Swedish, German and Scotch colonists. Away from the coast, this province was occupied by Germans and by Scots from the north of Ireland. Flour, lumber and furs were sent out in large quantities through the port of Philadelphia.

**133. Occupations in the Southern Colonies.**—The people of the Southern colonies lived in two separate and distinct groups

The earlier immigrants dwelt along the seacoast, while those who came later lived in the mountain and Piedmont regions.

The people of the tidewater section of Virginia and Maryland were Englishmen, who founded what we may call the "England of the Chesapeake Bay." The planter had his private wharf where he could roll hogsheads of tobacco into the hold of the sea-going vessel and send them to London. The trade in tobacco and corn was the chief source of wealth. The seaports of the Carolinas and Georgia were Charleston and Savannah. One could stand upon the wharf in Charleston and watch the merchant vessels as they winged their way into the harbor from Jamaica, Barbadoes, the Leeward Islands, Virginia, New York and New England. As early as 1689, twenty-two ships sailed regularly between Charleston and England. They bore away cargoes of rice, indigo, corn, silk, flax, hemp, tobacco, olives and oranges. In the year 1693 cotton was sent to the Northern colonies. In 1740 the rice exported from South Carolina was worth a million dollars in the European market. The same large sum was received for the indigo sent out by this colony in 1745. Two hundred and fifty-seven vessels were employed in the commerce of South Carolina and she had five shipyards in operation.

**134. Frontier Life.**—Away from the coast in the Middle and Southern colonies, life was full of hardship. There were few slaves or servants of any kind. The toilers of the wilderness were cutting down the forests and planting corn and wheat for their own use. There was little trade beyond the borders of each settlement, for the people were engaged in a fierce struggle with the wild beasts and with the Indians. They became skilled in the use of the axe and the rifle. They built churches of logs and of stone, which served also as places of defence, and under the shadow of these chapel forts, they built log school-houses.

**135. Colonial Homes.**—Most of the people in the colonies dwelt in simple houses; only a few rich men built large mansions. During the seventeenth century few brick houses were

built in any of the colonies ; nearly all the dwellings of this early period were made of sawed lumber, or they were of logs, covered with rough boards. After the year 1720 an increasing number of brick houses were built in all of the colonies. In New England, the typical house had a large central chimney and a small entryway. In New York, the rich Dutch patroons dwelt in large manor houses of brick or stone, with a gable that receded in regular steps from the base of the roof to the top. The homes of the Dutch farmers were of wood, trimmed with yellow brick and surmounted with a weather-cock. The houses of most of the Jersey and Pennsylvania farmers were of brick and were plastered within. Handsome residences of stone and brick adorned the streets of Philadelphia. In the tidewater regions of the Southern colonies, a few of the wealthy planters lived in large houses of wood or brick, two stories high, with a wide hallway and with a broad porch supported by pillars. Not far removed from the master's mansion was the group of homes assigned to the servants. The house usually seen on the Southern plantation, however, was the simple frame dwelling with a chimney at each end. On the frontier of all the colonies, the houses were built of logs or of rough clapboards. The chimneys were large and made of logs and split boards; the fireplaces were wide and were used for cooking.



A STOVE USED IN THE VIRGINIA HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

Furniture and household utensils were brought across the sea into all of the colonies. Some of the wealthy English colonists had handsome mahogany furniture; the houses of all others were furnished in a bare, plain manner. People of large estates

used silverware, but the majority of the colonists had pewter dishes.

People of wealth in all the colonies wore garments of silk, velvet and brocade, adorned with lace. Men appeared in evening dress of green or purple-flowered silk, or embroidered velvet, with ruffles of gold lace, gold buttons, and gold or silver knee-buckles. The great mass of the people everywhere wore homespun cloth or leather or deerskin. Their shoes were of cowhide, and were set off with large brass buckles.

Wherever the people of England established themselves in the colonies, whether in New England, in Jersey or Pennsylvania, or in the South, there was seen the English garden. In the orchards grew the apple, apricot, cherry, peach, pear, plum and quince. There were also sweet flowers brought from the old home beyond the sea, such as marjoram, phlox and thyme.

**136. Systems of Labor.**—Negro slaves and indentured white servants (§ 38) were held in all the colonies in 1763. In New England, African slaves were usually employed as household servants, while the principal laborers were free white men. The social line between the gentlemen and the laborers was clear and distinct. The latter wore coarse clothing to distinguish them from their employers; they were not allowed to use the prefixes Mr. and Mrs. to their names, but were called Goodman and Goodwife. Women of the laboring class wore short gowns of a green material called baize and petticoats of homespun. The wages of both men and women in New England were small and their supply of food was scant.

In the Middle colonies, there were some African slaves and multitudes of indentured white servants. The lot of these apprentices was hard. The labor laid upon them was severe, and the food given them was coarse and scant. Hence, they were constantly attempting to escape from their masters, and the Philadelphia newspapers contained large numbers of advertisements concerning fugitive servants.

The plantations in the tidewater sections of the Southern

colonies were cultivated chiefly by African servants who had taken the place of the white apprentices brought from England in the earlier period. Many of these negroes were employed as household servants, and large numbers of them were given an excellent industrial education as carpenters, bricklayers, tanners, weavers, smiths and shoemakers. The great majority of the negroes, however, were kept at work in the fields of tobacco, corn, cotton and rice.

In the frontier regions of all the colonies dwelt settlers who labored with their own hands. There were few servants among them. The sturdy citizens of the Alleghanies cut down the forests, built their own homes, tilled the soil and led the way in the Anglo-Saxon advance toward the West.

**137. Colonial Manufactures.—**

Few articles were manufactured in the colonies in 1763. England forbade the making of iron tools and the sale of woolen goods. Iron furnaces were established in Virginia by Governor Spotswood, and some iron articles were made in Pennsylvania. There were glass and paper factories in the Middle colonies. Some woolen and some flaxen cloth was made for home use, but every hammer, axe, saw, needle, pin, tack, nail, shovel, scythe, sickle, plow and piece of tape was brought from England.

**138. The Severity of Colonial Laws.—**The people of the colonies copied the severe English laws of that day. In New England the death penalty was prescribed by law for twelve



ST. JOHN'S CHURCH AT RICHMOND, VIRGINIA.

separate offenses; in New Jersey, for thirteen; in Pennsylvania, for fourteen, and in Virginia, for seventeen. These laws, however, were scarcely ever carried out.

In Salem, Massachusetts, in the year 1692, nineteen persons were hanged upon the charge of witchcraft. The punishments for minor offenses in all of the colonies were the whipping post, the ducking stool, the stocks and pillory. A scold was gagged and made to stand near her door, and the names of drunkards were posted up in the ale-houses.

**139. Religion in the Colonies in 1763.**—The great majority of the people in the colonies in 1763 were strongly religious. Many of the colonists had sailed from Europe to North America for the purpose of establishing their own separate forms of religious worship. This was equally true of the Episcopalians of Eastern Virginia, the Congregationalists of New England, the Dutch Reformed congregations of New York, the Baptists of Rhode Island, the Quakers, the Roman Catholics, the Methodists and the Presbyterians of the Middle and Southern colonies. Either law or public sentiment, or both, required men in all the colonies to attend religious services on Sunday. In Georgia, masters had to send their negro slaves to church or pay a fine of about twenty-five dollars.

In the churches of the Congregationalists and Presbyterians no instrumental music was permitted. The Psalms of the Old Testament were sung instead of hymns. The clerk or prolocutor stood in front of the pulpit, gave out the psalm, one line or two lines at a time, and then led the congregation in singing. The sermon was sometimes only from two to four hours in length, but in many cases it continued throughout the day. One of these discourses, still extant, is found to be arranged under fifty-five separate headings.

### Questions.

1. What was the increase in population in the colonies from 1689 to 1763? How many negro slaves were there?

2. Why were the towns in 1763 located on the seacoast? Give the population of the principal towns of this period.

3. Why was there no English town west of the Alleghanies in 1763? What was the character of the frontier settlements?

4. In what year and in which colony was the first newspaper established? Describe the mail system in the colonies.

5. Describe the work of the colleges of Harvard, William and Mary and Yale. What was the public school system of New England? What was the system of private instruction in the South? What were the log-colleges?

6. Of what races were the New England people? What were the chief occupations of each of the colonies of the New Englanders?

7. Tell of the many races of the Middle colonies. What were the chief occupations?

8. What races settled in the South? What products were grown? What was the extent of the commerce of the South?

9. Describe the houses, furniture, and dress of the people of the colonies.

10. What labor conditions prevailed in the colonies?

11. What articles were manufactured?

12. Tell about the severity of the colonial laws of that period.

13. Tell of the religious life of the colonists in 1763.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map each one of the thirteen colonies, Boston, Salem, Providence, Worcester, Hartford, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Norfolk, Williamsburg, Richmond, Charleston, Savannah, Pensacola, Mobile, New Orleans, St. Louis, Detroit, the Mississippi, the Savannah, James, Potomac, Susquehanna and Hudson rivers.

## PART III. THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH IN NORTH AMERICA.

### TOPICAL ANALYSIS.

	SECTION
1. The Revolution in England in 1688-89 . . . . .	105
2. Emigration of Huguenots, Germans and Scots . . . . .	106-108
3. The Colonial Legislatures . . . . .	109
4. English Laws for the Regulation of the Colonies . . . . .	110
5. Westward Advance of the English Colonists . . . . .	111
6. Territorial Claims of France, of England and of the Indians . . . . .	112, 113

	SECTION
7. King William's War . . . . .	114
8. Queen Anne's War . . . . .	115
9. King George's War . . . . .	116
10. The French in the Mississippi and Ohio Valleys . . . . .	117
11. The English drive the French from These Valleys . . . . .	118, 120-123
12. The English conquer Canada . . . . .	124
13. The Treaty of Paris . . . . .	125
14. Population, Towns and Cities in the Colonies in 1763 . . . . .	126-128
15. Newspapers and Education in the Colonies in 1763 . . . . .	129, 130
16. Occupations in the Colonies in 1763 . . . . .	131-134, 136
17. Conditions of Life in the Colonies in 1763 . . . . .	135, 137
18. Laws and Religion in the Colonies in 1763 . . . . .	138, 139

PART IV.  
PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION.  
1763-1789.

CHAPTER XVII.

CAUSES LEADING TO THE REVOLUTION.

1760-1763

**140. George III.'s Colonial Policy. 1760.**—George III. became king of England in 1760, at the age of twenty-two years. His opinions concerning public affairs were narrow, and he was very obstinate in upholding them. In 1760 the real ruler of England was William Pitt,<sup>1</sup> the elder, who held the office of Secretary of State. Pitt held that the Parliament in England had no right to tax the colonies in America, for the reason that the colonies sent no delegates to the English Parliament.

King George III. denied that this was the right view, and his party declared that the colonies



WILLIAM PITT.

<sup>1</sup> Pitt's followers, called New Whigs, complained of the fact that Parliament did not represent all the British people, but only the towns and country districts of southeastern England. The people of the cities in northwestern England sent no representatives to the House of Commons. Pitt's party demanded that the people of every part of England should be represented in Parliament, in proportion to their numbers.

ought to be taxed by Parliament, for the reason that they were mere trading communities, composed of English subjects. This policy of taxing the American colonists by a body of Englishmen in London was urged by the king's party until the colonists took up arms to defend their rights.

**141. The Patriot and Tory Parties in the Colonies.**—The attempt of King George III. and his Parliament to assume complete control of the affairs of the colonists led to the organization of two American political parties, known as Patriots and Tories. The Tories took their name from the Tories, or king's followers, of England. They called themselves **Loyalists**,<sup>1</sup> since they remained firm in their allegiance to the English Crown and Parliament. They advised the colonists to admit the right of Parliament to levy a tax upon them.

The Patriots were not willing to be ruled by a Parliament of Englishmen which held its sessions three thousand miles away. They declared that they would pay taxes only when levied by their own colonial assemblies or legislatures. The reasons that held the party of Patriots together may be called the causes that led to the Revolution. These causes were religious, territorial, commercial, financial and political, and some of them had their origin as far back as the time of the founding of the colonies.

**142. Religious Cause of the Revolution.**—The revolt of the American colonies from the authority of the British Crown was due, in part, to the fact that many of the colonists were Dissenters, who did not have kindly feelings towards the Established Church in England. Since the Church of England was established also in some of the colonies and was supported by taxing

<sup>1</sup>The Loyalists formed a large proportion, probably more than one-fourth, of the entire population of the colonies. New York was their real stronghold, although they were numerous in all the thirteen colonies. The Tories furnished thirty thousand colonial soldiers who fought for the king during the Revolution, and they controlled thirteen of the thirty-one newspapers in the colonies. They were composed of (1) most of the office holders and politicians; (2) the vast majority of the capitalists and professional men; (3) the majority of the conservative class of people, among them many college graduates.

the people in these colonies, the Dissenters were anxious for the opportunity to break down its power.

**143. Territorial Cause of the Revolution.**—Questions concerning western lands had also much to do with the revolutionary movement. A royal proclamation (Oct. 7, 1763) established three new British provinces in North America. These were East Florida, West Florida and the province of Quebec in Canada. At the same time the colonists were prohibited from making any settlement west of the Alleghany Mountains. That portion of the Mississippi basin between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi River was set apart for the Indians. This was done to win the favor of the Algonquin Indians,<sup>1</sup> and to keep the colonists within reach of the trade of England. This proclamation of 1763 was defied by the colonists, and a great stream of emigrants rushed into the Ohio Valley.



*Daniel Boone*<sup>2</sup>

**Western Emigration.** In the year 1769 William Bean journeyed from North Carolina westward across the mountains and built a cabin on the Watauga River. This was the beginning of Tennessee. In 1772 the Watauga Association, under the direction of James Robertson, a Scot from North Carolina, and Isaac Shelby and John Sevier, of Virginia, began to bring in settlers

<sup>1</sup> In 1763 the western tribes of the Algonquins, under the leadership of **Pontiac**, a chief of the Ottawas, began a war against the settlers on the frontier. They captured all of the western forts except Detroit, Niagara and Pittsburg, and murdered two thousand colonists. In 1764 the strength of Pontiac's Indian Confederacy was broken in a battle at Bushy Run in Pennsylvania.

<sup>2</sup> Daniel Boone (1734-1820) was born in Pennsylvania, but at fourteen he moved with his parents to the Yadkin Valley, North Carolina. In 1767 he began his explorations of the region west of the mountains. In 1775 he took his family and other settlers to Kentucky, where he had many exciting experiences with Indians. He went farther west to Missouri, in 1795, and lived there the rest of his life.

from North Carolina. Nashville and other settlements were established on the Cumberland. The whole region was organized as Washington County, North Carolina, in 1778.

The leading frontiersman of that exciting period, **Daniel Boone**, cut a pathway through the forests of the Cumberland Mountains, in 1775, and founded Boonesboro in Kentucky. Boone's Trail, or the Wilderness Road, became one of the leading highways of this western country, which was organized in 1776 as Kentucky County in Virginia.

The villages planted by Moravian missionaries on the banks of the Muskingum, in 1772, constituted the first settlement of the Ohio country, north of the Ohio River. Marietta was founded in 1788. Pioneers from Pennsylvania and from Virginia organized the earliest territorial government in Ohio. This westward movement into the Ohio Valley, in defiance of the king's proclamation, added strength to the Patriot party in the colonies.

#### **144. Commercial and Financial Causes of the Revolution.**

—The British had laws which prohibited manufacturing in the colonies, and required the colonists to trade only with England and in English vessels. The colonists did not obey these laws, nor did they pay the duty laid upon certain goods.

A vast trade in molasses and sugar was carried on illegally with the West Indies by the colonies north of the Susquehanna River. The smuggling traffic was centered about Boston, New York and Philadelphia. The customs officials closed their eyes and allowed the goods to enter free of duty, and thus the British government lost one-half million dollars a year. Further than this, it was discovered that some New England merchants were so unpatriotic during the war with France as to supply French military posts with provisions.

In 1761 Pitt himself ordered the customs officials to seize all goods upon which no duty had been paid. Colonial juries, however, would not convict the smugglers. The customs officials of Massachusetts, therefore, secured "writs of assistance" or general search warrants, which gave authority to enter private houses and seize suspected merchandise wherever found. **James Otis**, a Boston lawyer, declared that the writs were an act of tyranny like that which "cost one king of England his head, another his throne." He asserted that Parliament could not take away the natural and legal rights that belonged to the colonists as English

subjects. In 1764, however, Otis published two essays, in which he admitted the right of the British Parliament to control the affairs of the colonies.

**145. Political Cause of the Revolution.**—In the attempt of the king of England to veto the acts of colonial assemblies, we find the beginning of the political cause of the revolution. The first complete statement of the colonial theory of government was made in the year 1763 by **Patrick Henry**,<sup>1</sup> a young lawyer of Virginia. Since

1696 there had been a law in Virginia which required that clergymen should be paid in tobacco. When tobacco became scarce, this statute was repealed, and the Virginia As-



THE COURTHOUSE AT HANOVER, VIRGINIA.

sembly passed a law (1758) called the Twopenny Act, allowing the people to pay their clergymen at the low rate of twopence for each pound of tobacco promised in the way of salary. The king vetoed this act. Many of the people of Virginia gave no attention to the veto, but paid the salaries in money at the reduced rate. One of the clergymen brought suit in the County Court of Hanover for the full amount of his salary in tobacco. He had the old law on his side, for the king had

<sup>1</sup> Patrick Henry (1736–1799) was born in Virginia, of Scotch parentage. Having been unsuccessful as a merchant, he studied law for about six weeks and was then admitted to the bar (1760). His first important case, “the Parson’s Cause” (1763), made his fame as a lawyer and an orator. He was a leader in Virginia throughout the years preceding the Revolution; was prominent in the Continental Congress of 1774; and was Governor of Virginia 1776–’79 and 1784–’86.

vetoed the new law, and the magistrates decided that the parish authorities must pay the clergyman more than they had thus far offered him. A jury was called to settle the amount to be recovered from the parish by the clergyman. At this point Patrick Henry made a stirring speech in behalf of the people, declaring that the king had no right to veto a law passed by the Virginia Burgesses for the good of the people. He said that the king's veto of this law was an act of tyranny, and that he had lost all right to the obedience of the people. The jury was in sympathy with Henry's views and awarded the clergyman only one penny damages. The king's veto was defied. The people were ready to support Henry's claim that the Virginia legislature had the sole right to make laws for the colony.

### Questions.

1. What was the character of King George III.? Who was William Pitt? What were the views of Pitt and of George III. with reference to the British Parliament?

2. Who comprised the Tory party in the colonies? What were the views of this party? What were the views of the Patriots in the colonies?

3. What religious cause underlay the revolutionary movement?

4. What new British provinces were established in North America in 1763? Describe Pontiac's War. Who was Daniel Boone? Describe the settlement of Kentucky and Tennessee.

5. What is meant by smuggling? What was done with the molasses and sugar smuggled into the colonies north of the Susquehanna River? What were Writs of Assistance? What did James Otis say about these Writs?

6. What was the Twopenny Act of Virginia? What is meant by the king's veto? What was said by Patrick Henry about the king's veto of a Virginian law? How much power did Henry claim for the Virginia legislature?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map southeastern England, northwestern England. Locate the thirteen colonies, East Florida, West Florida, the Ohio River, Quebec, Pittsburg, Detroit, Niagara, Tennessee, Kentucky,

Ohio, Cumberland Mountains, Alleghany Mountains, Kentucky River, Watauga River, Yadkin River, Cape Fear River, Boonesboro, Nashville, Marietta.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### THE COLONIES CLAIM INDEPENDENCE OF PARLIAMENT.

1763-1774.

**146. Results of the French and Indian War. 1763.—**The French and Indian War left a heavy debt resting upon England. The colonies had made a debt of fifteen million dollars and had sent into the war as many men as England sent. England, however, looked to the colonies to help to pay her debt. Furthermore, to provide for the defence of the new territory in America, the British government decided to post an army of ten thousand soldiers along the colonial frontier from Florida to Canada. One-third of the expense involved in this plan was to be borne by the colonies. About half a million dollars each year was expected from them, and this was to be raised (1) by an enforcement of the old trade and navigation laws, (2) by the special tax on sugar and molasses, and (3) by a new tax on legal documents, called the Stamp Tax.

**147. The Stamp Act. 1765.—**George Grenville became Prime Minister of England in 1763. He determined to enforce the former Parliamentary laws, and armed vessels began to sail up and down the American coast to seize smugglers. The Sugar Act, which was first enacted in 1732 (§ 110), and afterwards renewed, ran out of date once more, and in April, 1764, Parliament again taxed sugar, coffee, indigo and wine imported from the French and Spanish colonies. This tax would help the British merchants at the expense of colonial merchants.

Parliament also announced (1764) its purpose to impose a stamp tax upon the home business of the colonists. In spite of

protests sent by the colonists, Parliament passed the Stamp Act<sup>1</sup> (March 22, 1765). The news of the passage of this Act stirred up indignation in the hearts of the colonists. They awaited the

action of their former leaders, but these leaders made no movement.

**148. Patrick Henry and the Virginia Resolutions. 1765.**—In May, 1765, Patrick Henry became a member of the Virginia House of Burgesses. On the 29th of May he wrote a set of resolutions on the blank leaf of an old law-book and offered them to the House in a speech that burned its way into the hearts of the mem-



*From the painting by Rothermel.*

PATRICK HENRY ADDRESSING THE BURGESSES.

bers. He declared that the Virginia Assembly had the exclusive right to lay taxes upon the Virginians. To tax them by act of Parliament, he said, was tyranny. "Tarquin and Caesar had each his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third" . . . "Treason, treason," said the Speaker of the House. "May profit by their example," continued Henry; "if that be treason, make the most of it." The

<sup>1</sup> Under this law, all deeds, wills, insurance policies, marriage licenses, bonds, warrants and bills of lading must be written on stamped paper. A stamp was to be placed on books, pamphlets and newspapers. The stamps and stamped paper were to be sold in the colonies by men called stamp distributors.

resolutions were carried by a vote of twenty-one to twenty. Thomas Jefferson, who was then a student at William and Mary College, stood in the doorway and heard Henry's outburst of eloquence,—“such as I have never heard from any other man,” he said; “he appeared to me to speak as Homer wrote.”

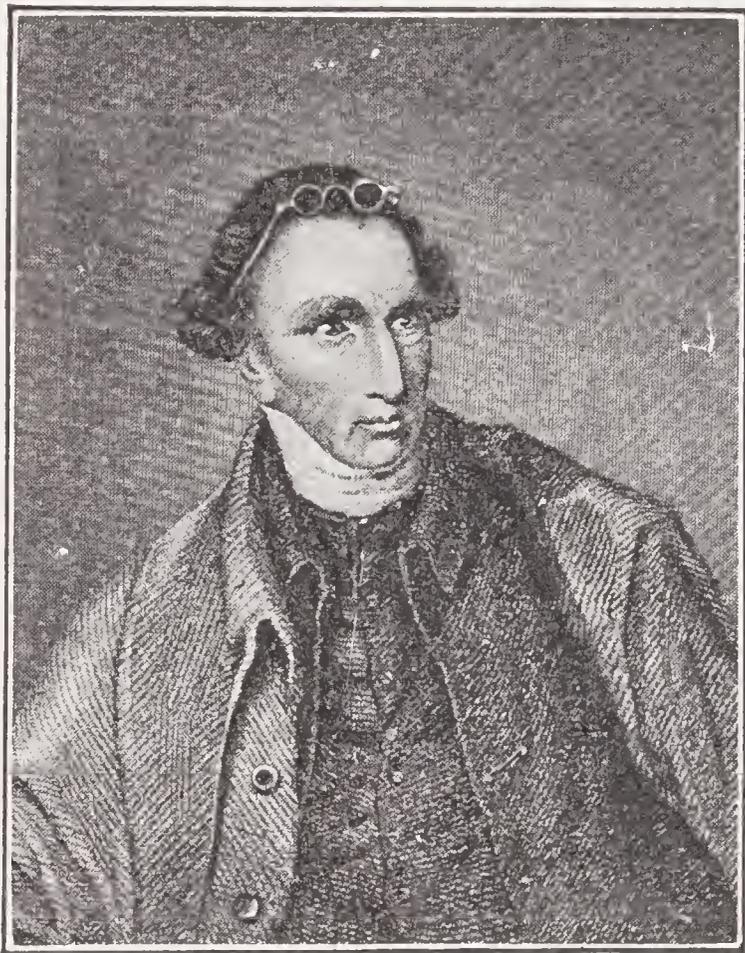
**149. The Stamp Act Congress. 1765.**—The patriots in the other colonies followed the example set by Virginia, and began to advance the claim that the law-making power in the colonies was vested in the thirteen independent colonial assemblies. Riots broke out everywhere in opposition to the Stamp Act. Armed men in Georgia forced Governor Wright to send away the stamps. The people of Charleston compelled the shipmaster who brought the stamps to take them back to England. A group of men in North Carolina, with rifles in their hands, prevented Governor Tryon from using the stamps. The “Sons of Liberty” in New York and in other colonies seized the stamps and burned them. In every colony the stamp distributors were compelled to resign. The stamped paper and the stamps were stored away in forts and in the holds of vessels, and on November 1, 1765, the day on which the act was to go into effect; not one stamp was offered for sale.

Before that date, however, the General Court (Assembly) of Massachusetts, on motion of James Otis, called for a general meeting of delegates from the various colonies to consider the Stamp Act. The Stamp Act Congress<sup>1</sup> met in New York the 7th of October, 1765. The members of this Congress held moderate views, for they acknowledged England's authority by sending a petition to both Houses of Parliament. Christopher Gadsden, of South Carolina, vehemently opposed the sending of this petition, because it recognized the authority of the British law-makers over the colonies. At the same time the Congress drew up a Declaration of Rights, which contained the assertion that

<sup>1</sup> Delegates were present from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Pennsylvania and South Carolina. In the other four colonies the legislatures were not in session and the royal governors were thus enabled to prevent the election of delegates.

the "people of the colonies are not, and, from their local circumstances, cannot be represented in the House of Commons," and that no taxes "can be constitutionally imposed on them but by their respective legislatures."

**150. The Repeal of the Stamp Act. 1766.**—Grenville was removed from office by George III., in 1765, for mere personal reasons, and the Marquis of Rockingham of the old Whig party was made Prime Minister.



Rockingham introduced a resolution to repeal the Stamp Act. Three months of fierce debate ensued. Pitt arose from a bed of sickness to defend the colonists in the House of Commons. He denied the right of Parliament to tax their property or their business transactions. "I rejoice," said Pitt, "that America has resisted."

A cry of distress went up to Parliament from British merchants and manufacturers, who declared that they had lost their American trade as the result of the disturbance caused by the

Stamp Act. The Act was, therefore, repealed in March, 1766. At the same time the declaration was made that Parliament had power to "legislate for the colonies in all cases whatsoever."

**151. The Townshend Acts. 1767.**—A new series of tax-bills, called the Townshend bills after their author, Charles Townshend, was passed by Parliament in June, 1767, during the illness of Pitt. Townshend's chief measure was a tax laid upon wine, oil, glass, red and white lead, painters' colors, paper and tea, in addition to the tax already levied on sugar.

*W. Pitt*

The voice of opposition to the Townshend Acts was heard at once. The Massachusetts Assembly sent a written protest to the king, and a circular letter to the legislatures of the other colonies urging them to protect their rights. When the legislatures of Maryland and of Georgia gave their approval to this letter they were at once dismissed and the members sent home



COLONISTS BURNING THE STAMP SELLER IN EFFIGY.

by the royal governors. John Hancock's sloop *Liberty* sailed into Boston harbor in 1768, with a cargo of wine, but Hancock<sup>1</sup> refused to pay the duty on the wine. The English customs officers seized the sloop. The people of Boston then made a bonfire of one of the boats belonging to an English warship, and drove the customs officials into the fort in the harbor.

**152. The Virginia Resolves. 1769.**—When Parliament followed up the Townshend Acts by asking the king to transport to England, for trial, all colonists charged with treason, the Virginia Burgesses passed four defiant Resolves (May 16, 1769).

<sup>1</sup> John Hancock (1737–1793) was a prominent merchant and statesman of Boston. He was president of the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts in 1774 and of the Continental Congress, 1775–1777, and was governor of Massachusetts, 1780–'85 and 1787–'93.

The first of these declared "that the sole right of imposing taxes on the inhabitants of this His Majesty's Colony and Dominion of Virginia is now, and ever hath been, legally and constitutionally vested in the House of Burgesses." The fourth resolve recommended an appeal to his Majesty, "as the father of all his people," to leave all suspected persons to be tried in the "ancient and long established" colonial courts of justice.

**153. Non-Importation Agreements. 1769.**—After the passing of these Resolves, the Virginia Burgesses were dismissed by Governor Botetourt. The members then met in "The



THE RALEIGH TAVERN.

Apollo," a room in the Raleigh tavern in Williamsburg, and signed an agreement pledging themselves not to use nor to import any articles upon which a tax was laid by Parliament.

The rest of the colonies, as in 1765, followed Virginia, and the end of the year 1769 found the non-importation policy in such complete operation that British merchants could not sell their goods. All of the Townshend duties except that upon tea were repealed (April, 1770). "There must always be one tax to keep up the right," said King George III.

**154. The First Bloodshed. 1770.**—Two regiments of British troops were sent from New York to Boston in 1768 to enforce the Townshend Acts. On the evening of March 5, 1770, a crowd of Boston workmen assembled near the barracks, abused the soldiers, and pelted them with snowballs and stones. Seven of the soldiers fired into the crowd. They killed five and wounded many others. As a result of the **Boston Massacre**, a mass meeting of the townspeople, called by Samuel Adams, demanded the

removal of the troops and they were transferred to an island in the harbor.

**155. The Battle of Alamance. 1771.—The *Gaspee*. 1772.**—Many of the people of the Piedmont region of North Carolina did not like the royal government. The governor's officers oppressed them. Forming an association called the Regulation, they refused to pay taxes or to obey the laws of the colony. In 1770, they broke up the court at Hillsboro. Another court being ordered, the judges said that they could not attend in safety. Governor Tryon called out the militia of the seacoast counties and marched against the Regulators. A pitched battle was fought at **Alamance**, in 1771, near the headwaters of the Cape Fear River. The Regulators were defeated with the loss of two hundred men, and six of their leaders were captured and hanged.

The next year (1772) the people of Rhode Island showed their readiness to resist the authority of England by setting fire to the armed British revenue vessel, the *Gaspee*.

**156. Committees of Correspondence. 1772-1773.**—In the year 1772 town committees of correspondence were appointed in Massachusetts on the motion of Samuel Adams.<sup>1</sup> On the 12th of March, 1773, the Virginia Assembly, on the motion of Dabney Carr, appointed a permanent committee of correspondence to secure "unity of action" among all the colonies. By the year 1775 such committees were at work in all of the colonies, sending communications concerning important public measures, and exchanging opinions as to the best plan of offering resistance to the British Parliament.

**157. The Tea Tax. 1773.**—In 1773 the king made a last attempt to collect a revenue from the colonists. He reduced the price of tea by removing the tax of one shilling on each pound of

<sup>1</sup> Samuel Adams (1722-1803) was graduated from Harvard College in 1743. He became a member of the Massachusetts legislature and was influential in arousing the people of Boston to oppose the Acts of Parliament laying taxes upon the colonies. He was also active as a member of the Continental Congress.

tea sent out of England. He supposed that the colonists would pay the tariff of three pence at their own ports. But the colonists refused to buy tea from the English. When the East India Company sent cargoes of tea, in the autumn of 1773, the colonists compelled most of the tea commissioners to resign. In Charleston, South Carolina, the tea was stored in damp cellars and

ruined. The people of Philadelphia sent the tea back to London in the same ship that brought it over. New York made the vessel turn back before reaching the harbor. The *Peggy Stewart*, with her cargo of tea, was burned at Annapolis by her Maryland owners. In Boston a company of citizens, disguised as Indians, rushed on board the tea ships, broke open the boxes and threw all of the tea into the water.

This incident is

known as the Boston Tea Party. The king and his Parliament were set at defiance. In revenge for these rebellious measures, Parliament passed the rash acts of April, 1774.

**158. Oppressive Acts. 1774.**—Parliament determined to lay heavy punishment upon the colony of Massachusetts because of the difficulty of enforcing the British tariff laws along her coast. Five oppressive acts were passed (April–June, 1774):

(1) The port of Boston was closed to commerce.



CARPENTER'S HALL, PHILADELPHIA.

(2) The charter of Massachusetts was suspended.

(3) Persons charged with resistance to law were to be sent outside the colony for trial.

(4) British troops were to be quartered among the people of Massachusetts.

(5) The province of Quebec was extended to the Ohio and the Mississippi.

The Quebec Act was the last effort of the king to check the westward movement of the colonists. The land thus added to Quebec was claimed by Virginia, Pennsylvania, New York, Connecticut and Massachusetts.

**159. The First Continental Congress. 1774.**—In May, 1774, the Virginia House of Burgesses issued the first call for a colonial congress. The other colonies approved; Philadelphia was named as the place of meeting, and September 1, 1774, as the time.

During the summer, Thomas Jefferson<sup>1</sup> prepared a document entitled *Summary View of the Rights of British America*, claiming that the thirteen colonies were, in reality, thirteen British states in America, and that each one of these states had its own Parliament or Legislature.

From the 5th of September until the 20th of October, 1774, fifty-five delegates,<sup>2</sup> representing twelve of the colonies, met

<sup>1</sup> Thomas Jefferson (1743–1826) was born in Albemarle County, Virginia. He studied at William and Mary College and afterwards read law under Chancellor George Wythe. From 1767 to 1774 he was very successful as a lawyer, and was active in the opposition made to the Colonial Acts of the British Parliament. In 1776 he wrote the Declaration of Independence. Almost continuously for thirty-five years he was in public service as governor of Virginia, Minister to France, Secretary of State, Vice-President of the United States, and President. The last seventeen years of his life were spent quietly at his home, Monticello.

<sup>2</sup> Samuel and John Adams were among those from Massachusetts. Stephen Hopkins came from Rhode Island, Roger Sherman from Connecticut, John Jay from New York and John Dickinson from Pennsylvania. John and Edward Rutledge, Middleton, Lynch and Gadsden represented South Carolina. Maryland sent Tilghman, Johnson, Goldsborough, Paca and Chase. Virginia's delegates were Patrick Henry, George Washington, R. H. Lee, Bland, Harrison and Peyton Randolph. North Carolina sent Hooper, Hawes and Caswell.

together as a congress in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia. Georgia's governor prevented the election of delegates by the people of that colony. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was chosen president. Patrick Henry and Samuel Adams were the leaders of the advanced patriotic party. Both of these men were already of the opinion that the colonies must fight. In solid information and sound judgment, Washington was considered the "greatest man of them all."

The Congress issued ten campaign documents in the form of recommendations and petitions. The chief of these were a Declaration of Rights, and Articles of Association. They were sent out among the colonists for individual signatures, and each signer was to bind himself not to use or to buy English goods after December 1, 1774.

Large numbers of men and women throughout the colonies signed the Articles of Association. Among these were fifty-one patriotic women of North Carolina, who met in Edenton at the famous "Tea Party" and pledged themselves not to use the tea sold by British merchants. The issue between England and her colonies was now clearly defined. The Patriots gained strength every day in the practical work of persuading the people of the colonies to buy no more goods sent out from England.

**The Battle of Point Pleasant.** While the Congress was in session, Andrew Lewis led eleven hundred Virginians to Point Pleasant, at the mouth of the Kanawha River, where he was attacked, October 10, 1774, by about eleven hundred Indians under Cornstalk, chief of the Shawnee tribe. It was the severest struggle with the Indians during the colonial period. The Indians were defeated and at once made peace. The victory of Lewis opened the Ohio River as a highway of travel into Kentucky and Tennessee.

### Questions.

1. What reasons were given by the British government for keeping an army in the American colonies?
2. What articles were taxed by Parliament in April, 1764? Explain the Stamp Act of 1765.

3. What was Patrick Henry's objection to the Stamp Act? How did he express his objection?

4. How were the stamps received in the colonies? What was the Stamp Act Congress? What did it do?

5. What did William Pitt think of the Stamp Act? Explain the reasons for the repeal of the Stamp Act.

6. Explain the Townshend Acts of 1767. What was the Massachusetts' circular letter?

7. Explain the Virginia Resolves of 1769. Why were they passed?

8. Explain Virginia's Non-Importation Resolutions of 1769.

9. Describe the Boston Massacre of 1770.

10. Who were the Regulators of North Carolina? Describe the battle of Alamance. By whom was the *Gaspee* set on fire?

11. What was the work of the Committees of Correspondence?

12. What was the plan of the British government in 1773 with reference to the tax on tea? What was done with the tea at Charleston? At Annapolis? At Philadelphia? At New York? At Boston?

13. Explain the oppressive acts of 1774. Why did the colonists object to the Quebec Act?

14. How was the Continental Congress called together? What opinions were set forth in Jefferson's *Summary View*? Who were the principal members of the first Continental Congress? What was the character of the recommendations issued by the Congress? Describe the battle of Point Pleasant.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Florida, Canada, Boston, New York, Williamsburg, Charleston, Philadelphia, Edenton, Annapolis, Alamance, N. C., Point Pleasant, Kanawha River.

## CHAPTER XIX.

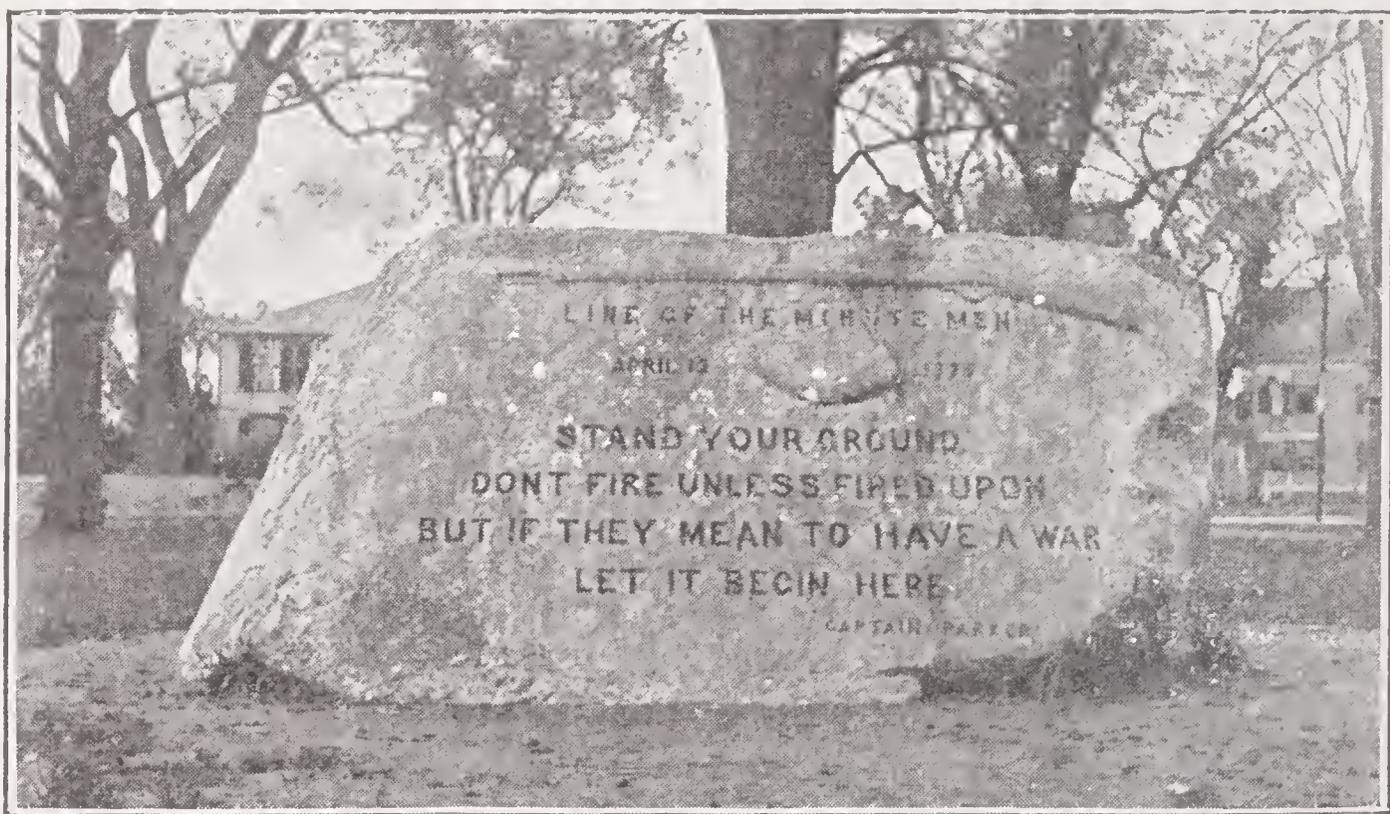
### BEGINNINGS OF THE WAR.

1774-1776.

**160. Massachusetts and Virginia Prepare for Resistance. 1774, 1775.**—The work of cutting the bonds that bound the colonies to the British Crown was done by each colony for itself. In August, 1774, the Virginia Convention began to make war against English trade by framing the earliest agreement not

to buy English goods.<sup>1</sup> The Massachusetts legislature organized itself into a provincial congress or legislature, which enlisted 12,000 militia and began to collect military stores (February, 1775).

On the 20th of March, 1775, in the second Virginia convention in St. John's Church, Richmond, Patrick Henry moved that the militia should be armed and the colony put into a state of defense. This resolution he supported in a speech of matchless power. He referred to England's troops and war ships in the



WHERE THE FIRST SHOT WAS FIRED AT LEXINGTON.

colonies and said, "We must fight! I repeat it, sir, we must fight! An appeal to arms and to the God of Hosts is all that is left us!" Henry's resolutions were adopted, and troops were at once raised in Virginia. The other colonies soon afterwards took steps looking toward the overthrow of the royal government.

**161. Lexington and Concord. 1775.**—General Gage, commander of the British troops in Massachusetts, brought on a conflict by sending eight hundred regulars to destroy the military

<sup>1</sup>In January, 1775, resolutions were adopted in Fincastle County, Virginia, which declared that if the British government refused to allow the colonists full privileges and liberties, they were "deliberately and resolutely determined never to surrender them to any power upon earth but at the expense of their lives."

supplies collected at Concord, twenty miles from Boston. The troops set forth on the night of April 18, 1775. Paul Revere and William Dawes, learning of their movements, rode swiftly in advance and warned the people that Gage's regulars were approaching. When the soldiers reached Lexington at about sunrise, on the morning of April 19th, a small body of minutemen—so-called because they held themselves ready for service at a minute's notice—was drawn up on the village green. A British officer commanded them to disperse; some one fired a shot; then the troops poured in a volley, and killed or wounded sixteen minutemen. The soldiers pressed on to Concord, but militiamen stood ready to exchange shots with them. The British were forced to turn back towards Boston and were pursued by the colonists until refuge was found under the guns of the war vessels at Charlestown. The morning of April 20th saw a great army of militiamen assembled to begin the siege of the British in Boston. The Provincial Congress of Massachusetts formally voted Governor Gage a public enemy, and renounced allegiance to him (May 5, 1775).

**Ticonderoga.** When the news of the fight reached Vermont, the men of the Green Mountains marched with Ethan Allen and seized Fort Ticonderoga (May 10). The cannon captured by Allen were used afterwards against the British in Boston.

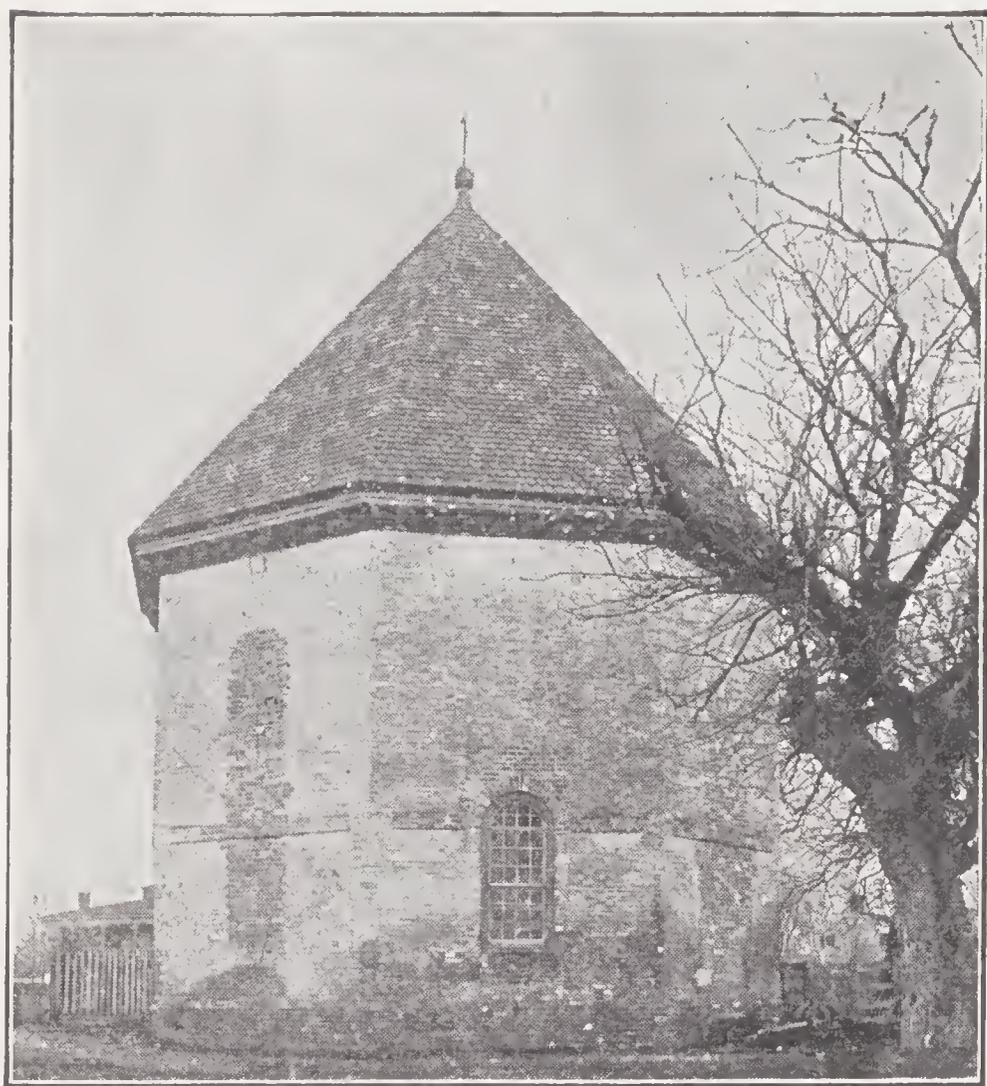
**162. Hostilities in Virginia. 1775.**—On April 20, Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, removed some powder from the magazine at Williamsburg to a vessel in James River. Patrick Henry led an armed force from Hanover (May 2) to Williamsburg. Dunmore denounced him as a traitor and threatened to burn the town, but the people of the country seized arms to aid Henry. Dunmore fled to a man-of-war (June 6) and thenceforth the Burgesses exercised all authority in Virginia.

Fighting took place also in Virginia during the closing months of the year 1775. Patrick Henry was made commander of the Virginia forces. Dunmore collected a fleet of war vessels and made war against the people on the coasts of Chesapeake Bay.

Woodford's Virginians repulsed Dunmore at Norfolk, and Howe's North Carolinians drove him to his ships.

**The Mecklenburg Declaration.** On May 20, 1775, the committee of Mecklenburg County adopted a declaration of independence; on May 31, they directed the people to choose county officers. Military companies were then being organized in all the counties, and the royal governor, Martin, fled from New Bern to Fort Johnston. On July 19, John Ashe led his riflemen to the fort, burnt it, and drove Martin to his ships.

**163. The Battle of Bunker Hill. 1775.**—During the night of the 16th of June, 1775, Colonel Prescott led his New England



THE OLD POWDER HOUSE AT WILLIAMSBURG.

troops to the hills of Charlestown and erected fortifications. On the morning of June 17th, the British war vessels in Boston Harbor opened fire, and General Gage sent 2,500 British soldiers directly up the steep ascent of Bunker Hill. A volley from the breastwork caused Gage's men to retreat to the foot of the hill. A second British attack was repulsed in the same

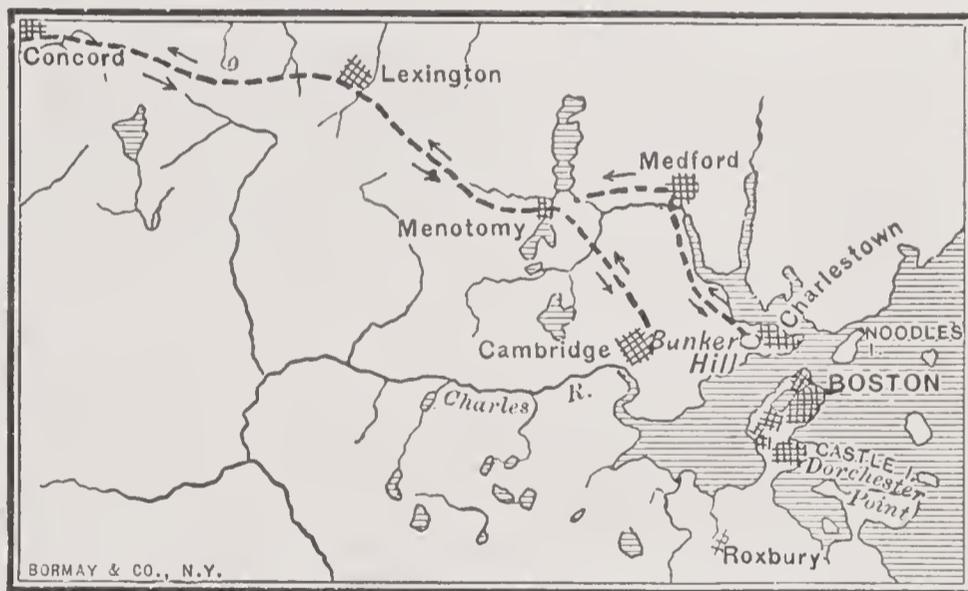
manner. The supply of powder among Prescott's men was now exhausted and the third advance of the British carried them over the earthworks. The Americans fought fiercely with stones and gunstocks, but were forced from the field. In the encouragement that it gave the colonists, this battle had all the moral influence of an American victory.

**164. The Formal Opening of War. 1775.**—May 10th

marked the assembling of the second Continental Congress at Philadelphia. It was composed of delegates from each colony. John Jay and John Dickinson wished to send another petition to the king, and advised non-resistance. The war-party, however, prevailed; and the Congress elected George Washington commander-in-chief of all the colonial troops (June 15) and sent him to assume charge of the militia assembled around Boston.<sup>1</sup>

Before the close of the year 1775, independent war governments were established in the colonies, and executive committees, appointed by the several colonial legislatures, were managing all the affairs of each colony. The king declared the colonies to be public enemies (Aug. 23, 1775), and called upon all loyal subjects to aid in suppressing the rebellion.

Actual warfare began as the result of the king's declaration. Washington ordered Montgomery to advance from Ticonderoga against Montreal. At the same time, Benedict Arnold and Daniel Morgan were sent through the forests of Maine to assist Montgomery in the capture of Quebec. Montreal was taken and the two forces approached Quebec through cold and snow. On December 31, 1775, they assailed the stronghold. Montgomery was slain and Arnold was wounded, but Morgan's men fought their way into the city. They were



THE CAMPAIGN ABOUT BOSTON, 1775-76.

not able to hold Quebec, however, and in the following summer the colonial troops were forced to withdraw from Canada.

### 165. The Colonies Form Independent State Govern-

<sup>1</sup> On the 3rd of July, Washington took charge of the troops on Cambridge Common. He had 16,000 militia from New England, and 3,000 riflemen from Virginia, Maryland and Pennsylvania.

ments. **1775-1776.**—Temporary war governments were established, in 1775, in nearly all of the colonies. The work of forming permanent state governments began early in 1776. All of the affairs of each state were placed under the control of the legislature, elected by the people. The council was changed into a branch of the state legislature. A governor or president, elected by the people or by the legislature, took the place formerly filled by the royal governor. Before July 4, 1776, every colony except one had either prepared, or had begun to prepare, a written constitution and was acting as a free and independent state.<sup>1</sup>



*From the painting by Chappel.*

JEFFERSON READING TO THE COMMITTEE THE FIRST DRAFT OF THE DECLARATION.

<sup>1</sup> The state which did not begin to prepare a constitution until after July 4, 1776, was Pennsylvania. Constitutions were written and adopted before that date by the following states: New Hampshire, Jan. 5, 1776; South Carolina, March 26, 1776; Georgia, April 15, 1776; Delaware, June 15, 1776; Virginia, June 29, 1776; New Jersey, July 2, 1776.

The following began, but did not complete, their constitutions before July 4, 1776: North Carolina, April 13, 1776; New York, May 31, 1776; Maryland, July 3, 1776. Without adopting a constitution, Massachusetts became an independent state, May 1, 1776; Rhode Island, May 6, 1776; and Connecticut, June 14, 1776. Pennsylvania began to prepare a constitution July 15, 1776.

**166. The Declaration of Independence. July, 1776.**—On the 15th of May, 1776, the Virginia Convention instructed the delegates of that state in the Continental Congress to propose that this body declare the colonies free and independent states. Already on the 12th of April, North Carolina had instructed her

*A Declaration by the Representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in General Congress assembled.*

*When in the course of human events it becomes necessary for <sup>one</sup> people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to ~~assume for themselves the same station to which the laws of nature and of nature's god entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to ~~the~~ <sup>the</sup> separation.~~*

A Reduced Facsimile of the Original Document in the Handwriting of Jefferson.

delegates to support such a declaration if any other colony should propose it.

On the 7th of June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee carried out Virginia's instructions by moving in Congress a declaration of independence.<sup>1</sup> A committee was appointed (June 11th) to draw up the extended form of declaration, and Thomas Jefferson as chairman wrote the document. Lee's motion was adopted on July 2d by the votes of twelve states.

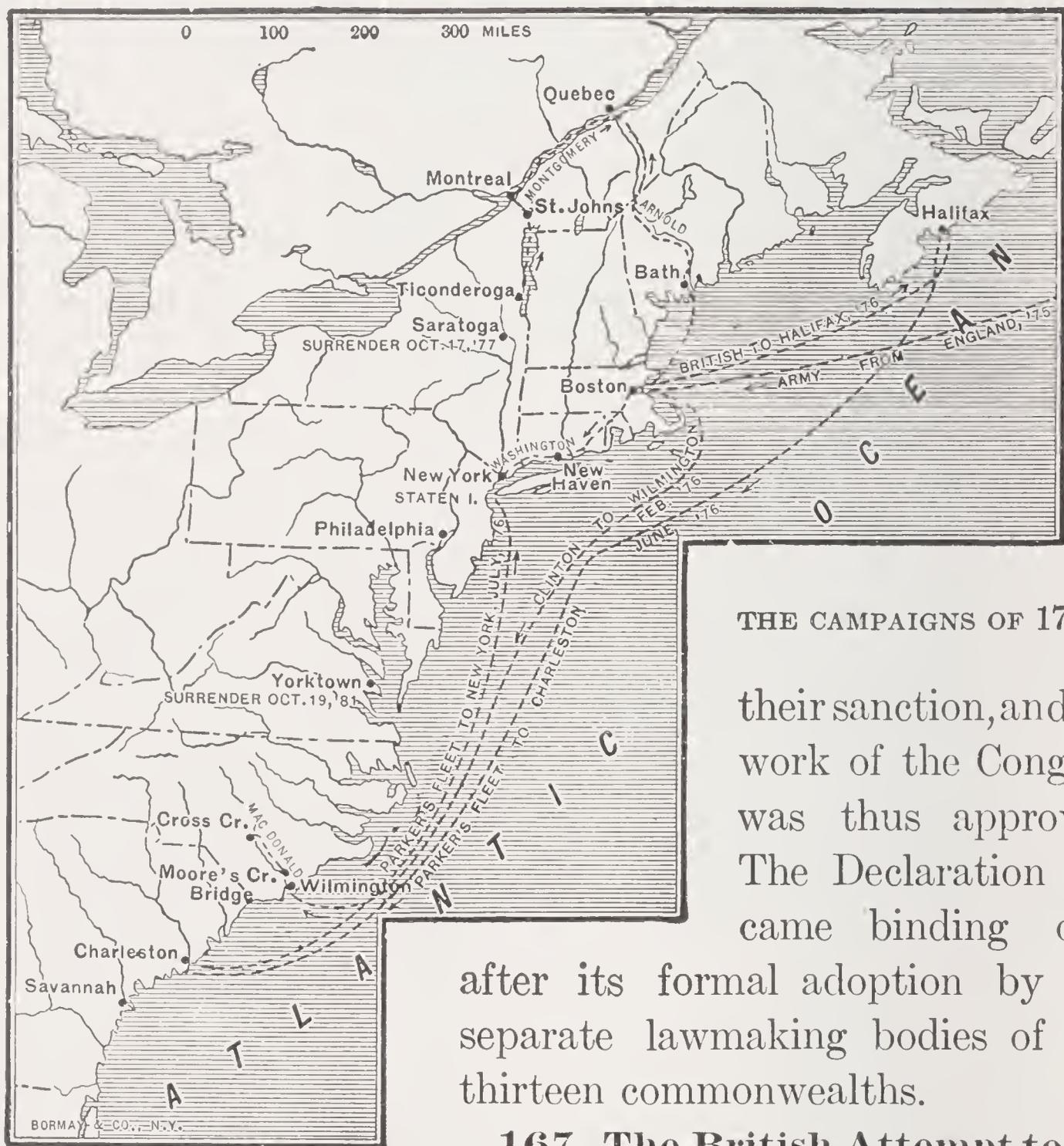
On the same day, Jefferson's draft was presented to the Congress. Some verbal changes were made, and on the 4th of July the Declaration was adopted by the votes of twelve states and signed by John Hancock, President, and Charles Thomson, Secretary. The paper as adopted was merely the public announcement of a fact already accomplished. Twelve<sup>2</sup> of the states

<sup>1</sup> Lee's motion was as follows:—"That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown; and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved."

<sup>2</sup> The state which had not yet formed a separate government was Pennsylvania. The state which did not vote for the Declaration was New York.

were then independent commonwealths, resting upon separate governments of their own formation.

Copies of the Declaration were sent (July 5) to the legislatures of the thirteen states. New York's Assembly was the first to ratify (July 9th). The Assemblies of the other states gave it



THE CAMPAIGNS OF 1776.

their sanction, and the work of the Congress was thus approved. The Declaration became binding only

after its formal adoption by the separate lawmaking bodies of the thirteen commonwealths.

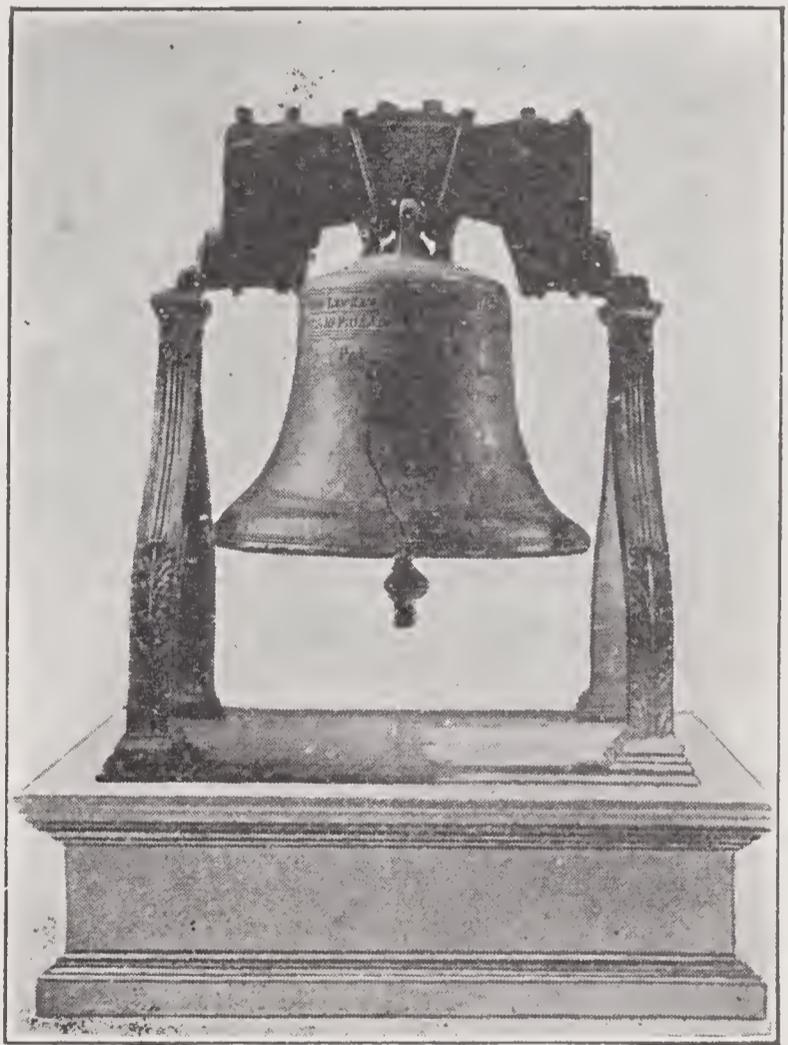
**167. The British Attempt to Invade the Carolinas. January-June, 1776.**—While the individual colonies were driving out the king's governors and forming governments of their own, Lord George Germaine of London, who had charge of the military movements against the colonies, marked out the first British plan of campaign (Dec. 23, 1775). General Howe was already in command of the British forces in Boston in place of General Gage, and Sir Guy Carleton was busy in Canada, preparing a body of troops for the invasion of New York.

Germaine sent seven regiments and ten ships of war, under Sir Peter Parker, to attempt the invasion of North Carolina, and afterwards to attack South Carolina or Virginia. Sir Henry Clinton sailed from Boston with 2,000 troops to assist Parker, and Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, was to coöperate with the movement. The former governor of North Carolina, Martin, from his armed vessel on the Cape Fear River, stirred up the Scotch Highlanders to take up arms in behalf of the king. Some 1,600 Highlanders began the march down the Cape Fear, in February, 1776, under Donald MacDonald, expecting to join Parker and Clinton at the mouth of the river. At the same time the Indians were threatening North Carolina from the west.

Cornelius Harnett, President of the Council, ordered the minute-men to aid James Moore's Continentals against MacDonald. Some Regulators who had joined the Highlanders then went home. On Feb. 27, 1776, the Highlanders attacked Caswell and Lillington's minute-men at Moore's Creek Bridge, twenty miles from Wilmington, but were defeated. MacDonald was captured with 900 followers. Then 9,000 North Carolinians assembled to meet the British army.

In June, 1776, Clinton and Parker continued their voyage southward to attempt the capture of Charleston. Governor Rutledge of South Carolina had already enlisted 5,000 Carolinian riflemen for the defense of Charleston.

Colonel William Moultrie, of South Carolina, built a fort of palmetto logs on Sullivan's Island, and placed a force of 1,200



THE LIBERTY BELL.

men in the fort. The British fleet entered the harbor. Clinton landed 3,000 British soldiers on a sand-bank near Sullivan's Island, and Parker's ten war vessels glided up and opened fire on **Fort Moultrie**. The battle raged for ten hours (June 28, 1776), but Clinton's infantry could not reach the fortress, and the British guns did little harm to the elastic palmetto logs.<sup>1</sup> Moultrie's cannon were well aimed and wrought great harm to the British fleet; Parker's flagship was made a wreck, and only one



*From the painting by Oertel.*

**SERGEANT JASPER RESTORING THE FLAG AT FORT MOULTRIE.**

of the other nine vessels was able to put to sea after the battle. The British campaign resulted in complete failure.

**168. The Evacuation of Boston. 1776.**

—Throughout the winter of 1775–1776 General Washington continued to press the siege of Boston. Early

in March, 1776, he seized Dorchester Heights and planted there the heavy guns captured at Ticonderoga. With these cannon the American gunners were ready to fire upon the British ships in Boston Harbor. General Howe did not wait to fight another battle in Boston, but evacuated<sup>2</sup> the town, and carried his 8,000 soldiers and 1,500 New England Tories to Halifax.

<sup>1</sup> Early in the battle the flag-staff at Fort Moultrie was broken by a cannon and the flag fell over the wall. Sergeant Jasper, fearless of cannon balls, leaped over the wall, recovered the flag, and restored it to its place.

<sup>2</sup> March 17, 1776.

### Questions.

1. What were the Fincastle Resolves? What war measures were adopted by Massachusetts in February, 1775? What declaration was made by Patrick Henry in March, 1775?

2. Describe the battle at Lexington and Concord.

3. Tell how the people of Virginia drove out Governor Dunmore. What Declaration was made by the people of Mecklenburg, North Carolina? Describe the skirmish at Great Bridge in Virginia.

4. Describe the battle of Bunker Hill.

5. When and by whom was Washington appointed to the chief command? What were the chief causes of taking up arms against Great Britain? Why did Great Britain declare war against the colonies?

6. Under whose leadership did the Americans invade Canada? What was the result of the expedition?

7. Describe the formation of the thirteen separate state governments.

8. What was done by the Virginia Convention on the 15th of May, 1776? What proposal was made in Congress by R. H. Lee? When was Lee's resolution adopted? Read the Declaration and tell what truths are declared to be self-evident. What is declared to be the basis of government? Is this true now? How many colonies told their delegates to vote for the Declaration? When was Jefferson's draft of the Declaration amended and adopted? When was it signed?

9. What was the first British plan of campaign against the colonies? Describe the battle of Moore's Creek Bridge. What British force was sent to invade South Carolina? Describe the battle of Fort Moultrie.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Boston, Lexington, Concord, Charlestown, Bunker Hill, Vermont, Ticonderoga, Montreal, Quebec, Williamsburg, Norfolk, Cape Fear River, Moore's Creek Bridge, Charleston, Fort Moultrie.



Flag used by Washington  
in 1776

Arms of the Washington family.

The British Union Jack.

## CHAPTER XX.

## THE CAMPAIGNS IN THE MIDDLE STATES.

1776-1778.

**169. The British Invasion of New York. 1776.**—The war of the Revolution was fought out chiefly along the Atlantic seaboard, from the Hudson Valley southward. The real stronghold of the states was the region of the Alleghany Mountains. After 1775-1776 the Middle and Southern states bore the brunt of the entire conflict.

The second British invasion was directed against the State of New York. The campaign was arranged in three parts. General Howe was sent to gain control of the lower Hudson Valley. Two other forces under Carleton and St. Leger were to move from Canada to secure Lake Champlain, the upper Hudson Valley and the Mohawk Valley. To meet this threefold invasion, the forces from the states were few in number, ill-clad and poorly armed.<sup>1</sup>

Washington sent a force of 8,000 men, under Israel Putnam of Connecticut, to hold **Brooklyn Heights** on Long Island. Howe landed 20,000 men on the Island, sent a turning column on a long march around Putnam's left wing and captured a thousand American prisoners (August 27, 1776). Upon a dark and foggy night, Washington left his camp fires burning and, with great skill, withdrew the entire American force from Long Island across East River into New York. At this time, the farmers who had joined Washington's army began to return home. Within a few days the Connecticut troops "dwindled down from six to less than two thousand."

Howe followed the American troops into New York City, but Washington made a stand and twice defeated Howe's army,—

<sup>1</sup> Under Washington at New York, in July, 1776, there were about 11,000 effective men from New York, Connecticut, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware and Maryland.

at **Harlem Heights** on September 16, and at **White Plains** on October 28, 1776. Fort Washington, at the upper point of Manhattan Island, with 3,000 American soldiers, was captured by the British in November. Washington, compelled to retreat across New Jersey, passed through Princeton and Trenton and crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania. General Charles Lee led his American force across the Hudson to Morristown, New Jersey; he then ventured into a tavern outside his own lines, and was captured by British dragoons. The British plan of campaign was thus far crowned with success, for British troops now held the lower Hudson Valley and the State of New Jersey.

**170. Washington Turns the Tide at Trenton. December, 1776.**

—While Washington was retreating through New Jersey in the early days of December, his army was rapidly decreasing in



*From the painting by Faed.*

GENERAL WASHINGTON AT TRENTON.

numbers. Only 3,000 men, the fragments of sixteen regiments, were under his flag when he arrived at Princeton. Congress voted not to leave Philadelphia, but immediately afterward fled to Baltimore. This body was wise enough, however, at this time, to allow Washington to take entire charge of the war. Multitudes of people in New Jersey and Pennsylvania made their submission to the British. Piercing cold and storms of sleet came upon Washington's ragged troops as they lay along the

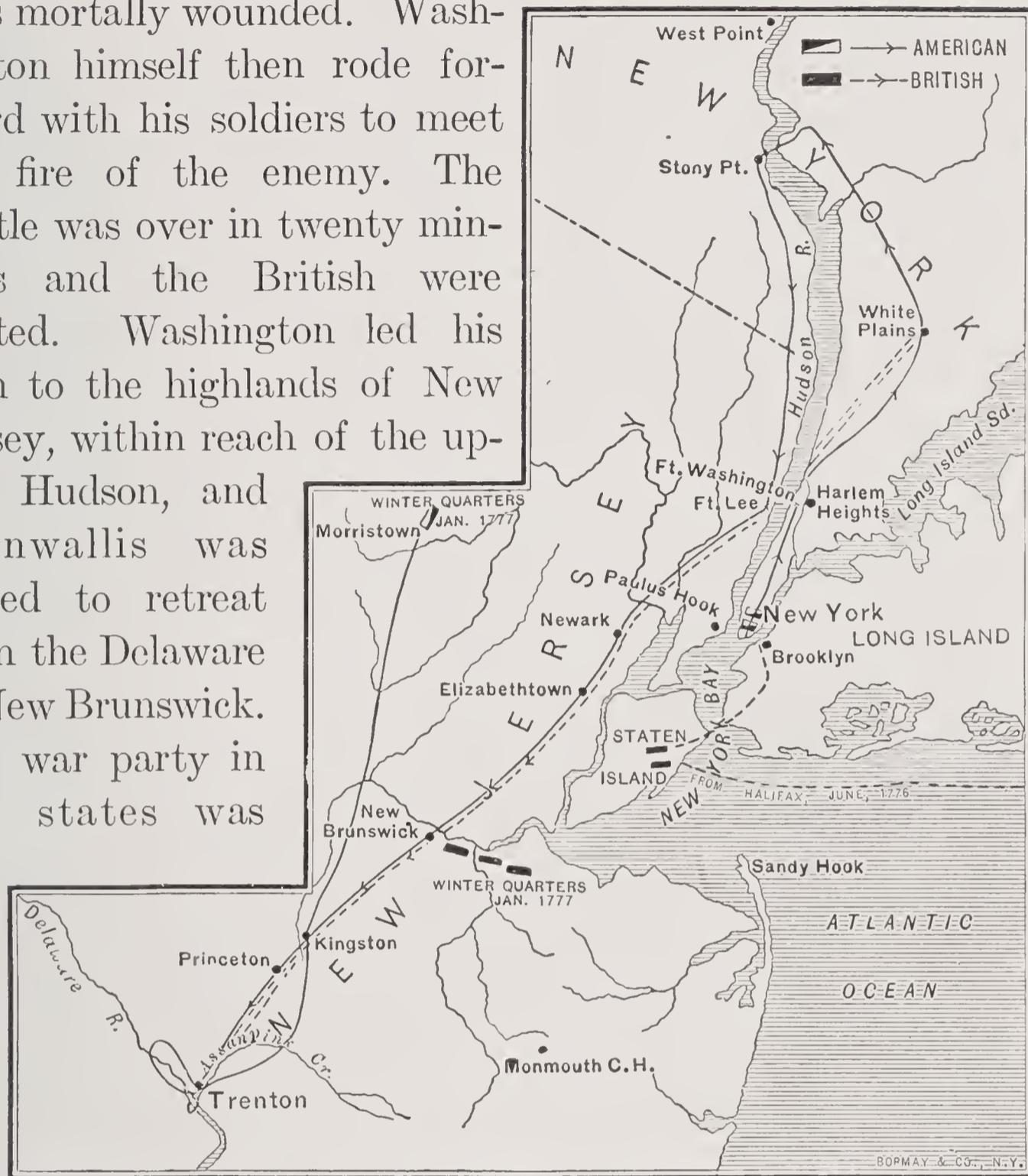
western banks of the Delaware. Far to the northward, Wayne was holding Ticonderoga with a small force, but Philadelphia was threatened, and Newport, Rhode Island, was occupied by the British. Despair reigned almost everywhere in the thirteen states, except in the heart of Washington. He was never despondent, and yet he faced the truth of the situation. "The game is pretty nearly up," he wrote on the 18th of December.<sup>1</sup>

Washington prepared to cross the Delaware, on the night of December 25th, to attack the Hessians encamped in Trenton. A fierce snowstorm was beating upon his soldiers as they began the march, and the river was full of floating ice. Washington did not hesitate, but pushed his boats through the ice in the darkness, and started upon the further march of nine miles to Trenton, through a storm of sleet. The garrison was surprised, the commander was mortally wounded, and a thousand Hessians threw down their arms and surrendered. The battle of Trenton was won, and the cause of the Revolution was saved. This victory brought new courage into the hearts of the people.

**171. The Battle of Princeton. 1777.**—Washington collected all of his troops at Trenton to withstand a British force of 8,000 men, which was now advancing from New Brunswick under the command of Lord Cornwallis. The latter expected to hem in the Americans between the Assanpink and the Delaware River, and at nightfall on January 2, 1777, he said: "At last we have run down the old fox and we shall bag him in the morning." He was right only in likening Washington to a fox. During the night Washington's troops moved around Cornwallis's flank and at sunrise (January 3) fell upon the British troops at Princeton. General Mercer, who led the American advance,

<sup>1</sup> The soldiers continued to return home, and Washington declared that on the first of January there would be left to him "five regiments from Virginia, Smallwood's from Maryland, a small part of Rawlin's [and] Hand's from Pennsylvania, a part of Ward's from Connecticut and the German Battalion, comprising in the whole at this time from fourteen to fifteen hundred effective men." Reënforcements came, however, from Schuyler's New York army and from the troops left behind in New Jersey under Charles Lee.

was mortally wounded. Washington himself then rode forward with his soldiers to meet the fire of the enemy. The battle was over in twenty minutes and the British were routed. Washington led his men to the highlands of New Jersey, within reach of the upper Hudson, and Cornwallis was forced to retreat from the Delaware to New Brunswick. The war party in the states was



THE CAMPAIGNS ABOUT NEW YORK AND NEW JERSEY.

made stronger by these winter victories. The Marquis de Lafayette<sup>1</sup> was influenced by the news to sail from France to America, and the French government prepared to aid the struggling commonwealths.

### 172. The Double British Campaign in the Middle States.

<sup>1</sup> The Marquis de Lafayette (1757-1834) came from France to Philadelphia when twenty years of age and offered his services in the army as a volunteer without pay. He was made major-general and took part in the battles of Brandywine, Monmouth and Yorktown. After the surrender of Cornwallis in 1781 he returned to France, and there he held many prominent positions. He visited the United States in 1784 and in 1824. On his third visit he was received with the greatest enthusiasm and public honors.

1777.—Washington's army spent the winter (1776-1777) at Morristown, New Jersey. His troops were poorly supplied with food, clothing and arms. So many of his men returned home that in May, 1777, he had only 7,000 soldiers, all from New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland and Virginia.



*Lafayette*

The British still held fast to the threefold plan of capturing the State of New York. Burgoyne took Carleton's place and made ready to advance southward from Canada. Howe expected to move up the Hudson to meet Burgoyne at Albany, but he was persuaded by Charles Lee to add another campaign to the general plan. When Lee became a prisoner in the hands of the British, he gained Howe's ear and convinced him that the capture of the "rebel capital," Philadelphia, would end the war. Howe accepted this view, and in-

stead of moving northward, moved his army southward in ships to the Chesapeake Bay.

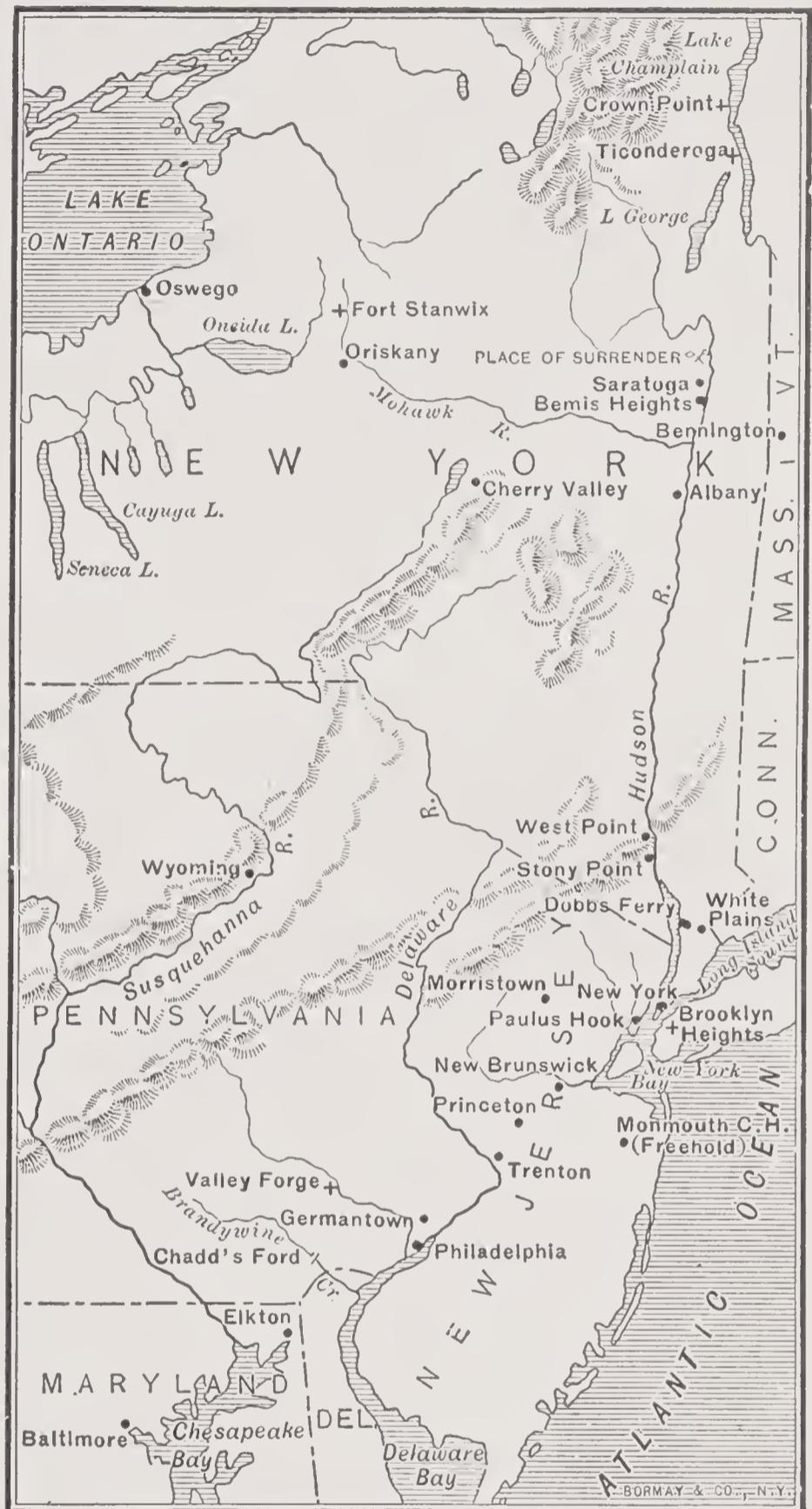
Howe's force of 18,000 British troops marched from the head of the Bay toward Philadelphia, but Washington made a stand with 11,000 men<sup>1</sup> at Chadd's Ford on the **Brandywine Creek**. The Americans were forced from the field and the British pitched their tents in Germantown. On the 4th of October, in the early morning, Washington advanced to attack them, but a dense fog caused the attack to fail. Washington then went into quarters for the winter at Valley Forge near Philadelphia.

Burgoyne captured Ticonderoga, New York, in July, 1777, and marched southward from that point with some 8,000 men.

<sup>1</sup> Six regiments from North Carolina joined Washington at this juncture; also "Light-Horse Harry" Lee's cavalry from Virginia.

Five hundred savage Indians were in his army. He was opposed by Schuyler, who was assisted by Arnold and Morgan. At **Bennington**, a village in Vermont, Stark's militia surrounded Burgoyne's German troops (August 16) and captured the whole force of one thousand men.

On the third of August, St. Leger's British force laid siege to Fort Stanwix in western New York. The Germans of the Mohawk Valley, loyal to the American cause, marched under Nicholas Herkimer to relieve the fort. They were attacked by Tories and Mohawk Indians, under Joseph Brant, at **Oriskany**, but after a bloody fight the Germans defeated the Indians, and St. Leger retreated from the Mohawk Valley. Another part of the British plan of campaign thus ended in failure.



THE CAMPAIGNS IN THE MIDDLE STATES.

**173. Burgoyne's Surrender. 1777.**—On August 19, 1777, Horatio Gates was placed in charge of Schuyler's army. Schuyler, however, had already broken Burgoyne's strength. The latter crossed the Hudson and attacked the Americans at Bemis Heights on the 19th of September, but Arnold and Morgan checked the British advance. On October 7, 1777, at Freeman's Farm, Burgoyne attempted to march around the American left wing, but Arnold and Morgan crushed both flanks of the British

army. Burgoyne's forces were surrounded, and Morgan's sharpshooters pressed the siege at **Saratoga** until Burgoyne surrendered on the 17th of October. The entire British campaign thus proved a failure. The strategy and courage of General Washington won back the Middle states, and left the British only Philadelphia, New York City and Newport.

**174. The French Alliance. 1778.**—The eyes of the French people were fixed with interest upon the struggle in America.



EARLY REVOLUTION-  
ARY FLAGS.

The Liberty Flag was used particularly in South Carolina.

Louis XVI. hoped to recover for France the lost empire of the Mississippi Basin, and with this in view, he was ready to aid the colonies to defeat England. On February 6, 1778, treaties of commerce and alliance between the United States and France were signed. France acknowledged the independence of the states, a French fleet was sent to help the Americans, and Spain and Holland were also drawn into the war against the British. A number of Frenchmen generously offered their personal services to Washington. The most prominent among these was Lafayette.

**175. The Decline of the Continental Congress. 1777, 1778.**—After the Declaration of Independence, the Continental Congress was expected to act as a central war-committee, but it failed completely. It organized on paper an army of 80,000 men and asked the state legislatures to raise them, but the soldiers were never enlisted. Most of the men of ability were either in the army or in the state legislatures. Petty disputes, based for the most part upon sectional jealousies, took up the time of Congress. Bad management and indifference marked nearly all of its work, and frequently no more than ten or twelve members attended the sessions.

Congress decided to supply the need of a currency by making paper money. More than \$240,000,000 were issued, but these paper notes soon lost all value.

Robert Morris,<sup>1</sup> a banker in Philadelphia, secured the sum of \$50,000 in gold and silver, and used this money to keep Washington's men in the army during the winter of 1776-77. Morris gave a large part of his private fortune to support the American cause.

**176. The Army at Valley Forge. 1777, 1778.**—When Washington led his army into winter quarters in December, 1777, the roadway upon which the soldiers made the journey was marked with blood from their bare, frost-bitten feet. The camp was located at Valley Forge, twenty miles from Philadelphia. The men slept in the snow until rude log-huts were built. Many were without sufficient clothing, and very few of them had even blankets or straw. The only food given to the troops was potatoes, salt fish and a small quantity of flour. They starved through lack of the flour and meat which were stored in warehouses not far away. The agents appointed by Congress did



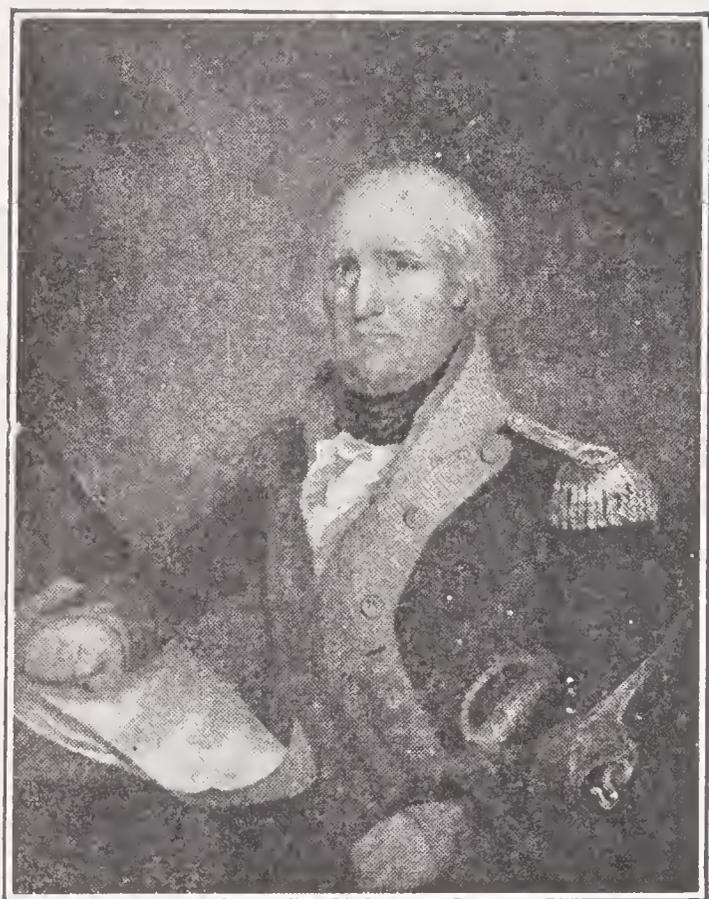
A CONTINENTAL BILL.

not have the energy even to secure wagons for hauling supplies. Moreover, there were no medicines for the sick. With heroic endurance the American soldiers bore the sufferings that hunger and cold and sickness brought upon them. Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer in the American service, spent the winter in drilling Washington's men in the manual of arms, and he changed

<sup>1</sup> Robert Morris (1734-1806) came to the colonies from England at the age of fifteen, and later became a successful merchant in Philadelphia. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence; was appointed Superintendent of Finance by the Continental Congress in 1781; was a member of the Federal Convention of 1787, and afterwards represented Pennsylvania in the United States Senate.

an army of raw recruits into skilled soldiers. Washington himself endured with his men the hardships of camp life at Valley Forge.

**177. War on the Southwest Frontier. 1776.**—As early as June, 1776, British agents incited the Cherokee Indians to ravage



GEORGE ROGERS CLARK.

the borders of Georgia, the Carolinas and Virginia. On the 20th of July, 1776, a body of riflemen defeated the Indians at Island Flats on the Holston River in Tennessee. Robertson and Sevier successfully defended Wautauga Fort, in Tennessee. In the autumn of 1776, Williamson, of South Carolina, and Colonel Rutherford, of North Carolina, united their forces west of the Carolina mountains and destroyed the crops and villages of the Cherokees. In October, Colonel Chris-

tian led 2,000 Virginians to the French Broad River in North Carolina, and laid waste the Indian villages. These three expeditions saved the whole of the southwest for the States.

**178. On the Northwest Frontier. 1777-1779.**—Hamilton, the British commander at Detroit, sent out Indians and British soldiers (1777-1778) against the Virginians dwelling on the Ohio. **George Rogers Clark**,<sup>1</sup> a surveyor in that region, under authority given him by Governor Patrick Henry of Virginia, started down the Ohio in flatboats with 180 riflemen in May, 1778. He led them across the Illinois prairie and captured the posts of Kaskaskia and Cahokia. In February, 1779, Clark led 170 riflemen from Kaskaskia toward Vincennes, across wide

<sup>1</sup> George Rogers Clark (1752-1818) was born in Eastern Virginia, but in early life went to the Kentucky country. Soon after the Revolution began he conceived the plan of capturing the British forts in the region between the Ohio and Mississippi rivers, and through his bold determination he succeeded. His exploits won him the title of "the Hannibal of the West."

rivers and through lands submerged in water. Hamilton defended Vincennes, but Clark captured the place. In April, Isaac Shelby led 1,000 Carolinian riflemen down the Tennessee River. They journeyed in canoes to the homes of the Chickamauga Indians and laid them waste. In May, Bowman with 300 Kentuckians destroyed the Shawnee town near Chillicothe. These victories placed the Northwestern territory under Vir-



BOONE'S TRAIL (1775) AND CLARK'S CAMPAIGN (1778-79).

ginia's control. It had already been organized by Virginia, in 1778, as the county of Illinois.

**179. Skirmishing in the North. 1778.**—The news of the approach of a French fleet, in the summer of 1778, caused the British to withdraw from Philadelphia and move across New Jersey to the defense of New York. Washington followed them. On the 28th of June, at **Monmouth**, Charles Lee, who had been released from prison in exchange for a British officer, was sent to strike the flank of the British column. He withdrew his men, however, before the face of the enemy. Washington met Lee and rebuked him, and then rallied the troops, but the British escaped to New York. Lee was brought to trial and suspended

from the army for one year, and was afterwards dismissed from the service.

Washington drew his army partially around New York, from Morristown to West Point. He then decided to attempt the capture of the British garrison at Newport, Rhode Island. Sullivan collected a body of New England militia to coöperate with the French fleet against Newport; but a storm scattered the ships and 3,000 of the militia went home to gather the harvests, so the whole expedition ended in failure (July–August, 1778).

**Indian Massacres.** On the 3rd of July, 1778, some 1,200 Tories and Seneca Indians entered the Wyoming Valley in western Pennsylvania, where 3,000 Connecticut pioneers were established on the Susquehanna. Almost the entire colony was slaughtered with horrible cruelties. On the 10th of November, 1778, Tories and Indians destroyed the village of Cherry Valley in central New York.

In the summer of 1779, Sullivan led 5,000 men into the Mohawk and Susquehanna valleys, routed the foe, and laid waste the entire Indian country of western New York.

**180. Stony Point and Paulus Hook. 1779.**—Early in 1779 Sir Henry Clinton, who had succeeded General Howe, seized Stony Point, a fortress commanding the Hudson below West Point. Connecticut was thus laid open to British raids. In the early morning of July 16, 1779, Anthony Wayne led a bayonet charge and captured Stony Point. Paulus Hook, a neck of land extending into the Hudson, where Jersey City is now located, was shortly afterwards captured by “Light-Horse Harry” Lee, of Virginia.

**Arnold’s Treason. 1780.**—The year 1780 was marked by the treason of Benedict Arnold, a native of Connecticut. Arnold did more than any other man to win the victory over Burgoyne at Saratoga. Congress failed, however, to promote him for these worthy services. Arnold’s moral nature was weak; he needed money and he desired to get even with Congress. In July, 1780, he was given command of the fortress at West Point. Arnold at once offered to surrender the place to the British General Clinton. Major John André, Clinton’s agent in the affair, met Arnold near Stony Point and made arrangements for the surrender. André started back to New York in disguise, but was arrested, and papers were found upon him which revealed the treacherous scheme. André was hanged as a spy, but Arnold escaped to New York and received

for his treason the sum of \$30,000 and the office of Brigadier General in the British army. At the close of the war he sought refuge in England.

### Questions.

1. What was the British plan for the conquest of New York? Describe the Long Island campaign.

2. What was the situation in the first part of December, 1776? How did Washington change this situation by the battles of Trenton and Princeton?

3. Describe Howe's campaign of 1777. Describe the defeat of the British at Bennington, at Oriskany and at Saratoga.

4. What causes led the French government to assist the Americans?

5. What were the causes of the decline of the Continental Congress? What was the character of the money issued by Congress?

6. Describe the sufferings of the American army at Valley Forge.

7. Why did the British use Indians in the war against the Americans? Tell how the Southern states saved the whole of the Southwest.

8. Tell how Clark saved the whole of the Northwest.

9. Describe the battle of Monmouth. Why did Sullivan fail to capture Newport? Describe the massacre by Indians in the Wyoming Valley.

10. Who captured Stony Point and Paulus Hook? What was the importance of these captures? Describe Arnold's treason.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Long Island, Brooklyn, East River, Harlem Heights, White Plains, Fort Washington, West Point, New Brunswick, Princeton, Trenton, Morristown, Philadelphia, Germantown, Chadd's Ford, Valley Forge, Bennington, Mohawk Valley, Oriskany, Saratoga, Bemis Heights; trace Holston River, Delaware River, Catawba River, Ohio River, Broad River, Wabash River; locate Kaskaskia, Cahokia, Vincennes, Chillicothe, Monmouth, Newport, Wyoming Valley, Stony Point and Paulus Hook (Jersey City).

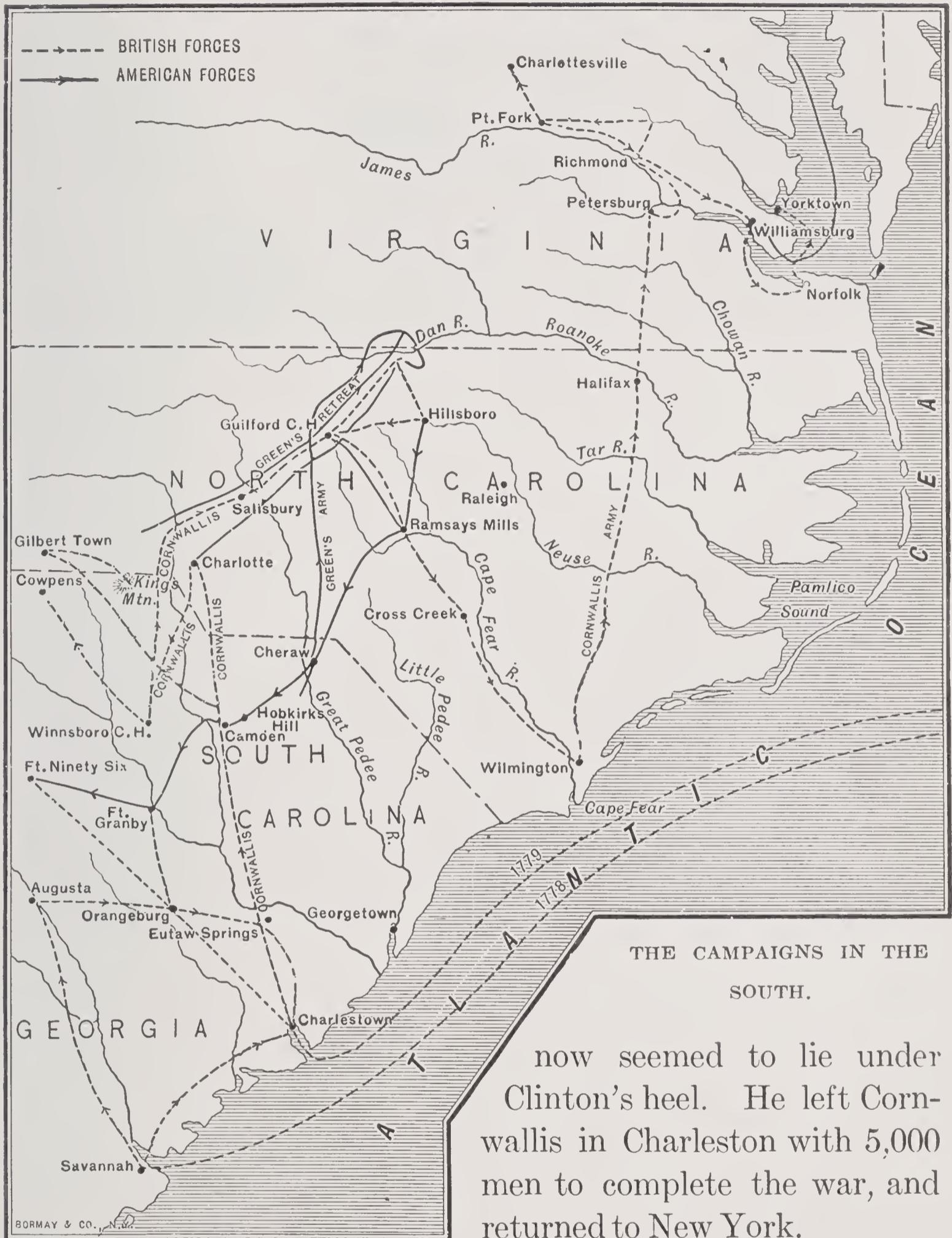
## CHAPTER XXI.

## THE CLOSING CAMPAIGNS OF THE WAR.

1778-1783.

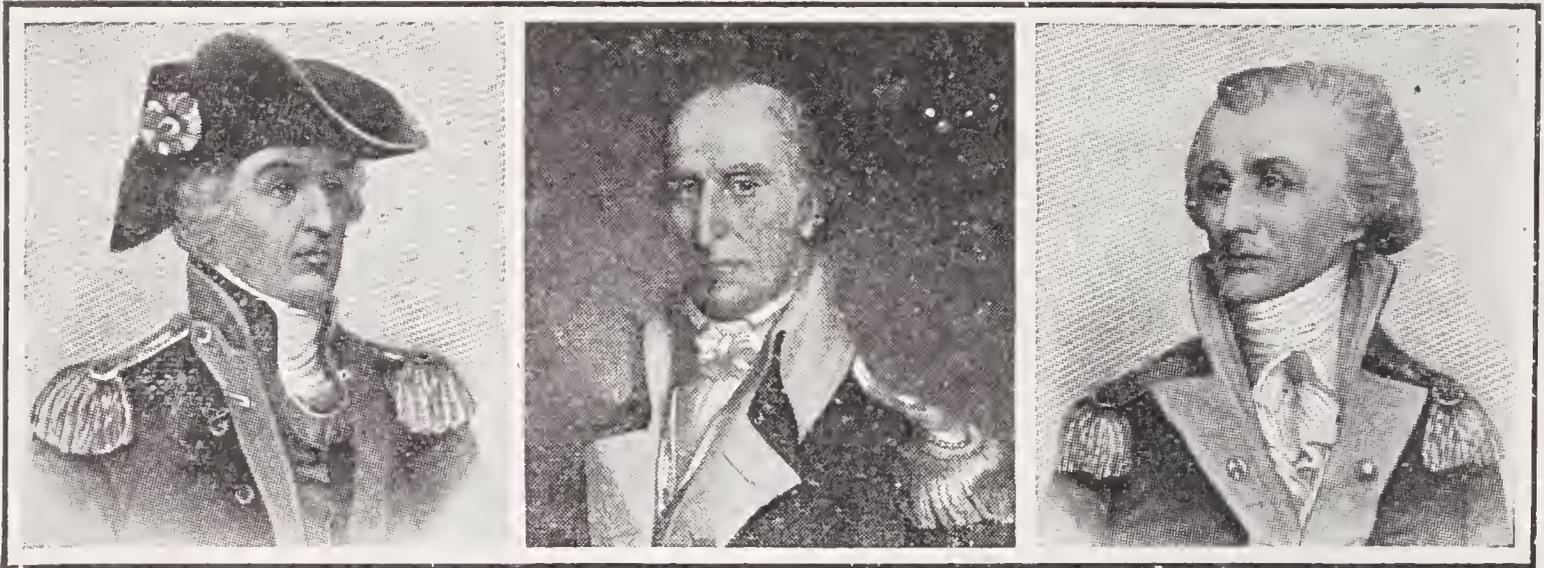
**181. The South the Final Theater of the War. 1778-1781.**—On the 17th of February, 1778, Lord North proposed that Parliament should give up all claim to the right of raising a revenue in the American colonies. On the 11th of March, Parliament agreed to this proposition. North's offer, however, came to nothing, for Congress would not listen to the three commissioners whom Parliament sent. England then decided to stand on the defensive in New York, and shifted the scene of active operations to the frontiers and to the South. During the last period of the war, from 1778 until 1781, the fighting was chiefly in the Carolinas, Georgia and Virginia, and on the western borders. In November, 1778, the French fleet sailed to the West Indies, Washington settled down to besiege New York, and Clinton sent 3,500 men under Archibald Campbell to Georgia. General Robert Howe, with 1,200 American militiamen, was unable to check Campbell's advance on Savannah, and the city was captured. Augusta was next seized. The British at once began to destroy property and to treat the people of Georgia with excessive cruelty. Two thousand patriots from North Carolina under Ashe marched to the aid of the Georgians. Pickens, with South Carolina riflemen, defeated a British detachment, but Ashe suffered defeat at Briar Creek, Georgia.

In September, 1779, the French fleet came from the West Indies, and coöperated with the American forces under Lincoln in an advance against Savannah. The attack failed and the French ships again disappeared. A British force of 11,000 men sailed from New York to aid their fleet in attacking Charleston. Lincoln defended the city with some 5,600 men. On the 12th of May, 1780, both the city and Lincoln's army were captured by the British, and the Carolinas and Georgia



now seemed to lie under Clinton's heel. He left Cornwallis in Charleston with 5,000 men to complete the war, and returned to New York.

**182. The Partisan Leaders. 1780.**—Cornwallis sent Tarleton with British cavalry to lay waste the country, but a number of heroes were ready to give battle in defense of their homes. Foremost among these were Francis Marion, Thomas Sumter, Andrew Pickens and William Bratton. These leaders concealed their small commands in the forests and swamps, and made sud-



FRANCIS MARION.

ANDREW PICKENS.

THOMAS SUMTER.

den attacks marked by swiftness and boldness.<sup>1</sup> This mode of fighting is usually called partisan warfare. Cornwallis's advance was greatly checked and his final retreat from the Carolinas was largely due to the resistance made by these partisan leaders.

The middle of August brought a serious defeat to the American cause. Much undeserved fame had come to Horatio Gates in connection with the surrender of Burgoyne, and, in 1780, he was sent to command the Southern forces. Cornwallis fell upon the front and flank of Gates's army at **Camden**, South Carolina, and defeated him (August 16) so severely that only about one thousand Americans were rallied at Hillsboro, North Carolina, from the wreck of the army. The partisan soldiers of South Carolina, however, made such fierce assaults against Cornwallis's outposts that he was unable to advance farther northward than Winnsboro, South Carolina.

**183. The Dark Period. 1780.**—The darkest hour of the Revolution was now at hand. Famine had reduced Washing-

<sup>1</sup> On the 12th of July, 1780, near Yorkville, Bratton destroyed an entire company of British cavalry commanded by Colonel Huck. In early August, Sumter attacked Rocky Mount and Hanging Rock, and at the latter point overcame an entire British regiment. On the 18th of August, Tarleton defeated Sumter at Fishing Creek. On the same day, however, at Musgrove's Mills in Western Carolina, James Williams routed a British force. On the 20th, Marion rescued 150 Maryland prisoners at Nelson's Ferry on the Santee.

ton's army in New Jersey to about 4,000, and two of his Connecticut regiments were in open mutiny. The money issued by Congress was worthless. In July, 1780, ten French vessels arrived at Newport with 6,000 soldiers, but a British fleet sailed to the mouth of Narragansett Bay and kept the French blockaded for an entire year. The closing days of September



*From the painting by Chappel.*

THE BATTLE OF CAMDEN.

brought the news of Arnold's treason. Deep gloom overshadowed the American cause.

**184. The Battle of King's Mountain. 1780.**—Cornwallis started (September 20) to enter North Carolina to complete the conquest of the South. He sent Ferguson with 200 British soldiers and 1,000 Tories to sweep through the western Carolinas. The men of Mecklenburg under Davie and Graham welcomed Cornwallis with rifle-shots. Cornwallis himself called the entire region about Charlotte "the hornet's nest." While he was sorely pressed, the column under Ferguson was destroyed by a body of mountain riflemen from South Carolina, North Carolina,

Tennessee and Virginia. About 1,000 men under the leadership of William Campbell came up with the British at King's Mountain.<sup>1</sup> Ferguson was slain, and his entire force was either killed or captured (October 7, 1780). It was a glorious victory. The tide of war was now completely turned and hope returned to the people of the States.

**185. The Winter Campaign. 1780, 1781.**—Cornwallis retreated to Winnsboro only to find Marion and Sumter ready to spring upon him. At Blackstock Hill, Sumter visited defeat upon Tarleton (November 20). On December 2, 1780, General Greene assumed command of the American army at Charlotte. He began his Carolina campaign by leading 11,000 men to the Pedee River, where Marion and "Light-Horse Harry" Lee began to operate against Cornwallis's line of communication with the coast.



GENERAL DANIEL MORGAN.

*Dan Morgan*

Morgan marched with 900 men westward to the foot of the mountains. Tarleton with 1,100 men marched against Morgan, and Cornwallis himself prepared to move northward into North Carolina. Morgan retired to a grazing ground on Broad River called **The Cowpens**, and there awaited Tarleton's attack. At sunrise, on January 17, 1781, the British made a vigorous onset. William Washington's horse-

men fell upon Tarleton's right flank. The aim of the veteran riflemen in Morgan's main line was deadly and Tarleton was

<sup>1</sup> The steep ridge called King's Mountain, about 1,700 feet in height, stands near the border line between the two Carolinas. Ferguson's camp was on the crest. The mountaineers attacked the fortress on three sides. As they moved forward the final order given to each man was that he should look carefully at the priming of his rifle and then go into the battle and fight until he died. The backwoodsmen fired from behind rocks and trees, and their aim was unerring.

routed. He himself escaped from the field with 270 men, but all the rest of his troops were killed or captured.

**186. Guilford Courthouse. 1781.**—Morgan moved at once into North Carolina, and crossed the Catawba River in advance of Cornwallis. Greene's army moved northward, at the same time, and joined Morgan. At Guilford Courthouse, on the morning of March 15, 1781, Greene drew up his 4,400 men in three lines of battle. Cornwallis sent some 2,200 regulars in desperate charges against Greene's position, but the British were met with desperate bravery. William Washington's cavalry made a brilliant charge, and Cornwallis was forced to stand on the defensive. At the close of the day the British continued to hold the field, but they dared not risk another battle, and could not even remain where they were. Cornwallis retired in haste to Wilmington on the coast, to secure supplies from his ships. He had lost the entire Carolina campaign.



GENERAL NATHANAEL GREENE.

**187. The Yorktown Campaign. 1781.**—The theater of war grew wide again in the year 1781, for it extended from the Savannah northward to the Hudson. On May 20, Cornwallis arrived in Petersburg, Virginia, with 5,000 veterans, after a month's weary march from Wilmington. Lafayette opposed him at Richmond with a small force.

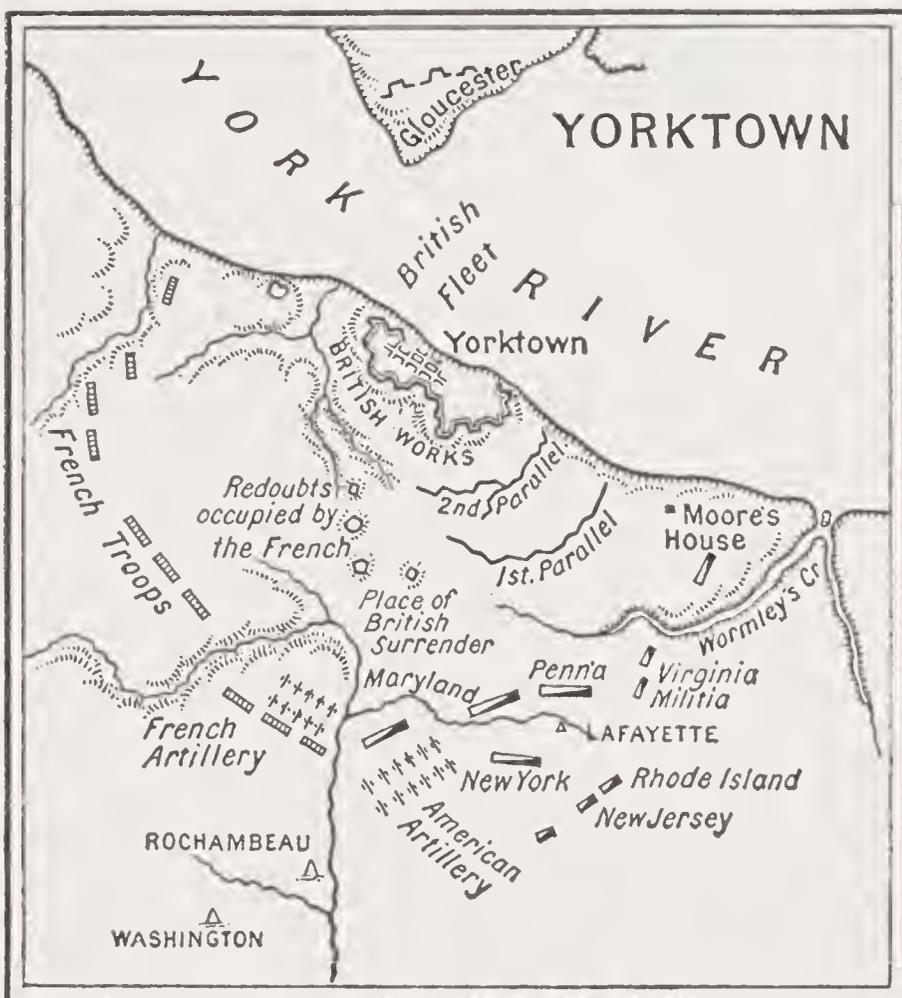
Meanwhile, Greene was marching southward. Lord Rawdon moved out of Camden, South Carolina, and defeated Greene at **Hobkirk's Hill**. Rawdon, however, was not strong enough to hold Camden, and retreated toward Charleston. The month of June closed with the highland country of the Carolinas under

Greene's control. On the 8th of September he attacked the British at **Eutaw Springs**, South Carolina, but Rawdon held his ground. Soon afterwards, however, Greene forced Rawdon's army into Charleston.

Cornwallis in Virginia sent Tarleton to Charlottesville to capture Jefferson and the state legislature, but they escaped. Cornwallis then moved into **Yorktown**, with about 7,000 men. Lafayette posted his men on Malvern Hill, below Richmond, and kept watch.

A double message reached General Washington near the middle of August. The first told him that Cornwallis was in Yorktown; the second carried him the news that a strong French fleet under Count De Grasse was on the way from the West Indies to Chesapeake Bay. Rochambeau's French soldiers had already marched from Newport to join Washington on the Hudson River. On August 19th, Washington started his army from the Hudson

toward Virginia, but at the same time he led Clinton to believe that an attack against New York City was intended. Onward through Philadelphia marched Washington's army, composed of 4,000 Frenchmen and 2,000 colonial soldiers. Down the Chesapeake they came in sailing-vessels to Yorktown, and, to his great joy, Washington found the French fleet already in the Bay.



Lafayette, reënforced by 3,000 French soldiers from the ships, moved down the peninsula between the James and the York rivers.

**188. The Surrender of Cornwallis. 1781.**—On September 26th, Washington had 16,000 men assembled before Yorktown. Escape for Cornwallis was cut off by land and by water. It was a brilliant movement on the part of Washington. The British army was in a trap. The British fleet sailed from New York to release Cornwallis, but the French fleet beat the English seamen near the Capes of Virginia. The Americans opened fire upon Yorktown with seventy heavy guns, and on the night of October 14th, two British redoubts were stormed and Cornwallis was forced to surrender.

On October 19, 1781, Cornwallis's men marched out of Yorktown, and laid down their arms, while the band played the melody, "The World Turned Upside Down." The war in behalf of independence was practically over. When Lord North in England heard the news of the surrender of Cornwallis, he threw up his hands in anguish and cried out wildly, "It is all over! It is all over!" North resigned the office of Prime Minister, and Parliament determined to make peace.

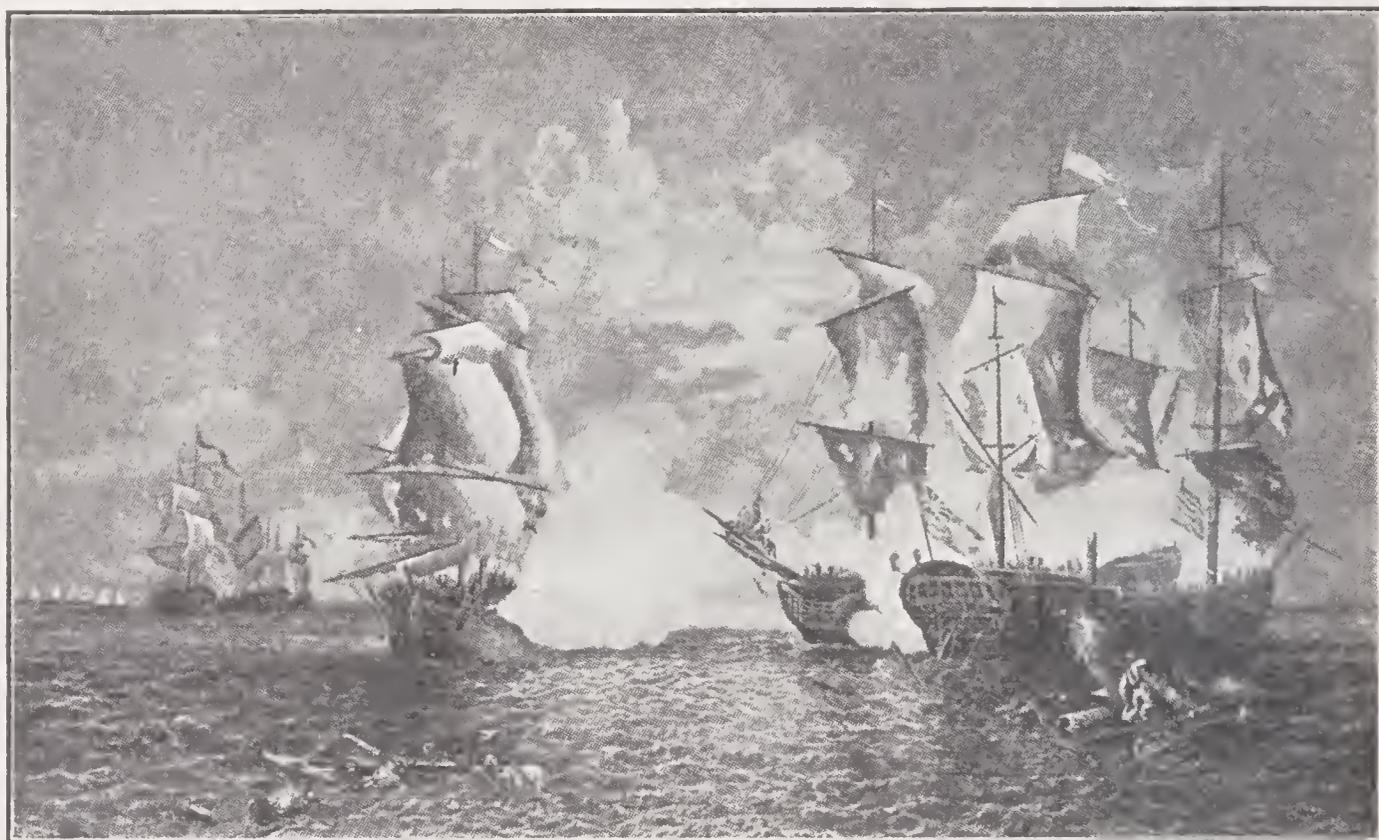


PAUL JONES.

**189. Final Movements in the South. 1781, 1782.**—From Yorktown, Washington led his army northward again, to the Hudson. The soldiers were filled with the spirit of insurrection, for Congress was not able to furnish pay for them. After the surrender of Cornwallis, Washington sent some 750 Pennsylvanians to aid Greene in the South, and Wayne was detached to lead 600 Southern riflemen into Georgia. On the 11th of July, Savannah was abandoned by the British troops, and in December, 1782, they were forced to evacuate Charleston.

**190. The Navy of the Revolution.**—The Continental Congress made little attempt to build up a navy during the Revolution. Twenty small frigates and twenty sloops constituted the fleet which was sent to sea throughout the war.

The most daring and successful of the fighters on the sea was **John Paul Jones**.<sup>1</sup> In 1778 he sailed into the Irish Channel with the *Ranger*, of eighteen guns, and within twenty-eight days he destroyed four vessels, set fire to the shipping in the port of



THE COMBAT BETWEEN THE "BONHOMME RICHARD" AND THE  
"SERAPIS."

Whitehaven in England, and captured in a fight the British schooner *Drake*, of twenty guns.

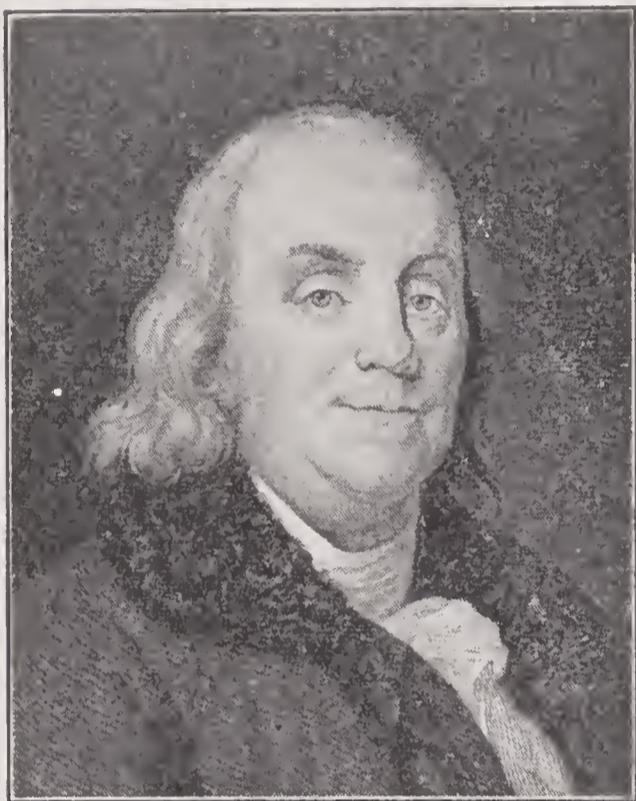
In 1779 Jones sailed from France with five vessels around Ireland and Scotland into the North Sea, off the eastern coast of England. Near Flamborough Head he fell in with the British frigate *Serapis*, of forty-four guns. Jones ran his own ship, the *Bonhomme Richard*, of thirty-two guns, into the *Serapis* and

<sup>1</sup> John Paul Jones (1747–1792), a native of Scotland, came to Virginia in 1773, and two years later was made lieutenant in the American navy. He distinguished himself by winning several victories during the Revolution; after the war he left America to enter the French navy, and later he joined the Russian navy.

lashed the two vessels together. After a desperate fight of three hours the *Serapis* surrendered. The *Bonhomme Richard* sank the next morning and Jones sailed the *Serapis* into a Dutch port.

**191. The Treaty of Peace. 1783.**—Benjamin Franklin,<sup>1</sup> John Jay and John Adams went to Paris to negotiate a treaty with England. They were instructed to act in conjunction with the French government. Jay, however, suspected that France wished to prevent the expansion of the States beyond the Alleghanies, and Adams held the same view. Hence the commissioners entered into direct negotiations with England.

The treaty between Great Britain and the United States was signed at Paris, September 3, 1783. The thirteen states were acknowledged as free and independent.<sup>2</sup> Canada was retained by England, and



*Benj. Franklin*

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Franklin (1706–1790) was born in Boston, but at seventeen settled in Philadelphia, where he became a printer. He was active in colonial affairs, and preceding the Revolution was agent for Pennsylvania in England, where he ably defended the colonies. He was a member of the second Continental Congress and of the committee that drafted the Declaration of Independence. As ambassador to France, he concluded the important treaty of 1778, and in 1783 he helped to effect the treaty of peace with England. He was always interested in science and education, and made some notable achievements in these lines.

<sup>2</sup> The first article of the Treaty ran as follows:—“His Britannic Majesty acknowledges the said United States, viz., New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia, to be free, sovereign and independent states; that he treats with them as such, and for himself, his heirs and successors, relinquishes all claims to the government, property and territorial rights of the same, and every part thereof.”

Florida was ceded to Spain. The southern boundary of the United States was marked by the 31st parallel of latitude, and the northern boundary ran from the point where the 45th parallel crosses the St. Lawrence, along the channel of that river and thence through the Great Lakes to the northwest corner of the Lake of the Woods. The Thirteen States were to extend from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River as their western boundary.

**Washington's Retirement. 1783.**—On November 25, 1783, the main portion of the British army sailed away from New York. On December 4th, General Washington bade farewell to his officers in New York City; at Annapolis he formally gave up his command to Congress (December 23), and on the following day he returned to Mount Vernon. He declined to receive any pay for his eight years of personal service.

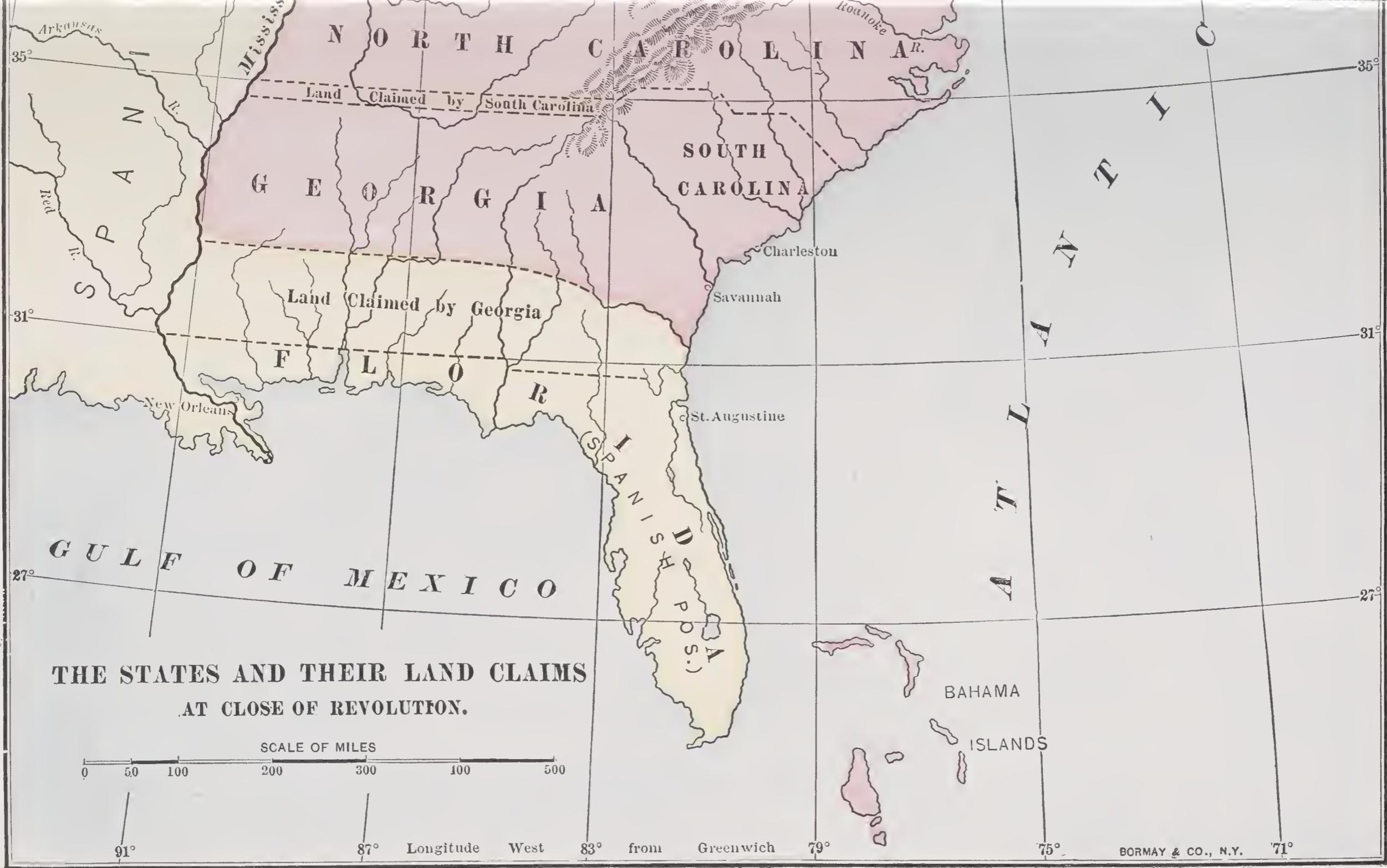
### Questions.

1. What was the British plan of operations in 1778 and afterwards? What places in the South were captured by the British?
2. Describe the work of the partisan leaders in the Carolinas.
3. Describe the battles at Camden, King's Mountain, Cowpens and Guilford.
4. Describe Greene's closing campaign in South Carolina. Describe the march of Cornwallis from Wilmington, North Carolina, to Yorktown, Virginia. How did Washington assemble an army and a fleet for the siege of Yorktown?
5. What was the effect of the victory at Yorktown?
6. How large was the American navy during the Revolution? Describe the work of John Paul Jones.
7. When was peace made between Great Britain and the United States? How many states did George III. recognize as independent? What were the boundaries of the United States according to the Treaty of 1783?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Savannah, Charleston, Port Royal, Camden, Hillsborough, Charlotte, King's Mountain, Cowpens, Winnsboro, Guilford, Hobkirk's Hill, Eutaw Springs, Petersburg, Charlottesville, Richmond, Yorktown.





Arkansas

Mississippi

N O R T H C A R O L I N A

Roanoke

Land Claimed by South Carolina

G E O R G I A

S O U T H C A R O L I N A

Charleston

Savannah

Land Claimed by Georgia

F L O R I D A

St. Augustine

S P A N I S H I S L A N D S (S. I. P. S. A.)

New Orleans

G U L F O F M E X I C O

A T L A N T I C

BAHAMA

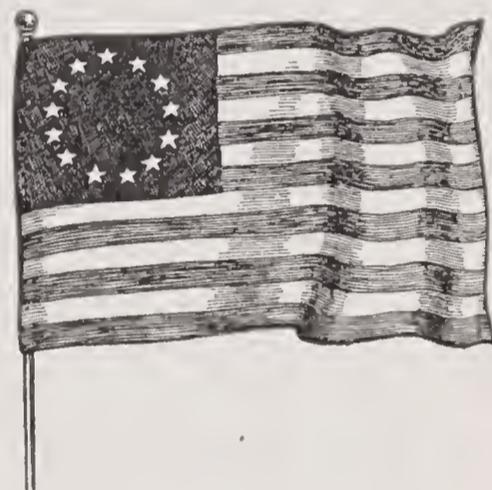
ISLANDS

## CHAPTER XXII.

## THE THIRTEEN CONFEDERATE STATES.

1781-1789.

**192. The Articles of Confederation. 1777.**—On May 15, 1776, the Virginia Convention instructed the delegates of that state in the Continental Congress to propose (1) the announcement of the fact that the states were free and independent, and (2) the formation of a confederacy by the states. The first part of this suggestion of the Virginia Convention was adopted by Congress, as we have already seen, in the form of the Declaration of Independence. In response to the second part, Congress appointed a committee to draft a plan for a confederation of the states. This committee drew up thirteen Articles of Confederation, in November, 1777. The central feature in this document was the separate “sovereignty, freedom and independence” of each of the states. The Articles were to become binding only when agreed to by the legislatures of all the states, and were, thereafter, to be changed only when every state gave its consent.<sup>1</sup>

THE AMERICAN FLAG AS  
ADOPTED IN 1777.

A central Congress was established, consisting of seven delegates from each state. In this Congress each state was allowed to cast only one vote. Only the general interests of the states, “their common defense, the security of their liberty, and their mutual and general welfare,” were to be regulated by the Congress.

<sup>1</sup>The states separately entered into a “league of friendship”; the several state legislatures alone could levy taxes, enlist soldiers, place garrisons in forts, maintain a regular militia, and impose duties upon commerce.

**193. The Adoption of the Articles of Confederation.**

**1781.**—The Articles of Confederation were not adopted by all of the states until 1781, because of Maryland's delay in agreeing to them. Six of the states—Massachusetts, Connecticut, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia—claimed that their old charters made them the owners of the lands between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi.<sup>1</sup> Maryland refused to adopt the Articles unless these western lands were handed over to the joint ownership of all the states. In 1780 New York surrendered her vague claim, based upon the Indian Treaty. In January, 1781, Virginia yielded her claim to the country north of the Ohio. Maryland accepted Virginia's cession, and approved the Articles of Confederation on the 1st of March, 1781. The Congress of the Confederacy, therefore, met for the first time, to take the place of the Continental Congress, on the 2d of March, 1781.

**194. The Decline of the Power of Congress. 1781-1788.**—

From 1776 until 1781, the individual states enjoyed complete sovereignty. Each of the thirteen commonwealths was a self-governing republic, politically as separate and independent as Holland or Denmark. Under the Articles of Confederation (1781) each state continued to retain this independence, and its legislature exercised supreme authority without the obligation of accepting any advice from Congress.

The Congress of the Confederation had no authority to levy a tax. In 1781, when its paper currency no longer possessed any value and it had no money with which to pay its debts, Congress proposed to lay a tax of five per cent. on imports. The request was refused because Rhode Island would not agree to it. Washington's soldiers, encamped at Newburg on the Hudson, after the close of the war, began to clamor for their pay, and some pro-

<sup>1</sup> New York claimed the Ohio Valley by virtue of a deed given by the Iroquois Indians. Virginia claimed the Northwest on account of the charter of 1609, and also because of the conquest of all that region by Clark's Virginia army in 1778-79.

posed (1782) to make Washington a king in order to enforce their claim. Something was even said by the soldiers about using force to secure pay for their services. A personal appeal, however, made by Washington himself, led the soldiers to reject the unwise proposal, and Congress at once issued certificates to the men, promising five years' full pay. In spite of these promises, however, some eighty soldiers of the Pennsylvania line broke out of their camp, entered Philadelphia, and with leveled muskets drove Congress from the city. Congress went first to Princeton, then to Annapolis, and finally settled in New York.<sup>1</sup>



WASHINGTON'S HEADQUARTERS AT NEWBURG,  
NEW YORK.

When Congress asked the state legislatures to carry out that part of the Treaty of Peace which allowed the Tories to recover their estates, a flat refusal was the result. South Carolina alone heeded the recommendation of Congress. By the treaty, also, Congress promised that private debts due to British merchants should be paid. Congress tried to carry out this pledge, but the state legislatures prevented it. On account of this policy Great Britain would not give up the military posts on the western frontier, but held them till 1795.

<sup>1</sup> After 1783, Congress was rarely attended by as many as twenty-five members, although it was entitled to ninety-one. Delaware and Georgia were not represented at all, and Rhode Island virtually seceded from the confederation (1786). Twenty delegates, representing seven states, accepted the resignation of Washington as commander-in-chief. Twenty-three members from eleven states ratified the Treaty of Peace with Great Britain.

**The Extension of Civil and Religious Freedom. 1781-1789.**—During the years immediately following the Revolution, many of the states adopted more liberal forms of government, and more people were allowed to vote than in colonial times.

The states were also passing laws against the extension of slavery. Beginning at an early period the Virginia legislature made many attempts to prohibit the further importation of slaves from Africa, but the kings of England vetoed the laws that were enacted against this traffic. Delaware forbade the further introduction of slaves in 1776, Virginia in 1778, Maryland in 1783, and New Jersey in 1786. North Carolina, in 1786, imposed a duty of about \$25.00 each upon all negroes brought into that state. In 1780 Pennsylvania passed a gradual emancipation law. New Hampshire followed this example in 1783; Connecticut and Rhode Island in 1784; a few years later slavery was entirely abolished in Massachusetts.

Religious freedom was secured during the Revolution by the action of some of the individual states. In Massachusetts, New Hampshire and Connecticut, the Congregational Church was supported by taxes; this law remained in force in Connecticut until 1818, and in Massachusetts until 1833. Rhode Island, Pennsylvania and Delaware bestowed equal privileges upon all denominations. In New York, New Jersey, Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolina, and Georgia, the Episcopal Church was established by law, but after 1776 taxes were no longer collected from dissenters for the support of the Episcopal form of worship. Jefferson's bill to give all denominations equal religious rights, and abolishing all religious tests in connection with the holding of civil offices, was passed, through the influence of Madison, by the Virginia legislature in 1785. This was the first law passed in our country entirely separating church and state.

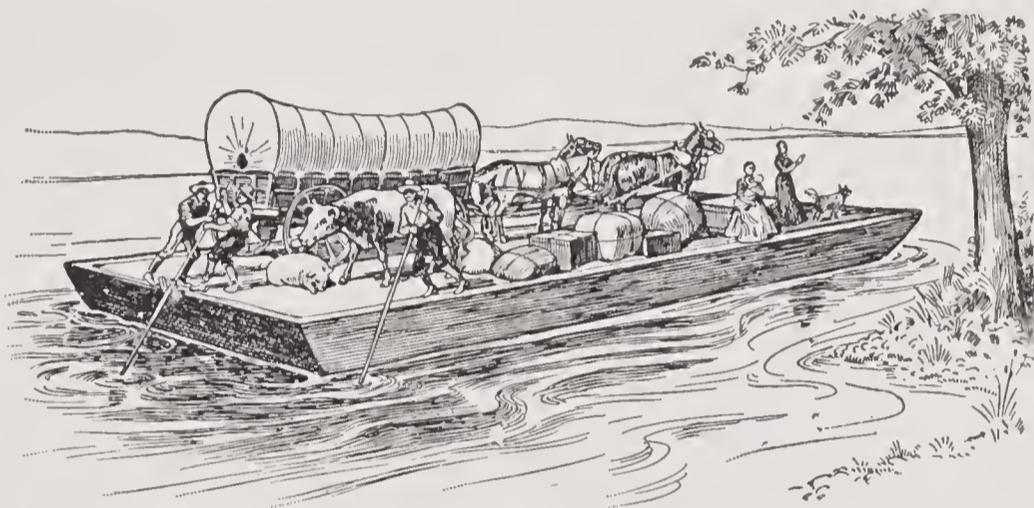
**195. Disputes Concerning Commerce Among the States. 1783-1789.**—Holland (1782) and Prussia (1786) made commercial treaties with the Confederation of States, but the other European powers refused to make any agreement. They declared that thirteen separate treaties would be necessary.

England (1783) determined to enforce her old navigation laws by declaring that trade with her colonies must be carried in British ships. Some of the states replied to England's policy by imposing heavy taxes, called tariff duties, upon goods brought into their ports from other countries. This course led to commercial strife among the states. Connecticut opened her ports to the free entry of British ships, but, at the same time, she laid a tax upon goods imported from Massachusetts. New York laid heavy taxes upon vegetables and poultry brought in

from New Jersey, and upon the firewood brought from Connecticut. New Jersey retaliated with a tax of \$1,800 a year upon the light-house which New York erected at Sandy Hook on Jersey soil, and Connecticut suspended all commercial intercourse with New York.

**196. Settling the Ohio Valley. 1783-1796.**—After the country beyond the Alleghanies was opened up by the treaty of

1783, great numbers of home-builders began moving westward. Carolinians and Virginians in throngs passed through the mountain gaps into Tennessee and Ken-



PIONEERS TRAVELING BY FLATBOAT.

tucky.<sup>1</sup> Other pioneers began building cabins along the northern bank of the Ohio, even as far west as the Wabash River and the plains of Illinois.

This advance brought the pioneers into contact with the northwestern Indians. The British garrisons holding the forts along the lake frontiers gave arms and ammunition to the Indians and urged them to resist the coming of the Americans. Savage warfare raged for some years along the borders of Pennsylvania, Virginia, Kentucky and Tennessee.

The Kentuckians felt that they were far removed from the seat of the Virginia government, and at a convention held in Danville, Kentucky (1785), they decided to organize a separate commonwealth. The Virginia legislature agreed to allow this

<sup>1</sup> The chief highway of western travel was the Ohio River. Great flatboats laden with families, household goods, wagons, horses and cattle, carried a multitude of settlers into Kentucky. In 1785 the population of Kentucky was estimated at more than 20,000, and towns were growing up at Louisville, Lexington, Harrodsburg, Boonsboro and St. Asaph's.

upon the condition that Congress should previously provide for the admission of Kentucky into the Confederation. Kentucky was not formed into a separate state, however, until 1792.

The people who occupied the territory now embraced in Tennessee held a convention at Jonesboro in August, 1784, and decided to form a separate and independent commonwealth. In 1785 the new **State of Franklin** began its career under John Sevier as governor. But the friendly policy of North Carolina soon caused the Tennessee people to abolish the State of Franklin and to renew their allegiance to North Carolina (1788). Settlers continued to pour into the country, and in 1796 it became the commonwealth of Tennessee.

**197. The Financial Condition of the Confederation. 1786-1789.**—The war debt resting upon the Confederation of States at the close of the Revolution was about \$170,000,000.



A PIONEER'S LOG CABIN.

Seven of the states issued a paper currency in the vain hope of paying their indebtedness. The Southern states received little injury from the system, but the currency brought disaster to Massachusetts and Rhode Island. Massachu-

setts was indebted to the Confederation to the amount of \$7,000,000. To meet all her debts taxation was made heavy, and the farming class demanded a paper currency as a relief measure. The legislature would not adopt this currency, and an armed rebellion against the state government was organized in western Massachusetts, under the lead of Daniel Shays, a former Revolutionary captain. The rebels were defeated and dispersed in 1787.

**198. Threats of Secession. 1786-1789.**—The Rhode Island legislature began to issue paper money in great volume in 1786; this currency soon had little value and a law was passed to compel men to receive it. Business came to a standstill, and the country people were arrayed against the people of the towns. Rhode Island, moreover, cut herself adrift from connection with the other states to such an extent that, in 1786, she declined any longer to send delegates to the Congress of the Confederation. She held no further governmental connection with the other commonwealths until 1790.

New Jersey refused to pay her part of the war debt incurred by Congress. Some of the states were ready to make treaties upon their own authority. There was a widespread sentiment in favor of three separate confederacies instead of one. A confederacy of New England states was proposed, because of trouble that arose concerning the Mississippi River. New England declared that unless the entire Southwest should be given to Spain in payment for trade advantages, the Eastern states were ready to secede and set up a confederacy of their own. On the other hand the settlers in Tennessee and Kentucky threatened to secede unless the Confederation should hold fast to the lower Mississippi region.

**199. The Ordinance of 1787.**—Congress adopted an ordinance, in 1787, for the government of the settlers in the Northwest.<sup>1</sup> The country between the Ohio and the Lakes was to be divided into not less than three, nor more than five states. The



THE GREAT SEAL OF THE  
UNITED STATES.

Adopted in 1782.

<sup>1</sup>In 1784 Congress had adopted a plan for the division of the Northwest Territory into ten states. Jefferson inserted a clause prohibiting negro slavery in the territory after the year 1800, but it failed of adoption. The entire ordinance became a dead letter, and no effort was made by Congress to enforce it.

ordinance provided that when any one of the proposed states contained 60,000 free inhabitants, it should be admitted into the Confederation "on an equal footing with the original states." Until that time, each proposed state was to be under the rule of a governor, secretary and three judges to be appointed by Congress. It was provided that there should be "neither slavery nor involuntary servitude" in the Northwest Territory, but that fugitive slaves escaping into this region should be returned. This prohibition of slavery was adopted by a Congress composed of eighteen members, of whom eleven were from the South.

**200. The Southwest Territory. 1787-1790.**—In 1787 South Carolina ceded to the Confederation a strip of territory between her western boundary and the Mississippi. It was provided that slaves should be held within the ceded district. In 1790 North Carolina ceded to the United States the region known as Tennessee. These two cessions were organized as the Southwest Territory. The ordinance for the government of this territory was similar to that drawn for the Northwest, with the exception that slavery was allowed in the Southwest.

### Questions.

1. What state proposed a confederation of states? When and how was this done? What were the Articles of Confederation? What was meant by the term "league of friendship"?

2. Why did Maryland at first refuse to enter the Confederation? What led her at last to ratify the articles?

3. How much power belonged to each of the states from 1776 to 1781? How much power was retained by each state when it entered the Confederation? What were the causes of the decline of the power of Congress? Why did Congress fail to carry out the treaty with England?

4. What states passed laws against the further introduction of slaves from Africa? What laws were passed in 1776 and afterwards about religious worship?

5. Describe the commercial disputes among some of the states from 1783 to 1786.

6. Why did Kentucky wish to become independent of Virginia?

Tell about the organization of the State of Franklin. When were Kentucky and Tennessee organized as states?

7. Why did some of the states issue paper money? What was the cause of Shays's rebellion?

8. What is meant by secession? When did Rhode Island secede from the Confederation? What led to the threats of secession made by New England and Kentucky in 1786?

9. What was the ordinance of 1784? The ordinance of 1787? Tell of the prohibition of slavery in the Northwest Territory.

10. What was the Southwest Territory? Why were slaves allowed in this territory?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the claims of some of the states to the Northwestern Territory. Locate the several territories. Find Newburg, Philadelphia, Princeton, Annapolis, New York, Sandy Hook (New Jersey), Louisville, Lexington, Harrisburg, Boonsboro, St. Asaph's, Danville (Kentucky), Ohio River, Wabash River.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### MAKING THE CONSTITUTION.

1785-1789.

**201. The Calling of the Federal Convention of 1787.—**A conference was held at Mount Vernon, in 1785, between commissioners from Virginia and Maryland, with reference to the navigation of the Potomac and the adoption of a system of tariff duties to be levied by both of these commonwealths. The agreements made in the conference were adopted by the legislatures of the two states represented.

Maryland then suggested a convention at Annapolis, for the consideration of a uniform system of tariff duties to be laid by all the states upon imported goods. Virginia accepted the suggestion and sent invitations to the rest of the thirteen commonwealths. On September 11, 1786, delegates from five states met in convention at Annapolis; these sent an address to Congress

asking that a convention be called to consider amendments to the Articles of Confederation. Congress at first refused, but finally issued the call for the convention.

**202. Organizing the Federal Convention.**—The 25th of May found seven states represented by delegates present in the



INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA.

Here the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution were Signed.

city of Philadelphia.

All of the states except Rhode Island were finally represented. Only eleven were represented at any one time, however, for New Hampshire's commissioners did not appear until those from New York had withdrawn from the convention. The fifty-five delegates were appointed by the legislatures of their respective states. George Washington was chosen president. It was decided that the equality of the states should be preserved

in the Convention; each state was to cast one vote. The work laid upon this assembly was the establishment of a more efficient government for the Confederation of States.

**203. Representation in Congress.**—Two plans for the government of the Confederation were laid before the Convention. The Virginia Plan, drawn up by Madison and Randolph, was finally accepted as the basis of the new constitution. This plan

called for a legislative body, or Congress, of two Houses. In each House the number of representatives allowed to a state was to be in proportion to its population. As this plan would have given the more populous states control of the Confederation, it was violently opposed by delegates from the smaller states, who insisted that each state should be entitled to the same number of representatives. After a lengthy discussion, it was finally agreed that the states should be represented according to population in the lower House, and that each state, without regard to size, should have two representatives in the upper House.

**204. The Compromise on Slavery.**—When the Convention came to apportion representatives in the lower House among the states, according to their population, the question arose, “Are slaves to be counted as part of the population or as property?” Madison proposed that five slaves should be counted as three freemen in estimating the population of each state; and this compromise was accepted.

The African slave-trade was the next issue. The delegates from Virginia, New Jersey, Pennsylvania and Delaware were eager to destroy this traffic at once. New England was ready to strike a bargain. Massachusetts, New Hampshire and Connecticut voted with South Carolina, North Carolina and Georgia to prolong the African slave-trade until 1808. These three Southern states repaid New England by voting to grant Congress full power to regulate commerce. A proposition requiring the return of fugitive slaves was inserted in the Constitution by the unanimous vote of the eleven states represented.



CHAIR AND TABLE USED BY WASHINGTON AS PRESIDENT OF THE FEDERAL CONVENTION.

**205. The Seven Articles of the Constitution.**—The Federal Constitution was made up of seven articles of agreement. These articles were not offered to the legislatures of the several states, as in the case of the Articles of Confederation, but to the people of each individual state for ratification or rejection. Amendments could be added if adopted by three-fourths of the states in the Union. The states thus united by the adoption of these articles were to have a government of three departments, legislative, executive and judicial. Each of these departments was to have only such powers as were granted in the Constitution.

**206. The Legislative Department.**—The legislative body was called Congress, and was divided into the House of Representatives and the Senate. The House of Representatives was to be composed of members elected every second year by the vote of the people in the several states. Each state should have at least one representative, the time, place and manner of electing representatives being determined by each state legislature. The Senate was to be composed of two senators from each state, chosen for a term of six years by the legislature.

The House and the Senate together, as one Congress, were to exercise certain powers vested in them by the sovereign states. By these granted powers, Congress was to have the right to tax, to regulate commerce and coinage, and to maintain an army and navy. The tenth amendment, added afterwards, provided that Congress was to have no other powers than those named in the Constitution. Under the control of the state governments were left all those affairs that form the chief interests of a free and independent people, such as religion, education, suffrage, business transactions, the holding of property, the maintenance of law and order and the punishment of crime.

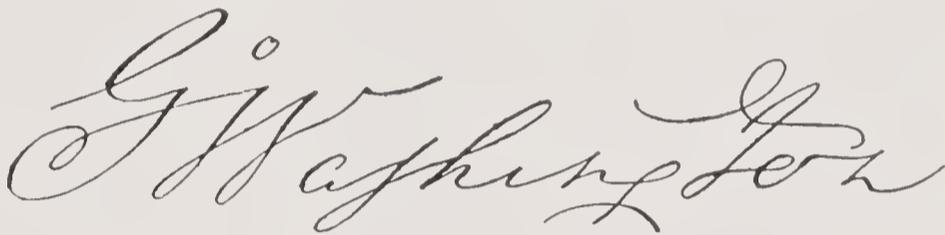
**207. The Executive and Judicial Powers.**—The executive officer was to be a President of the United States, elected for a term of four years by electors chosen by the people of each state. The number of electors in each state must be equal to

the number of its representatives in the House, *plus two*, the number of its senators. It was provided that the electors should meet in their respective states and vote for a President and a Vice-President.

The judicial power granted by the states was vested in a supreme court, circuit courts and district courts. The power to organize these courts was granted to Congress, but the President was authorized to appoint the judges.

**208. Signing the Constitution. 1787.**—On September 17, 1787, the Convention met for the last time. Thirteen delegates had already returned

home, most of them in anger. Three refused to sign the document, because they thought it



THE AUTOGRAPH OF WASHINGTON.

gave too much authority to the Federal government, and was likely to destroy the independence of each state. Only thirty-nine signatures were attached to the Constitution. Washington's name was written first. Massachusetts was represented by the signatures of only two of her four delegates, and New York by only one, Alexander Hamilton.

**209. Ratifying the Constitution. 1787, 1788.**—The Seven Articles, called the Federal Constitution, were to be submitted to conventions elected by the people of each state for ratification or rejection. If nine states should ratify, the Constitution was to go into effect, thus establishing a new Confederation of nine.

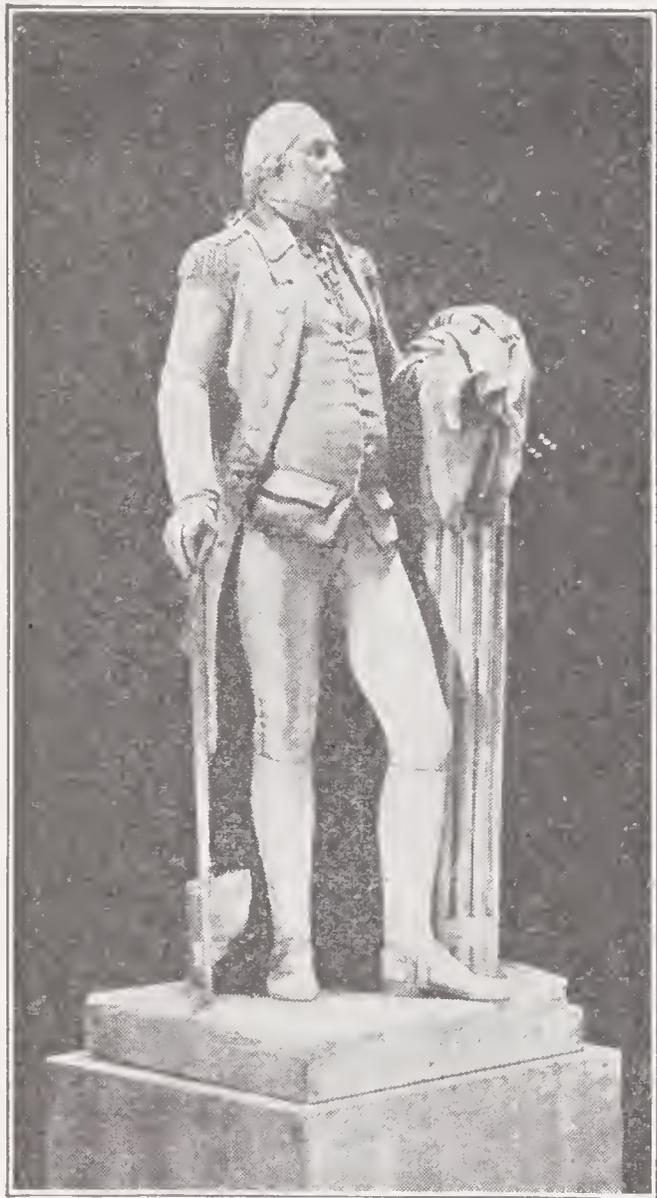
In Congress, opposition was made to the Constitution because it would take away too many of the powers of the separate states. Those who expressed this view were known as Anti-Federalists, because they were opposed to confederation upon the terms embraced in the Constitution. The Federalists, or those who favored the new Union, had a majority of the votes in Congress, and by their decision the Constitution was submitted to the states.

Between December, 1787, and June 22, 1788, nine states ratified. These states were Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Jersey,

Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina and New Hampshire. Virginia ratified on June 26, and New York a few days later. North Carolina held a convention, but it

adjourned without coming to a vote upon the Constitution. Rhode Island did not even call a convention.

The new Confederation was formed by the voluntary union of eleven states, each of which seceded from the Confederation formed in 1781. It was the opinion of virtually the entire body of the people that any state might withdraw from the Union by holding another convention and by repealing the act of ratification.<sup>1</sup>



*From the statue by Houdon.*

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

**210. The Constitution Put Into Operation.**—On September 13, 1788, the Congress of the old Confederation, with representatives present from only nine states, declared that the new government was in force. The Congress fixed the

first Wednesday in January for the choice of presidential electors by the states of the new Confederation.

On the first Wednesday in February, 1789, the electors met at their state capitols, and made lists of the persons voted for, and sent these lists to the Senate. The votes were opened in New York on April 6, 1789, and it was found that 69 votes, the full electoral strength of the ten states taking part in the election, were in favor of George Washington. No separate votes were cast for Vice-President. The person who received the

<sup>1</sup> In order to be sure to preserve the right of secession, Virginia and New York ratified the Constitution on the condition that they could withdraw from the Union whenever their rights were being violated.

second highest number of votes obtained that office. John Adams, of Massachusetts, received 34 votes, and became Vice-President. One state, Rhode Island, had long since seceded from the old Confederation and still held aloof. North Carolina was under the old Confederation, and New York, though a member of the new Confederation, did not hold an election for the choosing of presidential electors.

### Questions.

1. Describe the calling of the Federal Convention of 1787. How many states were represented?
2. Describe the plans of government offered to the Convention.
3. What compromises were embodied in the Constitution? In what different ways did the Constitution recognize slavery?
4. How many articles of agreement were there in the Constitution? Who were the parties to the agreement?
5. Describe the legislative, executive and judicial departments of the Federal government.
6. How many delegates signed the Constitution?
7. Describe its ratification in the different states. Who were the Federalists and the anti-Federalists? How many states specifically reserved the right to secede?
8. How many states were actually in the Union when Washington began his administration?

### Geography Study.

Find Mount Vernon, Annapolis, Philadelphia, and New York.

## PART IV. PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION. 1763-1789.

### TOPICAL REVIEW.

	SECTION.
1. The Colonial Policy of the British Government . . . . .	140
2. The Patriots and the Tories . . . . .	141
3. Religious Cause of the Revolution . . . . .	142
4. Territorial Cause of the Revolution . . . . .	143
5. Commercial and Financial Cause . . . . .	144
6. Political Causes . . . . .	145
7. Decision of the British Government to Maintain an Army in the Colonies . . . . .	146

	SECTION.
8. Struggle over the Stamp Tax . . . . .	147-150
9. Struggle over the Townshend Revenue Laws . . . . .	151-153
10. The First Bloodshed . . . . .	154
11. The First Battle of the Revolution . . . . .	155
12. Committees of Correspondence . . . . .	156
13. The Struggle over the Tax on Tea . . . . .	157
14. Oppressive Acts of Parliament . . . . .	158
15. The First Continental Congress . . . . .	159
16. The Colonies Prepare for Resistance . . . . .	160
17. Beginning of the War . . . . .	161-164
18. The Change from Colonial to State Government . . . . .	165
19. The Declaration of Independence . . . . .	166
20. The British Attempt to Invade North Carolina . . . . .	167
21. The British Attempt to Invade South Carolina . . . . .	167
22. The Evacuation of Boston . . . . .	168
23. The British Invasion of New York . . . . .	169
24. The Campaign of Trenton and Princeton . . . . .	170, 171
25. Howe's Campaign of 1777 . . . . .	172
26. Burgoyne's Campaign . . . . .	172, 173
27. The French Alliance . . . . .	174
28. Decline of the Continental Congress . . . . .	175
29. The Winter at Valley Forge . . . . .	176
30. War on the Frontier . . . . .	177, 178
31. Skirmishing in the North, 1778-80 . . . . .	179, 180
32. The Southern States the Final Theater of the War . . . . .	181-189
33. The Yorktown Campaign . . . . .	187, 188
34. The Navy of the Revolution . . . . .	190
35. Recognition of the Independence of the Thirteen States . . . . .	191
36. The Articles of Confederation . . . . .	192, 193
37. Decline of the Power of Congress . . . . .	194
38. The Separation of Church and State . . . . .	194
39. Efforts of Some of the States to Check African Slave Trade . . . . .	194
40. Commercial Troubles between the States . . . . .	195
41. New States in the Mississippi Valley . . . . .	196
42. Financial Condition of the Confederacy of Thirteen . . . . .	197
43. Threats of Secession from the Confederacy . . . . .	198
44. The Northwest and Southwest Territories . . . . .	199, 200
45. Calling and Organizing the Federal Convention of 1787 . . . . .	201, 202
46. The Federal Constitution . . . . .	203-208
47. The Ratification of the Federal Constitution . . . . .	209
48. The Constitution put into Operation . . . . .	210



PART V.  
PERIOD OF EXPANSION.

1789-1856.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE EARLY YEARS OF THE NEW REPUBLIC.

1789-1800.

**211. The Inauguration of Washington. 1789.**—On April 16, 1789, Washington set forth from Mount Vernon, and passed through Baltimore and Philadelphia toward New York. Shouts of welcome, the ringing of bells, bonfires, triumphal arches and the firing of cannon greeted him at every stage of the journey. On the 30th of April, in a suit of black velvet, with white silk stockings, Washington came out upon the balcony of Federal Hall, in Wall Street, New York, and took the oath of office, which was administered to him by Chancellor Livingston in the presence of Congress. A great multitude of people were thronging the streets and filling the windows and sitting upon the roofs of the neighboring houses. Washington then entered the Senate Chamber and read his inaugural address to the members of the two Houses of Congress.

**212. The First Work of Congress.**—The first work of the Congress that assembled in Federal Hall in New York was to provide money to meet the expenses of the new Federal Union. A tariff or tax was laid upon imported goods, amounting in some cases to twelve per cent. of their value.<sup>1</sup> Ships en-

<sup>1</sup> Parker of Virginia brought before Congress a bill to impose a tax of ten dollars upon every slave imported from abroad, but the measure was defeated.

tering the harbors of the Republic were taxed according to their tonnage. North Carolina and Rhode Island fell under the laws taxing foreign goods and foreign vessels, because they had not yet ratified the Constitution.

**213. The Executive Departments.**—The next important work of the Congress was the establishment of three executive departments. These were the departments of Foreign Affairs, War and the Treasury.



THE WASHINGTON ARCH, NEW YORK CITY.

Erected in Commemoration of the One Hundredth Anniversary of Washington's Inauguration.

The first officer appointed by Washington was John Jay, of New York, as Chief Justice. General Henry Knox, of Massachusetts, was made Secretary of War. Alexander Hamilton,<sup>1</sup> of New York, was appointed Secretary of the Treasury. Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, became Attorney General, and Thomas Jefferson, who was Minister to France from 1784 to 1789, was placed in charge of Foreign Affairs as Secretary of State.<sup>2</sup> A Postmaster-

General of the United States was also appointed.

**214. Amendments to the Constitution. 1790.**—About eighty amendments to the Constitution were proposed by the eleven states. Congress accepted twelve of these and sent them to the states. Ten were ratified by the states and thus became

<sup>1</sup> Alexander Hamilton (1757–1804) was born in the West Indies, and at fifteen came to New York City to live. He served in the colonial army during the Revolution and was Washington's private secretary. He was a member of the Federal Convention of 1787. As Secretary of the Treasury (1789–1795), he rendered valuable public service by organizing the financial policy of the United States. He was killed by Aaron Burr in a duel.

<sup>2</sup> In his second term Washington fell into the habit of calling his three Secretaries and the Attorney-General into regular conference. These consultations were the beginning of our present system of Cabinet meetings.

a part of the original articles of agreement. They were added in order that the rights of the individual states should not be interfered with by the United States government, and that the individual citizen should have the right of trial by jury, freedom of speech and other privileges.

**215. The Debts of the United States. 1790, 1791.**—In 1790 the Secretary of the Treasury, Alexander Hamilton, reported in favor of paying all the debts which had been made by the Confederation of States between 1776 and 1789. These were: (1) the foreign debts of \$11,700,000—money which had been borrowed by Congress during the Revolution from bankers in Holland, Spain and France; (2) the domestic debts of \$42,400,000, due to citizens at home, and (3) debts to the amount of \$21,500,000, which the state governments had made. Congress at once agreed to pay the foreign debts, but only after much debate did it agree to pay the domestic debts, dollar for dollar.

The proposal to pay the debts of the states met with opposition.<sup>1</sup> Many Southern members claimed that the Constitution of the United States did not give Congress a right to assume these debts. But the measure passed, by a vote of thirty-one to twenty-six, in the House of Representatives. At this point, however, seven members arrived from North Carolina, which had just entered the Union, and the measure was reconsidered and defeated by a vote of thirty-three to thirty-one. The matter was finally settled by a bargain. The dispute concerning the permanent location of the Federal capital was brought into the case. Through Hamilton's influence enough New England votes were secured to cause the selection of a site on the Potomac for the capital. In return, Jefferson secured enough Southern votes to carry Hamilton's plan of paying the state debts.

<sup>1</sup> Some of the states had paid their debts, while others had not. Half of the entire amount was made up of the unpaid debts of Massachusetts, Connecticut and South Carolina. The assuming of these debts by the United States meant that those states which had paid their own debts were to help pay the debts of the other states.

**216. North Carolina and Rhode Island Ratify the Constitution. 1789, 1790.**—North Carolina ratified the Constitution, November 21, 1789, and Rhode Island on May 29, 1790. The latter retained the right of secession by declaring “that the powers of government may be reassumed by the people whensoever it shall become necessary to their happiness.”

**217. Financial Measures. 1791.**—In December, 1790, Congress met in Philadelphia for the work of its third and final session.



THE FIRST CHIEF JUSTICE OF  
THE UNITED STATES.

*J. Jay*

More revenue was needed, and, in accordance with Hamilton's suggestion, a tax was laid on native distilled liquors. This was the first step in our system of internal revenue.

Hamilton next proposed a Bank of the United States with a capital stock of \$10,000,000, one-fifth of which was to be held by the United States and four-fifths by private citizens. The bank was to keep the public revenues and to aid the Federal government in making payments throughout the country. Congress chartered a bank for twenty years (1791–1811), in spite of the opposition of James Madison,

who declared that it was unconstitutional, as no power was granted in the Constitution allowing Congress to charter banks. Before Washington would sign the bill for granting the charter, he asked the written opinion of his Cabinet. Jefferson declared that Congress had assumed a power not given to it by the states, but Washington followed Hamilton's advice and signed the bill.

**218. Jefferson and Hamilton Become the Leaders of Two Political Parties. 1791, 1792.**—From the time of the struggle over the establishment of the Bank, Hamilton and Jefferson were “pitted against each other every day in the Cabinet, like two fighting cocks.” With reference to the opposing plans

of government advocated by these two men, some of the people of the country followed Hamilton and some followed Jefferson. Thus were organized two strong political parties. The sympathies of Hamilton were with monarchy, as a form of government. His tariff measures and his plan for a bank were based upon English models. He wished to place the state governments under the control of the Federal government and to put the latter in the hands of a few men of wealth and learning.

Jefferson, on the other hand, had confidence in the honesty and capacity of the people, and he stood for a republic. He wished to foster the state government as the central feature of the new republican system. This was the only way, he declared, in which to preserve the liberty of the individual citizen. Hamilton's followers, who were chiefly from New York and New England, took the title of **Federalists**. Jefferson's party, chiefly from the agricultural states of the South, assumed the name of **Democratic-Republicans**, later called the Democratic Party.

**219. The Election of 1792.**—As Washington's first term drew to an end, he wished to retire to Mount Vernon, but both the Republicans and the Federalists entreated him to become a candidate for a second term. Jefferson declared that Washington alone could prevent the New England states from going out of the Union. "North and South will hang together if they have you to hang on," thus he wrote to Washington. Hamilton himself admitted that the Union was not yet "firmly established."

The Democratic-Republican party made its chief battle in 1792 over the election of members of Congress, and won a majority of the representatives. Washington, as the candidate of both political parties, received the unanimous vote of all the electors (132) chosen by the states. John Adams, the Federalist, was again elected as Vice-President over George Clinton, of New York, candidate of the Democratic-Republicans. On the 4th of March, 1793, Washington was inaugurated the second

time as President, with ceremonies marked by extreme simplicity.

**220. Relations with France. 1792, 1793.**—The French Revolution began in 1789. The people of France determined to limit the authority of their king, and France soon became a republic (1792). The next year the French Republic declared war against England. The sympathy of Jefferson and his party was with the French, as they were striving to establish in Europe a republic like the United States, but the Federalists under their leader, Hamilton, favored England. Washington, however, issued a proclamation (April 22, 1793) commanding our citizens to follow a line of conduct friendly and impartial to both England and France.

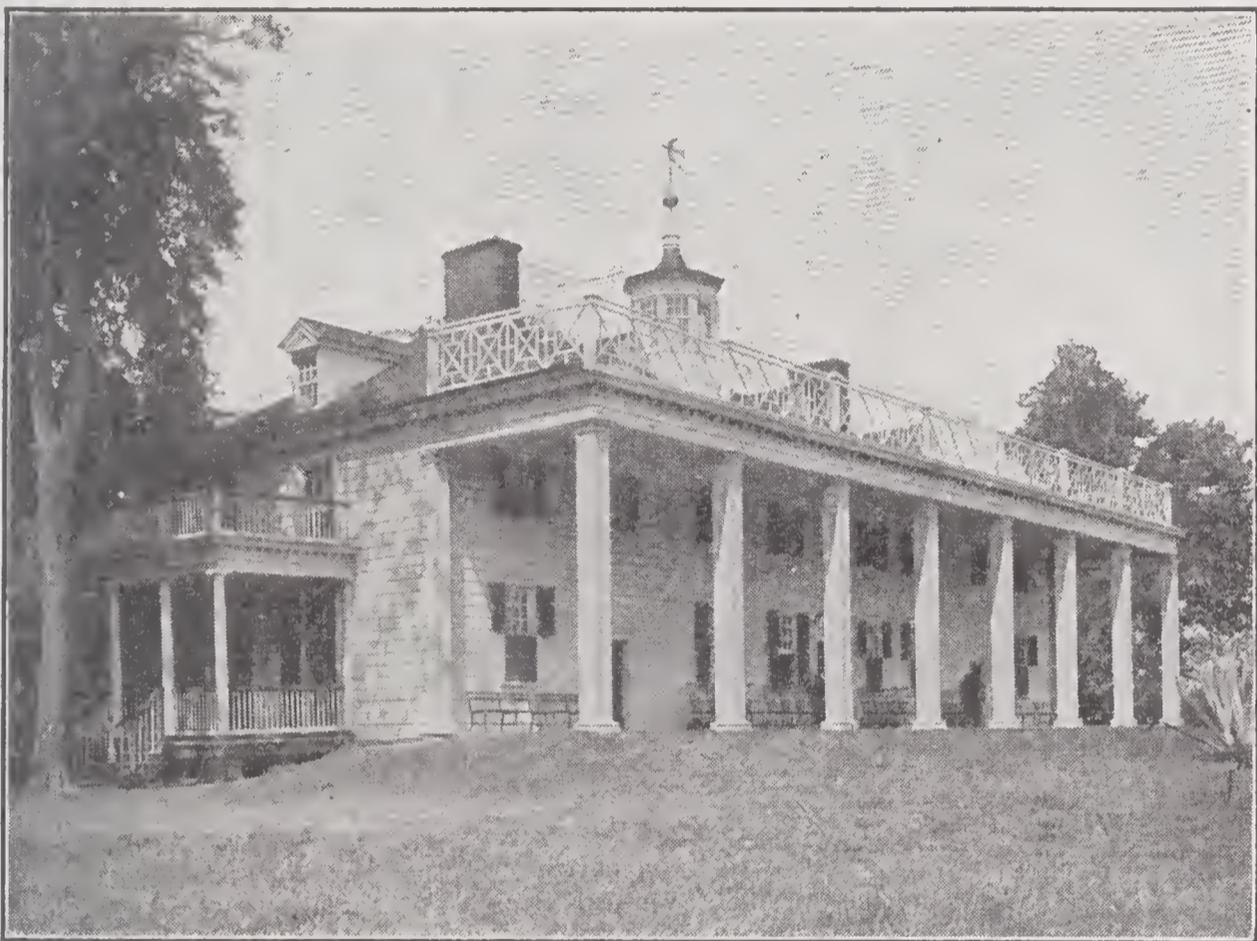
The French minister, "Citizen" Genet (Zhe-nā'), had just landed at Charleston, S. C. He bought two swift sailing-vessels, hired a large company of American seamen to take charge, and sent both ships to sea under the French flag to capture British merchant-vessels. He then journeyed by land to Philadelphia, and was everywhere greeted with enthusiasm. The people of Philadelphia gave him a banquet and denounced Washington and his proclamation. Genet, believing that the people were with him, sought to force the government into war against England. He threatened to appeal from President Washington to the people of the whole country, and he was, therefore, forced by Washington himself to return to France.

**221. Relations with England. 1792-1796.**—When the war began between England and France, American vessels were ready to carry provisions to France. The English government ordered American ships bound to French ports to be seized. England also claimed the right to search American vessels for English subjects; if one of these was found, he was carried off by force. England's policy was vigorously enforced; American vessels were plundered and destroyed, and hundreds of American sailors were imprisoned or forced into the British navy.

The war spirit began to rise in every part of the United

States, except in the coast towns of New England, where the Federalist sympathy with England was strong. Congress, at the suggestion of Washington, passed an embargo act (1794), prohibiting the departure of all vessels from our ports for sixty days.

In April, 1794, Washington sent Chief Justice John Jay as a special envoy to England, where he secured only a partially satisfactory treaty.<sup>1</sup> Great Britain was to give up the posts that she held on the frontier by June, 1796, and pay for the



WASHINGTON'S MANSION AT MOUNT VERNON.

provisions that she had seized on the ocean, but the United States were to pay the debts due to British merchants. Great Britain, however, continued to claim the right to seize sailors on American ships. The treaty was violently opposed by many people in the United States, and Jay, Washington and Hamilton were denounced. Most of the New England people were willing

<sup>1</sup> The five grievances of the United States were as follows:—(1) Great Britain's impressment of American seamen, (2) British occupancy of the frontier forts, (3) the closing of British ports in the West Indies, (4) British war against neutral trade, and (5) the refusal of the British government to pay for the negroes taken away by their soldiers at the close of the Revolution.

to accept the treaty and threatened to secede from the Union if it was not ratified. The Senate finally decided that nothing else was possible at that time and ratified the treaty.

**222. The Treaty with Spain. 1795.**—In 1795 Thomas Pinckney made a treaty with Spain wherein the following concessions were made to the United States: (1) the 31st parallel was recognized by Spain as the southern boundary of the United States (§ 191); (2) the free navigation of the Mississippi River was granted, and, also, (3) the privilege of depositing goods at the port of New Orleans free of duty.

**223. The Population. 1790.**—The first census of the United States, taken in 1790, indicated a population of 3,929,214 in the thirteen states of the Union. With the exception of the inhabitants of Kentucky and Tennessee, nearly all of these people dwelt east of the Alleghanies, within less than three hundred miles of the Atlantic coast.



*Eli Whitney*

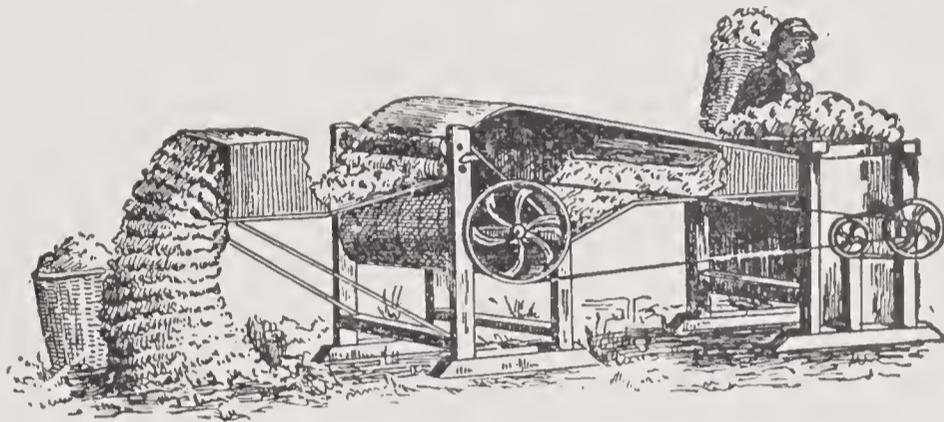
**224. Labor Systems.**—There were some 700,000 negro slaves in the United States in 1790. About 100,000 of these were in the Northern states, including the small number of negroes set free by the gradual emancipation laws. In Pennsylvania, and parts of the other Middle states, white servants called “redemptioners” formed the chief laboring class.

They served for a term of years to pay for their passage across the sea. In the Middle and New England states, unskilled laborers were employed at four dollars a month in winter and six dollars in summer. In some of the Northern states, as late as 1860, paupers were sold to the highest bidder.

The Quakers of Pennsylvania sent petitions to Congress ask-

ing for the suppression of the African slave-trade and for the emancipation of slaves. Congress, in reply, declared (1790) that it had no right to interfere with slavery in the states.<sup>1</sup>

**225. The Production of Cotton.**—By 1791 cotton had become one of the important products of the South. It was very hard to separate the seed from the cotton, until in 1793 Eli Whitney, a native of Massachusetts, then living in Georgia, invented the cotton gin. With this machine one person could clean a hundred pounds of cotton in a day. Two years later the exports



THE COTTON GIN.

of cotton were more than six million pounds. The production increased rapidly, and cotton became the chief article of the commerce of the far South. Large numbers of slaves were needed for its cultivation, and New England ships continued to bring slaves from Africa and to carry Southern cotton, rice, tobacco and other products to foreign lands.

**Wars with the Indians. 1790–1795.**—The Republic under Washington was threatened by Indian tribes from the northwest and from the southwest. In the autumn of 1790 General Harmar led an army of 1,500 men into the Maumee country, north of the Ohio River, but Little Turtle, the Indian chief, drove him back to Fort Washington (now Cincinnati). In the following year (1791) General St. Clair was defeated in the Miami country. In August, 1794, Wayne won a sweeping victory over the Indians near the Maumee Rapids, and in 1792 the northwestern tribes yielded their claim to all the territory as far westward as the Wabash.

In 1790, after Harmar's defeat, a treaty was made with the Creek Indians of the Southwest; the Spaniards who occupied Florida were thus prevented from executing their plan to make use of the Creeks against the United States.

<sup>1</sup>In 1793 a law was passed by Congress providing for the return of fugitive slaves. This law was adopted by a unanimous vote of the Senate; only seven votes were cast against it in the House. This shows that there was very little moral feeling against slavery at that time.

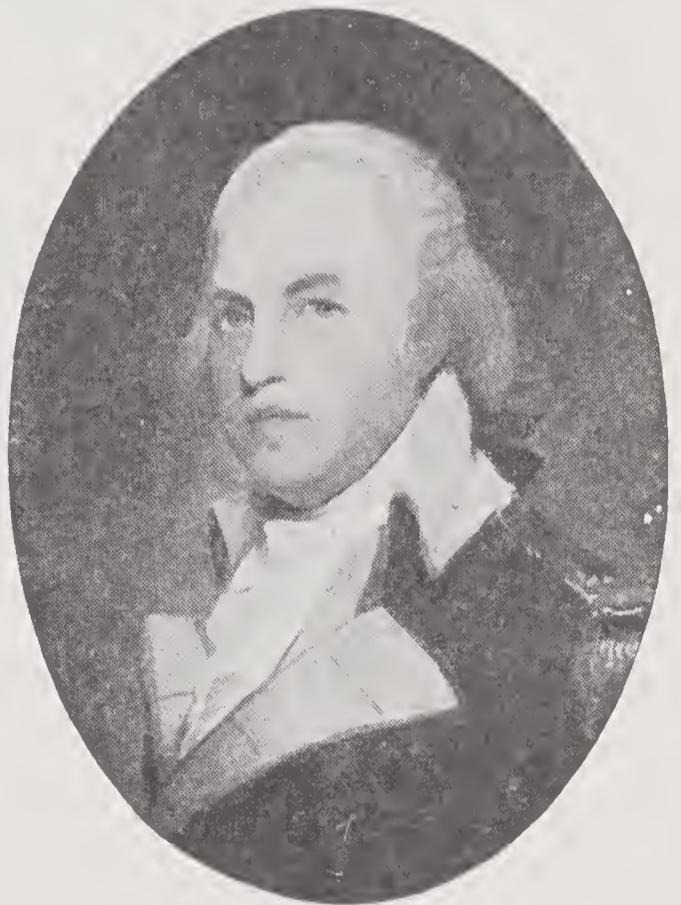
**226. The Whiskey Insurrection. 1794.**—The first armed insurrection against the Federal government was made by the farmers of western Pennsylvania. They could not send grain or flour down the Mississippi, for Spain was closing it to navigation; they could not send it to the Atlantic coast because the expense of hauling was too great. They therefore raised large crops of rye and turned it into whiskey, which was used as a currency; a gallon-jug filled with whiskey passed for a shilling. A convention of the four western counties of Pennsylvania met at Pittsburg (1792) and denounced Hamilton's excise tax of nine cents a gallon (§ 217) as oppressive and unconstitutional. The tax-collectors were driven from the country, and in 1794 about 2,000 armed militia assembled at Braddock's Field ready to resist the collection of the excise. Washington called out the militia of Maryland, Virginia and New Jersey to aid the governor of Pennsylvania. The governor of Virginia, "Light-Horse Harry" Lee, was placed in command of the troops. Before they reached the scene of the disturbance, the farmers met in convention and pledged the submission of the people.

**227. The Admission of New States. 1792-1796.**—During Washington's administration three new states were admitted into the Federal Union. **Vermont** was admitted in 1791, and **Kentucky** in 1792. The latter recognized slavery, and the former forbade it. On January 11, 1796, a convention at Knoxville completed the constitution of **Tennessee**, and on June 1, this state, with slavery allowed in her constitution, became a member of the Federal Union.

**228. Washington's Farewell Address. 1796.**—Washington declined to stand as a candidate for a third presidential term, and issued a farewell address in which he pointed out the danger of political parties divided upon a geographical basis into Northern, Eastern and Western. "It is our true policy," he wrote further, "to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world." Three years later, on the 14th of December, 1799, Washington died at Mt. Vernon. He was sincerely

mourned by his countrymen and by large numbers of people in Europe. "Light-Horse Harry" Lee, then a member of Congress, offered resolutions of respect, in which Washington was described as "First in war, first in peace and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

**229. The Inauguration of John Adams. 1796.**—The first real struggle between the two political parties over the office of President took place in 1796. John Adams<sup>1</sup> was the Federalist candidate and his Democratic-Republican opponent was Thomas Jefferson. Adams received 71 votes, and was declared President. Jefferson became Vice-President, having 68 votes. On March 4, 1797, John Adams was inaugurated as President, in Congress Hall, Philadelphia. The central figure in the ceremony, however, was Washington. All eyes were fastened upon the retiring President; the loudest applause was for him.



"LIGHT-HORSE HARRY" LEE.

**230. Trouble with France. 1797-1800.**—France was angry with the United States on account of the Jay treaty with England. When C. C. Pinckney,<sup>2</sup> of South Carolina, who was sent as Minister from the United States, arrived in Paris, the French government refused to receive him. Presi-

<sup>1</sup> John Adams (1735-1826) was a graduate of Harvard and a lawyer. He was a member of the first and second Continental Congresses; was on the committee that drafted the Declaration of Independence; was minister to France in 1783, and aided in making the treaty of 1783 with Great Britain. He was Vice-President from 1789-1797, and President from 1797-1801. He was a high-minded, honorable man, of independent spirit.

<sup>2</sup> Charles C. Pinckney (1746-1825) was a native of Charleston, South Carolina. He was a soldier in the Revolution and a prominent member of the Federal Convention of 1787. He was the candidate of the Federalists for the presidency in 1804 and in 1808.

dent Adams, having a strong desire to keep peace with France, sent to that country three commissioners, John Marshall,<sup>1</sup> Elbridge Gerry and C. C. Pinckney. The French government de-



THE TOMB OF WASHINGTON AT MOUNT VERNON.

manded a large sum of money before it would treat with the commissioners. The agents of France who made this base proposition veiled their names under the letters X, Y, Z. The people of the United States resented the insult,

and everywhere were repeated the words of Pinckney in his reply to the agents: "Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute."

On the 7th of July, 1798, war vessels of the United States were ordered to attack French cruisers. An army was raised and Washington, though sixty-six years old, was made commander-in-chief. War was not declared, but there were several conflicts upon the sea. In 1799 Captain Thomas Truxton, in the 38-gun frigate *Constellation*, captured the French 39-gun frigate *L'Insurgente*. A year later, the same gallant officer defeated and captured the 54-gun French frigate *La Vengeance*.

Adams, anxious to establish peace, sent to Paris three new com-

<sup>1</sup>John Marshall (1755–1835), a Virginian, served in the American army from 1776 to 1781. Afterwards he studied law. He was a member of the Virginia convention that ratified the Constitution in 1788; was a member of Congress, 1799–1800; and was Secretary of State under President Adams, 1800–1801. Adams appointed him, in 1801, as Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. For thirty-four years Marshall remained in this position. His decisions, always strong in the manner of their presentation, were based mainly upon the Federalist interpretation of the Constitution.

missioners, who were received by Napoleon Bonaparte, then ruler of France. A treaty was made (1800) with Napoleon whereby all ships captured by either party were restored, and neither government was required to pay the other for property destroyed in the recent naval warfare.

**231. The Alien and Sedition Acts. 1798, 1799.**—While the country was on the verge of war with France, the Federalist party made some very unjust laws. An Act was passed requiring residence of fourteen years, instead of five, for admission to citizenship. In 1798 Congress passed: (1) the Alien Act, which allowed the President to send out of the country without trial such aliens as he considered dangerous to the peace of the United States; and (2) the Sedition Act, which punished with fine and imprisonment any persons convicted of publishing false statements about the President or Congress. The Sedition Act was aimed against the Democratic-Republican newspaper editors, some of whom were tried and imprisoned.



*John Adams*

**232. The Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions. 1798, 1799.**—Thomas Jefferson believed that the Federalists intended by their legislation to overthrow the Republic and establish a monarchy. In November, 1798, the Kentucky legislature adopted a series of resolutions drawn up by Jefferson against the Alien and Sedition laws. These resolutions declared that the states had created the Federal government for certain special purposes, that the states had not granted to Congress the rights to pass such laws as the Alien and Sedition acts, and that, therefore, the state governments had the right to declare these laws “void and of no force.”

In December, 1798, the Virginia Assembly adopted similar

resolutions drawn by James Madison. These resolutions asserted that the states had the right to keep the Federal government from going too far in passing unjust laws.

**233. The Downfall of the Federalist Party. 1798-1801.**

—The enactment of the Alien and Sedition laws turned numbers of the people against the Federalist party. In addition to this, the making of peace with France was an act so unpopular that it greatly weakened the Federalists. Hamilton denounced Adams as a traitor to the party, and determined to defeat him for the presidency. Adams and C. C. Pinckney were the Federalist candidates in the presidential campaign. They were opposed by Jefferson and Aaron Burr. A wave of enthusiasm in favor of the Democratic-Republican party swept over the country. Jefferson and Burr received 73 votes each, Adams 65 and Pinckney 64. The House of Representatives had to decide between Jefferson and Burr as to who should be President.<sup>1</sup> By the vote of ten of the states against six in the House of Representatives (February, 1801), Thomas Jefferson was chosen President. Burr became Vice-President.

### Questions.

1. Describe Washington's journey to New York in 1789. Where and in what manner was he inaugurated?
2. How were the states of North Carolina and Rhode Island treated?
3. What executive departments were first established? Who were the members of Washington's first Cabinet?
4. How and when were the first ten amendments added to the Constitution?
5. What were the three parts of the public debt in 1790? What did Hamilton propose about the debt? What part of his proposal was objected to by the South?

<sup>1</sup> This voting took place in the Capitol in Washington. The business of the Federal government had been transferred to the new city in the summer of 1800. A tract of land on the Potomac, in the form of a square measuring ten miles on a side, was donated by Maryland and Virginia as the seat of the national government. This was called the District of Columbia.

6. What plan was proposed by Hamilton for the establishment of a United States Bank?

7. What were the views of Hamilton about the capacity of the people to govern themselves? What were Jefferson's views? Explain the meaning of the names Federalist and Democratic-Republican.

8. Why did both political parties wish Washington to become President for a second term?

9. Why were the sympathies of Jefferson's followers with the French Revolution? Describe the conduct of Genet.

10. How did England treat our ships and our sailors? What was the Embargo Act of 1794? What were the terms of Jay's treaty with England?

11. What were the terms of the treaty with Spain in 1795?

12. What result followed the invention of the cotton gin?

13. Describe the Indian wars of Washington's administration.

14. What was the cause of the insurrection in 1794?

15. What new states were admitted to the Union during Washington's administration?

16. What did Washington say about foreign countries in his farewell address?

17. Describe the inauguration of Adams.

18. Describe the X, Y, Z affair. What preparations were made for war? What were the terms of the treaty with France in 1800?

19. How much power was given to the President by the Alien Act? What was the Sedition Act?

20. What declarations were made in the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions?

21. Describe the presidential campaign of 1800. Why was the election finally thrown into the House of Representatives? What was the result of the vote of the House?

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Washington, Charleston, Knoxville, Cincinnati, New Orleans, Pittsburg, Miami River, Maumee River, Wabash River.

## CHAPTER XXV.

## JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

1801-1809.

**234. The Inauguration of Jefferson. 1801.**—On the morning of March 4, 1801, President Jefferson went on foot, in his ordinary dress, from his lodgings to the north wing of the capitol; some of his personal friends walked with him. The oath of office was administered to Jefferson by Chief Justice Marshall, and then the President read his inaugural address in the Senate Chamber. He afterwards returned on foot to his lodgings and there received the foreign ministers and the public officials of the United States.

The Federalists had been in control for twelve years and had organized what Jefferson called a "half monarchical State." Jefferson declared that there were to be "no more coaches and six, no more court-dress, no more levees," as in the days of Washington and Adams. He shook hands with all who came to see him, and established customs of simplicity in official life such as are appropriate in a government by the people.

**235. Jefferson's First Administration. 1801-1805.**—In order to place the democratic Republic upon the right basis, Jefferson began to cut down the expenses of the Federal government. In this he was aided by Madison, Secretary of State, and Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury. The army was reduced nearly one-half, and the navy was cut down from twenty-five vessels to seven. Four of these were sent under Commodore Preble to the Mediterranean Sea, in 1801, to force the pirates of Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli (the Barbary States) back into their own harbors. Tripoli was besieged and forced to surrender, and a treaty was made (1808) which caused the pirates to cease their attacks. The Judiciary Act of 1800, under which President Adams had appointed new judges, was repealed and

the new officials were removed. During Jefferson's administrations (1801-1809) the public debt was brought down from eighty-three millions to forty-five millions. This was done in spite of the additional expense connected with the wars against the Barbary powers, and the purchase of Louisiana.<sup>1</sup>

One of the great features of the history of our country during Jefferson's administration was the expansion of the United States to the westward. On February 19, 1803, Ohio was admitted as the seventeenth state of the Union and as the first state formed from the Northwest Territory.

**The Population in 1800.**—The census of 1800 indicated a population in the sixteen states of the Federal Union of more than 5,300,000. About three and a half millions of these people lived along the coast within fifty miles of the Atlantic. The center of population was eighteen miles southwest of Baltimore. About 500,000 people had crossed the Alleghanies, and most of these lived in the states of Kentucky and Tennessee; only about 45,000 people were in the territory which soon afterwards became the State of Ohio. In 1800, Charleston had a population of 20,743; Savannah, 7,523; Norfolk, 6,926; Richmond, 5,537; Baltimore, 26,000; Boston, 24,000; New York, 60,000, and Philadelphia, 70,000.

**236. The Purchase of Louisiana. 1803.**—By the treaty of 1763, Spain acquired from France the vast region then known as Louisiana, which extended from the Mississippi to



*Valentine.*

THE STATUE OF JEFFERSON AT  
RICHMOND, VIRGINIA.

<sup>1</sup> Another part of the expense of Jefferson's administration was connected with the support of the military academy which Jefferson established at West Point, and which was, henceforth, to furnish to our country many capable soldiers.

the Rocky Mountains. In 1800 Spain made a secret treaty with France, giving back to her this Louisiana Territory, and in 1802 the news reached the United States that Napoleon intended to send troops to occupy New Orleans. The French government declared that the Mississippi was closed to the commerce of the United States. The people of the Ohio Valley were filled with such indignation that they were ready to seize New Orleans by force. Jefferson asserted that we must hold the lower Mississippi, even if war with France should follow. He hoped, how-



THE AUTOGRAPH OF JEFFERSON.

ever, to secure it by negotiation. James Monroe and Robert Livingston were sent to France, and they made with Napoleon a treaty whereby Louisiana was sold to the United States for about \$15,000,000.

Jefferson believed that the preservation of the Federal Union depended upon American control of the navigation of the Mississippi. He therefore bought Louisiana, although the Constitution did not specifically grant the right to buy new territory. The members of both Houses of Congress were so overwhelmingly in favor of the purchase that an amendment to the Constitution, which was suggested by Jefferson, was not held to be necessary.

**237. The Reëlection of Jefferson. 1804.**—Jefferson was nominated for the presidency in 1804, with George Clinton, of New York, as candidate for the vice-presidency. The Federalist candidates were Charles C. Pinckney, of South Carolina, and Rufus King, of New York. The twelfth amendment of the Constitution, ratified September 25, 1804, instructed the electors from the states to cast separate ballots for President and Vice-President. Jefferson received 162 out of the full number of 176 electoral votes.

**238. The Proposal of a New Confederacy. 1804.**—The Federalists of New England were so strongly opposed to the annexation of Louisiana and Jefferson's reëlection, that a number of

New England senators and representatives proposed to dissolve the Federal Union and organize a Northern Confederacy, composed of the New England states, New York, and perhaps New Jersey.

An agreement was made with Aaron Burr that the Federalists should aid in electing him governor of New York, provided that he would induce the latter state to secede. Hamilton, however, threw his influence against Burr, and the latter failed of election to the governorship. Burr challenged Hamilton to a duel on account of personal criticisms made during the campaign. The death of Hamilton at the hands of Burr, on the dueling-ground (July 11, 1804), shattered the reputation of Burr and brought to a close the scheme for a Northern Confederacy, with which Burr was connected.<sup>1</sup>

**239. Western Explorations. 1804-1806.**—In May, 1804, Jefferson sent Meriwether Lewis and William Clark, of Virginia, to explore the northern and northwestern regions of the great Louisiana Purchase. They led a party of thirty-four men from St. Louis up the Missouri River, crossed the Rocky Mountains, and followed the course of the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean. Upon the return, the party turned northward, and came back through the valley of the Yellowstone (1806).

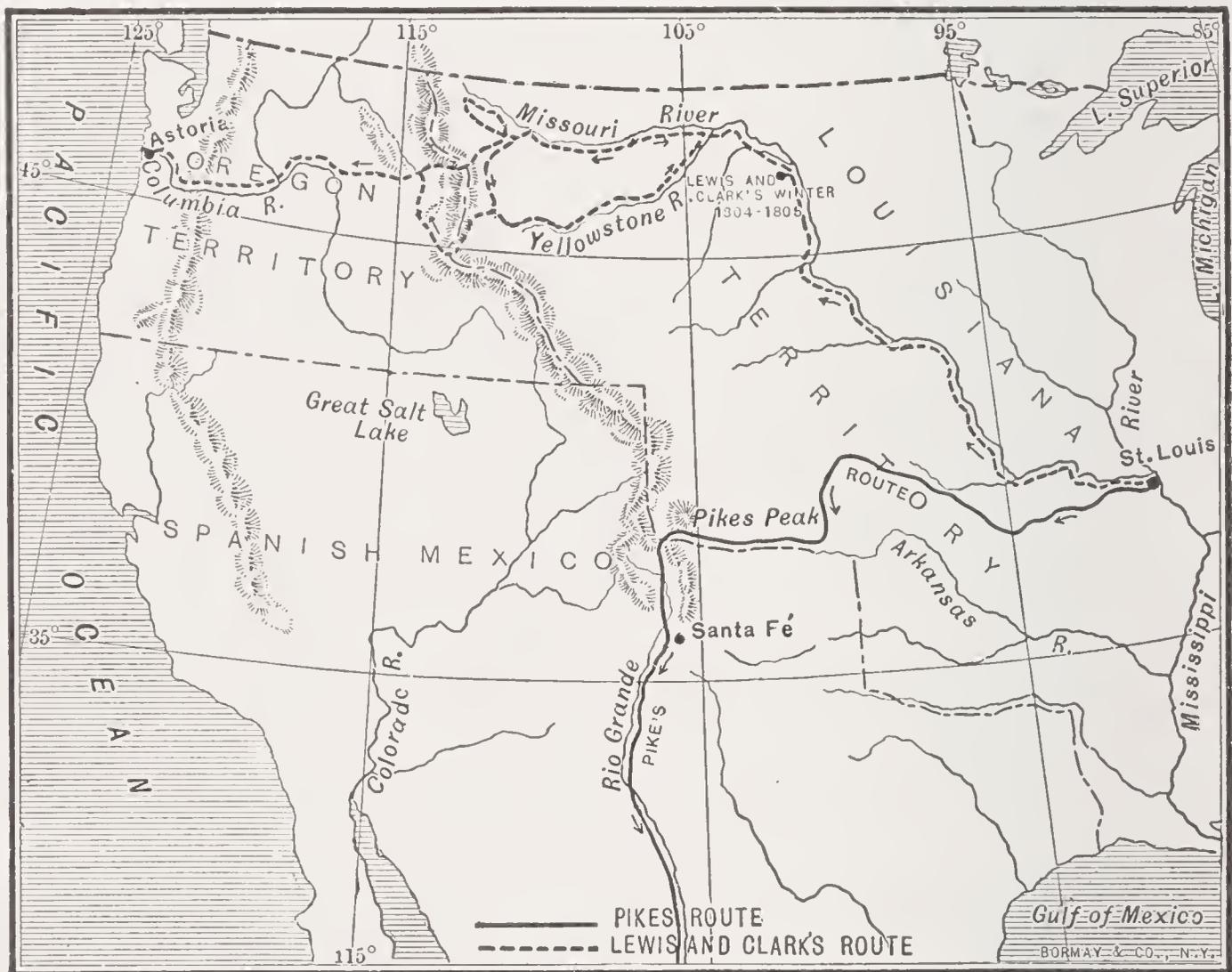
In the summer of 1805, Lieutenant Pike explored the upper Mississippi as far north as Leech Lake. In 1806, under orders from President Jefferson, Pike followed the course of the upper Arkansas River to a point near the present city of Denver, and there gave his name to Pike's Peak. In the further search for the sources of the Red River, Pike crossed the plains, in winter,

<sup>1</sup> Burr fled to New Orleans (1805), where he talked vaguely of founding a great Empire west of the Mississippi, of seizing Florida from Spain, of pillaging New Orleans and of raising an insurrection in the entire Southwest. An expedition was organized at the home of Herman Blennerhassett, a British subject who lived upon an island in the upper Ohio River. About 100 men descended in boats as far as Natchez on the Mississippi, where Burr learned that the plot was known. He then fled into the forest, but was captured and brought to Richmond, Virginia, and placed on trial for treason before Chief Justice Marshall (1807). Evidence was lacking to show that Burr was found in the act of "levying war" against any one of the United States, and he was accordingly dismissed.

toward the southwest. He found his way to the Rio Grande and returned through Texas.

The region drained by the Columbia River was known by the name of the Oregon country. It was entered in 1792 by Captain Gray of Boston, who gave the name of his ship, *Columbia*, to the river in which he found safe anchorage. The presence of Lewis and Clark at the mouth of this river (1805) confirmed the title of the United States to the entire region. The trading post, Astoria, founded by John Jacob Astor in 1811, was the first permanent settlement in Oregon.

The new region explored by Jefferson's agents offered a vast field for the westward growth of the United States. Jefferson



WESTERN EXPLORATIONS, 1804-1806.

thought that it would require a "thousand generations" to fill with people the country between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi River. In the year 1800, Pittsburg, Cincinnati, Knoxville and Louisville were small settlements, and Nashville was the most distant trading-post in the Southwest. Fort Dearborn, the most

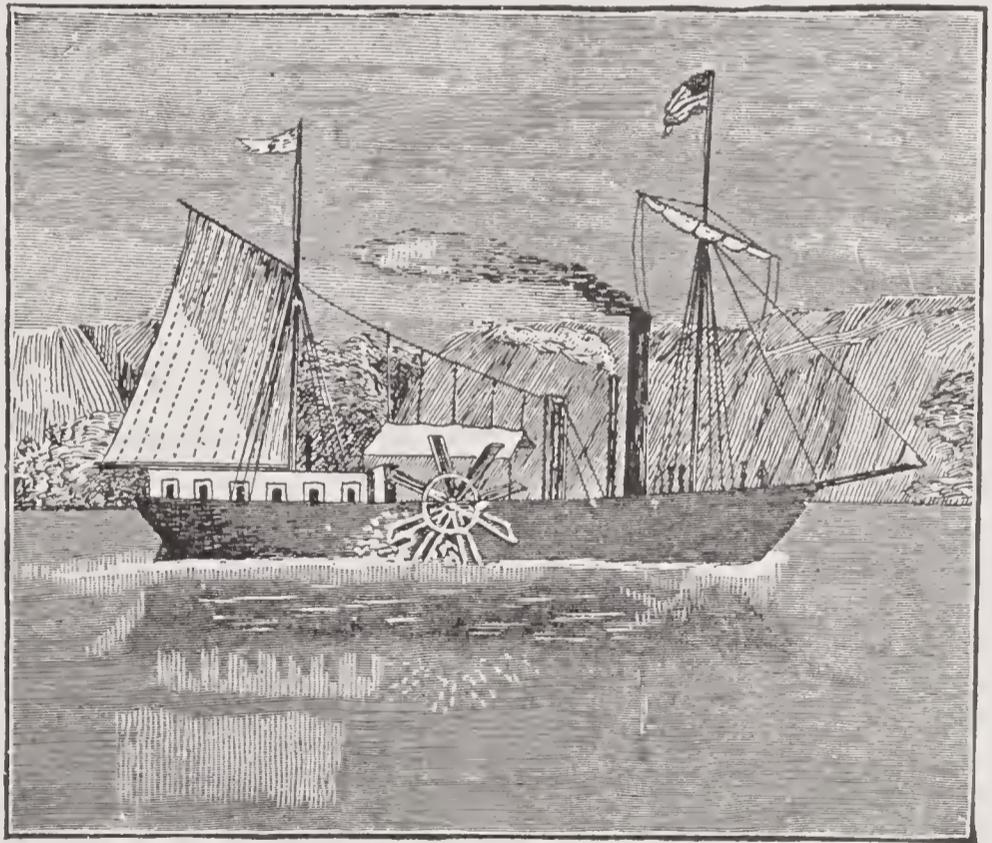
advanced outpost in the Northwest, built on the spot where Chicago now stands, was not erected until 1804.

**The Steamboat.**—The chief agency that led to the rapid occupation of the Great West was the steamboat. As early as 1786 James Rumsey operated a boat by means of steam on the Potomac River. About the same time John Fitch built a steamboat on the Delaware. However, no practical results followed these experiments.

The first steamboat to make a successful voyage in our country was the *Clermont*, constructed by **Robert Fulton**. It was equipped with side-wheels. In the summer of 1807 it pushed its way, in thirty hours, up the Hudson from New York to Albany, and soon afterward a line of boats was established to make regular trips on the Hudson. In 1811 Fulton launched a steamboat at Pittsburg and sent her on a voyage to New Orleans. After 1816, steamboats in large numbers began to ply on the western rivers, upon the lakes and along the seaboard, until the stream of westward emigration became a mighty current.

**240. England and France Make War Against American Trade. 1805-1807.**—When Jefferson was inaugurated in

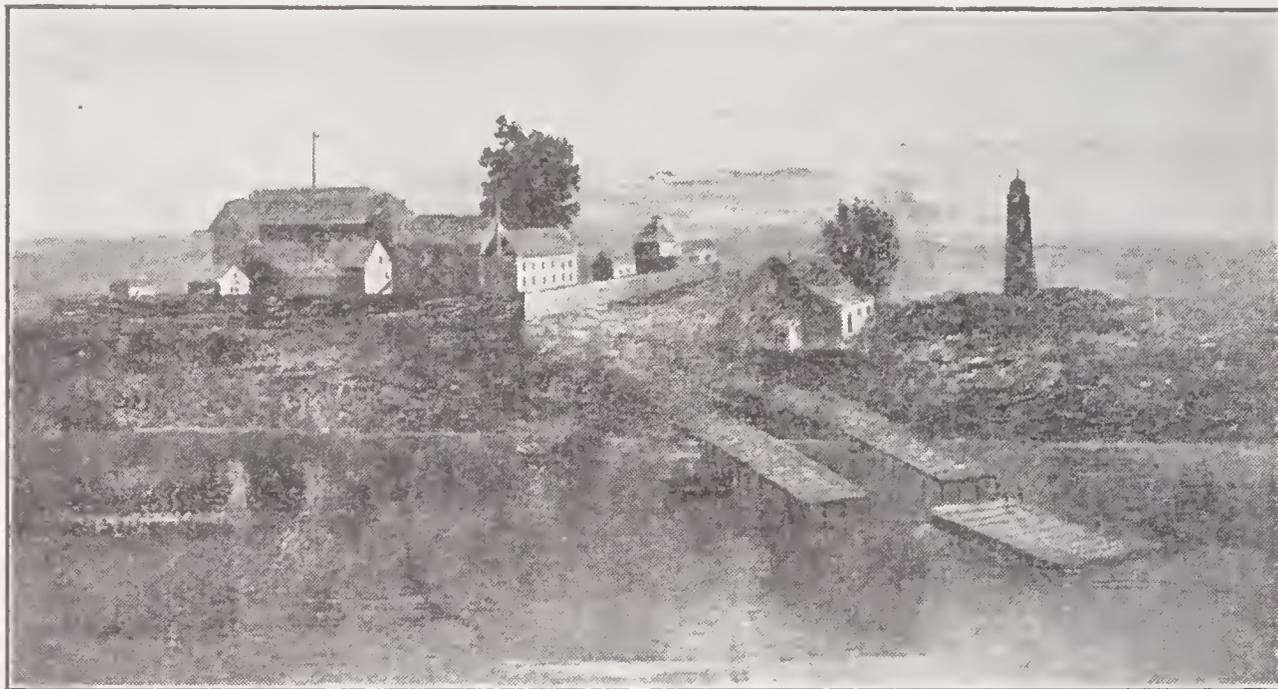
March, 1805, England and France were engaged in war. In May, 1805, England declared that American vessels could not carry goods from the French West Indies to France. British war vessels kept up the custom of stopping American ships in order to find out if there were any British sailors on



THE "CLERMONT."

board. They usually seized the best seamen, claiming that they looked like British sailors, and forced them, or impressed them as they called it, into the British navy. Outside of our ports British vessels were stationed to search our merchant vessels for goods and to seize our sailors.

In 1806–1807 England issued what were known as Orders in Council, authorizing the capture of neutral vessels trading from one French port to another. In reply to these Orders, Napoleon issued decrees from Berlin (1806) and from Milan (December, 1807), ordering the capture of any vessel that had entered a British port. Both England and France thus began an active



FORT DEARBORN IN 1810.

warfare against American commerce. Spain also was unfriendly to the United States because of the disputed boundary between Florida and Louisiana. Jefferson said that the western boundary of Florida was the Perdido River, while Spain claimed the territory as far as the Mississippi. France encouraged Spain in her claim.

**241. The Attack on the *Chesapeake*. 1807.**—On June 7, 1807, a crisis was reached in connection with England's practice of searching American vessels. Within full view of the Virginia coast, the British ship *Leopard* fired a broadside into the United States frigate *Chesapeake*, and took away four seamen, one of whom was hanged at Halifax as a deserter. This outrage stirred the people of the United States into a demand for war. Jefferson ordered all British war vessels to leave our waters, and also demanded reparation for the insult to the flag. The English government said it was not responsible for the attack on

the *Chesapeake*, and refused to give up the practice of seizing American seamen.<sup>1</sup>

**242. The Embargo Act. 1807-1809.**—Our only method of defense against foreign countries was to cut off commerce with both England and France. Congress therefore passed a bill called the Non-Importation Act, which forbade the importing of certain goods after November 15, 1806.

In December, 1807, Congress enacted a law called the Embargo Act, forbidding American vessels to leave our ports for foreign countries; foreign vessels then in our harbors were not allowed to take away any cargo except that already on board. Jefferson's plan was to cut off supplies from England and France by closing our ports against all foreign trade.



MONTICELLO, JEFFERSON'S HOME.

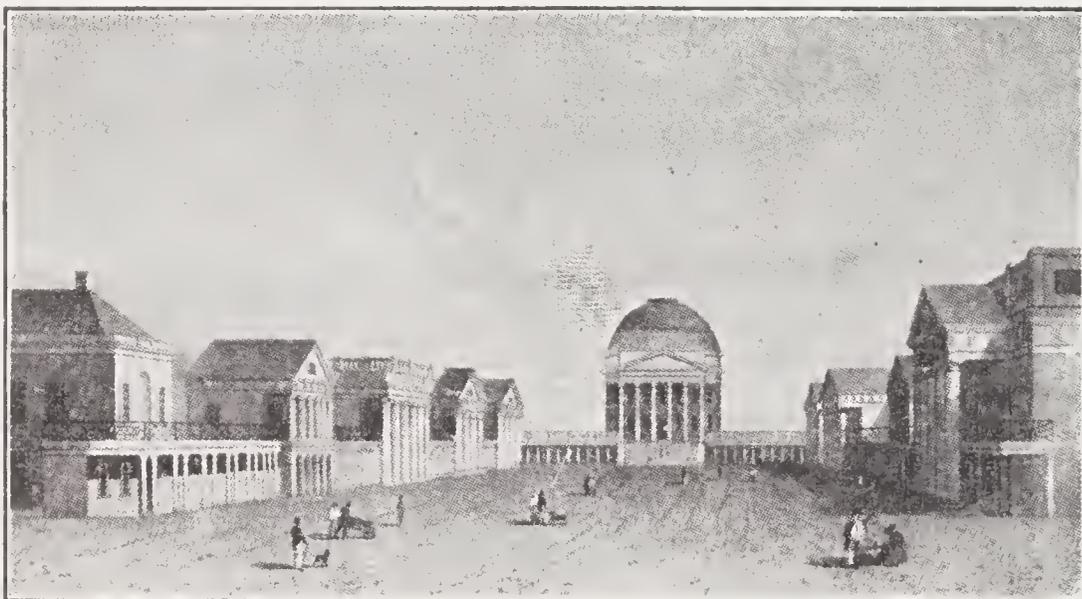
New England vessels by this law were kept idle, and at once the New Englanders began to show their opposition to the Embargo Act by threatening to withdraw from the Union. When Congress saw that the Union might be broken up, it repealed the Embargo Act and adopted the Non-Intercourse Act in its place (1809). This law forbade trade with Great Britain and with France.

**243. The Election of 1808.**—Thomas Jefferson refused to

<sup>1</sup> The Jay treaty with England (§ 221) expired in 1806, and a new treaty was offered by that country. But as Great Britain continued to claim the right to force American seamen to enter her navy, under the claim that they were British sailors, Jefferson did not even submit the treaty to the Senate.

be a candidate for a third term in the presidency, which some of his friends urged him to consider. The conduct of Washington and of Jefferson established a custom which has been followed ever since. The Democratic-Republicans nominated James Madison,<sup>1</sup> of Virginia. The Federalists again nominated C. C. Pinckney and Rufus King, but Madison was elected President by receiving 122 of the 156 electoral votes. George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice-President.

**244. Jefferson's Later Years.**—Jefferson declared that he retired from the labors of public life with the feeling of “a prisoner released from his chains.” At Monticello, his country



*From a print of 1831.*

THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

home near Charlottesville, Virginia, he continued for many years to influence the domestic and foreign affairs of the United States, through the advice which he gave his political friends who were in control of the government at Washington. The later years of Jefferson's life<sup>2</sup> were filled with his plans for the establishment of the University of Virginia, which he founded in 1819.

<sup>1</sup>James Madison (1751–1836) was a graduate of Princeton College; was a member of the Congress of the Confederation, 1781–1784, and was the principal framer of the Federal Constitution. From 1789 to 1797 he was the leader of the Democratic party in Congress; in 1798 he drew up the Virginia Resolutions, and in 1799 he prepared his famous Report on the Virginia Resolutions. He was Secretary of State, 1801–1809, and President, 1809–1817. He was a man of modest, simple manners and upright character.

<sup>2</sup>On July 4, 1826, Thomas Jefferson and John Adams died. It was the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence. “Thomas Jefferson still lives,” were among the last words of Adams, but in fact, Jefferson had passed away a few hours earlier on the same day.

home near Charlottesville, Virginia, he continued for many years to influence the domestic and foreign affairs of the United States, through the advice which he gave his political friends who

Jefferson carried with him into private life the satisfaction of having signed the bill which abolished the foreign slave-trade, to which he had made opposition during his entire public life. The Federal Constitution expressly authorized the continuance of this trade until the year 1808. A law of Congress, passed during the session of 1806-1807, declared it a high misdemeanor to engage in this traffic after 1807.

### Questions.

1. Describe the inauguration of Jefferson. What was Jefferson's mode of receiving people?

2. What was Jefferson's financial policy? What new state was admitted? What is meant by the "center of population"? Where was it in 1800?

3. Why did Jefferson wish to get control of the Mississippi River? Give the names of the successive owners of the region called Louisiana. Describe the way in which the United States acquired Louisiana.

4. What plan was made by New England for the formation of a Northern Confederacy? Why did the plan fail? What was the conspiracy of Aaron Burr?

5. What explorations were made by Lewis and Clark and by Pike? On what was based the claim of the United States to the Oregon country?

6. Describe the voyage of the first steamboat.

7. What mode of treating American commerce was begun by England in 1805? What were the Orders in Council? What declarations about commerce were made in Napoleon's Berlin and Milan decrees? Explain the difference of opinion between the United States and Spain with reference to the western boundary of Florida.

8. Describe the attack on the *Chesapeake* and its results.

9. Explain the Non-Importation Act of 1806. Explain the Embargo Act of 1807. Why did New England oppose it? What was the Non-Intercourse Act of 1809?

10. Why did Jefferson refuse to be a candidate for a third term? Who was elected to succeed him? Describe the influence and the work of Jefferson during his later years.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map the states of the Union in 1800, the territory of Louisiana, the Oregon country, Columbia River: the route followed by

Lewis and Clark, the route followed by Pike; Pittsburg, Cincinnati, Knoxville, Louisville, Nashville, Natchez, Charlottesville, Florida, Perdido River.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### WAR WITH ENGLAND.

1809-1815.

**245. President Madison.**—James Madison, who was inaugurated as President in 1809, had played the leading part in framing the Federal Constitution in the Convention of 1787. He had been the Democratic-Republican leader in Congress during the administrations of Washington and Adams, and had served eight years as Secretary of State during the presidency of Thomas Jefferson.

**246. Foreign Affairs. 1809-1811.**—In 1809 the British Minister at Washington made a treaty withdrawing the British Orders in Council, and Madison at once suspended the Non-Intercourse Act. But the British government refused to ratify the treaty, saying that its Minister had no right to make such an agreement. Thereupon Madison renewed the Act.



THE AUTOGRAPH OF MADISON.

The next year Congress passed an act known as Macon's Bill, Number Two, restoring trade with France and England, but providing that if either one of these countries should cancel the Orders or Decrees, the United States would have no commerce with the other. Napoleon announced that he was ready to accept these terms, and promised to recall the Berlin and Milan decrees. Commerce with France was opened again, but when the French ports were crowded with American vessels, Napoleon ordered their seizure. American property worth ten million dollars was lost through Napoleon's act of treachery. In the meantime, trade relations were cut off completely with Great Britain.

Before this cessation of trade, our Minister, Pinckney, left England. This act was a silent threat of war. In May, 1811, the American frigate *President* fell in with a British sloop on the Atlantic, and in the gathering darkness the stranger fired into the American vessel. The fire was returned and the British vessel, *Little Belt*, was disabled and captured. These events increased the hostile feeling of the war party in our country against England.

**247. Home Affairs. 1809-1811.**—While the struggle with England was drawing near, a war cloud suddenly burst upon the western frontier. Tecumseh, an Indian chief, organized an Indian confederacy and attempted to keep American settlers out of the Territory of Indiana, which lay west of the new State of Ohio. William

Henry Harrison, governor of the Territory, gathered an army of one thousand regulars and volunteers, and in November, 1811, on Tippecanoe River, defeated the Indians decisively. Tecumseh at once made an alliance with



*From the painting by Chappel.*

THE BATTLE OF THE RIVER THAMES, 1813.

In which Tecumseh was killed.

the British in Canada, and this confirmed the American people in their belief that the British authorities had incited the Indians to make war. Throughout the West the demand was heard that Canada must be invaded and conquered.

The year 1811 brought to a crisis the issues connected with our home and foreign policy. The Jeffersonian party in Congress refused to renew the charter of the Bank of the United

States, which had been chartered in 1791 to run for a period of twenty years (§ 217). The dispute with Spain over the boundary between Louisiana and Florida (§ 240) led to the occupation of the disputed territory by our troops. At the same time (1811) the Territory of Orleans, which was the southern part of the Louisiana Purchase, sought admission into the United States as the State of Louisiana. The New England Federalists at once opposed it, as they had opposed the purchase of Louisiana, and Josiah Quincy, one of their leaders, said in Congress that if Louisiana was admitted, the Union was practically dissolved, since the New England states must and would secede.

**248. The Beginning of the War with England. 1812.—**The Congress that assembled in the autumn of 1811 was under the control of a group of young leaders who had entered political life since 1789. The most prominent among these leaders were **Henry Clay**,<sup>1</sup> of Kentucky, and **John C. Calhoun**,<sup>2</sup> of South Carolina. They were filled with the war spirit, which was then strong

<sup>1</sup> Henry Clay (1777–1852) was born in Hanover County, Virginia. At fourteen he became a salesman in a store in Richmond, and later entered the law office of Chancellor George Wythe. In 1797 he began to practice law in Kentucky. He was elected to the Kentucky legislature, was in the United States Senate 1806–1807 and 1810–1811, and was in the House of Representatives 1811–1821 and 1823–1825, serving as Speaker most of this period. In 1814 he was sent to Ghent as peace commissioner. He was Secretary of State under John Quincy Adams (1825–1829), and was Senator 1831–1842 and 1849–1852. Three times he was an unsuccessful candidate for the presidency. He was the founder of the Whig party, and was known as “the Great Pacificator” because of his leadership in the Missouri Compromise (1820), the compromise tariff of 1833 and the compromise of 1850. John C. Breckinridge described Clay as “a man who was in the public service for fifty years, and never attempted to deceive his countrymen.”

<sup>2</sup> John C. Calhoun (1782–1850), a native of South Carolina, was graduated from Yale in 1804 and then studied law. He was in Congress as a Representative 1811–1817, was Secretary of War 1817–1825, Vice-President 1825–1832, Senator 1832–1843, Secretary of State under Tyler 1844–1845, and Senator again from 1845 until his death. He was the able and zealous champion of the South in the Congressional debates concerning the tariff and slavery. Daniel Webster, Calhoun’s great political opponent, said of him, “He had the indisputable basis of all high characters—unspotted integrity and honor unimpeached.”

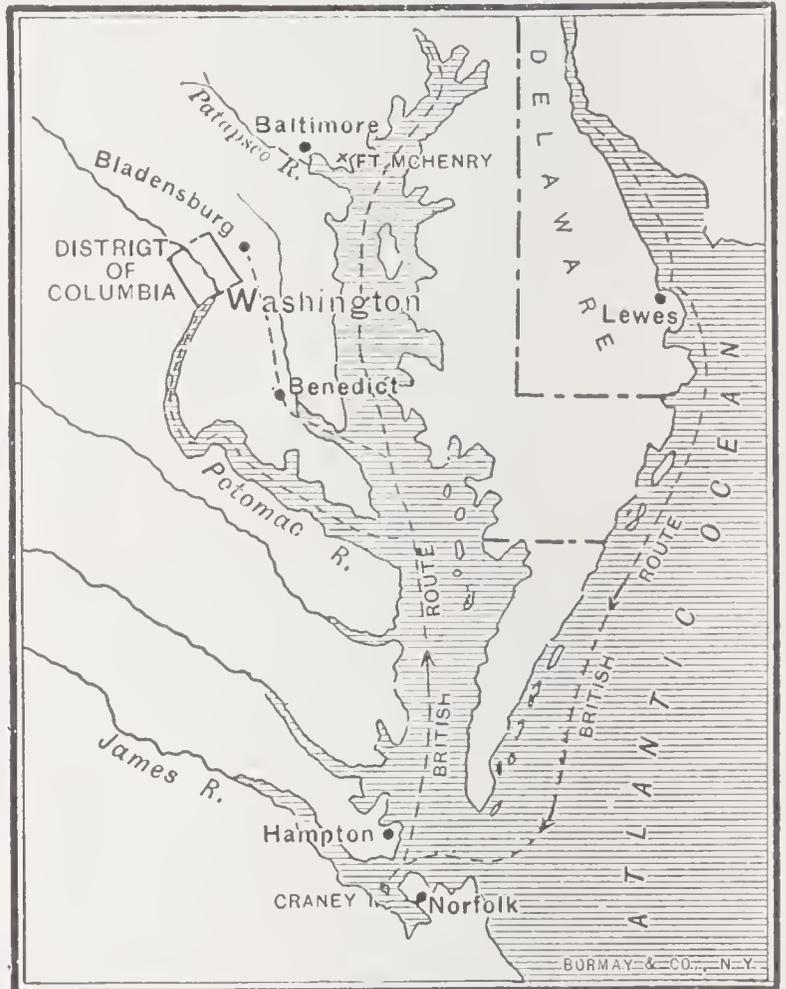
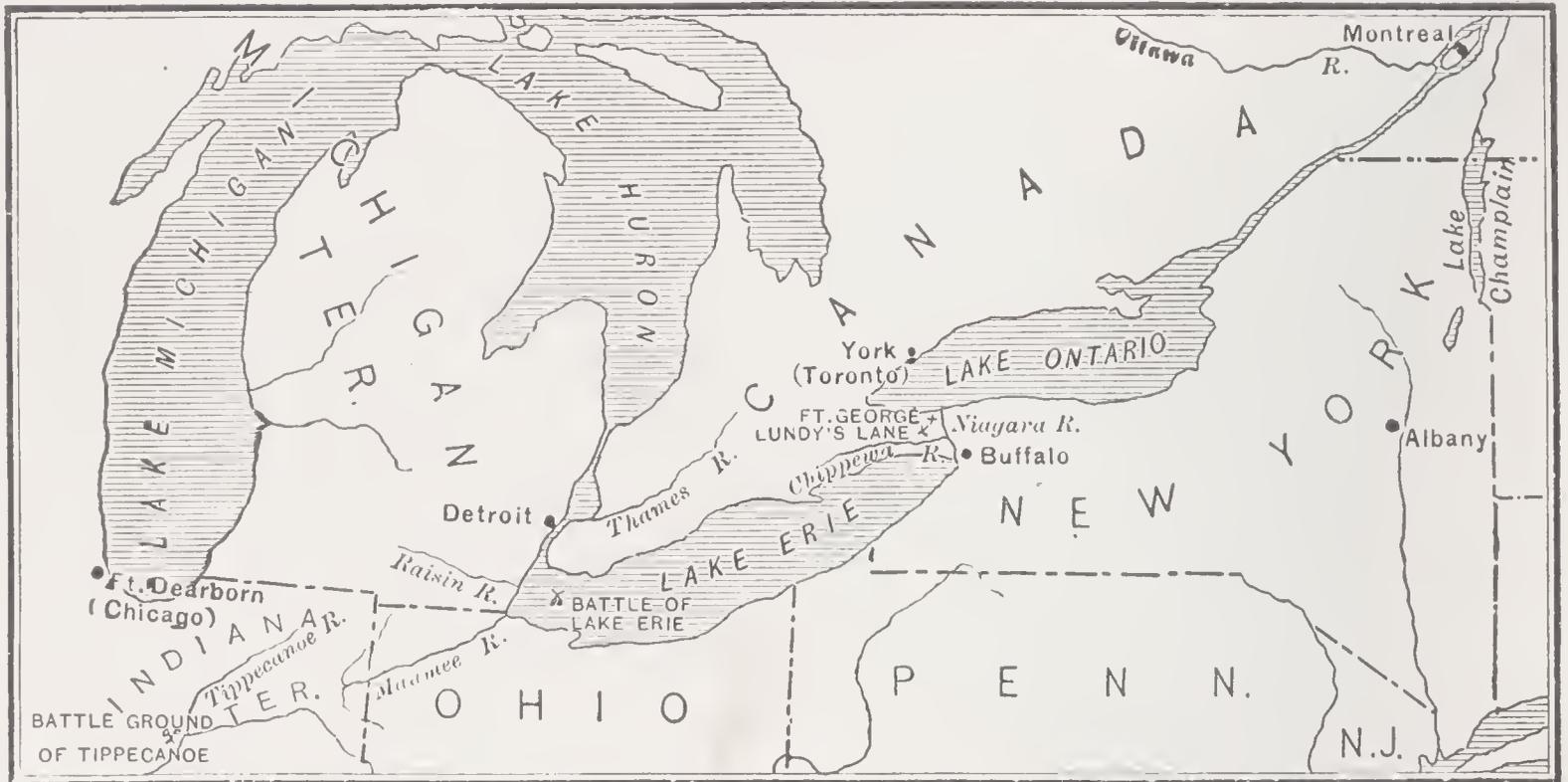
in the South and West. Henry Clay was chosen Speaker of the House.

On April 3, 1812, Congress adopted an embargo bill, forbidding commerce with foreign countries for ninety days. This was a step in preparation for war. On June 1st, Madison sent a message to Congress advising war, because England had seized and forced American citizens into the British navy, and because she was ruining American commerce and was inciting Indians to attack our frontiers. War was declared on June 18, 1812.

On June 23, five days after war was declared, England repealed her Orders in Council, because the British merchants had suffered much by their loss of American trade. The news of the repeal, however, did not reach America until the war had begun, as there was no Atlantic cable in those days.

**249. The War on Land and Sea in 1812.**—President Madison organized three armies in 1812, for the purpose of invading Canada. One of these was at Detroit under William Hull, governor of the Territory of Michigan; another was near Niagara under Van Rensselaer, and the third was located near Lake Champlain under Dearborn. When the British advanced against Detroit, Hull, without firing a gun, surrendered the fort and a thousand men to the enemy (August, 1812). The whole Territory of Michigan, with Fort Dearborn (Chicago), passed under the control of the British. The next disaster took place near Niagara, where Van Rensselaer's troops were defeated and nine hundred were made prisoners (October 13). Dearborn marched from Champlain to the Canadian border, but returned without fighting a battle.

There were sixteen ships in the American navy in 1812. England had 830. The British laughed our little fleet to scorn until the *Constitution*, commanded by Isaac Hull, met the *Guerrière* off the coast of Nova Scotia (August, 1812). In less than thirty minutes the British vessel was made a helpless wreck. Before the close of the year the *United States* captured the *Macedonian*, and the American *Wasp* defeated the British *Frolic*.



THE WAR OF 1812.

**250. Madison's Second Election. 1812.**—Madison was named in 1812 as the candidate of the party that favored the continuation of our fight against England. De Witt Clinton was put forward by the peace wing of the Democratic-Republican party. The Federalists voted for Clinton. Madison was elected by 128 votes against 89 cast for Clinton. Elbridge Gerry was

chosen Vice-President. The policy of war was thus sanctioned by popular vote.

**251. The War in 1813.**—American privateers sailed from New England, New York, Philadelphia and Baltimore, and during the entire war they captured 2,500 British merchant vessels. In 1813, however, the *Chesapeake* was captured by the British *Shannon*, and American ships were blockaded by the British fleet in the chief harbors along our Atlantic coast.

The fall of Detroit served as a trumpet-call to the country, and William Henry Harrison entered the Northwest with an army of volunteers. The Kentucky militia under Winchester advanced to the Raisin River, in Michigan, where they were captured by the British and the Indians. Harrison advanced to **Lake Erie**, where Captain Perry, of Rhode Island, constructed a fleet to coöperate with him. On September 10, near Sandusky, Perry met the British fleet, which had more guns and better, than the Americans. Perry's flagship, the *Lawrence*, was soon wrecked by the long-range cannon of the British. Perry was then rowed in a small boat to the *Niagara*. He led the American ships against the center of the British line, and won the battle in eight minutes.<sup>1</sup>



*O. H. Perry*

A force of 3,500 Kentucky horsemen, under Governor Isaac Shelby, advanced to Harrison's aid. Perry's flotilla carried these American troops across Lake Erie, and Harrison's army, thus reënforced, defeated the British and Indians at the **River**

<sup>1</sup> Perry's report of the victory to Harrison, written on the back of an old letter, ran as follows: "We have met the enemy and they are ours; two ships, two brigs, one schooner and one sloop."

**Thames.** In this battle, Tecumseh was slain. Other American successes were won along the Canadian frontier in 1813.<sup>1</sup>

British and Spanish agents incited the Creek Indians of southwestern Georgia and Alabama to make war against the white settlers. Armed with British weapons, the Creeks captured **Fort Mimms** on the Alabama River (August, 1813), and killed and



*From the painting in the National Capitol.*

PERRY TRANSFERRING HIS FLAG AT THE BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE.

burned more than five hundred men, women and children. Tennessee riflemen, under Andrew Jackson, marched to **Tohopeka**, or Horseshoe Bend, on a branch of the Alabama River, and there (March 29, 1814) destroyed the power of the Creek nation.

**252. The War in 1814.**—The campaign in 1814 was pressed with vigor on both sides. Operations were carried forward in three separate quarters, the Canadian frontier, the Southwest and the Atlantic seaboard. Jacob Brown and Winfield Scott advanced into Canada, and drove back the British at **Chippewa River** (July 5), and fought a fierce battle on July 25th, at

<sup>1</sup> Dearborn captured York (Toronto) and burned the Parliament House. Fort George, near Lake Ontario, was taken by a gallant assault led by Winfield Scott. An American force made an autumn journey against Montreal, but the movement ended in failure.

**Lundy's Lane**; but as the Americans were soon afterwards forced to withdraw across the Niagara River these battles brought them no real advantage.

The British sent an invading force southward from Canada to secure control of the states of Vermont and New York, but on September 11, 1814, Thomas Macdonough completely defeated the British flotilla on **Lake Champlain**, and the scheme for the invasion of New York thus came to nought.

In August, 1814, about 5,000 British soldiers disembarked in Maryland and marched against Washington. The city was defenseless. General Winder led out 3,200 troops, but these were soon scattered. The British entered Washington, set fire to the Capitol building, and sacked and burned the President's house, from which Mrs. Madison saved only the Cabinet papers. On the next morning they applied the torch to the buildings occupied by the departments of State and of War. The British then advanced against Baltimore, but strong fortifications barred the way. Their war vessels passed up the Patapsco River, and for a day and a night shelled Fort McHenry, which defended the approach to Baltimore, but they were repulsed by the American batteries<sup>1</sup> (September 12, 1814).

**253. The Battle of New Orleans. 1815.**—The next effort of the British was against Louisiana. A great fleet carried to the mouth of the Mississippi River 10,000 English veterans who had fought against the great Napoleon. Under the command of Sir Edward Pakenham, they landed nine miles below New Orleans and advanced to capture that city. Andrew Jackson, who had recently captured Pensacola, Florida, from the British and Spaniards, was ready to oppose Pakenham's army. Behind a fortification made of cotton bales, logs and mud he arranged his frontiersmen, about 6,000 in number. Pakenham led the chief part of his force in direct assault against the eastern end of Jack-

<sup>1</sup> Francis Scott Key, of Maryland, during the night of this bombardment, while a prisoner on a British vessel in the harbor, composed the stanzas of "The Star Spangled Banner."

son's position. The British veterans seemed to an eye-witness to fall before the fire of the riflemen like blades of grass beneath the scythe. The attacking column broke and fled. Pakenham was slain, and his army was withdrawn from the field. More than 2,000 British officers and soldiers were left dead or wounded upon the plain in front of the American troops.

**254. Peace with England. 1814.**—Jackson brought this crushing defeat upon the British army about two weeks after the



*From the painting by Carter.*

THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

signing of a treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain, at Ghent (December 24, 1814). Negotiations were begun in 1813, and our commissioners wrestled in debate with the English commissioners some eighteen months. Nothing was written in the treaty about the impressment of seamen. Both parties simply agreed to cease fighting. In point of fact, the United States gained what they fought for, since Great Britain never afterwards attempted to enforce the unjust practices that led to the war.

In 1819 the claim that Great Britain should pay for the slaves carried off by her armies, during the war of 1812, was referred to Czar Alexander of Russia. His decision was in favor of the claim,

and in 1827 Adams and Clay secured from the British government full payment for the captured Africans.

**255. The Treaty with Algiers. 1815.**—The Dey or chief ruler of Algiers, thinking it a favorable time to declare war upon the United States while they were still fighting with England, had seized several American vessels. In June, 1815, Commodore Decatur sailed into the Mediterranean, captured two Algerian ships, and forced a treaty from Algiers and the other Barbary States, compelling them to cease their attacks upon American commerce, and to promise not to make slaves of prisoners of war. The subjection of the United States to Europe was now entirely an affair of the past.



*Stephen Decatur*

**256. New England's Opposition to the War.**—When war was declared against England, June 18, 1812, thirty-four Federalist members of Congress, chiefly from New England, issued a protest against it. They declared that the Federal Union was made up of eighteen independent and sovereign states, held together only by moral bonds, and that President Madison's party was urging "a divided people" into hostilities. The Massachusetts legislature passed bills in direct antagonism to the laws of Congress for the enlistment of troops, and the governors of Massachusetts and of Connecticut refused to obey the President's call for soldiers. The New England banks refused to lend money to the United States government, although their vaults were filled with coin.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Near the close of the war, a convention of the New England states was called by the Massachusetts legislature. Twenty-six delegates sat in secret con

**257. Legislation at the Close of Madison's Administration. 1816.**—When Congress assembled in December, 1815, it was confronted by a public debt of one hundred and twenty-seven million dollars. The only money in use was paper money, for the people had stored away their small collections of gold and silver. For the purpose of manufacturing and bringing into use gold and silver money, the United States Bank, which had failed to secure a charter in 1811 (§§ 217, 247), was rechartered for twenty years with a capital of thirty-five millions, one-fifth of which was owned by the United States.

The period of war saw the rapid increase of cotton manufactures, chiefly in the Middle states. In order that home enterprise might be encouraged, a Tariff Act was passed which imposed duties twice as high as those that prevailed before 1812. A tariff is a tax, usually called a duty, laid on goods, wares and merchandise brought into a country from foreign lands. The first purpose in the collection of such a tax in our country is to secure money to pay the expenses of the Federal government at Washington. Another purpose is to protect goods made in the United States by keeping foreign goods out of our markets. The new bill of April, 1816, laid a tariff tax of about twenty-five per cent. on cotton and woolen goods brought in from foreign countries, and a heavy tax also on salt and iron. A measure was passed in 1816 to provide for the building of roads and canals by the Federal government, but Madison vetoed the bill on the ground that the Constitution did not give Congress the right to appropriate money for building highways through the states.

ference at Hartford from December 15, 1814, to January 5, 1815. They were all prominent leaders of New England, and they wished to guard the interests of each individual state against the power of the central government. With this end in view, they proposed seven amendments to the Constitution. They also demanded that no state should be required to furnish soldiers under a call issued by Congress, and that each individual state should have the right to claim the customs duties collected within its own borders. The convention adjourned with the expectation of meeting again, but the close of the war with England prevented another session.

Madison's last annual message to Congress, written in December, 1816, recommended, among other things, an increase of the army and navy, the improvement of the general money system, the encouragement of manufactures, and the founding of a national university.

**258. New States Admitted.**—Two new states were added to the Union during Madison's administration. These were **Louisiana** (1812) and **Indiana** (1816). Louisiana was the southern part of the Louisiana Purchase, and had been previously organized as the Territory of Orleans. Indiana was the second state formed from the Northwest Territory, Ohio being the first.

**259. The Election of Monroe. 1816.**—James Monroe,<sup>1</sup> who had shown financial and diplomatic ability in Madison's Cabinet as Secretary of State, was chosen President in 1816. He won the support of all the states except Massachusetts, Connecticut and Delaware, and received 183 electoral votes to 34 cast for Rufus King, the Federalist candidate. The Democratic system of government organized by Jefferson and Madison was thus upheld by the sentiment of the great mass of the people. Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, was chosen Vice-President.

### Questions.

1. What public services were rendered by James Madison before he became President?

2. What effort was made by Madison to keep peace with England? How did Napoleon deal with Madison in 1810?

3. Describe the battle of Tippecanoe. Why did the people of the West wish war with England?

4. Who were the leaders of the war party in 1812? Why did Madison ask for a declaration of war? When and why were the British Orders repealed? Why did not this repeal stop the war?

<sup>1</sup> James Monroe (1758-1831), a Virginian, left William and Mary College in 1776 to enter the colonial army. He fought at Trenton, Brandywine, Germantown and Monmouth. After the war he became a lawyer. He was a member of Congress 1783-86, United States Senator 1790-94, Minister to France 1794-96, governor of Virginia 1799-1802, Minister to Great Britain 1803-07, Secretary of State and Secretary of War under Madison, and President 1817-25. Of Monroe, Jefferson said, "If his soul were turned inside out, not a spot would be found on it."

5. What three expeditions were planned in 1812? What was the result of each? Describe the war on sea in 1812.

6. Describe the battles of Lake Erie and of the River Thames. Tell how Andrew Jackson destroyed the power of the Creek Indians.

7. Explain the importance of the victory of Macdonough on Lake Champlain. Describe the British attack on Washington and the burning of public buildings. What hindered the attempt to capture Baltimore?

8. What was the plan of the British for the capture of New Orleans? Describe the battle of New Orleans.

9. When and where was peace made between England and the United States?

10. In what way did New England oppose the war of 1812? What matters were discussed by the Hartford Convention?

11. What was the financial condition of the country in 1816? Tell of the rechartering of the Bank. Tell of the Tariff Act of 1816. What are internal improvements? What were Madison's views on internal improvement?

12. What states were admitted during Madison's administration?

13. Tell of the election of 1816.

### Geography Study.

Locate on the map Ohio, Indiana, Michigan, Canada, New York, Vermont, Lake Champlain, Lake Erie, Alabama River, Tippecanoe River, Raisin River, Thames River, Chippewa River, Patapsco River, Fort McHenry, Baltimore, Washington, Norfolk, Pensacola, New Orleans, Detroit, Chicago, Niagara, Plattsburg, Toronto (York), Lundy's Lane.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

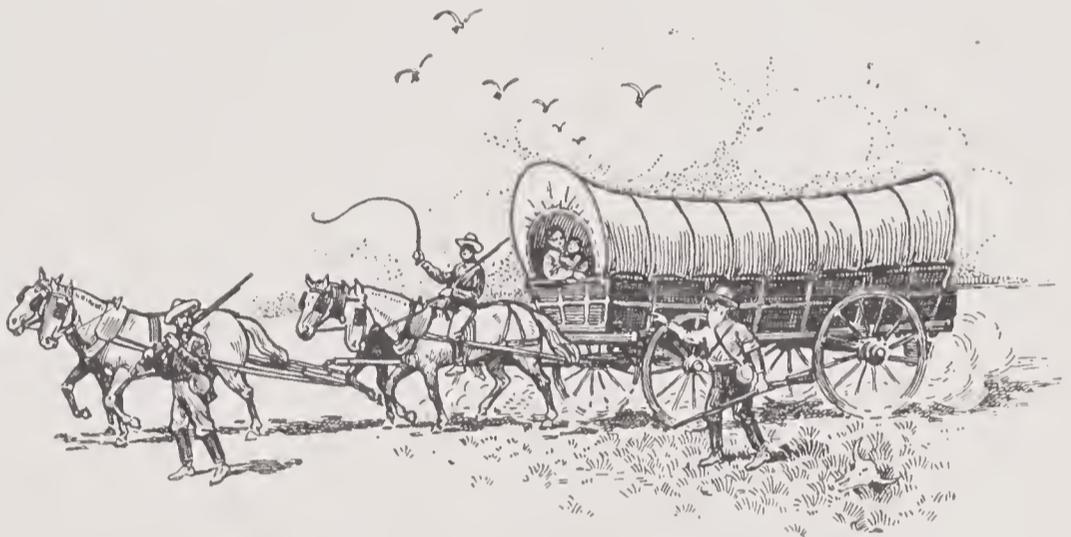
### MONROE'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

1817-1825.

**260. The Era of Good Feeling.**—James Monroe had been an officer in the Revolution, Governor of Virginia, our Minister to France when Louisiana was purchased, and Secretary of War as well as Secretary of State. He was inaugurated at Washington in March, 1817. Two months later, President Monroe, dressed in the uniform of a Revolutionary soldier, set forth upon a journey through the United States. Men of both parties united

in giving him enthusiastic welcome. From New England he turned westward by way of Lake Champlain and Niagara to Detroit, and thence returned to Washington. In 1819 he made a similar journey through the South. The former strife of parties had passed away. The Federalist party was dead, and there remained but one party, the Democratic-Republican.

**261. The Settlement of the West and Southwest.**—The war with England caused a great loss of business along the Atlantic coast, and many people therefore crossed the Alleghanies in search of new homes in the West. From 1812 to 1815, along the roadways of New York, emigrants



EMIGRANTS ON THE ROAD.

were constantly passing from New England to Ohio and Indiana. The population of Ohio increased from 230,000 in 1810 to 400,000 in 1816. Virginia and North Carolina lost thousands of citizens, who went into Kentucky, Ohio, Illinois and Missouri. Louisville grew rapidly as the center of traffic in the Ohio Valley. New Orleans became the chief shipping port of the entire Mississippi Basin. At the same time a great many emigrants from England, Ireland and Germany entered the country.

This great rush of settlers from the seaboard into the Mississippi Valley resulted in the admission of three new states into the Federal Union. These were **Mississippi** (1817), **Illinois** (1818) and **Alabama** (1819).

**262. The Business Panic of 1819.**—The emigration of so many home-seekers beyond the Alleghanies caused an increase in the buying and selling of public lands in the West. To furnish the money that was needed for carrying on the traffic in lands, about four hundred local banks were established. They

issued large quantities of paper money, but they had no coin with which to buy back their own paper notes, and in 1819 the crash came. Many of the banks failed, business was at a standstill, and hundreds of debtors were thrown into prison.

**263. The Purchase of Florida. 1819.**—At the close of the war with England (1783) the United States held West Florida, while Spain retained East Florida. The latter became a place of refuge for outlaws. It was also the home of the Seminole Indians, who were reënforced by some of the Creeks from Alabama. In 1818 Andrew Jackson followed a body of pillaging Seminoles from Georgia into the territory of East Florida and captured



*From an old print.*

THE SHIPPING AT NEW ORLEANS IN 1825.

two Spanish towns. Jackson also executed as spies two British subjects, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, who had stirred up the Semincles. It was evident that the United States should own East Florida, and in the following year (1819) this whole territory was secured by cession from Spain, for the sum of five millions of dollars. At the same time Monroe abandoned to Spain all claim upon the territory of Texas. Great Britain at this time surrendered her claims to the navigation of the Mississippi.

**264. Boundary Agreement with England. 1818.**—By treaty agreement with Great Britain in 1818, the northwestern boundary between the United States and Canada was made to follow the forty-ninth parallel from the Lake of the Woods,

which is north of Minnesota, to the Rocky Mountains. It was also agreed that the United States and England were to occupy Oregon jointly for ten years.

**265. The African Colonization Society. 1817.**—The condition of the free negroes in the United States was much worse than that of the negroes who were held in slavery. They were everywhere a “despised, proscribed and poverty-stricken class.” In Philadelphia, seventeen thousand of them were crowded into a few narrow alleys.

In 1800 the legislature of Virginia adopted a resolution in favor of securing for free negroes a place of colonization in Africa. This resolution was repeated in 1816. Robert Finley, of New Jersey, took steps to organize the African Colonization Society (January 1, 1817), and Bushrod Washington, of Virginia, was made president. In 1822 some negro colonists were sent to Africa, and the republic of Liberia was established for them on the western coast of the dark continent. In honor of President Monroe, the capital of the colony was named Monrovia.

**266. The Missouri Compromise. 1819-1821.**—Before the year 1803 slave-holding existed as a custom in the Louisiana Territory. Therefore, when this region was bought by the United States, it was occupied by a slave-holding people. The southern part of the territory was admitted to the Union (1812) as the slave-holding Commonwealth of Louisiana, and the northern portion was organized as the slave-holding Territory of Missouri.



THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE.

A portion of the Territory of Missouri, lying near St. Louis, asked, in 1818, to be admitted as a state of the Union. In Decem-

ber, 1819, Taylor, of New York, proposed in Congress that the people of Missouri should be required to put in their state constitution a clause prohibiting slavery, before that state was allowed to enter the Union. The South claimed that Congress had no right to say whether a state should or should not hold slave-property.

While this question of slavery in Missouri was under discussion, the territory of Maine applied for admission as a state. A compromise between the North and the South was proposed; **Maine** was admitted without slavery, and **Missouri** came in with slavery. At the same time slavery was forbidden in all the remaining portion of the Louisiana Purchase lying north of the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , the southern boundary of Missouri.

In the year 1821 the constitution of Missouri was presented to Congress for approval. This constitution, in addition to allowing slavery, forbade free negroes to enter the state. Northern congressmen thought that this was unjust to the free negroes, so another compromise was adopted, whereby Missouri was admitted with her constitution, provided that she should never limit the rights of citizens of any of the states. Many of the Southern leaders in Congress voted against both parts of the compromise, as it practically gave Congress the right to keep slavery out of the territories. Some Southern men seemed even ready to propose a division of the Union. John Randolph "of Roanoke,"<sup>1</sup> Congressman from Virginia, vigorously denounced this compromise measure and declared that it was unconstitutional.

**267. The Second Election of Monroe. 1820.**—The Federalist party had no organization in 1820. The vote for Monroe was almost unanimous.<sup>2</sup> The harmony of the whole country,

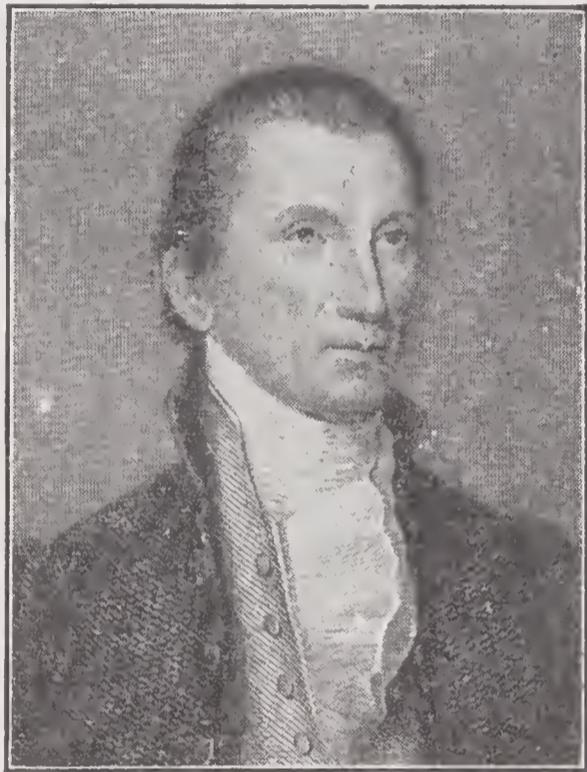
<sup>1</sup> John Randolph "of Roanoke" (1773-1833) was a member of the House of Representatives 1799-1813, 1815-17 and 1819-25, United States Senator 1825-27, again in the House 1827-29, and in 1830 was sent as Minister to Russia.

<sup>2</sup> One of the New Hampshire electors, chosen at the polls to support Monroe, assumed the right to throw away his ballot. The story runs that this elector was determined that Washington should remain the only President ever chosen by a unanimous vote.

however, was more apparent than real. New parties were to be organized, and the North and the South were soon to know the fact that a great gulf lay between them.

**268. The Monroe Doctrine. 1823.**—Important issues with foreign countries arose immediately after Monroe's second election. After the downfall of Napoleon Bonaparte, in 1815, the people of Mexico, Chili, Peru, Buenos Ayres and Colombia revolted against Spain and set up republics.

Russia, Prussia, Austria and France then formed the so-called Holy Alliance, for the purpose of helping Spain to conquer the South American republics that had once been her colonies. In 1822 the latter were recognized by the United States as independent nations. Great Britain asked the



PRESIDENT MONROE.

*James Monroe*

the purpose of preventing the overthrow of the Spanish-American States.

Although Monroe was unwilling to enter into an alliance with England for this purpose, yet, with the moral support of England, he said in a message to Congress (1823): (1) "That the American continents, by the free and independent condition which they have assumed and maintain, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power"; (2) that any attempt on the part of the European powers "to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere" would be considered "dangerous to our peace and safety"; and (3) that any attempt to control the South American States would be viewed "as the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition toward the United States." Monroe's message was not enacted into a law, but it caused the European



HENRY CLAY.

powers to give up their plans against America.

**269. The Tariff Law of 1824.**—In 1824 Congress passed a tariff law increasing the general average of duties from twenty-five per cent. to thirty-seven per cent. The bill was drawn chiefly to advance the interests of the wool and hemp growers of the West, the iron workers of Pennsylvania and the spinners and weavers of New England. This measure was warmly supported by Henry Clay, who claimed that Congress ought to develop a home market for all of our products and build up manufacturing industries. This double purpose could be accomplished, he said, only by laying upon all foreign goods a tariff duty heavy enough to keep such goods out of our country. Mr. Clay called this policy “The American System,” and he believed that it would make it no longer necessary for our people to buy manufactured articles from the countries of Europe and would also build up among us an export trade in manufactured goods.

The South made stout opposition to the bill, for the reason that it would enrich the manufacturer at the expense of the farmer. The bill was passed by the manufacturing districts of New England and by the Middle and Western states, which were interested in wool-growing and in woolen manufactures.

**270. The Election of 1824.**—Four leading candidates were offered for the presidency in 1824. These were John Quincy

Adams,<sup>1</sup> of Massachusetts, Secretary of State; William H. Crawford, of Georgia, Secretary of the Treasury; Henry Clay, of Kentucky, Speaker of the House of Representatives; and Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, the hero of the battle of New Orleans. They were all of one party, the Democratic-Republican, as no new party had been organized to take the place of the Federalist.

None of the four candidates received a majority of the electoral votes, which was necessary before any one could be chosen as President. Jackson was in the lead with 99; Adams received 84, Crawford 41, and Clay 37. The election was, therefore, thrown into the House of Representatives, and each state was to cast one vote. (See Const. Art. II. Sect. 3.) The choice was to be made from the three candidates who were highest on the list. This removed Clay from the contest. He threw his influence for Adams, who was elected on the first ballot, by the vote of thirteen of the twenty-four commonwealths. John C. Calhoun was chosen Vice-President.

### Questions.

1. Tell something about Monroe. What trips did he make? What was the "Era of Good Feeling"?
2. What caused emigration to the West? What new states were admitted?
3. What was the panic of 1819?
4. What trouble did we have because of Spain's ownership of Florida? How was Florida acquired by the United States?
5. What treaty was made with Great Britain in 1818?
6. Tell of the Colonization Society.
7. By what right were slaves held in the Louisiana Purchase? What was the position of the North when Missouri applied for admis-

<sup>1</sup> John Quincy Adams (1767-1848), son of President John Adams, after graduating from Harvard, became a lawyer. He was minister to the Netherlands 1794-97, and to Prussia 1797-1801. As United States Senator, 1803-08, he supported Jefferson's administration. After three years as professor at Harvard, he was appointed minister to Russia (1809-14), then to England (1815-17). He was Secretary of State 1817-25 and President 1825-29; and from 1831 until his death he was a member of Congress. Because of his skill in debate, he was called "the old man eloquent."

sion as a state? What was the position of the South? What compromises were made? What state was admitted with Missouri?

8. Tell of the election of 1820.

9. What was the Holy Alliance? What was England's attitude toward the Alliance? What is the Monroe Doctrine?

10. Describe the tariff bill of 1824. What was Clay's "American System"?

11. Who were the candidates for the presidency in 1824? In what manner was John Quincy Adams chosen President?

### Geography Study.

Find on the map Lake Champlain, Niagara, Detroit, Missouri, Louisville, Maine, Illinois, Alabama, Florida, Spain, Oregon, Lake of the Woods, Liberia, St. Louis, Chili, Peru, Buenos Ayres, Mexico, Colombia, Russia, Prussia, Austria and France. Trace the Ohio River, the Alleghany and the Rocky mountains. Through what states does the parallel of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$  pass? What states touch on the parallel of latitude  $49^{\circ}$ ?

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### THE ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

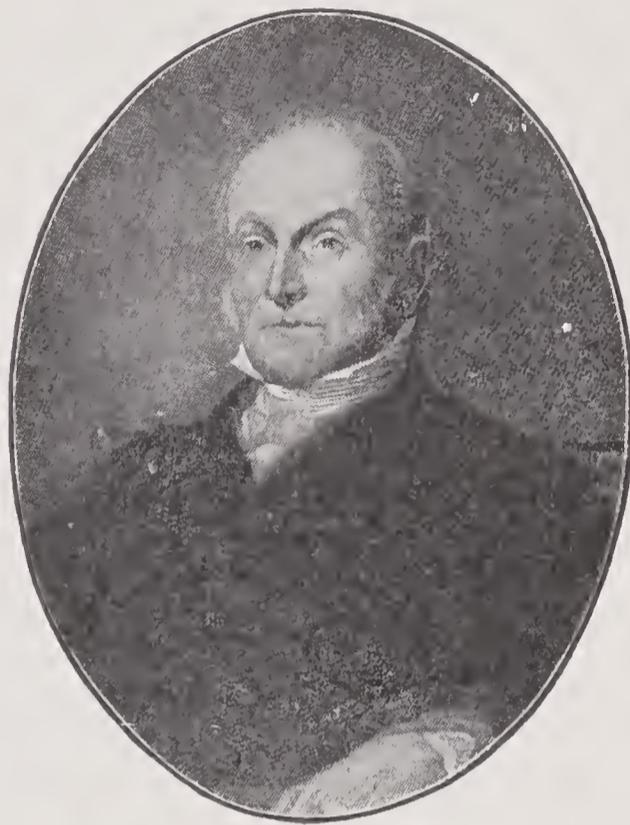
1825-1829.

**271. The Formation of New Parties.**—John Quincy Adams was inaugurated in 1825, and he at once appointed Henry Clay to the position of Secretary of State.<sup>1</sup> Two distinct political parties sprang out of the personal hostilities that marked the administration of Adams. Clay was the advocate of a high tariff, and Adams was in favor of extensive public roads and canals at the expense of the Federal government. The friends

<sup>1</sup> The opponents of both Clay and Adams raised the cry that a bargain had been made between them. Jackson's friends asserted that the will of the people had been defeated. They said that Jackson had the largest number of votes, although not a majority, but that, in spite of this, Clay helped to elect Adams to the presidency, in order to secure the office in the Cabinet. Both Adams and Clay indignantly denied the charge. They were honest men, and the charge itself was never proved. It was repeated again and again, however, and greatly injured both men.

of a strong central government gradually gathered themselves together as a separate party, known at first as "Adams men," but in 1828 they were called by the party name of **National Republicans**.

The opponents of the Adams administration were called "Jackson men." Jackson's supporters were opposed to high tariff and internal improvements. The masses of the people rallied around the hero of New Orleans and denounced that class whom they called pro-



*John Quincy Adams.*

fessional office-holders, who seemed to have complete control of the government at Washington. This party was the **Democratic-Republican**, afterwards called the Democratic party.

**272. Trouble with Georgia.**—A serious controversy sprang up between President Adams and the State of Georgia, with reference to the Creek and Cherokee Indians. In 1802 Georgia ceded to the United States, for \$1,250,000, the territory lying west of the Chattahoochee River. This cession was made upon the condition that the United States government should settle all claims made by the Indians to lands in Georgia. The Federal government, however, carried out this agreement only in part. In 1820 the red men attempted to organize an Indian state upon lands which they still claimed within the limits of Georgia. President Monroe, in 1825, made an agreement with some of the Indian leaders, whereby the latter gave up all claims to lands in Georgia; but the Indians refused to ratify the agreement made by their leaders. Governor Troup then declared that the original title to all land in Georgia was vested in the commonwealth, and that the Indians must submit to the laws of Georgia or depart from the state. President Adams announced

that he would send United States troops to uphold the claim of the Indians against the state. Governor Troup, however, called out the Georgia militia to resist the Federal forces. Congress declined to support Adams and he had to yield to the defiance offered by the State of Georgia. The issue was carried forward into the administration of Andrew Jackson, who sustained the independent position taken by Georgia.

**273. The Tariff of Abominations. 1828.**—The tariff of 1824 (§ 269) brought so great a profit to manufacturers that the New England people largely gave up their shipping interests and began to multiply spindles and looms. At the same time, they became advocates of still higher tariff duties on foreign goods.

In 1828 a new tariff measure was presented to Congress, increasing the tax on foreign goods to an average rate of forty-five per cent., or nearly one-half of their values. The bill was denounced in the South as a “tariff of abominations.”<sup>1</sup> The high tax laid on imported goods enabled American manufacturers to set a high price upon their own products. This increased price was paid, for the most part, by the people of the agricultural parts of the country.

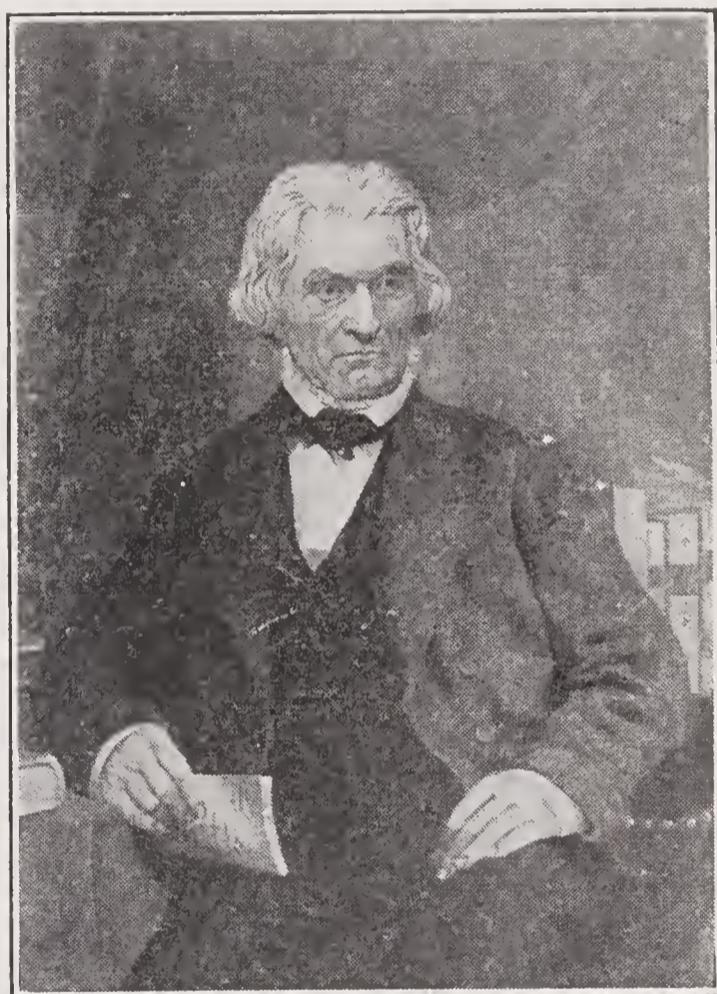
**274. The Presidential Election of 1828.**—There were only two candidates for the presidency in 1828, John Quincy Adams and Andrew Jackson.<sup>2</sup> Adams was the advocate of a high tariff

<sup>1</sup> Calhoun framed an *Exposition and Protest*, which was adopted by the South Carolina lawmakers in December, 1828. Calhoun showed that the Southern states were furnishing two-thirds of all the products that were then exported from the United States. He claimed that the tariff duty was laid finally upon these exports. He wished to have the tariff repealed, because he held the view that it made the South, which was one-third of the Union, pay two-thirds of the tax. He claimed, moreover, that the bill was unconstitutional, and that the people of any state might declare it null and void.

<sup>2</sup> Andrew Jackson (1767–1845) was born in North Carolina, but when a young man he settled in Tennessee and began to practice law. He represented Tennessee in Congress 1796–97 and in the Senate the following year. He won distinction in the War of 1812 by his victories over the Indians and over the English at New Orleans. He was defeated as candidate for President in 1824, but was elected in 1828 and again in 1832. He was a man of hot temper and

and of internal improvements. Jackson was the leader of the party in opposition to the Administration. The Jackson men stirred the country against Adams and Clay by the cry of "bargain and corruption." The hero of New Orleans was represented as the friend of the people, while Adams and Clay were said to be the enemies of the people. The West and the South were united in their support of Jackson, and, in addition, he secured the states of New York and Pennsylvania. Jackson received 178 electoral votes and Adams only 83. Calhoun was chosen again as Vice-President. This election marked a political revolution as complete as that of 1800. The political party founded by Jefferson was reorganized with reference to the new series of public questions and was now generally called the **Democratic party**.

**275. The States and Their Population in 1830.**—When Adams retired from office, there were twenty-four states in the Federal Union. Eight of these had entered since 1800. Only one of the new states (Maine) touched the Atlantic coast; the other seven were west of the Alleghanies. Only one, Missouri, lay entirely west of the Mississippi. There were three territories, Florida, Arkansas and Michigan. In 1830 the population fell a little short of thirteen millions, more than double the five and a half millions of 1800. Less than half a million of this increase was due to immigration. The same races planted here during the period of the Revolution continued to occupy the country. In the South there were



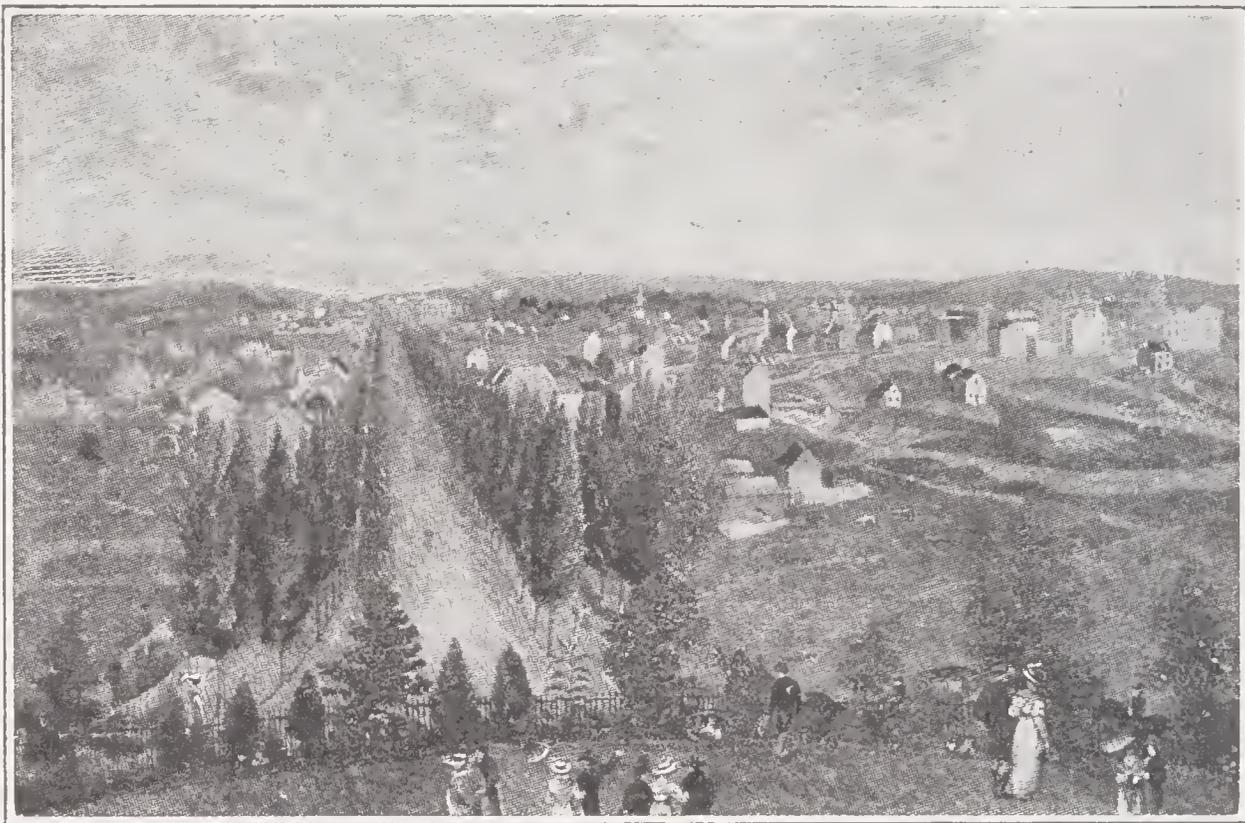
JOHN C. CALHOUN.

fought many duels. He was almost worshipped by the masses of the people, to whom he was known as "Old Hickory."

some two million African slaves. In the North there were about three hundred thousand free negroes.

In the North there was a strong tendency towards the building of towns. The growth of manufactures aided in bringing the people into New York, which was now the metropolis with a population of 200,000, and goods were sent by her merchants into nearly all the Western and Northwestern states. Philadelphia's numbers reached 167,000, and Boston had 61,000. Cincinnati was looming up in the West with 24,000. In the South, there were only two cities of considerable size—Baltimore with 80,000, and New Orleans with 46,000. Charleston, Richmond, Savannah and Norfolk had not grown much in population, but they retained their old importance as social centers and as commercial ports for the Southern commonwealths.

**276. Internal Improvements.**—In 1806 Congress authorized the construction of a public road from Cumberland, Maryland, to the Ohio River, with the consent of Maryland, Pennsylvania



*From an old print.*

THE CITY OF WASHINGTON IN 1825.

and Virginia. In 1817 Madison vetoed the bill for the construction of roads and canals at the expense of the Federal government. In 1822 Congress appropriated money for the repair of the Cumberland road, but Monroe vetoed the measure on the ground that Congress had no authority to construct public highways. New York State, at her own expense, built the Erie Canal

from Albany to Buffalo on Lake Erie. It was opened in 1825, and brought through that state the trade of the entire region of the Lakes.

**277. The Building of Railroads.**—The first spike on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad was driven July 4, 1828, and twenty-one months later fifteen miles of the road were open. The cars were drawn by horses. In 1829 the first locomotive was



AN EARLY RAILROAD TRAIN.

brought from England, but it proved a failure. The first successful locomotive in this country was built in New York, and in January, 1831, it was placed on the track of the South Carolina Railroad at Charleston. In 1832 the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad was opened to a distance of seventy-three miles. The work of building was carried forward with great vigor. After 1836 steam locomotives were used entirely, and in 1840 some twenty-eight hundred miles of railway were in operation in the United States.

### Questions.

1. What charges were made against Adams and Clay? What parties were now formed?
2. Tell of the trouble with Georgia.
3. What was the tariff of 1824? What was the "tariff of abominations"? What were Calhoun's views on this tariff?
4. Give an account of the election of 1828.
5. Describe the extent and population of the country in 1828. Tell of the cities.

6. Give an account of the internal improvements.
7. Tell of the first railroads.

### Geography Study.

Find Chattahoochee River, New Orleans, Baltimore, Charleston, Savannah, Cumberland, Albany, Buffalo and Lake Erie. Name the states on the Atlantic. Name the states touching the Mississippi. How many and what states are east of the Mississippi?

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

1829-1837.

**278. Jackson's Policy.**—Andrew Jackson was inaugurated March 4, 1829. His election marked a new era in the history of our country. He was the first President since John Adams who had not been a Cabinet official. He believed that the Constitution should be strictly interpreted and obeyed, yet he was often so high-handed in the exercise of his authority that his opponents called him "King Andrew," and his administrations are sometimes referred to as "the reign of Andrew Jackson."



*Andrew Jackson*

During the first nine months of President Jackson's administration, more than a thousand office-holders were removed and their places were filled with supporters of the President. Since Washington's time only about one hundred and fifty public officials had been deprived of office. The theory was now advanced that positions in the public service were to be given to the political followers of the successful candidate for office.

This theory was set forth in the saying, "To the victors belong the spoils"; and the practice is known as the Spoils System.

**279. The Indians of Georgia. 1819-1838.**—We have already seen the State of Georgia offering defiance to President Adams in connection with the Creek Indians (§ 272). Congress provided a home for the Creeks beyond the Mississippi, but the Cherokees still remained in northwestern Georgia. It was their purpose to continue as an independent community within the state. Three times the Cherokees appealed to the Supreme Court of the United States to aid them against the State of Georgia. The court decided that Georgia, because of treaties made by the United States with the Indians, could not interfere with their territory. President Jackson, however, would not carry out the decrees of the court, on the ground that the Federal government could not erect a new independent state, composed of the Cherokees, within the territory of the State of Georgia. The matter was finally settled by Congress about 1838, when all the Indians from the Gulf States were forced across the Mississippi into a reservation lying west of Arkansas, which is now known as Indian Territory.



SENATOR HAYNE.

*Rob. Y. Hayne*

**280. The Hayne and Webster Debate. 1830.**—In a debate that took place in the Senate, in 1830, Robert Y. Hayne,<sup>1</sup> of South Carolina, asserted that the burdens imposed upon the South by the recent tariff laws were heavier than the South was willing to bear. He gave warning that, unless these tariff measures were repealed, some of the states would not allow

<sup>1</sup> Robert Y. Hayne (1791-1840) represented South Carolina in the Senate from 1823-32, and was governor of his state 1832-34. He was a leading opponent of the protective tariff system.

them to be carried out. In this connection he argued that a state has the right to put aside any law of Congress that is not constitutional. This was called **nullification**, a view which Virginia and Kentucky had advanced in 1798 and which New England had upheld in 1814. He also claimed that the Constitution was a compact, or an agreement, among the states. Daniel Webster,<sup>1</sup> in a speech that was brilliant in manner and style, contended that Hayne's view of the matter was not correct, and claimed that the Constitution was not a compact. Most persons now believe, however, that Webster himself was incorrect in his view concerning the origin of the Constitution.

**281. Tariff and Nullification. 1833.**—There had been special complaint against the “tariff of abominations” of 1828 (§273). In 1832, therefore, a new act was passed, to go into effect on March 3, 1833. The duties of 1828 were reduced, but the new bill was oppressive to the farmers. Calhoun said that the act was unconstitutional, and on his advice the South Carolina legislature called a state convention which passed in November, 1832, the Ordinance of Nullification, saying that the tariff act was null and void and should not go into effect in South Carolina. President Jackson called upon South Carolina to obey the tariff law; at the same time he advised Congress to reduce the tariff. Calhoun resigned his office as Vice-President and was elected to the Senate so that he could defend his state.

At this point (February, 1833) Henry Clay introduced a compromise tariff bill, proposing a gradual reduction of duties. This measure became a law March 2, 1833, one day before the tariff of 1832 was to take effect. South Carolina was willing to accept this compromise and repealed the Ordinance of Nullification.

<sup>1</sup> Daniel Webster (1782–1852) was born in New Hampshire and was graduated at Dartmouth College in 1801. He represented New Hampshire in Congress 1813–17, and Massachusetts 1823–27; he was United States Senator from Massachusetts 1827–41 and 1845–50; he was Secretary of State 1841–43 and 1850–52. Webster was, perhaps, the most impressive public speaker America has ever known, and some of his addresses rank as classics of English literature.

**282. The Presidential Election of 1832.**—The Bank of the United States, which was chartered in 1816 for a period of twenty years, became one of the principal issues of the presidential campaign of 1832. Some of the managers of the Bank fought against Jackson's reelection. For the first time in our history, political conventions were called to nominate candidates. In September, 1831, the Anti-Masonic party,<sup>1</sup> in convention assembled, nominated William Wirt, of Virginia. In December the National Republicans met in convention and nominated Henry Clay, Jackson's former rival, who had become, after the defeat of John Quincy Adams, the chief leader of this party. Another convention of Clay's party, called (May, 1832) to adopt a platform, denounced Jackson's administration and advocated a protective tariff. The Democratic convention nominated Jackson, who easily defeated Clay; he received 219 electoral votes to Clay's 49. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected Vice-President.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

*Daniel Webster*

**283. Jackson Destroys the Bank of the United States. 1832-1833.**—In his first message to Congress (1829) President Jackson attacked the Bank of the United States, declaring that this institution was not in accordance with the Constitution. In

<sup>1</sup> In 1826 William Morgan, of New York, proposed to reveal the secrets of the Masonic Order. He suddenly disappeared. The charge was made that the Masons had murdered him. A party was organized, whose chief purpose was to prevent the election of Masons to office. Both Clay and Jackson were Masons.

1832 Clay and his party passed through Congress a bill renewing the Bank Charter. The President vetoed the bill on the ground that the Bank was unconstitutional, and dangerous to the government.

Jackson's triumphant reëlection in 1832 made him more determined to destroy the Bank of the United States. Through the Secretary of the Treasury, Roger B. Taney of Maryland, Jackson issued an order forbidding any further deposit of public funds in the Bank of the United States. The United States had ten million dollars in the Bank, and this was drawn out to meet current expenses. The money of the United States was then put into certain state banks, which were popularly known as the "pet banks." The Bank of the United States was then forced to call in its loans. The consequent scarcity of money brought the country near the verge of a panic in financial affairs.

The Senate, which was now under control of Jackson's enemies, passed a resolution censuring Jackson for his action in connection with the Bank. In January, 1837, the friends of Jackson had the censure formally expunged from the Senate record.

**284. The Surplus Revenue. 1835.**—The first day of January, 1835, saw the full payment of the public debt of the United States. The government received more from the taxes than it was spending, and by a resolution introduced by Calhoun, the surplus, to the amount of \$28,000,000, was distributed among the states in proportion to population.

**285. Paper Currency. 1836.**—Some of the states now began to expend large sums of money on public improvements. The people were seized with the fever for speculation, and the price of land was advanced. In order to meet the public demand for money to be used in business every day, a number of new banks in the Western states began to flood the country with paper currency. As the banks themselves had no gold or silver, the paper money which they issued was of no value. When this money was offered to the Federal government in payment for land (1836), Jackson issued a circular commanding Federal agents

to receive nothing but gold and silver and notes issued by banks that had plenty of hard coin in their vaults. This circular dealt a heavy blow at the policy of issuing a great volume of paper currency.

**286. The Election of 1836.**—The battle over Nullification and the Bank led to the final organization of political parties. The majority of Jackson's followers, called **Democrats**, believed in a strict construction of the Constitution, and opposed the Bank, internal improvements at the expense of the Federal



THE HERMITAGE, JACKSON'S HOME IN TENNESSEE.

government, and a high tariff. In 1834 a new political party was formed, whose members called themselves **Whigs**. This party consisted of all the elements opposed to Jackson, the most prominent of which were Henry Clay's National Republicans and a body of state rights men from the South. The Whigs denounced Jackson for various acts which they said were tyrannical.

The Democratic convention met as early as May, 1836, and nominated Martin Van Buren,<sup>1</sup> of New York, for the presidency.

<sup>1</sup> Martin Van Buren (1782-1862) was sent to the United States Senate from New York 1821-28, was Secretary of State under Jackson 1829-31, was Vice-President 1833-37, and President 1837-41. For three succeeding elections he was an unsuccessful candidate for the presidency.

A portion of the Whig party nominated William H. Harrison, of Ohio. The result of the election was in favor of Van Buren, who had 170 votes. Harrison received 73 votes, and 51 were scattered. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was chosen Vice-President.

**287. The Panic of 1837.**—A serious disturbance in financial affairs marked the close of Jackson's administration. Prices and rents were high. In New York the price of flour ran up to such a figure that in February, 1837, bread riots terrorized the city. A commercial crisis was at hand. There was great scarcity of gold and silver, and the paper money of the banks was discovered to be without value. Speculation had advanced prices, and they fell at once with a crash. Business firms went into bankruptcy, workmen lost their employment, and the poor were in great distress through lack of food.

**288. Indian Wars. 1832-1842.**—In 1832 a war broke out in Illinois with the Winnebagoes, the Sacs and the Foxes, who were led by a famous Indian chieftain named Black Hawk. The Indians were defeated and were forced to sell to the United States about ten million acres of land. The year 1835 saw the beginning of a war with the Seminoles of Florida, who were under the leadership of a chief named Osceola. The Seminoles were finally subdued by Zachary Taylor (1842) and were afterwards removed to Indian Territory.

**289. New States. 1836, 1837.**—Near the close of President Jackson's administration two new states were admitted to the Union. These were **Arkansas** (1836) and **Michigan** (1837).

### Questions.

1. Give some account of Jackson's life. Tell of his Cabinet and advisers. What was the "spoils system"? What treaties did Jackson make with England and France?

2. Tell of the trouble between the Indians and the State of Georgia. What was Jackson's position? What became of the Indians?

3. What was Hayne's argument in the Senate in 1830? What was Webster's reply?

4. What was the tariff of 1832? What was South Carolina's action? What was the compromise tariff of 1833? How did South Carolina accept this? What was Jackson's attitude toward South Carolina?

5. Tell of the election of 1832. What view did Jackson take of the election?

6. Tell of Jackson's attack on the Bank. Who was the chief advocate of the Bank? Tell how the money was taken from the Bank of the United States. What were the "pet banks"? What did the Senate do with reference to Jackson?

7. What were the principles of the new parties? Who was elected in 1836?

8. Tell about the money panic of 1837.

9. Tell of the Indian wars from 1832 to 1842.

10. What new states were admitted during Jackson's administrations?

### Geography Study.

Find Indian Territory, the West India Islands, Arkansas and Michigan. Name all the states of the Union in 1837.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### SLAVERY BECOMES A POLITICAL ISSUE.

1837-1844.

**290. Van Buren's Sub-Treasury System. 1840.**—Van Buren was inaugurated in 1837. The first great question that he had to consider was the financial one. He submitted to Congress a plan for establishing sub-treasuries, so that the money of the United States might be taken out of the hands of the state banks. In 1840 this plan became a law; it provided for large money-vaults, under the control of the treasury department, at Boston, New York, Washington, St. Louis and Charleston. To these were added the mints at Philadelphia and New Orleans, in which the public funds were to be kept.

**The Mormons.**—In 1840 the "sacred city" of Nauvoo, Illinois, was founded by the "Latter Day Saints." These were followers of Joseph Smith,

a native of Vermont, who set forth a new religion, called Mormonism, of which he announced himself the chief prophet. Several disciples joined Smith, and he moved westward to the banks of the Mississippi in Illinois and built Nauvoo. In 1843 Smith claimed a new revelation from Heaven, enjoining him to institute plural marriages. In 1844 this modern prophet was shot by a mob and Brigham Young became the leader of the Mormons. Two years later they were forced out of Illinois. They crossed the Rocky Mountains and began to build Salt Lake City in the great desert of Utah (1847).

**291. Material Progress. 1837-1844.**—The period now under consideration witnessed a rapid growth of population in



PRESIDENT VAN BUREN.

*M Van Buren*

the Mississippi Valley. Within ten years (1830-1840) Ohio ran up her numbers from 900,000 to 1,500,000. Michigan's population increased 570 per cent. and Mississippi's 175 per cent. The other Mississippi Valley states were filled in the same rapid way. Chicago's growth, in ten years, changed her from a mere village to a thriving commercial center. In 1840 St. Louis

was beginning to draw the trade of the middle West through her great warehouses on the river-front.

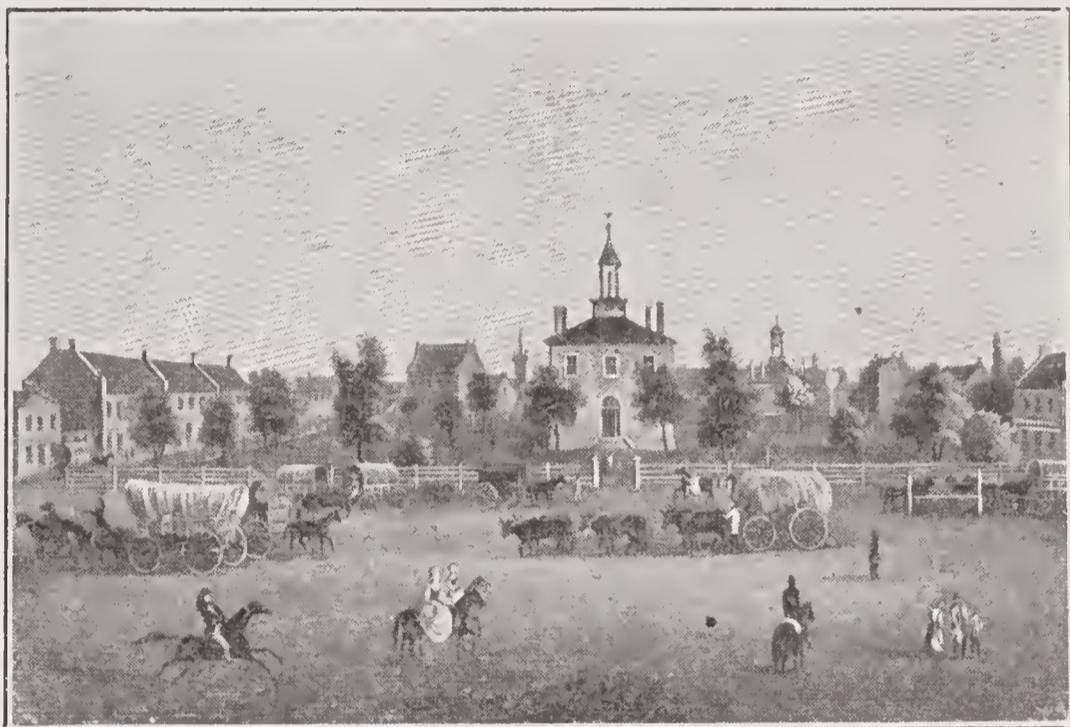
New Orleans continued to control the trade of the Southwest. As a shipping-port, she was rivalled only by New York.

The 23 miles of railway in operation in the United States in 1830 were extended to 2,818 miles in 1840. The greatest rate of railway development was in the Middle states. In 1850 the South had about one-fifth of the total railroad mileage of the whole country. She increased this ratio to one-third in 1860.

The multiplication of railways and canals in the North drew the chief part of our home trade through her cities. The great resources of the North were used in founding shipyards and in establishing lines of sea-going vessels. Swift ocean steamers took the place, in large part, of the slow sailing ships.

This period saw great activity in the building of factories. In

this work the North outstripped the South. In 1840 there were only 280 cotton factories in the South, while there were 960 in the North. The value of the products of the Southern mills was nearly four million dollars; that of the Northern factories more than forty-two millions. The value of the South's woolen cloth was little more than half a million; that of the North some twenty millions. The South's staple products were cotton, sugar and tobacco.



*From an old print.*

A MISSOURI VILLAGE IN 1840.

**292. Sentiment Against Slavery.**—After the invention of the cotton-gin in 1793, the raising of cotton became the chief industry of the South. This work required a large supply of laborers, and as the slaves increased in numbers, Southern statesmen became filled with alarm. In 1807 Jefferson secured enactments against the African slave-trade, but it continued long after 1808. In 1820 the foreign slave-traffic was declared to be piracy, but under John Quincy Adams our government allowed other interests to have greater weight, and would not make a treaty with England to join in suppressing it. The great majority of the slave-ships were at that time American built, and sailed under the American flag.

In 1817 a number of Southern statesmen organized the African Colonization Society. They were not in favor of setting slaves free at once, for the reason that they did not know what to do with the negro after he became free.<sup>1</sup> In 1826 there were more

<sup>1</sup> Jefferson, Washington, Madison, Clay and other Southern men were not only opposed to the foreign slave-traffic, but they wished to set free all negroes

than one hundred anti-slavery societies in the South, favoring gradual emancipation, while there were only about one-third as many in the North.

Southern sentiment against slavery reached a climax in a debate in the Virginia legislature in 1831–1832. Nat Turner, a half-insane negro who claimed to be a prophet, had stirred up a number of slaves to murder some white people in Southampton county. When the legislature assembled, the whole question of slavery came up for discussion. A proposition was made to free gradually the slaves held in Virginia; the negroes thus made free were to be sent, as they grew up, to some colony beyond the borders of the commonwealth.

The measure failed to pass the legislature, but the division of the vote was close. The debate revealed the fact that Virginia was ready to face the whole issue of emancipation. Many people throughout the South were ready to follow her in the attempt to solve the great problem. They needed sympathy and counsel, but instead of that they received nothing but fierce denunciation from the new class of opponents of slavery known as abolitionists.

**293. Conditions of Life Among the Slaves.**—In 1850 there were about 2,900,000 slaves in the fifteen Southern states and the District of Columbia.<sup>1</sup> In the great majority of cases only a small number of slaves were held together upon any one plantation. Under this system African savages became members of a civilized household. The master taught them the meaning of

born after a fixed date, and then to send into some foreign country the free negroes who had reached a certain age.

<sup>1</sup> About 400,000 of the slaves dwelt in towns. About 1,850,000 were occupied in the cultivation of cotton, 350,000 in tobacco, 150,000 in sugar, 125,000 in rice, and 60,000 in hemp. The remaining slaves were engaged in cultivating other crops; some of them were infirm through age.

The owners of these negroes numbered 347,525. The average number of servants was thus about eight to each owner. As many as 174,503 owned fewer than five slaves; 165,093 owners held between five and fifty; only 7,929 owned more than fifty. Those who held more than two hundred slaves were few in number. Only two men in the whole South owned more than 1000 each.

law and order. Domestic servants learned to imitate the good manners of the people whom they served. They learned the use of tools, and many of them became skilled as blacksmiths, tanners, shoemakers, weavers, painters and carpenters. The negroes became proficient in the simple agricultural methods of the South. The system of slavery in the South was thus a great industrial school. "The first law of slavery was kindness to the slave," and with few exceptions this law was recognized and obeyed by the people of the South.<sup>1</sup> The selling of slaves was largely due to the division of estates. Very often such sales were for the payment of debts. As a last resort unmanageable servants were sold. Very few of the planters attempted to amass money by selling negroes.

There were no public schools for the benefit of the negroes in the South. Their mental training was left to their owners, and a great deal of private instruction was given. Household servants sometimes learned to read, and these gave



A SOUTHERN PLANTATION SCENE.

instruction to others. Religious instruction, however, was always given to the slaves in the South in considerable measure.<sup>2</sup>

**Free Negroes.**—In 1860 as many as 261,918 free negroes were living in the South, and 226,152 in the North. In 1850 free negroes in Louisiana held \$4,270,295 in real estate; in Connecticut they held only \$303,535 and in New York \$107,310.

<sup>1</sup> Many Northern travelers said that the material condition of the Southern slave was far better than that of most of the laboring men in the Northern states and in Europe.

<sup>2</sup> Seats were reserved for slaves in every church, and they were received as members of white churches. In some sections the slaves organized their own

**294. The Burden of Slavery.**—The system of slavery proved to be a heavy burden to the white race. Negroes were not profitable laborers, and slave owners did not heap up wealth from the toil of men in bondage. There was lack of money among slave owners to build railroads, ships and factories. It was in a large measure due to the unsatisfactory character of slave-labor that mines of coal and iron were not opened, and timber forests were left standing. Slavery helped to widen the distance between rich and poor. Because of slavery large numbers of white people were unwilling to work at a trade or to labor in the fields. Slavery, in its results, was slowly uplifting the black race to a higher plane of life, but at the same time it was a fearful burden resting upon the white people of the South.

**295. The Abolitionist Movement. 1831.**—The Abolitionist movement began with the establishment of the *Liberator* at Boston, January 1, 1831. William Lloyd Garrison was the editor. In the first number of the *Liberator*, Garrison demanded immediate emancipation without remuneration to the slaveholder. He asserted that the slave-owner was a criminal of the worst type.

In 1832 Garrison organized in Boston the New England Anti-Slavery Society. It consisted, at first, of only twelve members. In 1833 the American Society was organized at Philadelphia. Its purpose was the entire abolition of slavery in the United States. It asserted that slavery was a crime.

The Abolitionists proposed no fair scheme of emancipation, but only used the most violent language, in the effort to brand the slave-holder as criminal, man-stealer, oppressor and pirate. They even sent pamphlets among the slaves of the South, with the intention of stirring the hatred of the negroes against their masters. Some of the agents of the Society openly declared that Southern slaves had the right to kill their masters.

churches and supported their own pastors. On many of the plantations, ministers were employed to preach, to baptize, to perform the rite of marriage, and to bury the dead.

The Abolitionists next attempted to carry their war into the halls of Congress. This body had long before declared that it had no right to take action on the slavery question. In December, 1835, petitions came in from the Abolitionists, asking for emancipation in the District of Columbia. The Southern leaders carried through the House of Representatives a resolution not to receive the petitions at all. At once the Abolitionists claimed that the right of petition, which must be conceded under every free government, had been denied.<sup>1</sup> A few years later the Abolitionists declared that the Federal Constitution was "a covenant with death and an agreement with hell," and that the Union ought to be at once divided.

From his place in the Senate (February, 1839) Henry Clay denounced the anti-slavery agitators as men who were willing to bring on civil war and to dissolve the Union. The great majority of the Northern leaders in Congress were also at this time opposed to the way in which the Abolitionists denounced the South.

**296. The Election of 1840.**—In 1840 the Whigs announced no platform, but the various elements of the party agreed to nominate William Henry Harrison<sup>2</sup> the "Hero of Tippecanoe," and John Tyler,<sup>3</sup> of Virginia. The convention of

<sup>1</sup> John Quincy Adams, a member of the House of Representatives since 1831, became the champion of the petitioners. Carts were used to haul in the growing number of petitions against slavery, and the halls of Congress were transformed into a forum where the Southern people were denounced as outlaws. The petitions dwelt upon the alleged cruelty and horrors of slavery. Calhoun declared them to be "a foul slander on nearly one half of the states of the Union."

<sup>2</sup> William Henry Harrison (1773–1841) was governor of Indiana Territory 1801–13, member of Congress from Ohio 1816–19, and United States Senator 1825–28.

<sup>3</sup> John Tyler (1790–1862) was born in Virginia, was educated at William and Mary College, and was admitted to the bar in 1809. He was in the House of Representatives 1816–21, Governor of Virginia 1825–27, and United States Senator 1827–36. He was a state rights Whig, and entered the coalition party opposed to Jackson. In 1861 he presided over the Peace Conference in Washington, and later he advocated the secession of Virginia. He was a member of the Congress of the Southern Confederacy.



*W. H. Harrison      John Tyler*

the Democratic party renominated Van Buren. The Abolitionists, or Liberty party, nominated James G. Birney. The Democrats ridiculed the candidacy of Harrison, who was then living on a little farm, by saying, "Give him a log cabin and a barrel of hard-cider, and he will stay content in Ohio." The Whigs appropriated these words as campaign symbols and they carried in their processions log cabins, barrels of cider and live raccoons. "Tippecanoe and Tyler too" was their war cry.

After an exciting contest it was found that Harrison and Tyler had 260 electoral votes while Van Buren received only 60.

**297. Harrison and Tyler.**—Harrison was inaugurated March 4, 1841, and a month later he died. Vice-President Tyler immediately became President. He was an advocate of the strict construction of the Constitution and had entered the coalition party against Jackson and Van Buren. The Whigs then held a majority in both Houses of Congress. Clay as their leader brought forward bills repealing the Independent Treasury Act or Sub-Treasury Scheme of 1840 (§ 290), and providing a charter for a new national bank to take the place of the bank destroyed by Jackson. President Tyler vetoed the Bank

bill (1841) on the ground that it was unconstitutional. A new measure was passed to establish the Fiscal Bank, but the President refused to sign it. The entire Cabinet resigned at once, with the exception of Daniel Webster. Only one important Whig measure was signed by Tyler during his entire administration. This was the Tariff of 1842, which was a tariff for revenue alone.

**298. The Webster-Ashburton Treaty. 1842.**—Webster, as Secretary of State, in 1842 completed negotiations with Lord Ashburton, British Minister at Washington, with reference to the northeastern boundary of the United States. A boundary dispute between Maine and Canada seemed about to involve the two countries in war, and the present northeastern boundary of Maine was adopted as a compromise line. Our northern boundary was settled as far west as the Lake of the Woods in Minnesota.

**Dorr's Rebellion. 1842.**—Thomas W. Dorr organized a rebellion against the existing state government in Rhode Island. He was driven from the state, but the movement led to the adoption of a new and more liberal constitution which gave the right of voting to a larger number of men.

**299. The Annexation of Texas. 1836-1845.**—The proposed annexation of Texas became the main issue between the North and South near the close of Tyler's administration. The territory of Texas was first occupied by La Salle's colony at Matagorda Bay (§ 103). It was for a time (1803-1819) claimed by the United States as a part of the Louisiana Purchase, but in 1819, when Florida was bought, Texas was formally yielded to Spain.



STEPHEN F. AUSTIN.

*S. F. Austin*

Mexico secured independence from Spain (1821), and the "State of Coahuila and Texas" became a member of the Mexican republic. Moses Austin, a native of Connecticut, secured from the Mexican government a grant of land in central Texas, and

Austin's son Stephen established upon this grant a large colony of Southern people. Some twenty thousand farmers were established, by 1830, upon similar land grants. They took their negro servants into Texas, in spite of the fact that Mexican laws (1827) forbade slavery. In 1830 further immigration into Texas from the United States was forbidden. The Mexicans imposed

oppressive laws upon the American settlers, and in 1835 President Santa Anna overthrew the Mexican republic and made himself chief ruler.

The Texans would not endure Santa Anna's misrule, and announced their independence in a formal declaration signed by fifty-seven Texan leaders (March 2, 1836). Santa Anna led his so'diers into Texas, and committed great atrocities against small companies of Texans at Goliad and at the Alamo, an old Spanish church building in San Antonio. This aroused the American settlers and they went out to deliver



GENERAL HOUSTON.

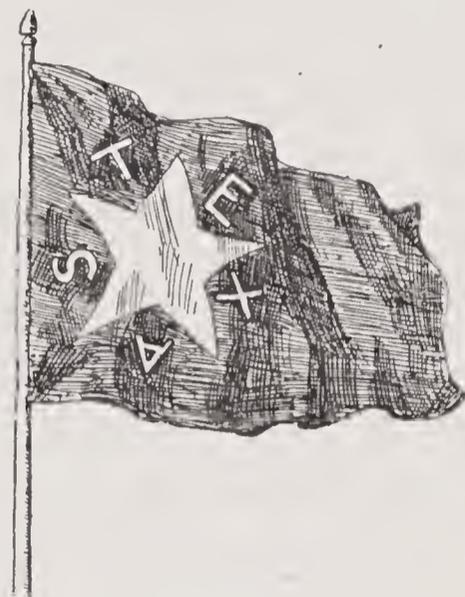
*Sam Houston*

battle under the leadership of **Samuel Houston**.<sup>1</sup> With some eight hundred Texans, Houston defeated Santa Anna himself, at

<sup>1</sup> Houston (1793-1863) was born in Virginia, but in early life he went to Tennessee. He fought under Andrew Jackson in the War of 1812. He was a member of Congress from Tennessee 1823-27, and became governor of that state in 1827. He afterward spent two or three years among the Cherokee Indians and in 1832 took up his abode in Texas. After Texas entered the Union, Houston represented the state in Congress 1845-59, and was governor of the state 1859-61.

San Jacinto, April 21, 1836. Texas was organized as an independent republic with a constitution recognizing slavery, and Houston was chosen president.<sup>1</sup>

In 1837 the independence of Texas was recognized by the United States, England, France and Belgium. Since the citizens of the "Lone Star Republic," as Texas was called, were Americans from the Southern states, they naturally desired to see Texas annexed to the Federal Union. In the North, however, the objection was raised that the annexation would extend slavery, and the Abolitionists threatened to destroy the Union if Texas should be annexed to the United States.<sup>2</sup> Some British agents attempted to win Texas over to Great Britain, and Mexico threatened war. On March 3, 1845, Tyler's last day as President, he signed a joint resolution of the two Houses, providing for the annexation of the Lone Star Republic.



THE "LONE STAR"  
FLAG.

**300. The Presidential Election of 1844.**—Slavery and the annexation of Texas were the issues in the campaign of 1844. The Abolitionists, under the name of the Liberty party, nominated Birney. Clay was nominated by the Whigs, who advocated a protective tariff and a national currency, and Clay announced his opposition to the immediate annexation of Texas. The Democrats declared that Congress must not interfere with slavery, and demanded occupation of Oregon and the annexa-

<sup>1</sup> From 1836 to 1845 the independent republic of Texas had four presidents. The most prominent of these was Houston, who served during two terms.

<sup>2</sup> An address was scattered broadcast by twenty members of Congress, including John Quincy Adams of Massachusetts and Giddings of Ohio, making the charge that the admission of Texas was a scheme for the extension of slavery, a scheme so evil "as in our opinion not only inevitably to result in a dissolution of the Union, but fully to justify it." After the admission of Texas in 1845, the Massachusetts legislature declared that the act by which Texas was annexed was not binding upon that state.

tion of Texas. James K. Polk,<sup>1</sup> of Tennessee, was their candidate. George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, was nominated for the vice-presidency.

During the campaign Clay wrote letters that seemed to favor the annexation of Texas, and this caused the State of New York to cast its vote against him. By this narrow margin he lost the presidency, to the unspeakable grief of his followers. Polk's election was accepted as deciding the question as to whether Texas should be admitted to the Union or not, and Congress at once provided for the admission of **Texas** as a slave state. She actually became a Commonwealth in the Union in December, 1845.

### Questions.

1. What financial scheme did Van Buren lay before Congress? Tell of the Mormons.

2. Tell of the growth of the population in the Mississippi Valley. Tell of the development of railways. Compare the wealth and industries of the North and the South. What was the state of industries in the North and the South?

3. What caused the increase of the slave trade? Tell of the anti-slavery societies. What was proposed with reference to slavery in Virginia in 1832?

4. Give the number of slaves in 1850. Where did they live chiefly? How many people owned slaves? How was slavery an industrial school? What kind of instruction was given the slaves? Tell of the property owned by free negroes.

5. How was slavery a burden on the whites?

6. Tell of Garrison and the abolition movement. How did the abolitionists view the holding of slaves? Tell of anti-slavery petitions to Congress.

7. How did Clay and Calhoun view the abolition movement?

8. Tell of the election of 1840. Tell of General Harrison.

9. How did Tyler treat the measures passed through Congress by the Whigs?

<sup>1</sup> James K. Polk (1795-1849) was a native of North Carolina, but he settled in Tennessee when eleven years old. He was sent to Congress by that state 1825-39, and he was an ardent supporter of Andrew Jackson. From 1839 to 1841 he was governor of Tennessee. Polk was "a man of iron, with unyielding determination and unflinching purpose."





MAP SHOWING THE  
TERRITORIAL GROWTH  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES

0 50 100 200 300 400 500  
SCALE OF MILES

10. What was the Ashburton Treaty ?

11. Tell of the settlement made in Texas by Stephen Austin. How did Texas gain her independence from Mexico ? Who was Sam Houston ? What prevented Texas from being annexed earlier to the United States ? What was the attitude of the Abolitionists toward the annexation of Texas ?

12. Tell of the election of 1844.

### Geography Study.

Find Nauvoo, Utah, Salt Lake City, Chicago, St. Louis, New Orleans. Trace the boundary between Maine and Canada. Find Texas, Mexico, Coahuila, Goliad, San Antonio, San Jacinto, Belgium and Oregon. Point out on the map the states that held slaves in 1844.

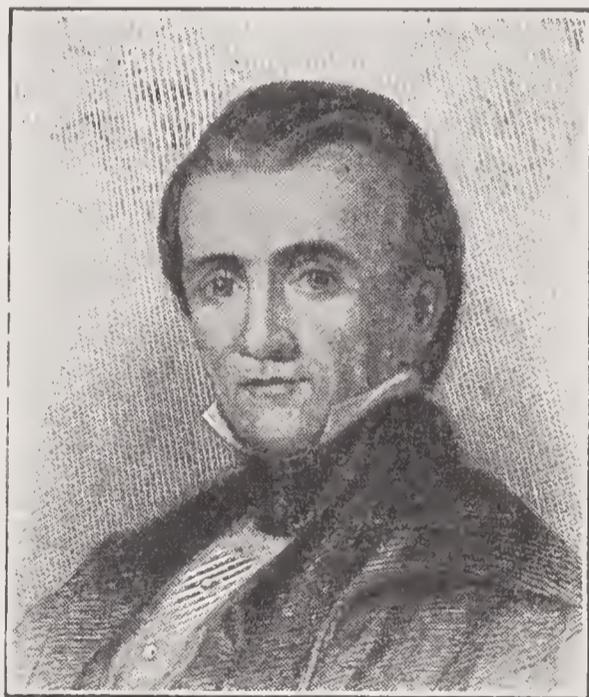
## CHAPTER XXXI.

### THE WAR WITH MEXICO AND THE COMPROMISE OF 1850.

1845-1850.

**301. A Boundary Dispute with Mexico. 1845.**—James K. Polk was inaugurated as President on March 4, 1845. The admission of Texas into the Union brought about a dispute between the United States and Mexico over the boundary line between the two countries. In 1836, when Texas declared her independence, she claimed the Rio Grande as her southwestern limit, because that river formed her boundary while she was a Mexican state.

Mexico refused to acknowledge the independence of Texas, and at the same time declared that the Nueces River was her true western boundary. The question at issue, therefore, was the ownership of the strip of land between the Nueces and the Rio Grande.



PRESIDENT POLK.

*James K. Polk*



American people that Mexico should be punished for her treatment of the Texans.

**303. The Occupation of New Mexico and Upper California. 1846.**—After Taylor's passage of the Rio Grande, President Polk ordered Colonel Kearney to seize New Mexico. Kearney set forth in June, 1846, and marched from Fort Leavenworth to Santa Fé. After announcing the claim of the United States to this region, Kearney continued his journey westward to San Diego on the California coast. He found in that region American settlers who had already declared California to be independent of Mexico.<sup>1</sup>

**304. Taylor's Campaign in Mexico. 1846, 1847.**—In September, 1846, Taylor set forth from Matamoros towards the City of Mexico. The fortress of Monterey fell into his hands after a fierce assault of three days. Santa Anna advanced with some 12,000 men to drive Taylor out of Mexico, and the latter marched southwestward from Monterey and posted his 5,200 men in the mountain pass of Buena Vista. The Mexican army threw its strength against the Americans (February 23, 1847). The fighting was desperate. A gallant charge by the Mississippi Rifles under Jefferson Davis, and the grapeshot fired by Braxton Bragg's batteries near the close of the day, won the battle for Taylor. The battle of Buena Vista closed the active operations of Taylor's forces.

**305. Scott's Campaign. 1847.**—The further management of the war was assigned to General Winfield Scott, who proposed to advance from Vera Cruz to the City of Mexico. Scott landed an army at Vera Cruz, and captured the old Spanish castle and city. With an army of 12,000 men<sup>2</sup> he set forth upon a rapid

<sup>1</sup> These settlers called their forest republic the Bear State, and the symbol upon their flag was the picture of a grizzly bear. Kearney found also in California John C. Frémont, the explorer, and Commodore Stockton, whose fleet was anchored off the coast. Since 1842 Lieutenant Frémont had made three journeys westward beyond the Rockies to the Pacific, and had come to be called the Pathfinder. He did much to prove that the great western plains were not barren.

<sup>2</sup> The American soldiers who followed Taylor and Scott into Mexico were, in large part, volunteers. Two-thirds of the entire army were enlisted from the

march of more than two hundred miles northwestward to the City of Mexico. Santa Anna awaited him in the pass of Cerro Gordo,



*Winfield Scott.*

but the Americans carried the heights by assault. Scott marched over the summit of the Cordilleras, lingered in the city of Puebla, and on the 10th of August, beyond Pueblo, caught sight of the City of Mexico, surrounded by its five lakes. He made a circuit to the left and fought his way up to the walls in four fierce battles, Contreras, Churubusco, Molinos del Rey and Chapultepec. The 14th of September, 1847, saw Scott's triumphal entry within the gates of the Mexican capital.

**306. The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. 1848.**—On February 2, 1848, near the City of Mexico, a treaty of peace was signed. To the United States was given the title to Texas as far westward as the Rio Grande, and the title to New Mexico and California. The latter was already held by Stockton, Frémont and Kearney. In return for these concessions, the United States gave Mexico \$15,000,000 and a promise to pay \$3,000,000 in addition, to satisfy the claims of American citizens against Mexico.

**The Gadsden Purchase. 1853.**—A new treaty was made later, in 1853, when the United States secured another stretch of territory containing about 45,000 square miles, south of the Gila River. For this region, known as the Gadsden Purchase, the sum of \$10,000,000 was paid to Mexico.

**307. The Oregon Question. 1844-1846.**—The region on the Pacific coast lying between  $42^{\circ}$  and  $54^{\circ} 40'$ , known as the Oregon country, was claimed by England and by the United States. As South. The greater portion of the remainder came from the states northwest of the Ohio River. The struggle in Mexico was a training-school for many of the officers who took part afterwards in the war between the states. Among these were Lee, "Stonewall" Jackson, McClellan and Grant.

early as 1819 the parallel of  $42^{\circ}$  was fixed as the northern limit of Spain's possessions, and Russia (1824-1825) agreed not to push her claim farther southward than  $54^{\circ} 40'$ . Oregon was thus left to the joint occupation of England and the United States. The former sent her fur traders, but the latter sent actual settlers to hold the territory.

The Democratic platform of 1844 proposed to claim all of Oregon as far northward as the Russian boundary. The cam-

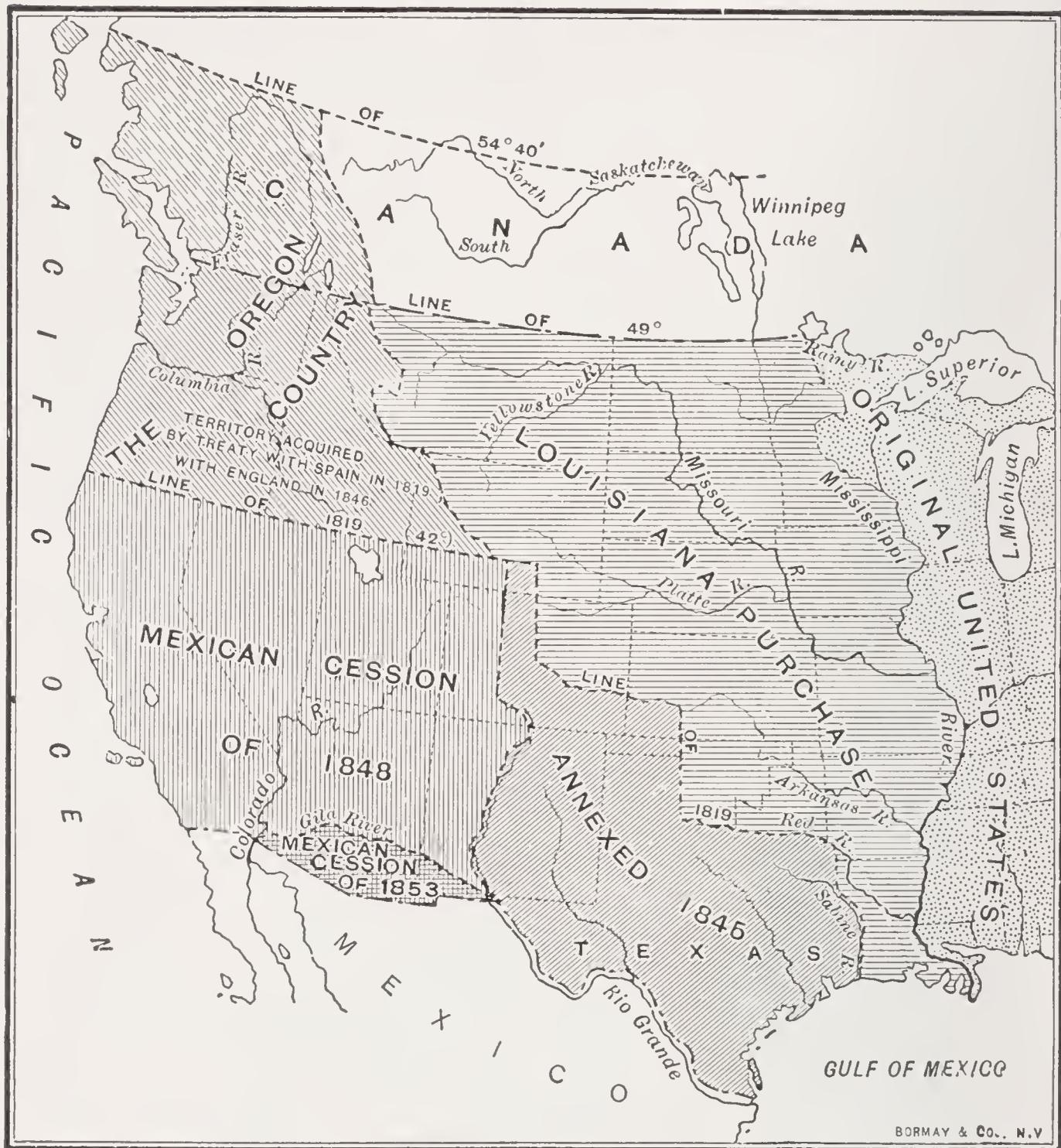


*From the painting by Chappel.*

SCALING THE HEIGHTS AT CHURUBUSCO.

paigned cry of the Democrats was "All Oregon or none," "Fifty-four forty or fight." For a time there seemed to be danger of war with Great Britain.

After the beginning of President Polk's administration, negotiations were opened and a compromise was reached. The forty-ninth parallel of latitude, the boundary between the United States and the British possessions from the Lake of the Woods to the Rockies, was agreed upon as the dividing line as far as the coast, and thence the line followed the middle of the strait



THE MEXICAN CESSIONS AND THE OREGON COUNTRY.

of Juan de Fuca to the Pacific. Thus the boundary was established between American and British possessions in the far Northwest.

**308. Polk's Administration. 1845-1849.**—President Polk's first year in office (1845) was given to the consideration of the Oregon and Texas issues. In July, 1846, the Democratic Congress passed the tariff measure proposed by Robert J. Walker, Secretary of the Treasury. This act practically established the tariff upon the basis of securing revenue for the government and not for the purpose of protecting manufactures. Eleven years later (1857) duties on imports were still further reduced.

In 1846 Congress adopted a new Independent Treasury law,

establishing sub-treasuries again in various cities throughout the country. This law has remained in force ever since its passage.

**Immigration.**—The years of President Polk's administration saw a great increase in the number of foreign immigrants. In 1844 there were only 78,000 arrivals. In 1845 more than 114,000 came; in 1846 more than 154,000; in 1847 nearly 235,000, and in 1849 over 297,000. They were nearly all laborers forced from Ireland by famine, and from the continent of Europe by political disturbances. They swelled the crowds in the cities of the North or settled in the farming-lands of the Northwest.

**309. Mechanical Inventions. 1825-1850.**—This period marked the invention of many labor-saving machines. During the second quarter of the nineteenth century, the conditions of life were revolutionized by means of mechanical inventions. The making of axes, chisels, hatchets and other edge tools was begun in 1826. Cyrus H. McCormick, of Virginia, secured a patent in 1834 for the first grain reaper. Joseph Henry, of Princeton College, discovered the principle of the electric telegraph (1831), and Samuel F. B. Morse applied this principle in his invention of the recording telegraph (1837). The first line for messages was stretched from Washington to Baltimore in 1844. The year 1846 saw the invention of the power-loom and the sewing-machine. The rotary printing-press followed in 1847. Meanwhile railroads were extended to bind the western country to the Atlantic seaboard.

**310. The Discovery of Gold in California. 1848.**—On January 19, 1848, gold was found in earth taken from Captain Sutter's mill-race at Coloma, California. The news was spread abroad, and a great throng of gold hunters began the journey to the new Eldorado. From every state of the Union and from Europe men hastened across the Rockies or passed around Cape Horn in sailing-vessels.

The month of November, 1849, found more than 80,000 immigrants in the gold country. The value of the precious metal taken from California in 1848 was ten million dollars; in 1849, forty



THE FLAG OF CALIFORNIA.

millions. The maximum yearly product of sixty-five millions was reached in 1853.

**311. The Admission of New States.**—Three new states were admitted during Polk's administration; these were **Texas** (1845), **Iowa** (1846) and **Wisconsin** (1848). There were now thirty states in the Union; fifteen in the North and fifteen in the South. The sections were thus evenly balanced in the Senate, with thirty Senators on each side.

**312. The Wilmot Proviso. 1846.**—The anti-slavery movement<sup>1</sup> in the Northern states was greatly strengthened by the



*From an old print.*

A CARAVAN EN ROUTE TO CALIFORNIA.

annexation of Texas and the war with Mexico. While the war with Mexico was in progress, David Wilmot, a Democratic member from Pennsylvania, offered the famous Proviso (August, 1846) that slav-

ery should be forbidden in any territory that might be acquired from Mexico. This amendment passed the House, but Congress adjourned before any action was taken upon it by the Senate.

After the treaty of peace had been ratified and Congress was called upon to enact laws for the organization and government of the newly acquired territories of California and New Mexico, this Proviso was again presented. The two Houses of Congress again

<sup>1</sup> It should be noted that the anti-slavery movement had secured a strong foothold in the Northern churches. In 1844 an attempt was made to keep any Methodist minister who held slaves from holding the office of bishop. The Southern members then withdrew from the old organization to form a new Southern Methodist Church. In 1846 the Southern Baptists withdrew from fellowship with the Northern Baptists, who held strong anti-slavery views.

could not agree, and every effort to legislate for the government of the territories was ineffectual.

The Southern and many Northern Democrats proposed, time and time again, to settle the matter in dispute by extending the Missouri Compromise line of  $36^{\circ} 30'$  (§ 266) to the Pacific. The anti-slavery leaders, however, refused to accept this compromise line.

**313. The Presidential Election of 1848.**—In 1848 a new party was organized, called the **Free-Soil party**<sup>1</sup> because it proposed to keep the lands of the territories open only to free persons. This party was made up of two elements, (1) the extreme anti-slavery wing of the Democrats, and (2) the old Liberty or Abolitionist party. Ex-President Van Buren was nominated for President. The Democrats nominated Lewis Cass,<sup>2</sup> of Michigan, upon a platform which said that all efforts of the Abolitionists to induce Congress to interfere with questions of slavery would lead to the most “alarming and dangerous consequences.”

The Whigs put aside Clay's claims and nominated Zachary Taylor,<sup>3</sup> a plain soldier and a slaveholder. They announced no principles of any sort. The vote of New York again decided the election. Her 36 electoral votes, cast for Taylor, measured the exact majority of the latter over Cass. The electoral college

<sup>1</sup>These Free-Soil Democrats were called Barn-burners, in allusion to the farmer who burned his barn in order to clear it of rats. During this campaign of 1848 a portion of the old Liberty party refused to act with the Free-Soilers. They boldly announced the view that the Federal Constitution gave to Congress the authority to abolish slavery in all of the states. This claim was made by a small body of men, and it meant a declaration of open war against the system of slavery in the South.

<sup>2</sup>Lewis Cass held that the people of each territory should decide for themselves whether they would or would not have slavery. This doctrine was termed “Squatter Sovereignty.”

<sup>3</sup>Zachary Taylor (1784–1850) was born in Virginia, but spent his childhood in Kentucky. In 1808 he was made first-lieutenant in the army and he soon made himself known in the War of 1812. He was a leader in Black Hawk's war (1832), the Seminole war in Florida (1837) and the Mexican war (1845–47). He was greatly admired by his soldiers, who called him “Old Rough and Ready.”

gave Taylor 163 and Cass 127 votes. Fillmore was elected Vice-President. Taylor was inaugurated March 4, 1849.

**314. The Compromise of 1850.**—The people who entered the gold regions of California needed some form of government to preserve law and order. Congress was slow to provide a territorial government. The people, therefore, adopted a constitution (November 13, 1849) and applied for admission as a state. They included within the limits of the proposed state the entire territory upon the Pacific acquired from Mexico, both north and south of the Missouri Compromise line. Their constitution prohibited slavery in all of this region. The people of the South

were opposed to the admission of California with a constitution prohibiting slavery, while the North advocated it.

A compromise proposed by Henry Clay was finally adopted, and California was admitted as a free



THE COMPROMISE OF 1850.

state. New Mexico and Utah were organized as separate territories, with the matter of the establishment of slavery left to the people of these territories. The slave-trade was prohibited in the District of Columbia. Since the old fugitive-slave law of 1793 had not prevented the escape of negroes into the Northern states, a new and more efficient law for the return of runaway slaves was enacted.

In the long and earnest debate<sup>1</sup> that took place in the Senate, the Southern leaders were united in declaring that this compro-

<sup>1</sup> On March 4, 1850, during the course of this debate, Calhoun was supported to his place in the Senate. He was too ill to speak, and Senator James M. Mason, of Virginia, read his address. Calhoun declared that the continued aggression of the anti-slavery men upon the South would drive the latter out

mise gave everything to the North. Their wish was to run the Missouri Compromise line through to the Pacific.

### Questions.

1. What territory was in dispute between the United States and Mexico?
2. How was war brought on with Mexico?
3. Tell of Colonel Kearney's campaign.
4. Tell of General Taylor's campaign.
5. How did General Scott capture the City of Mexico?
6. Upon what terms was the war ended?
7. What was the Oregon question?
8. What was the tariff bill of 1846? What law was enacted in 1846?
9. What was the extent of foreign immigration?
10. Tell of mechanical inventions.
11. What was the direct result of the discovery of gold in California?
12. What new states were admitted in Polk's administration?
13. What was the Wilmot Proviso?
14. Tell of the Free-Soil party. Tell of the election of 1848.
15. Discuss the Compromise of 1850. What plan was adopted?

### Geography Study.

Find the Rio Grande River, the Nueces River, Corpus Christi, Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Matamoras, New Mexico, Fort Leavenworth, Santa Fé, San Diego, California, Monterey, Buena Vista, Vera Cruz, Cerro Gordo, the Cordilleras, Puebla, Contreras, Churubusco, Molinos del Rey, Chapultepec, the City of Mexico, Gila River, Lake of the Woods, the Rockies, Strait of Juan de Fuca.

of the Union. "No honor and no safety for the South in this Union," was the principal idea set forth in his appeal to the Senate.

Webster addressed the Senate in support of Clay's propositions, and declared that he spoke "for the preservation of the Union." With reference to the agitation concerning the return of fugitive slaves, Webster said, "The South, in my judgment, is right, and the North is wrong." He pleaded for a spirit of conciliation from the North toward the South.

William H. Seward, a leading anti-slavery politician from New York, declared that slavery must be driven from the land by force, if necessary, under the authority of a "higher law than the Constitution."

## CHAPTER XXXII.

## SECTIONALISM AND THE REPUBLICAN PARTY.

1850-1856.

**315. The Fugitive Slave Law of 1850.**—After the passage of the Fugitive Slave Law of 1850 a few slaveholders began a vigorous search for some negroes who had fled from their homes years before. Strenuous opposition was made in the North against the recapture of these slaves, although there was a clause in the Constitution of the United States which commanded the return of fugitive slaves.

Even before 1850 some Northern states enacted what were called Personal Liberty Laws, which prohibited state officials from helping to send runaway slaves back to their masters. The Fugitive Slave Law of 1850 led to further state laws of this kind. From 1850 to 1860 fourteen Northern commonwealths passed laws that were intended to defeat the force of the Fugitive Slave Law.

**Misrepresentation of Slavery.**—In the summer of 1852, Mrs. Harriet Beecher Stowe published a misleading story under the title "Uncle Tom's Cabin." The book obtained at once a very wide circulation. It unjustly represented slaves as horribly treated in the South; and many people in the North were moved by it to denounce still more severely the whole body of Southern white people.

**The "Underground Railroad."**—From 1840 to 1860 the Abolitionists organized into a regular system the practice of helping negroes to flee from Southern homes. A number of private houses, within convenient distances, formed a line of stations across some of the Northern states. This line was called the underground railroad, because stolen slaves were secretly hurried along from house to house until they reached Canada. About 3,200 persons were engaged in this work, and agents went into the South to persuade the slaves to run away. The fugitives were settled chiefly in separate communities in Canada. Southern men made some effort to seize and bring back the abducted negroes. The number of fugitives actually arrested between 1850 and 1856 was only about two hundred, but the excitement connected with these cases helped to make more intense the bitter feeling between the people of the two sections.

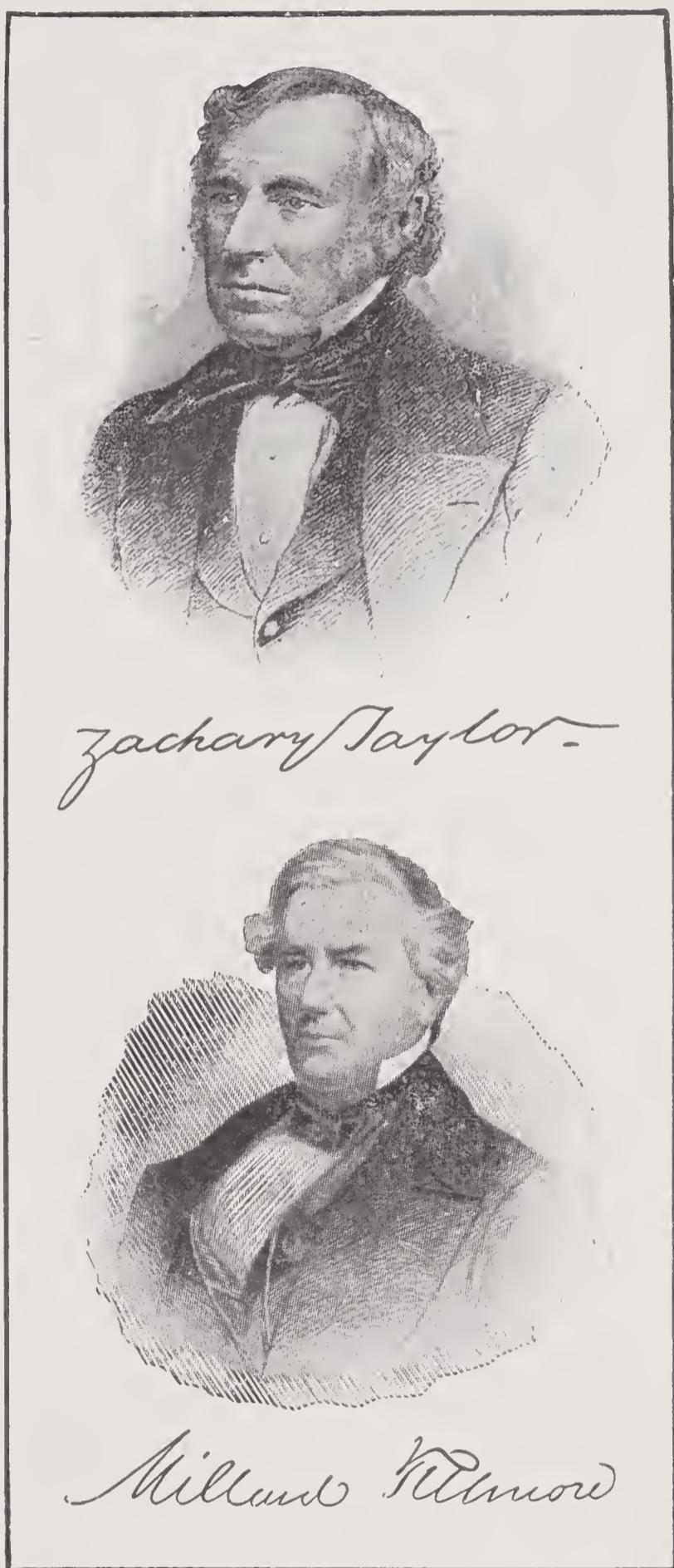
**316. The Administrations of Taylor and Fillmore. 1849-1853.**—Taylor was in feeble health at the time of his inauguration and he died about fifteen months later.<sup>1</sup> He was succeeded by the Vice-President, Millard Fillmore.<sup>2</sup> During this administration, Secretary of State Clayton and Sir Henry Lytton Bulwer, the British Minister, concluded (1850) a treaty whereby the United States and England were to exercise a joint control over any ship canal that might be cut through the Isthmus of Panama. In 1855 a railway was completed across the Isthmus.

In 1854 Commodore M. C. Perry, of the United States Navy, made a treaty with Japan which provided for the opening of the Japanese ports to our merchant vessels.

During the period of the excitement over the discovery of gold in California, a large number of foreign immigrants entered the North and West. They

<sup>1</sup> About three months before Taylor's death, John C. Calhoun died, and about two years later, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster passed away.

<sup>2</sup> Millard Fillmore (1800-1874) was the son of a New York farmer. He learned the trade of a fuller, taught school, and later practiced law. He was in the House of Representatives during a period of seven years, and held several state offices before he was elected Vice-President.



soon became voters. As these men did not understand a republican form of government, many native Americans feared the introduction of foreign ideas. They consequently organized a secret society with the motto, "Americans must rule America," and in 1852 this society became known as the **Know Nothing party**.<sup>1</sup>

**317. The Election of 1852.**—The Democratic convention of 1852 could not agree upon any of the three chief candidates for the presidential nomination, Lewis Cass, James Buchanan and Stephen A. Douglas. Franklin Pierce,<sup>2</sup> a lawyer and soldier from New Hampshire, received the nomination. The platform declared that the Democrats would stand by both the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions of 1798–1799 and the Compromise of 1850.

The Whig party cast aside Webster and Fillmore, and nominated General Winfield Scott. The Whig platform declared the Compromise Act of 1850 to be a satisfactory settlement of the questions connected with slavery. The Free-Soil convention nominated John P. Hale upon a platform which refused to accept the Compromise of 1850, including the Fugitive Slave Act, and denounced the system of slavery. In the election, Pierce received 254 electoral votes to 42 cast for Scott. Hale received as many as 156,149 ballots. William R. King, of Alabama, was made Vice-President.

**318. The Kansas-Nebraska Act. 1854.**—President Pierce was inaugurated March 4, 1853. The most important issue during his administration was the question whether or not slavery should be allowed in the territories. A bill was presented in Congress by Senator Douglas, of Illinois, for the organization of the territories of Kansas and Nebraska. They were formed from the northern part of the Louisiana Purchase, where slavery was

<sup>1</sup> When the members were questioned about the order and its aims, they invariably replied that they knew nothing.

<sup>2</sup> Franklin Pierce (1804–1869) was in Congress as Representative and Senator from 1833 to 1842. At the outbreak of the Mexican War he enlisted as a volunteer soldier and was soon promoted to the rank of brigadier general.

prohibited by the Missouri Compromise (1820). The South held that the Missouri Compromise was not authorized by the Constitution, but had been content to stand by it as the settlement of a dispute. The proposed Kansas-Nebraska Bill left the matter of slavery to the choice of the settlers in those two territories. It repealed the Missouri Compromise Act, which prohibited slavery in all territory north of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ .

The consideration of this bill provoked the wildest excitement throughout the Union and the most angry debates in both Houses of Congress, but it was finally adopted by the South and the West against the North, and became law by the approval of President Pierce (May 30, 1854).

**319. The Fight in Kansas. 1854-1857.**—After the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Act, a large migration to the territories immediately began. Home seekers from Missouri, with their slaves, and from Iowa, Illinois and Indiana, staked out lands for homesteads in Kansas. Emigration from the New England states was fostered and stimulated by wealthy corporations, called Emigrant Aid Societies, which furnished money and arms to all volunteer anti-slavery emigrants. The Missourian neighbors, no less intent upon securing Kansas as a slave-holding state, appealed to the Southern people to come to their aid in overcoming this emigration from the non-slave-holding states.

An election for a legislature was held in March, 1855. About four-sevenths of the actual legal voters in the election voted for delegates in favor of holding slaves. The defeated anti-slavery party asserted that this election was carried by the ballots of Missourians who came into Kansas and remained only one day for the purpose of casting their votes in favor of slavery.

In opposition to this pro-slavery legislature, the anti-slavery party held an independent election at which they elected members to a convention which met at Topeka in October, 1855. This convention adopted a constitution excluding slavery, and this constitution was then ratified in an election in which anti-slavery men alone took part. Congress was asked to admit

Kansas as a state with this constitution. The House of Representatives, by a majority of one, voted for the admission of Kansas as a free state, but the Senate voted against it by a very large majority.

During this long controversy, a reign of violence prevailed to a great extent throughout Kansas. The lawless passions of both parties were aroused and a state of war existed. The Southern men in Kansas began to organize for the fight, and large numbers of armed men poured in from the North. An army of three thousand Missourians assembled on the border to aid their friends. Civil war on a large scale was averted only by the

entrance of Federal troops which were sent into Kansas by President Pierce in September, 1856.

Early in 1857 a convention was called for the purpose of framing a state constitution. The new governor, Robert J.



RESULT OF THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA ACT.

Walker, who was appointed by President Buchanan, urged all qualified citizens to vote for the election of delegates to this convention, but the Abolitionists refused to do so and delegates favoring slavery were elected. This convention met at Lecompton, the capital of the Territory, and completed its work in November, 1857. It ordered an election to be held in December, at which the people should be permitted to determine whether the new state should be slave-holding or non-slave-holding. At this election the constitution authorizing slavery was ratified. President Buchanan asked Congress to accept this constitution and to admit Kansas as a slave-holding state. Congress refused to do this. The Lecompton constitution was referred back to the people of Kansas, and was finally

rejected (1858) by them, for by this time the majority of the settlers in Kansas were opposed to slavery. The fight was thus decided against the slave holders.

**320. Pierce's Administration. 1853-1857.**—Aside from the slavery discussions, few incidents of importance occurred during Pierce's administration. His Secretary of War was Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, who was gradually coming to be regarded as the chief political leader of the South.

There was danger of war with Spain, with reference to the island of Cuba. This was due to the desire which grew up in the South to secure control of Cuba. A few rash spirits made attempts to organize an insurrection to drive Spain from the island.<sup>1</sup>

The latter half of Pierce's administration saw the rise of a new political party. The defeat of General Scott for the presidency in 1852 was so overwhelming that the Whig party never recovered from it. The great majority of the Northern Whigs accepted Governor William



*Franklin Pierce*

H. Seward, of New York, as their leader. In the struggle over Nebraska and Kansas, these Seward men used such bitter words against the system of slavery that the Southern Whigs were made angry and joined the Know Nothing party. The Northern Whigs, under the guidance of Seward, then united with the Free-Soilers and assumed the name of the **Republican party**.

<sup>1</sup> President Pierce directed our ministers to Spain, France and Great Britain, to hold a conference concerning Cuba. These men, Pierre Soulé, John Y. Mason and James Buchanan, met at Ostend and issued the **Ostend Manifesto**, October 18, 1854. They declared that the acquisition of Cuba would be advantageous to the United States, and that the United States would have the right to seize it from Spain, if necessary to prevent its becoming a negro republic like San Domingo.

**321. The Republican Party and the Election of 1856.**—The earliest political convention in 1856 was held by the Know Nothings. Their platform declared opposition to foreigners and condemned the repeal of the Missouri Compromise. Nothing further was said concerning slavery, and Millard Fillmore was nominated for the presidency. A convention made up of fragments of the Whig party later in the year accepted the Know Nothing nominee as their candidate.

The Democrats, in their platform, endorsed the Kansas-Nebraska Act, and declared that the agitation of the slavery question by the anti-slavery people endangered “the stability and permanency of the Union.” James Buchanan,<sup>1</sup> from Pennsylvania, was nominated for President, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for Vice-President.

In the convention of the new Republican party all of the Northern states were represented, but of the Southern states only Delaware, Maryland and Kentucky. The party was thus not national but sectional in its beginning. It was organized on the basis of the anti-slavery crusade. John C. Frémont, of California, was nominated for the presidency, and a platform was adopted declaring that slavery was debarred from every one of the territories by the Federal Constitution. It demanded the immediate admission of Kansas without slavery, under the irregular Topeka constitution.

The campaign was conducted by the Republicans upon an avowedly sectional platform, with the idea of uniting the entire North against the Democratic party and its candidate, James Buchanan. The Southern people gave warning in no uncertain voice that they would not submit to a sectional President upon a sectional platform of pronounced hostility to their domestic

<sup>1</sup>James Buchanan (1791–1868) was a member of the House of Representatives 1821–31, and then held successively the positions of Minister to Russia, United States Senator and Secretary of State. He was Minister to Great Britain 1853–56. As President, he declared that the chief object of his administration was “to restore harmony and ancient friendship among the people of the several states.”

institutions. The Democratic party of the North made earnest efforts to impress upon the Northern people the imminent peril of the Union. Buchanan was elected by 174 electoral votes to 114 cast for Frémont and 8 for Fillmore. The Republicans, however, carried every Northern state except Illinois, Indiana, Pennsylvania, New Jersey and California. If Frémont had been elected, it cannot be doubted that all of the Southern states would have seceded from the Union in 1856, with a greater promptness than that which marked their secession after the election of Abraham Lincoln in 1860.

### Questions.

1. What were the Personal Liberty Laws? Tell of "Uncle Tom's Cabin." What is meant by the "Underground Railroad"?
2. What was the Clayton-Bulwer treaty? What was the Know Nothing party?
3. Tell of the election of 1852.
4. What was the Kansas-Nebraska Bill?
5. Tell of the trouble in Kansas over slavery. What party finally won?
6. Who was Secretary of War under Pierce? What was the Ostend Manifesto? Tell of the organization of the Republican party.
7. What parties nominated candidates in 1856? What were the platforms? Tell of the results of the election.

### Geography Study.

Find on the map Kansas, Nebraska, Topeka, Lecompton, Cuba and San Domingo.

## PART V. PERIOD OF EXPANSION. 1789-1856.

### TOPICAL REVIEW.

	SECTION
1. The Organization of the Federal Government . . . . .	211-213
2. Amendments to the Constitution . . . . .	214

	SECTION
3. The Beginning of Political Parties . . . . .	218
4. War with France . . . . .	230
5. The Alien and Sedition Laws . . . . .	231
6. The Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions . . . . .	232
7. Policy of the Jeffersonian Democracy . . . . .	234, 235
8. Expansion of the United States during Jefferson's Ad- ministration . . . . .	236
9. Explorations of the West . . . . .	239
10. The Embargo Act . . . . .	242
11. Causes of the War of 1812 . . . . .	246, 248
12. The Second War for Independence . . . . .	248, 249, 251-254
13. Settlement of the West and Southwest . . . . .	261
14. African Colonization Society . . . . .	265
15. The Missouri Compromise . . . . .	266
16. The Monroe Doctrine . . . . .	268
17. The Debate over the Tariff Measures of 1828-1830 . . . . .	269
18. Jackson and the Bank . . . . .	282, 283
19. The Abolitionist Movement . . . . .	294, 295
20. The Annexation of Texas . . . . .	299
21. The War with Mexico . . . . .	301-306
22. The Compromise of 1850 . . . . .	314
23. The Fugitive Slave Law of 1850 . . . . .	315
24. The Kansas-Nebraska Act . . . . .	318, 319
25. Rise of the Republican Party . . . . .	321

ECONOMIC QUESTIONS.	{	Debts of the United States . . . . .	215, 235, 257, 283
		The Bank Question . . . . .	217, 247, 257, 282, 283
		The Sub-treasury Scheme . . . . .	290, 297
		The Tariff Acts . . . . .	212, 257, 269, 273, 281, 297, 308
		Internal Revenue . . . . .	217
		Financial Panics . . . . .	262, 286
		Immigration . . . . .	308
		Internal Improvements . . . . .	276, 277
		Inventions . . . . .	239, 277, 309
		POLITICAL PARTIES.	{
Anti-Federalist or Democratic-Republican . . . . .	218		
Democratic . . . . .	271, 285		
Whig . . . . .	271, 285		
Liberty . . . . .	295		
Free Soil . . . . .	313		
Know Nothing . . . . .	316		
Republican . . . . .	320		

		SECTION
FOREIGN RELATIONS.	Treaties with Great Britain . . . . .	221, 246, 254, 264, 298, 316
	Treaties with Spain . . . . .	222, 236, 263
	Treaty with France . . . . .	230
	Treaty with Algiers . . . . .	255
	Treaties with Mexico . . . . .	306
	Treaty with Japan . . . . .	316
	The Monroe Doctrine . . . . .	268
WARS.	With Great Britain . . . . .	241, 246, 254
	With France . . . . .	230, 240
	With the Indians . . . . .	225, 247, 287
	With Mexico . . . . .	301-306
	With the Barbary States . . . . .	235, 255
TERRITORIAL GROWTH.	Purchase of Louisiana . . . . .	236
	Purchase of Florida . . . . .	263
	Annexation of Texas . . . . .	299
	Territory Acquired from Mexico . . . . .	306
	The Oregon Question . . . . .	307
	Proposed Acquisition of Cuba . . . . .	320
	New States . . . . .	227, 235, 258, 261, 288, 311
STATE RIGHTS.	New England's Talk of Secession . . . . .	238, 256
	Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions . . . . .	232
	Dispute between Georgia and the Federal Government Concerning Indians . . . . .	272, 279
	South Carolina and Nullification . . . . .	281
	Personal Liberty Laws . . . . .	315
	Petitions to Congress to Abolish Slavery . . . . .	224
	Slave Trade . . . . .	291
SLAVERY.	Early Southern Sentiment Against Slavery . . . . .	291
	Condition of the Slaves . . . . .	292
	Abolition Societies . . . . .	294
	Missouri Compromise . . . . .	266
	Compromise of 1850 . . . . .	314
	Slavery in the Territories . . . . .	266, 312, 314, 318

## PART VI.

### SECESSION AND RECONSTRUCTION.

1856-1877.

#### CHAPTER XXXIII.

#### EVENTS LEADING TO THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.

1856-1861.

**322. Buchanan's Administration. 1857-1861.**—James Buchanan was inaugurated as President, March 4, 1857. The first months of his administration were troubled with a financial panic. Too much activity in building railroads, mills and factories brought about a great scarcity of money. The crash came in the summer of 1857. Banks suspended payment, and great enterprises were brought to a standstill.

The administration of Buchanan was marked by the discovery of silver in Nevada in 1858, and by the admission of three new states in the West and Northwest. These were **Minnesota** (1858), **Oregon** (1859) and **Kansas** (January, 1861).

**Trouble with the Mormons.**—In 1857 a struggle began with the Mormons in Utah, because Brigham Young, governor of the territory, refused to obey the laws of the United States. Buchanan sent a force of 2,500 soldiers into Utah, but the Mormons attacked the troops and kept them out of the Salt Lake Valley until 1858.

**323. The Dred Scott Case. 1856-1857.**—In the spring of 1856 the famous Dred Scott Case was first argued before the Supreme Court of the United States. Scott was the negro slave



**UNITED STATES  
DURING THE WAR  
BETWEEN THE STATES.**

SCALE OF MILES.  
0 50 100 200 200

BORMAY & CO., N.Y. 115°

110°

105°

Longitude 100° West



Confederate States  
 Union States

from 95° Greenwich 90° 85° 80°

of an army surgeon, who took him from Missouri into Illinois for two years (1834–36), then carried him into the territory called Upper Louisiana, now Minnesota, remaining there two years (1836–38). In 1838 the slave was taken by his master back again into Missouri, where Scott brought suit for his liberty on the ground that he had acquired freedom because he had lived in the non-slaveholding state of Illinois, and also in that part of the Louisiana Territory where slavery had been forbidden by the Missouri Compromise Act. The case was finally brought before the Supreme Court of the United States. The Court decided (1857) that Scott's residence in a territory declared by Congress to be free did not make Scott free. Congress had no right, said the Court, to keep slaves out of



*James Buchanan*

the territories by declaring some of the territories to be free soil. Slavery was sanctioned by the Constitution, and every slaveholder must be allowed to take his servants into any territory owned by the United States.

The decision of the Supreme Court meant that the new Republican party was opposing the Constitution itself when that party attempted to use the power of Congress to keep slavery out of the territories. The Republicans, therefore, announced that they would not accept the decision of the Court. In 1859, however, the Senate of the United States, by a vote of thirty-five to twenty-one, endorsed the Dred Scott decision.

**324. The Douglas-Lincoln Debates. 1858.**—In 1858 Senator Douglas was the Democratic candidate for reelection to the United States Senate, from Illinois. Abraham Lincoln was the Republican candidate. The rival candidates engaged in a series of joint debates throughout Illinois. Lincoln argued that Con-

gress had the right to keep the slaveholders from entering the territories; that the Dred Scott decision was not right; that the country must become all slave or all free, and that, therefore, a violent conflict was about to ensue between the North and the South.

Douglas replied that each state could do as it pleased on the question of slavery, and that the views of Lincoln meant the arraying of the North against the South—"a war against the Southern states and their institutions until you force them to abolish slavery everywhere." Douglas won the senatorship. Lincoln's speeches, however, made him the foremost leader of the Republican party

**325. John Brown's Raid. 1859.**—In October, 1859, the whole country was startled by the deeds of John Brown at Har-



A VIEW OF HARPER'S FERRY.

per's Ferry, in Virginia. Brown had fled eastward from Kansas to escape punishment for murders committed there. With nineteen followers, he entered the village of Harper's Ferry by night

and seized the United States arsenal. He thought that he could set free all the slaves in the South by inciting them to an insurrection. The mayor of the place and four others were shot dead by Brown's riflemen. The citizens indignantly opened fire upon the murderers. United States soldiers were sent from Washington under command of Colonel Robert E. Lee, and these overpowered Brown and his men; some of the latter were shot in the struggle. Brown himself and a few of

his followers were brought to trial, found guilty of murder, and were hanged.

After his execution, several of the anti-slavery leaders called assemblies of the people together for the purpose of glorifying Brown as a saint and martyr.

**326. The Davis Resolutions. 1860.**—In February, 1860, Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, introduced into the Senate of the United States a series of resolutions which declared that each state in the Federal Union had the full right to manage its own home affairs; that slavery was recognized and protected by the Federal Constitution, and that Congress had no right to prohibit slavery in the territories. Every Democratic Senator but two supported the resolutions, and they were adopted on May 25, 1860, by a vote of nearly two to one.

**327. The Presidential Election of 1860.**—The Democratic convention, composed of representatives from every state in the Union, met in Charleston, South Carolina, in April, 1860. The delegates from the North wished to leave the question of slavery in the territories to the settlers themselves. They claimed that this plan was in accord with the decision of the Supreme Court in the Dred Scott case. The delegates from the South wished to adopt a platform in harmony with the Davis resolutions, asserting that the Constitution itself opened the territories to slavery. The Southern members withdrew to Baltimore and nominated John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for President, and Joseph Lane, of Oregon, for Vice-President. The Northern Democrats adjourned to Baltimore and nominated Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and Herschel V. Johnson, of Georgia, for these offices.

The Constitutional Union party nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, and Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, upon a platform which urged the maintenance of “the Constitution of the country, the Union of the states and the enforcement of the laws.”

The Republican convention met in Chicago in May. Nine of

the Southern states were not represented at all. It was an assembly representing a party that belonged to one section of the country. Abraham Lincoln,<sup>1</sup> of Illinois, was nominated for President, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, for Vice-President. The platform denounced the Dred Scott decision and affirmed that slavery could not by any power be rendered legal in the territories. It pledged the party not to interfere with slavery in the states.

The eighteen Northern states, with 180 electoral votes, in a solid column, were carried for Lincoln. His majority in some of them was very narrow. Breckinridge received 72 electoral votes, Bell 39, and Douglas 12. Lincoln received only some 26,000 ballots in the Southern states. Of the popular vote, he received about one million ballots fewer than those received by the other three candidates combined. He was, therefore, chosen by a minority of the people and by the people of only one section of the country.

**328. Withdrawals from the Union. 1860, 1861.**—Presidential electors were chosen in South Carolina by the legislature. After choosing these electors, the legislature remained in session. When the election of Lincoln became known, the lawmakers (November 10) passed ordinances concerning the military defense of South Carolina and summoned a state convention to meet on December 17, 1860. On November 18th, the legislature of Georgia issued a call for a state convention. A few days later, conventions were summoned in the same regular manner in Mississippi, Florida, Louisiana, Alabama, Arkansas and Texas.

<sup>1</sup> Abraham Lincoln (1809–1865) was born in Kentucky, but at seven years of age moved to Indiana, and in 1830 settled in Illinois. The family was very poor and Abraham was kept hard at work; he had only about one year of schooling, but he studied diligently by himself. He was successively farm laborer, store-keeper, postmaster and land surveyor, and finally in 1837 he became a lawyer. He was a Whig member of the Illinois legislature 1834–42 and a United States Representative 1847–49. He first attracted the attention of the whole country through his debates with Senator Douglas in 1858. He was elected President in 1860, and reëlected in 1864; soon after the beginning of his second term he was assassinated.

President Buchanan, in his last message to Congress (Dec. 4, 1860), denied the right of a state to withdraw from the Union, but he affirmed that neither Congress nor the President had the power to force it to remain in the Union. A considerable party in the North held the view expressed by Horace Greeley in the *New York Tribune* of November 9, 1860: "If the Cotton States shall decide that they can do better out of the Union than in it, we insist on letting them go in peace."

On December 20, 1860, by a unanimous vote, the convention



THE CITY OF CHARLESTON IN 1860.

in Charleston in the name of the people of South Carolina withdrew its ratification of the Constitution of the United States (see § 209). In this manner, South Carolina went out of the Federal Union. The sentiment of the great mass of the people in each of the extreme Southern states was in favor of separation from the North. An ordinance similar to that of South Carolina was adopted in Mississippi (January 9, 1861), Florida (January 10), Alabama (January 11), Georgia (January 19), Louisiana (January 26) and Texas (February 1); and thus these states went out of the Union.

The South Carolina Convention issued two addresses containing a statement of the reasons that justified withdrawal from the

Union. Foremost among these reasons they placed the fact that each state retained its sovereignty under the Constitution and had the supreme right to maintain its peace, honor and safety. The reasons for the exercise of the sovereign power at this time were: (1) that the Federal government was conducted entirely for



the benefit of the North, which had continually violated the Constitution; (2) that the North had denounced slaveholding, which was recognized under the Constitution, and had elected a President who was pledged to keep slavery out of the territories; (3) that the North had committed itself to a policy which meant the waging of war against slavery in the states.

**329. The Crittenden Compromise. 1860.—**

On December 18, 1860, John J. Crittenden, of Kentucky, introduced into the United States

*Jefferson Davis*

Senate a compromise measure. He proposed as an amendment to the Constitution that slavery should be prohibited in all the territory of the United States north of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , and should be permitted to exist south of that line. New states were to be admitted on either side of the line, with or without slavery as their constitutions might provide. The Senate appointed a committee of thirteen to consider Crittenden's measure. The Southern leaders, as well as many of the Northern leaders, favored this proposition. The Republican members of the Committee

of Thirteen, however, opposed the measure, and no report was adopted.<sup>1</sup>

**330. The Peace Conference. 1861.**—Delegates from twenty-one states met in a Peace Conference at Washington, Feb. 4, 1861, upon the invitation of the State of Virginia. Ex-President Tyler presided. Virginia and the other border states were anxious to preserve peace. A compromise, similar to that of Crittenden, was agreed upon. This compromise in the form of amendments to the Constitution was presented to Congress, but was rejected in the Senate (March 4) by the overwhelming vote of the Republican senators. A resolution was passed by Congress, proposing an amendment to the Constitution prohibiting Congress from interfering with slavery in the states. The states, however, never voted upon this measure.

**331. Organization of the Confederacy of Seven States. 1861.**—Delegates from South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana and Texas met at Montgomery, Alabama, February 4, 1861, to organize a Southern Confederacy. Howell Cobb, of Georgia, was made permanent chairman of the convention. Alexander H. Stephens, a delegate from Georgia, said of his associates at Montgomery, "Upon the whole, this Congress, taken all in all, is the ablest, soberest, most intelligent and conservative body I was ever in. . . . Nobody looking on would ever take this Congress for a set of revolutionists."

On February 8, 1861, a temporary constitution was adopted. Jefferson Davis,<sup>2</sup> of Mississippi, was unanimously chosen Presi-

<sup>1</sup> War might have been averted by Crittenden's Compromise, but this measure was deliberately rejected by the Republican senators. Their action was due almost entirely to the influence of Abraham Lincoln, President-elect. He was opposed to the drawing of any line through the territories, since the new Republican party was based upon the theory that Congress must drive slavery from every territory.

<sup>2</sup> Jefferson Davis (1808-1889) was born in Kentucky, but during most of his life lived in Mississippi. He was graduated from West Point in 1828, and served in the Black Hawk War (1832) and in the Mexican War. He was in the House of Representatives 1845-46 and in the Senate 1847-51, and again 1857-61. During Pierce's administration (1853-57) he was Secretary of War.

dent of the Confederate States, and Alexander H. Stephens<sup>1</sup> was elected Vice-President. Davis had withdrawn from the United States Senate when his state seceded, and was at work on his plantation in Mississippi, but he came at once to Montgomery and was inaugurated February 18.



*Alexander H. Stephens*

He based the right of the Southern states to secede upon that clause in the Declaration of Independence which asserts "that it is the right of the people to alter or abolish governments whenever they become destructive of the needs for which they were established." "We have vainly endeavored to secure tranquillity and obtain respect for the rights to which we were entitled," said Davis in his inaugural address. "As a necessity, not a choice, we have resorted to the remedy of separation."

Three commissioners were appointed by the Confederate government to negotiate a treaty of friendship with the government at Washington. The Constitution of the seven Confederate States, including Texas, as finally adopted, March 11, 1861, was the old Federal Constitution with a few modifications.

He was President of the Southern Confederacy, and at the close of the war was captured and held a prisoner for two years at Fortress Monroe, Virginia. He spent his later years in retirement upon his plantation in Mississippi.

<sup>1</sup> Alexander H. Stephens (1812-1883) was a native of Georgia; he was graduated at the University of Georgia in 1832 and then began to practice law. He was a member of Congress from 1843 to 1859, and was Vice-President of the Southern Confederacy 1861-65. After the war he was elected to the United States Senate, but was not allowed to take his seat. He was again a member of the House of Representatives 1873-82 and at the time of his death was Governor of Georgia.

The independent sovereignty of each state was carefully recognized.<sup>1</sup>

The purpose of the people of the South in organizing the new Confederacy was to preserve peace. They claimed that in the Federal Union the Northern section was faithless to its agreements and intensely hostile towards the South, and that they were driven to use this legal remedy of secession as a final effort to preserve peace. Few of the Southern people expected the withdrawal of the states to result in war.

### Questions.

1. What caused the panic of 1857? Tell of the trouble with the Mormons. What states were admitted in Buchanan's administration?
2. What was the Dred Scott case? What bearing did the decision have upon slavery in the territories?
3. What were Lincoln's arguments in his debate against Douglas? How did Douglas reply? What was the effect of the debate?
4. Tell of the John Brown raid.
5. What was the importance of the Davis Resolutions?
6. Why did the Democratic convention at Charleston split? Who were the nominees of the two factions? What was the Constitutional Union party? Who were the nominees of the Republican party? What was the platform of the Republican party? Explain how Lincoln was elected without a majority of the votes cast.
7. How did South Carolina take Lincoln's election? What other states followed South Carolina? What were the views of Buchanan and Greeley on secession?
8. What was the Crittenden Compromise? Why was it defeated?
9. What was the Virginia Peace Conference?
10. Tell of the organization of the Confederate States. What was the purpose of the Southern people in organizing the Confederacy?

### Geography Study.

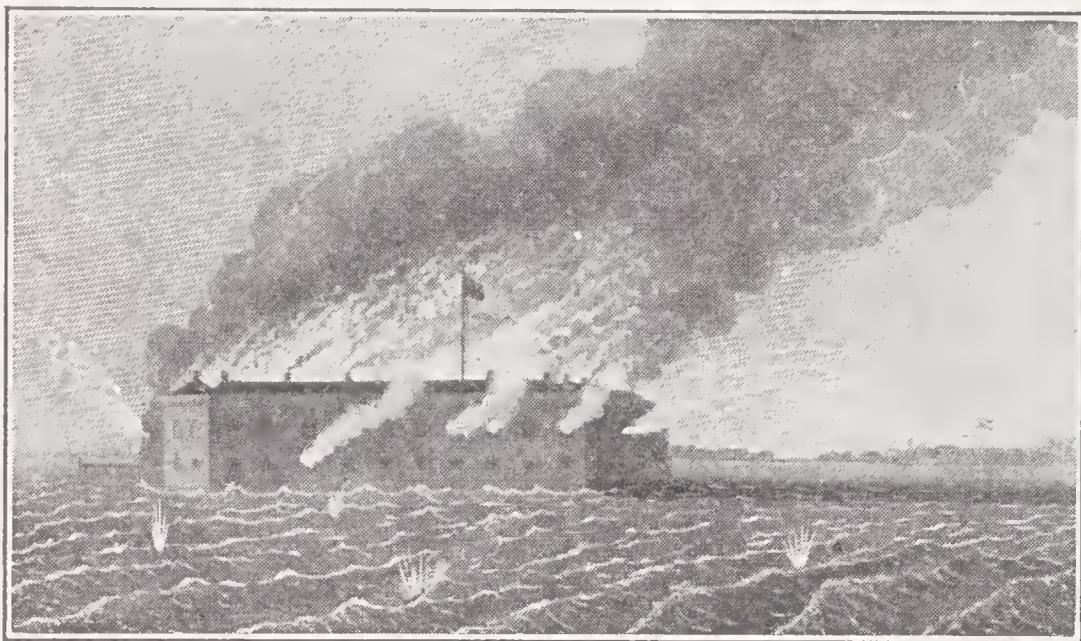
Point out on the map Cuba, Spain, Utah, Salt Lake City, Minnesota, Kansas, Nevada, Illinois, Harper's Ferry and Montgomery. Draw a map showing the Confederate States as they looked when first organized.

<sup>1</sup>The African slave trade was prohibited. The President was to serve for six years and could not be reëlected.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

## EVENTS OF THE WAR IN 1861.

**332. Lincoln's Inaugural Address.**—On March 4, 1861, Lincoln was inaugurated as President. In his inaugural address he declared that the Union was much older than the Constitution, older even than the states themselves, and that therefore



FORT SUMTER, APRIL 12, 1861.

no state could secede. He claimed, also, that he had the right to force the seceding states back into the Union, and he furthermore pledged himself and the Republican party not to

interfere with slavery in the states. Lincoln's statement, however, with reference to the Union was not borne out by the history of the adoption of the Constitution. We know that the states were older than the Union, and that the states made the Union. The claim, too, of the President's right to use force against the South was not based upon the principles that marked the founding of the Federal Union in 1789.

**333. Fort Sumter.**—As previously stated, peace commissioners were sent from Montgomery, Alabama, by the Confederate government to treat with the Federal government at Washington. Lincoln refused to receive them officially. They remained in Washington, however, hoping to make arrangements for peace and for the surrender of Fort Sumter at Charleston,<sup>1</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> As a result of the first meeting of Lincoln's Cabinet (March 9, 1861) the newspapers publicly announced that Fort Sumter would be given up by the

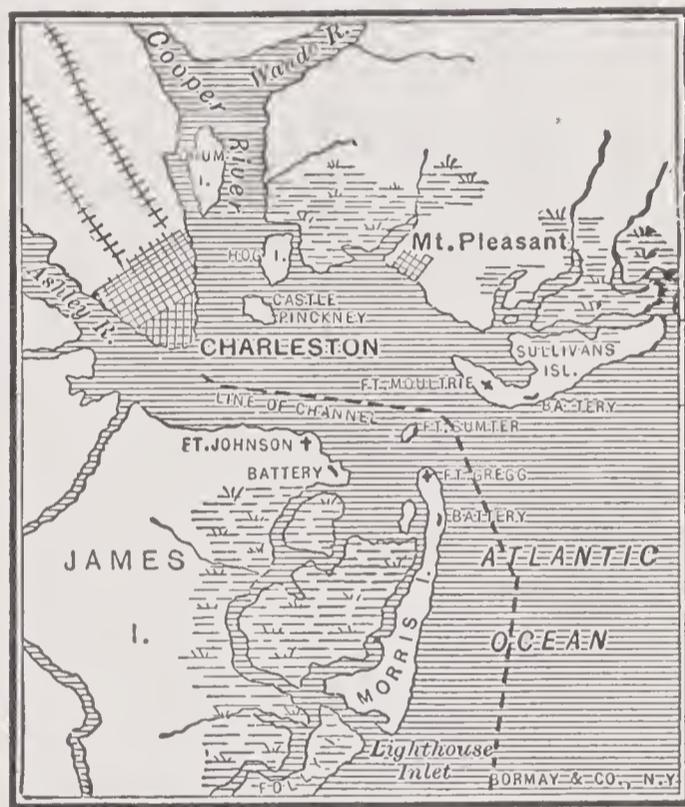
Fort Pickens at Pensacola, Florida. The first conflict took place over Fort Sumter. South Carolina had ceded to the United States the soil upon which the fort was erected, to be used for the defense of the states. When South Carolina withdrew from the Union, she claimed that the soil reverted to her as a sovereign state. She was willing to pay the United States for the fortifications which had been erected. President Buchanan had refused to withdraw the Federal troops from Fort Sumter, and attempted to reënforce the post, but the ship *Star of the West*, which was bringing troops, was driven back by the Carolina batteries at Charleston (January 9, 1861).

On April 8th a messenger sent by Lincoln arrived at Charleston and informed Governor Pickens that an attempt would be made to carry provisions to Fort Sumter. President Davis accepted this as an act of war, and demanded the evacuation of the fort, but Major Anderson, who was in command, refused to withdraw. On the morning of the 12th

of April the chief part of the United States war fleet arrived off Charleston. As an act of defense against the approach of this flotilla, Beauregard<sup>1</sup> opened fire with his batteries against Sum-

Federal administration. On March 15th, Seward, Secretary of State, made promises to the Confederate commissioners, through Judge Campbell of the Supreme Court, that Fort Sumter would be speedily evacuated. In the meanwhile four war vessels and three other ships with men, arms and supplies were sent from New York by Lincoln to reënforce the fort. Judge Campbell questioned Seward again about his promises, and the latter wrote in reply on the 8th of April, "Faith as to Sumter fully kept—wait and see."

<sup>1</sup> Pierre G. T. Beauregard (1818-1893) was born near New Orleans, was graduated at West Point in 1838, and won distinction in the Mexican War. In 1860 he was superintendent of the West Point Military Academy. As brigadier general in the Confederate service, he captured Fort Sumter, was in



CHARLESTON HARBOR.

ter. On the following day (April 13, 1861) the fort was surrendered. Not a man was killed on either side during the engagement.

**334. Four More States Secede.**—On April 15th President Lincoln issued a proclamation calling for 75,000 troops to march into the seven states of the Confederacy. The governors of the other seven Southern states and of Delaware refused to furnish troops for the invasion of the South.



GENERAL BEAUREGARD.

The Southern states which had not seceded were Maryland, Virginia, Tennessee, North Carolina, Kentucky, Arkansas and Missouri. They had postponed action, because they were encouraged by President Lincoln with promises of peace. When Lincoln called for troops to fight against

the Confederate States, Southern men who had advocated the postponement of secession were filled with indignation. They claimed that Lincoln had broken his pledges and that he was now beginning an unnecessary war against the extreme Southern states. Four more states immediately withdrew from the Union: Virginia on April 17th; Arkansas, May 6th; North Carolina, May 26th, and Tennessee, June 8th. These four states at once joined the Confederacy.

**The Border States.**—Public sentiment was divided in the border states of Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri. On April 19th the Sixth Massachusetts regiment, on its way to Washington, was attacked in Baltimore by a large number of citizens, who declared that the soldiers were invading Maryland in order to make an attack against other states in the South. Lincoln sent soldiers to arrest the Maryland legislators and to cast them into prison. Maryland was thus prevented from seceding.

A majority of the people of Kentucky were in sympathy with the South. In May, 1861, the legislature announced that Kentucky would remain neutral as between North and South. On November 20th a convention representing the Southern sympathizers passed an ordinance of secession.

command in the first battle of Manassas, at Shiloh after the death of A. S. Johnston, and at Charleston, 1862-64.

In Missouri the sentiment in favor of secession grew stronger after Lincoln's call for troops. It was too late, however, for the Southern men to take effective action. During the latter part of the year 1861 the Federal forces gained possession of the state and she was thus held within the Union.

**335. President Lincoln Assumes War Powers.**—We have seen that President Lincoln announced a principle of government totally opposed to that upon which the Federal Union was established in 1789. He claimed that the Federal government, created by the independent states in 1789, was greater than the states themselves. As the executive head or President of this Federal government, he held that each state was under his power. He advanced his theory so far as to claim for himself the right to exercise the powers both of Congress and of the Supreme Court. He did this through the use of what he termed the "war powers" of the President. (See Const., Art. II., § 2. 1.)

Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of the ports of the Southern states, and announced that any persons who, under the authority of the Confederate States, should molest

United States vessels, would be treated as pirates. The President also issued a proclamation (May, 1861) calling for 42,000 volunteers for three years, in addition to the 75,000 called out at first. At the same time he ordered 18,000 seamen to be enlisted and more than 22,000 men to be added to the regular army. By July 1, 1861, he had collected 183,588 soldiers under arms, in disregard



*A. Lincoln*

of the fact that Congress alone has power to declare a blockade or to raise an army. In addition, President Lincoln authorized General Scott to establish a line of soldiers between Philadelphia and Washington, and to pay no attention to civil courts and judges in Maryland.<sup>1</sup>

On May 23, 1861, some ten thousand soldiers were sent by the President across the Potomac into Virginia. This act of President Lincoln was an invasion of a commonwealth, the beginning of a war. In opposition to Lincoln's policy, the Constitution asserts that Congress alone has the power to begin a war.<sup>2</sup>

**336. The Confederacy Prepares for War.**—President Lincoln's call for troops, April 15, 1861, was interpreted by President Davis as a "declaration of war" against the Southern Confederacy. The Congress of the Confederate States, summoned to meet in special session at Montgomery, April 29th, authorized President Davis to prepare for war on both sea and land. A call was issued for volunteers to serve during the war.

On April 20th Robert E. Lee<sup>3</sup> resigned his commission in the

<sup>1</sup> Chief Justice Taney protested against the President's acts as utterly contrary to the Constitution.

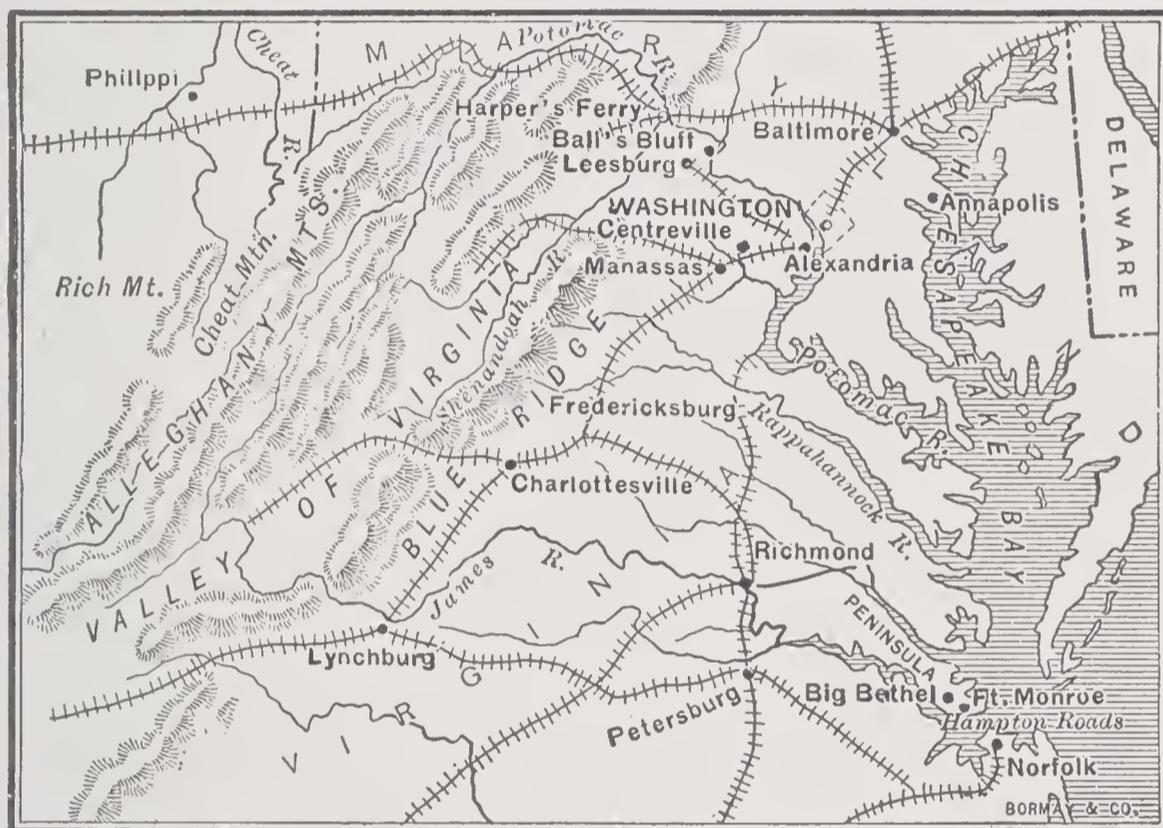
<sup>2</sup> "In the interval between April 12 and July 4, 1861, a new principle thus appeared in the constitutional system of the United States, namely, that of a temporary dictatorship. All the powers of government were virtually concentrated in a single department, and that, the department whose energies were directed by the will of a single man."—"Essays on the Civil War" (pp. 20, 21), by William A. Dunning. Columbia University, New York.

<sup>3</sup> Robert E. Lee (1807-1870), of Virginia, was the son of "Light-Horse Harry" Lee, the cavalry leader of Revolutionary times. He was graduated from West Point, and served as chief military engineer on General Scott's staff in the Mexican war. He was superintendent of the West Point Military Academy 1852-55. In April, 1861, he was offered the chief command of the Federal army; but after the secession of Virginia he resigned his commission and took command of the Virginia forces. He was commander of the Army of Northern Virginia from June, 1862, until the end of the war. General Lee had the undying affection and confidence of all his men. From 1865 until his death he was president of Washington College in Virginia. Lord Wolseley, commander-in-chief of the British army, said of him:—

"As a man he will ever stand out in American history on the same level as Washington, the lofty-minded national hero. As a great military genius, he

army of the United States, for the reason, as he stated it, that he "could take no part in an invasion of the Southern States." He announced that his allegiance was due first of all to Virginia, and he believed that her action in seceding withdrew him also from the former Union. A multitude of other Southern officers took the same course.

On May 6th Virginia was formally incorporated in the Southern Confederacy. The Confederate capital was established in



THE WAR IN VIRGINIA IN 1861.

Richmond in the latter part of May, and on June 8, 1861, President Davis began to direct the defense of the Southern States. He found Virginia already invaded, and eastern Virginia and North Carolina set apart by the Federal government as a separate military department.

On May 13, 1861, the British government issued a proclamation of neutrality as between the two contending governments. This amounted to a formal recognition of the Southern Confederacy as a real republic, entitled to make war in accordance with the usages of the civilized powers of the world. France and other European States likewise recognized the Confederacy as possessing these same privileges which are called the rights of a belligerent.

will be by future generations classed with the very few world-known leaders of armies who tower above humanity as leaders born of God."

**337. The Campaign in Virginia in 1861.**—In June, 1861, a force of nearly 200,000 Northern soldiers was about to enter the borders of Virginia at various points under orders from President Lincoln to seize the capital, Richmond. The scarcity of muskets in the South prevented the forming of a large army for defense. President Davis established strong forces at Manassas under Beauregard and at Winchester under Joseph E. Johnston,<sup>1</sup> with smaller bodies of troops under Huger, Magruder, Carnett, Holmes and Wise at other places in Virginia. George B. McClellan drove the Confederates out of **Philippi** in western Virginia, and then defeated Garnett's small force at **Rich Mountain**. On the other hand, Magruder defeated a body of Federal troops at **Big Bethel**, near Fortress Monroe.

On July 21st some 29,000 Confederates, under Beauregard and Johnston, were in position behind the banks of the Bull Run near **Manassas**; McDowell's army of 30,000 men had marched southward from Alexandria and occupied Centreville, on the eastern bank of the stream. McDowell crossed Bull Run above Centreville and marched down the western bank of the stream against the left end of the Confederate line. The Confederates were driven back until Thomas J. Jackson's brigade checked McDowell's advance.<sup>2</sup> Jackson, Kirby Smith and Early then

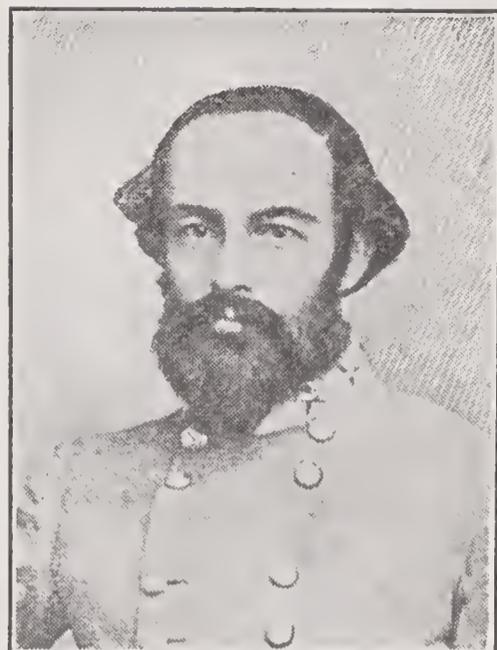
<sup>1</sup> Joseph E. Johnston (1807–1891) was a native of Virginia, a graduate of West Point, and a veteran of the Mexican war. He resigned a position as quartermaster general in the United States army when Virginia seceded. He was in command at the first battle of Manassas and in the Peninsula campaign (1862) until wounded at Seven Pines. He commanded the Army of Tennessee, located in Georgia (1863–64) and in the Carolinas (1865).

<sup>2</sup> As the Confederates' left wing fell back, its commander, General Bee, found Jackson's troops drawn up in line near the crest of the Henry Hill. "General," said Bee, "they are beating us back!" "Then, sir, we will give them the bayonet," calmly replied Jackson. Then Bee called out to his men: "Look! There is Jackson standing like a stone wall. Rally behind the Virginians." From that hour the epithet "Stonewall" was attached as a token of honor to the brigade and to its brilliant commander.

Thomas J. Jackson (1824–1863) was a Virginian, a West Point graduate, and a veteran of the Mexican war. He was a professor in the Virginia Military Institute from 1851–61. He was commissioned as colonel at the outbreak of

made a bayonet charge and forced McDowell to turn back in flight across Bull Run. The retreat became a rout, and some of McDowell's troops did not pause in their flight until they arrived in Washington.

In August, 1861, General Robert E. Lee assumed command of four small Confederate detachments in the mountains of western Virginia, and forced the Federal General Rosecrans, who had succeeded McClellan, to retire from Sewell Mountain

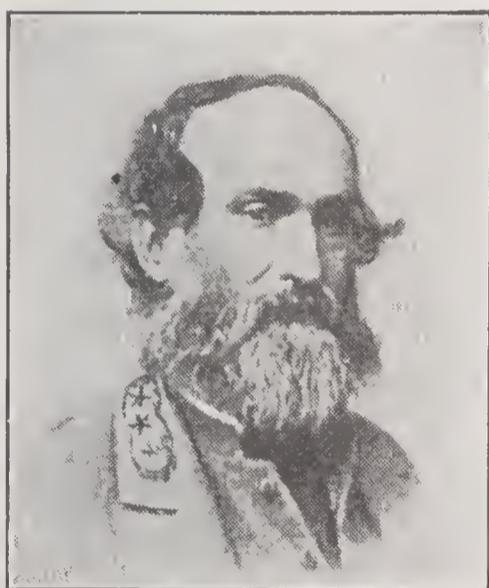


E. KIRBY SMITH.

to the Kanawha River. The Federal troops advancing from the Ohio Valley were thus unable to make any permanent occupation of Virginia east of the Cheat and Sewell ranges.<sup>1</sup>

### 338. The War in the West in 1861.

—In the early summer of 1861 Governor Jackson and the legislature of Missouri attempted to make that state a member of the Confederacy, but this movement was prevented by Colonel Nathaniel Lyon, who used Federal troops to take possession of St. Louis and of the capital of the state, Jefferson City. Governor Jackson then called for 50,000 volunteers to defend the State of Missouri against the



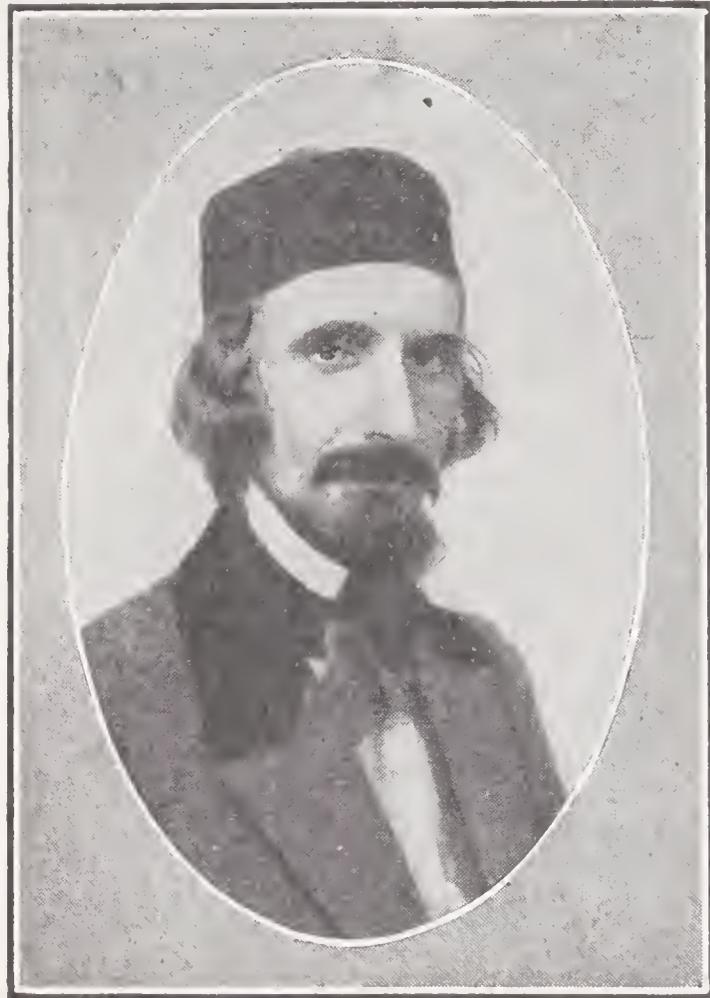
JUBAL A. EARLY.

forces of the Federal government. The Confederate Army of Missouri, under command of General Sterling Price, defeated Franz

war, became major general in September, 1861, and after the victory at Fredericksburg (December, 1862) he was made lieutenant general. He was killed in May, 1863. Stonewall Jackson was idolized by his men. "During the whole of the two years he held command he never committed a single error," says his biographer, Col. G. F. R. Henderson.

<sup>1</sup> On October 21st about two thousand Federal troops crossed the Potomac River near Leesburg, and were defeated at **Ball's Bluff** by the Confederates under General Evans. The Federal troops were driven back to the edge of the stream and scarcely one-half of them escaped.

Sigel's Federal force at **Carthage**, July 8, 1861. General Benjamin McCulloch then marched into Missouri with a body of Confederate soldiers from Arkansas and Texas. The united forces of



JAMES A. SEDDON,  
SECRETARY OF WAR OF THE CON-  
FEDERATE STATES.

Price and McCulloch fell upon Lyon's army at **Oak Hill** (Wilson's Creek), and won a sweeping Confederate victory. Lyon was slain in the battle.<sup>1</sup>

In Kentucky both the North and the South tried to secure control. The Confederates sent General Polk into Kentucky, and on September 3d he seized and fortified Columbus. Polk wanted to secure Paducah and thus to control the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers, but before he could do so, General Grant<sup>2</sup> took the place. The Confederates built Fort Henry on the Tennessee River and Fort Donelson on

the Cumberland, in the State of Tennessee, south of the Kentucky line, with the view of preventing the advance of Grant southward along the course of these rivers.

<sup>1</sup> This campaign was continued by Price's capture of the town of Lexington on the Missouri River. Governor Jackson assembled the former legislature and an act of secession was adopted, withdrawing Missouri from the Union. Price continued to hold the southern part of the State of Missouri for the Confederacy. General Ulysses S. Grant made a vain attempt in November to win a foothold in the eastern part of the state by advancing from Cairo, Illinois, against Belmont on the Mississippi River. He was driven back to Cairo with the loss of one-sixth of his force.

<sup>2</sup> Ulysses S. Grant (1822-1885) was a native of Ohio, was graduated from West Point, and served in the Mexican war. He retired from the army in 1854. From 1861 until March, 1864, he was fighting, as brigadier general, in the Mississippi Valley campaigns. He was then put in command of all the Federal forces. From 1868 to 1876 he was President of the United States. He was a man of great tenacity of purpose and magnanimous in victory.

**339. The Blockade of the Atlantic Coast in 1861.**—At the outbreak of war, Lincoln sent all the war vessels of the United States to blockade the coast from Virginia to Texas.<sup>1</sup> Swift vessels owned by the Confederacy and by European merchants easily passed through the blockading fleet. In order to enforce the blockade, Lincoln sent a series of expeditions to capture the forts and batteries planted at the water's edge along the coast of the Carolinas and Georgia. The cannon used by the Confederates in their shore batteries in this region were of small calibre and could make only a feeble defense against naval guns.<sup>2</sup> But the capture of the islands along this southern Atlantic coast bore no further fruit for the Federal cause. General Lee protected the Atlantic coast, by planning a line of interior defenses at some distance from the shore. This inner line was never broken by a Federal expedition advancing from the ocean.

**The Trent Affair.**—In November, 1861, J. M. Mason, of Virginia, and John Slidell, of Louisiana, were sent as commissioners from the Southern Confederacy to England and to France. They ran the blockade at Charleston and embarked at Havana on the English mail steamer *Trent*. This steamer was overhauled by a Federal war vessel; the Confederate commissioners were seized and taken as prisoners to Fort Warren in Boston harbor. England at once demanded their surrender and an apology for the insult to the British flag. Mason and Slidell were then immediately released and sent upon their journey to England.

<sup>1</sup> The Federal war vessels were prevented from entering most of the rivers and harbors in the South by submarine mines and torpedoes placed in position by Matthew F. Maury and other Confederate naval officers. These torpedoes injured and destroyed during the war about thirty-four Federal war vessels. This was the first successful use of torpedoes as a weapon in war.

Matthew F. Maury (1806–1873) had been superintendent of the Naval Observatory at Washington from 1844–61. He made a special study of the physical features of the ocean, and was called “the Pathfinder of the Sea.”

<sup>2</sup> The Confederate forts guarding Hatteras Inlet, on the coast of North Carolina, were captured in August. Later, Hilton Head, at the entrance to Port Royal, South Carolina, and Tybee Island and Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah River, Georgia, fell into the hands of the Federal forces. This gave the Federal fleet control of the islands on the coast between Charleston and Savannah. January, 1862, saw the capture of Roanoke Island by Burnside; and in March, New Berne, North Carolina, was taken from the Confederates.

### 340. The Resources of the Two Governments. 1861.—

In 1861 two American confederacies stood face to face upon the field of war. On the one side were eleven states, called The Confederate States of America, united upon the principles of the Federal Union of 1789. On the other side were eighteen states called The United States of America, united by the election of Lincoln upon the new basis of the complete supremacy of the Federal government. Four border states, Delaware,



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri,<sup>1</sup> were divided in the matter of allegiance to the two governments. From February 8, 1861, until the end of February, 1862, the government of the Confederate States was temporary. After the latter date, the Confederate Constitution, as finally arranged, went into full operation.

The states numbered thirty-three in 1861. According to the census of 1860 their population was more than 31,000,000. The eleven commonwealths of the Southern Confederacy had over 9,000,000, and the Northern states had about 19,000,000. More than 3,000,000 dwelt in the four border states. There were 226,000 negroes in the North, and 3,500,000 in the South. In total white population, the North outnumbered the South about two to one.

Neither the North nor the South was prepared for warfare in

<sup>1</sup> A part of the people in each of the two states, Kentucky and Missouri, passed ordinances of secession and sent representatives to the Congress of the Southern Confederacy. They were, therefore, counted among the Confederate states.

1861. Neither side had expected war. The North was superior in numbers and resources. She held control of the ocean; she had most of the railroads, steamships, shipyards, workshops and factories; and she had most of the arms and munitions of war belonging to the Union prior to 1861. The North was able to borrow all the money necessary to carry on the war.

The South, on the other hand, was an agricultural section. Corn was the only food crop extensively grown. An almost exclusive cultivation of cotton, sugar-cane, tobacco and rice left the South dependent upon others for most of her manufactured goods. Moreover, she stood in great need of firearms. A small number of cannon, and about 150,000 muskets, of poor quality, were available. After the war began, a few small factories were established for the manufacture of powder, rifles and cannon. The North scored a great initial advantage in having nearly all of the arms and supplies belonging to the Federal government.

The treasuries of both sections were empty when the contest began. The Confederate States issued bonds and Treasury notes which were sold in Europe. Cotton—as much as could escape the blockade—was also exchanged abroad for arms and supplies. Paper money was issued in large quantities. The North drew revenue from a heavy direct tax, the tariff on imports, the excise tax, bonds and Treasury notes, and an extensive issue of paper money, called greenbacks.

**341. The Uprising of the Southern People.**—The year 1861 saw a marvelous uprising of the people of the Southern states. Old and young, rich and poor alike, the entire male population of eleven commonwealths,<sup>1</sup> were aroused as if by the blast of the trumpet to resist the invasion of their country. Farmers, mechanics, laborers, lawyers, physicians, editors, students, teachers, college professors and ministers of the Gospel, all marched to the front. Seven out of every ten of the citizens were non-slaveholders, and yet the latter sprang to arms with a zeal that surpassed, if possible, that shown by the owners of

<sup>1</sup> With the exception of western Virginia and eastern Tennessee.

African servants. The negro people themselves were, as a body, in full sympathy with the white population. Many of them were ready to do zealous work as laborers in the camp and upon the field of battle. The great mass of the negroes remained at home to protect the women and to grow the crops that were to maintain the Confederate soldiers in the field for four years.

**342. The Principles Involved in the Conflict.**—The real cause of the war was the fact that in the United States there were two great sections with conflicting interests and different ideas of government. The South held that the Constitution of 1789 established a Federal republic, in which the chief



PRESIDENT DAVIS'S MANSION IN RICHMOND.

factor was the individual state. Each state had its rights guaranteed according to the Constitution, which could be changed only by a vote of three-fourths of all the states. The

South believed that each state could withdraw from the Union when its rights were interfered with. In the North, the belief was held that the central government could hold each state in subjection and that Congress could make war against any state and subdue it. After the beginning of hostilities, the Congress at Washington declared that the war was waged by the North



THE CAPITOL AT RICHMOND.

Where the Confederate Congress met.

not for conquest or subjugation, but for the preservation of the Union. The Union which they desired to preserve was not, however, the old Federal Republic of 1789, but a new Union with the separate states in entire subjection to the central government.

**343 The Confederacy's Four Lines of Defense.**—The war between the States was one of invasion by the North, of defense by the South. After the battle of Manassas, the United States government called 500,000 men into the field. To meet these, the Confederates enlisted 400,000 men. The Confederacy was divided into three great sections, viz.: the region west of the Mississippi, the country between the Mississippi and the Alleghany Mountains, and the section between the Alleghanies and the Atlantic Ocean. In each of these three sections the Confederacy had an army of defense; in addition there was a line of forts along the Atlantic coast, making, altogether, four lines of defense.

The close of the year 1861 found these four lines of defense unbroken at any important point. The Federal army had been driven back in rout at Manassas in northern Virginia, in July, 1861. However, the Federal fleets commanded the approach to Savannah, Georgia, and were threatening New Orleans. The Confederacy was still able to send cotton to Europe and to receive arms and supplies by means of the blockade runners.

### Questions.

1. What did Lincoln say in his inaugural address? Was the Union older than the states?
2. How were the Confederate peace commissioners received in Washington? What was South Carolina's view about Fort Sumter? What promise was made? Why was the fort bombarded?
3. What four states now seceded and joined the Union? What was the position of Maryland? of Kentucky? of Missouri?
4. What powers did Lincoln assume?
5. Where was the capital of the Confederacy? How did England and France regard the Confederacy?

6. Tell of the opening of the war in Virginia. What battles were fought in Virginia in 1861? Tell of the most important.

7. Tell of Price, Sigel, McCulloch and Grant in the West. What battles were fought in the West, and how did they result?

8. Tell of the blockade of the Atlantic coast. What was the *Trent* affair?

9. Compare the populations of the two confederacies. Compare the material resources.

10. Tell of the uprising of the Southern people in 1861.

11. What were the principles involved in the conflict?

12. Into what sections was the Confederacy divided? What were the four lines of defense? What were the results of the war in 1861?

### Geography Study.

Study the location of Charleston Harbor and Fort Sumter. Find Pensacola, Alexandria, Manassas, Leesburg, Ball's Bluff, St. Louis, Jefferson City, Carthage, Wilson's Creek, Belmont, Columbus, Paducah, the Cumberland and Tennessee rivers, Fort Henry, Fort Donelson, Cairo, Port Royal, New Berne. Locate on the map the lines of Confederate defense in 1861.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

### EVENTS OF THE WAR IN 1862.

#### I. The War in the West in 1862.

**344. The Federal Plan of Campaign.**—Early in the year 1862 the Federal administration at Washington made plans to break through the four lines of defense established by the Confederacy. Their fourfold purpose was as follows: (1) To enforce the blockade along the coast; (2) to open the Mississippi River; (3) to get control of Kentucky and Tennessee; and (4) to capture Richmond. The struggle began at the mouth of the Mississippi and in the West.

**345. New Orleans and New Mexico.**—From October to December, 1861, the Confederate blockade-runners were especially active in passing through the Federal fleet at the mouth of the Mississippi. A Federal force under General B. F. Butler took

possession of Ship Island, to the eastward from New Orleans, in December. The approach by the river toward this city was defended by two forts, Jackson and St. Philip, and by some Confederate gunboats. In April, 1862, Commodore David G. Farragut's<sup>1</sup> Federal fleet passed boldly between the Confederate batteries and captured New Orleans. On May 1st, Butler led his army into the city. Farragut continued to ascend the Mississippi, and occupied Baton Rouge. He took Natchez, Mississippi, on May 12th, but his progress up the river was checked by the heavy Confederate guns at Vicksburg.

In February, 1862, General Henry H. Sibley led a Confederate column of Texas volunteers up the Rio Grande, into New Mexico and Arizona, where he attacked the Federal troops under the command of General Edward R. S. Canby. Sibley's advance northward was marked by several Confederate victories. The lack of supplies, however, forced him to withdraw again to Texas and to leave these territories under Federal control.

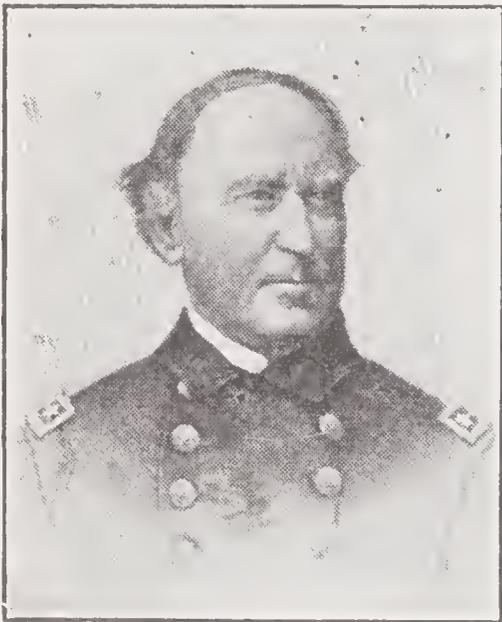


THE WAR IN THE SOUTHWEST.

**346. Forts Henry and Donelson.**—The first serious breach made in the outer Confederate line of defenses was the loss of Fort Henry on the Tennessee River, and Fort Donelson on the Cumberland. The movement against the Confederate line which extended through the central part of the State of Kentucky was begun in January, 1862, when Colonel Humphrey Marshall's Confederate column was forced out of eastern Kentucky by Colonel James A. Garfield's Ohio troops. Generals F. K. Zollicoffer and George B. Crittenden were driven back

<sup>1</sup> David G. Farragut (1801–1870) was born in Tennessee and at nine years of age entered the navy as a midshipman. He was in the naval service all his life. He was made Admiral in 1866—the first in the United States navy.

from Mill Springs by the Federal commander, General George H. Thomas,<sup>1</sup> and Zollicoffer was slain. General U. S. Grant then moved up the Tennessee River and captured Fort Henry, but the Confederate garrison in the fort withdrew to Fort Donelson. Albert Sidney Johnston,<sup>2</sup> in command of the Confederate forces west of the Alleghanies, fell back from Bowling Green, Kentucky, to Nashville, Tennessee, and sent General J. B. Floyd to



ADMIRAL FARRAGUT.

take command at Fort Donelson. Grant's army and Commodore Foote's gunboats attacked the fort and it was surrendered, with ten thousand Confederate soldiers. This was a serious disaster to the Confederacy, for Johnston was forced to retreat from Nashville, and all of Kentucky and a part of Tennessee passed under the control of the Federal armies.

**347. Grant's Advance Down the Mississippi.**—The loss of Fort Donelson was the beginning of Confederate disasters within a wider region. S. R. Curtis led the Federal forces of Missouri into Arkansas to meet the Confederates under Earl Van Dorn, Sterling Price and Albert Pike. In March, 1862, the Confederates were defeated by Curtis at **Pea Ridge**, Arkansas, and the Confederate general Ben McCulloch was slain. The result of this battle was that the State of Missouri was practically lost to the Confederacy. There was now little hope that reënforcements from the section west of the Mississippi would be sent to

<sup>1</sup> George H. Thomas (1816–1870), a Virginian, served in the Seminole and Mexican wars, was an instructor at West Point 1851–54, and served in Texas 1854–61. Throughout the war between the States he fought in many battles, and for his defense of the Federal position at Chickamauga (1863) he was called “the Rock of Chickamauga.” At the time of his death he was in command of the army on the Pacific Coast.

<sup>2</sup> Albert Sidney Johnston (1803–1862) was a Kentuckian and a West Point graduate. He fought in Black Hawk's War (1832), with the Texan army and in the Mexican War. He was killed in the battle of Shiloh, 1862.

General A. S. Johnston, whose forces occupied the country on the eastern bank of that stream. General John Pope captured **New Madrid**, on the Mississippi River in Missouri, and then began operations against **Island No. 10**, which resulted in the fall of that Confederate stronghold on the 8th of April.

Meanwhile, Grant was ascending the Tennessee River and Don Carlos Buell was marching from Nashville to his aid. On April

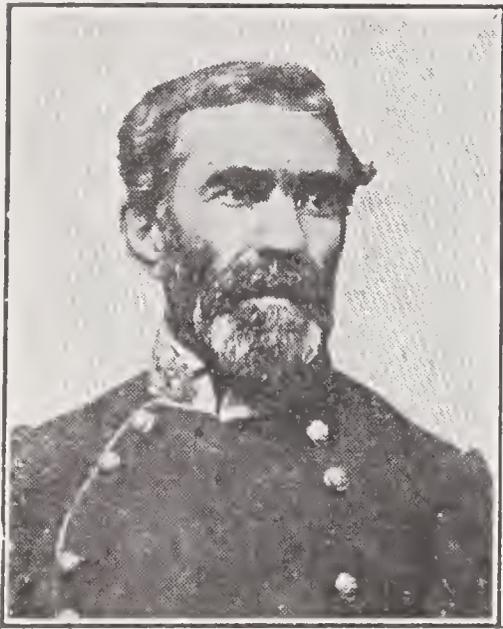


THE WAR IN THE WEST.

6th, General A. S. Johnston fell upon Grant at **Shiloh Church**, in Tennessee, near Pittsburg Landing.<sup>1</sup> At the critical moment in the battle, when the Federal army was being forced back to the river, Johnston was slain, and Beauregard, second in command, ordered a cessation of the Confederate attack. Buell's troops came to Grant's assistance, and Beauregard was forced to withdraw from the field and retire to Corinth, Mississippi. In May he withdrew from Corinth, and the Memphis and Charleston Railroad passed into the hands of General Halleck's Federal army.

This led to other Confederate losses on the Mississippi. Fort Pillow was evacuated (June 5), and the city of Memphis was sur-

<sup>1</sup> Grant had 45,000 soldiers, Buell, 37,000. Against these 82,000, Johnston could muster only 40,000 Confederates.

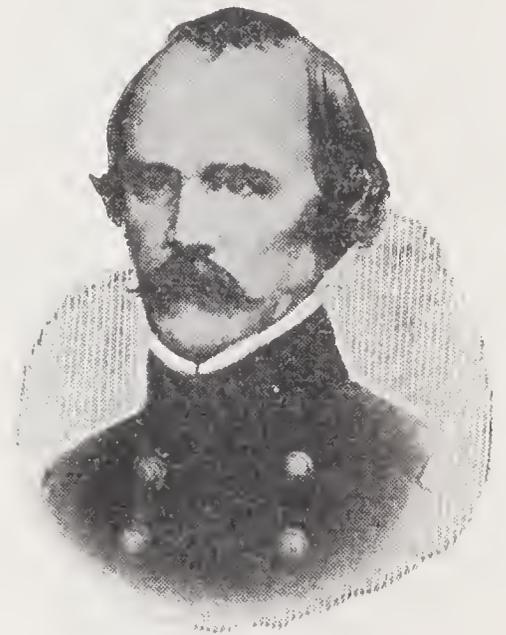


GENERAL BRAGG.

rendered to the Federal forces (June 6). The great river was now, at the end of the first year of serious warfare, lost to the Confederacy as far southward as the stronghold of Vicksburg.

**348. Confederate Attempts to Regain Kentucky and Tennessee.**—After the withdrawal of the Confederate army of the West from Corinth, Mississippi, General Braxton Bragg was made commander (June 27, 1862) in place of Beauregard. The Federal army at Corinth was placed under the command of Buell, who began to move toward Chattanooga; but Bragg made a swift movement, and threw 35,000 Confederates into that stronghold. Buell's advance was then completely checked by the brilliant work of two Confederate cavalry commanders, N. B. Forrest<sup>1</sup> and John B. Morgan.<sup>2</sup>

Bragg next began to move from Chattanooga around Buell's left flank, and turned the head of his column toward Louisville. At the same time, Kirby Smith's Confederate army defeated a large Federal force at **Richmond**, Kentucky. Buell's army, however, entered Louisville before the arrival of Bragg. On October 8th, a part of Bragg's army fell upon some of Buell's brigades at **Perryville**.<sup>3</sup>



GENERAL A. S. JOHNSTON.

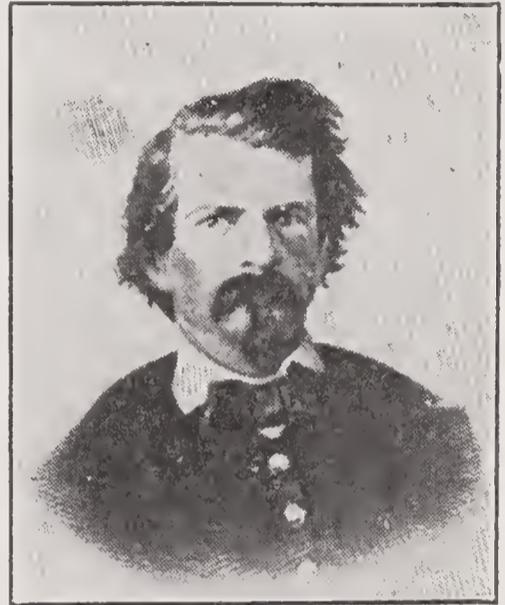
<sup>1</sup> Nathan B. Forrest (1821–1877), a native of Tennessee, grew up from poverty and became a rich planter, so that in 1861 he was able to equip an entire cavalry battalion at his own expense. He had wonderful success as a soldier, which he explained by saying that he managed “to get there first with the most men.” He attained the rank of lieutenant general.

<sup>2</sup> In July, Forrest captured Murfreesboro with its supplies and 1,000 Federal soldiers. In August, Morgan destroyed a railroad which furnished supplies to Buell; the latter was thus forced to stand on the defensive before Nashville.

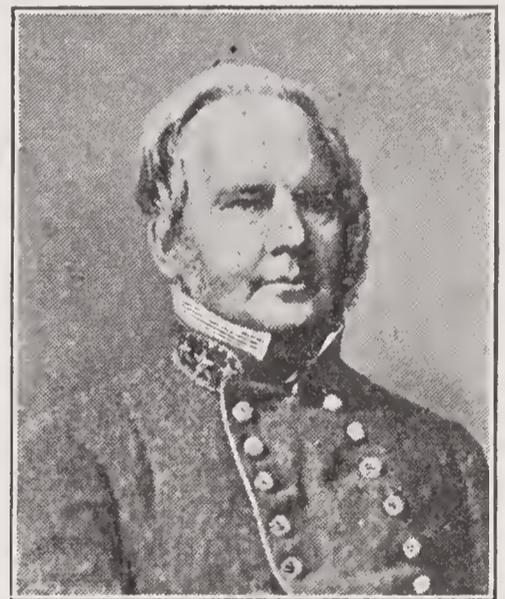
<sup>3</sup> Bragg had 17,000 men; Buell had 30,000.

The Confederates drove Buell's forces from the field in disorder, and captured fifteen guns; but Bragg was not willing to risk a further battle against Buell's large army of 54,000 men. The Confederate forces therefore retired into East Tennessee, with the store of supplies secured in Kentucky.

**349. Fighting Along the Mississippi River.**—While Bragg was engaged in Kentucky, Sterling Price and Van Dorn were in command of the Confederate forces south of Corinth in the State of Mississippi. On September 19th, Rosecrans attacked Price near Iuka. Price defeated the Federal army and then marched to unite his force with that of Van Dorn. The latter attacked Rosecrans and drove him into **Corinth** (October 3). The next day, Van Dorn's army gallantly fought its way into some of the streets of Corinth. The Confederates fiercely assailed a stronghold called Fort Robinett, but failed to take it. Fresh troops, sent by Grant, then forced Van Dorn to retreat.



EARL VAN DORN.



STERLING PRICE.

**350. Murfreesboro.**—In November, 1862, Bragg advanced with some 38,000 men to Murfreesboro, in Tennessee, and threatened Nashville.<sup>1</sup> Rosecrans led about 47,000 men from Nashville to attack Bragg, and the two armies met at Murfreesboro, December 31, 1862. Bragg was the first to attack. The Confederate left wing, led by Hardee, made a fierce onset in gallant style. The Federal right wing was routed, with the loss of twenty-eight guns, but was not driven entirely from the field. Two days

<sup>1</sup> Morgan's cavalry broke up the Louisville and Nashville Railroad that furnished supplies to Rosecrans; Forrest's cavalry cut the railway that brought supplies to Grant at Corinth.

later, when he found that he could not drive Rosecrans farther, Bragg withdrew toward Chattanooga.

**351. Results in the West in 1862.**—The close of the year found the former Confederate strongholds on the upper Mississippi from New Madrid as far south as Memphis in the hands of the Federal forces. New Orleans, Baton Rouge and Natchez, and the lower Mississippi were likewise in their possession. They held also the State of Mississippi as far south as Corinth. The Confederates had lost control of the lower Tennessee and Cumberland rivers, and had been forced out of Kentucky and as far eastward in Tennessee as Chattanooga. Missouri and Arkansas were practically cut off from the Confederacy.

## II. The War in the East in 1862.

**352. The Defensive Policy of the Confederacy.**—After the victory won at Manassas in July, 1861, the Confederate forces continued to stand on the defensive in northern Virginia. Near the end of the year an opportunity offered itself to General J. E. Johnston to enter Maryland and turn the defense of the city of Washington. President Davis insisted, however, upon awaiting the advance of General George B. McClellan, who was engaged in organizing and equipping a great Federal army, with which he proposed to capture Richmond. McClellan's forces were organized in four separate commands at Fortress Monroe, Manassas, in the Valley of Virginia,<sup>1</sup> and on the upper Kanawha River. Early in March, 1862, McClellan's various columns were ready to advance toward Richmond, and therefore J. E. Johnston withdrew his Confederate army from Manassas behind the Rapidan River.

**353. The *Virginia* and the *Monitor*.**—The ninth day of March witnessed the great battle between the *Virginia* and the

<sup>1</sup> The Valley of Virginia is a name generally applied to the valley of the Shenandoah River. The narrow region between the James and the York rivers in Virginia is called the Peninsula.

*Monitor* in Hampton Roads. A wooden frigate, the *Merrimac*, had been cut down to the water line by the Confederates and then rebuilt with sloping sides and with a roof made of heavy iron plates. She was fitted with an iron ram and with heavy guns, and was given the name *Virginia*. On March 8th she steamed out of Norfolk and destroyed two Federal war vessels, the *Congress* and the *Cumberland*, near Newport News. On the follow-



THE BATTLE BETWEEN THE "VIRGINIA" AND THE "MONITOR."

ing day the Federal vessel, the *Monitor*, entered Hampton Roads from New York. Her iron-plated deck was level with the water; in her single iron turret were two heavy guns. The two iron-clads threw heavy shot against each other for more than two hours. The *Monitor* then withdrew from the fight into shallow water, and the *Virginia* returned to Norfolk. Twice again the *Virginia* offered battle to the *Monitor*, but the latter declined to fight. The struggle between the *Virginia* and the *Monitor* marked a new era in naval warfare, since it was the first battle in which iron-clad vessels were engaged.<sup>1</sup>

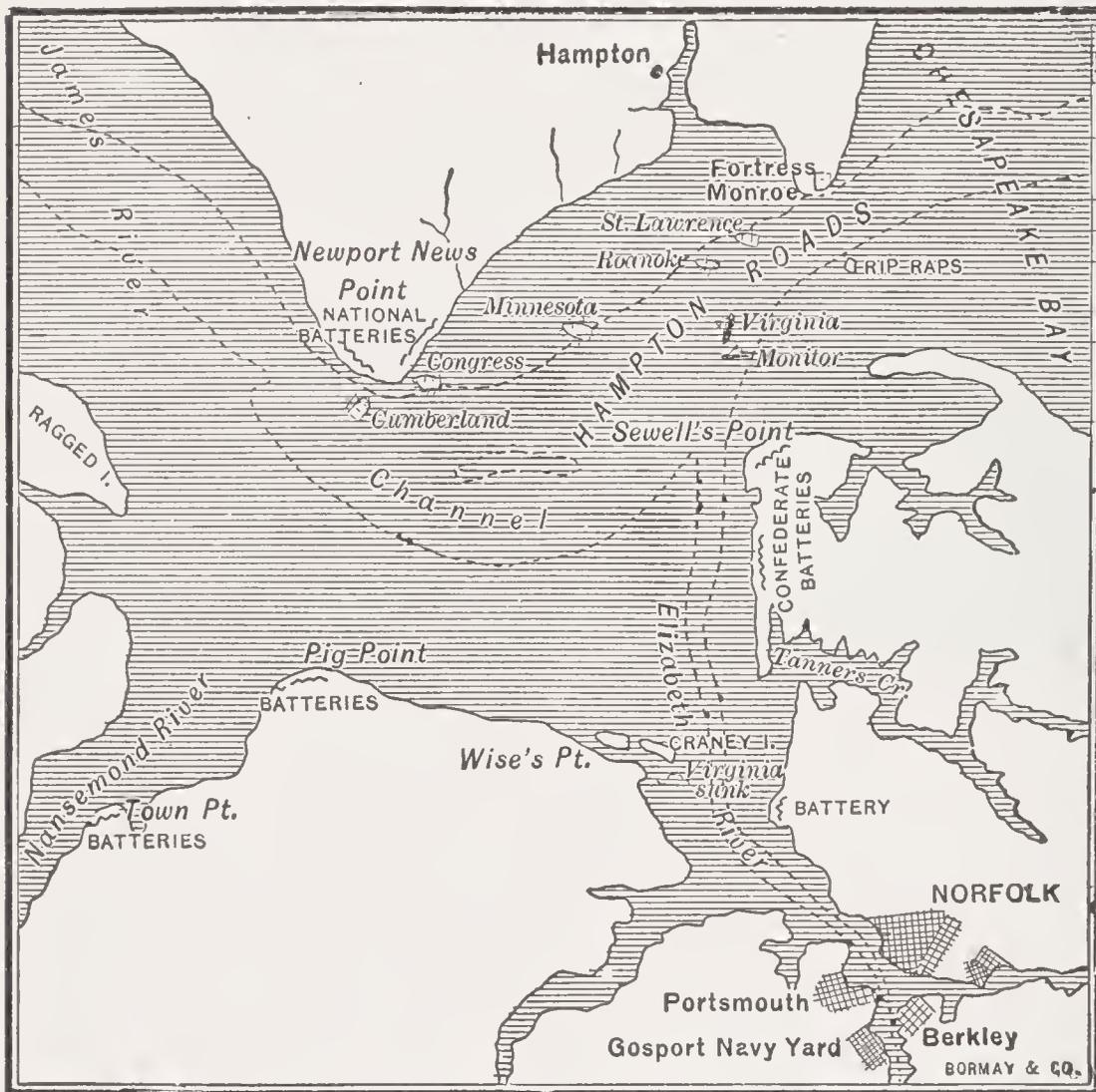
**354. Jackson's Valley Campaign.**—In January, 1862,

<sup>1</sup> The *Virginia* was burned by the Confederates in May, 1862, because the James River was not of sufficient depth to admit of her passage to Richmond.

Stonewall Jackson moved northward from Winchester and destroyed a portion of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad. He then marched through the snow across the mountains to Romney, in western Virginia, on the southern branch of the Potomac, and drove the Federal forces out of that region. In March, Jackson led his 3,000 men in a daring attack against Shields's 7,000 Federal troops at Kernstown, near Winchester. Jackson maintained his position for three hours, and then withdrew from the field. The effect of this assault was far-reaching. A large part of McClellan's forces, then moving from Manassas

toward Richmond, was marched back northward for the purpose of protecting Washington.

Two Federal armies now demanded Jackson's attention in the Valley of Virginia. Milroy's column was threatening the city of Staunton, and N. P. Banks's command was in the lower Valley at Win-



THE BATTLE OF HAMPTON ROADS.

chester. Jackson made a circuit, marched swiftly across the Valley and crushed Milroy at the village of **McDowell**. He next made a sudden onset at **Winchester** against Banks, who fled across the Potomac and left his train of wagons in Jackson's possession. The effect of these brilliant victories was that, again, an important part of McClellan's army was withheld from advancing toward Richmond. Lincoln and his Cabinet were, moreover,

filled with the fear that General Jackson would advance and capture Washington.

After the retreat of Banks across the Potomac, Frémont and Shields, two Federal Generals, entered the lower Valley expecting to capture Jackson. This skillful officer was already marching

up the Valley with the supplies captured from Banks. He turned against Frémont at **Cross Keys**, and defeated him. On the following day he fell upon Shields at **Port Republic**, and drove him back toward the Potomac.<sup>1</sup> These two Confederate victories in the Valley prevented an immediate assault by McClellan against the defenses of Rich-



JACKSON'S CAMPAIGN IN THE VALLEY OF VIRGINIA.

mond. Jackson's secret march afterwards from the Valley to Richmond enabled Lee to drive McClellan from the Chickahominy back to Washington.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Within a period of about forty days Jackson thus completed his first independent campaign. He marched his army of 16,000 men over a course of 676 miles, and attacked and defeated the four bodies of troops led by Milroy, Banks, Frémont and Shields. These bodies formed an aggregate of about 70,000 men. In addition to these successes, Jackson inspired such fear that he would capture the city of Washington that McClellan's forces were three times delayed in the advance against Richmond.

<sup>2</sup> "When he [Jackson] appeared on the Chickahominy River, Banks, Frémont

**355. McClellan's Advance on Richmond. April-May, 1862.**—We must now return to a time near the beginning of Jackson's campaign to consider the advance of McClellan's main army from Fortress Monroe up the Peninsula toward Richmond. This movement began on April 4, 1862. The Federal fleet was expected to move at the same time up the York River, but it was forced to remain in Hampton Roads, to watch the *Virginia*. The Federal army marched twelve miles only to find 11,000 Confederates, under John B. Magruder, intrenched in rifle-pits across the Peninsula. This small force held McClellan's army in check for one month.



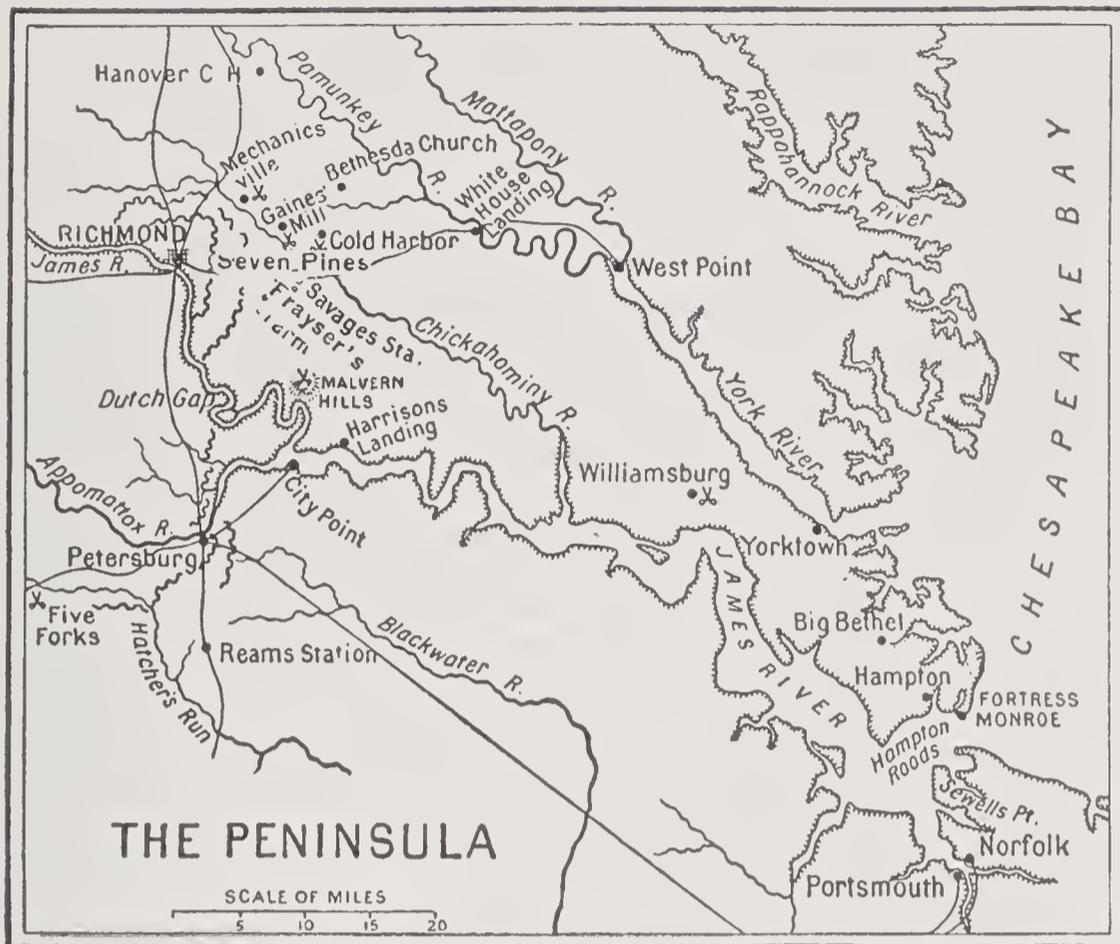
STONEWALL JACKSON.

J. E. Johnston assembled 45,000 Confederates in the Peninsula, but as he did not consider this force sufficient to withstand McClellan's 85,000, he withdrew his troops toward Richmond. At the same time Benjamin Huger's Confederate force was withdrawn from Norfolk. McClellan immediately took up the march behind Johnston, but the latter severely repulsed McClellan's advanced divisions at **Williamsburg**. Johnston arranged his army

in front of Richmond, and McClellan drew up his forces on both banks of the Chickahominy River and awaited the coming of that part of his army which was expected to march, under McDowell, from Fredericksburg to Richmond.

**356. McClellan's Retreat from Richmond. May-July, 1862.**—On May 31st and June 1st Johnston attacked at **Seven Pines** and **Fair Oaks** a large body of McClellan's troops that had crossed to the Richmond side of the Chickahominy. At first the Confederates were successful and drove back their opponents

and McDowell were still guarding the roads to Washington, and McClellan was waiting for McDowell; 175,000 men absolutely paralyzed by 16,000! Only Napoleon's campaign of 1814 affords a parallel to this extraordinary spectacle." Henderson's "Jackson," I, 508.



for a distance of more than one mile, but McClellan sent reënforcements across the swollen Chickahominy, and saved his army from defeat. Johnston was wounded in the battle, and General Robert E. Lee took command of the Confederate forces known as the Army of Northern Virginia.<sup>1</sup>

In June, Stonewall Jackson moved swiftly from the Valley toward Richmond to aid Lee. On June 27th the Confederates defeated McClellan's right wing at Gaines's Mill. McClellan then burned his supplies and began to retreat across the Peninsula to the James River. Lee followed in pursuit and attacked him in four separate engagements.<sup>2</sup> On July 2, 1862, McClellan brought his troops under the shelter of the Federal gunboats at Harrison's Landing on the James, thus ending what is known as his **Seven Days' Retreat**. His campaign against Richmond was a complete failure.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> McClellan's army at this time numbered about 105,000 men. Lee's force was about 57,000 men. He prepared to attack the Federal invaders, by sending J. E. B. Stuart with twelve hundred Confederate horsemen (June 12-15) entirely around McClellan's army, thus discovering the location of the Federal forces.

<sup>2</sup> These battles were fought at Savage Station (June 29), at White Oak Swamp and Frayser's Farm (June 30), and at Malvern Hill (July 1). McClellan's

**357. The Second Battle of Manassas, August, 1862.**—McClellan's army was withdrawn from the James River towards Alexandria. Meanwhile, another Federal army was placed under the command of General John Pope, who tried to advance through Culpeper toward Richmond. Jackson made a swift march through Gordonsville across the Rapidan and defeated Banks, leader of Pope's advance, at **Cedar Run** (August 9).

Lee brought up the rest of his army (Longstreet's corps) from Richmond, and Pope fell back behind the Rappahannock. Jackson marched to Manassas, in the rear of Pope's position.<sup>1</sup> On August 28th he defeated a part of Pope's army on the field of the former battle of Manassas, and the next day his troops held their position against six attacks made by more numerous Federal forces. On the 30th, Lee arrived on the field, with Longstreet's corps, ready to support Jackson's right flank. The whole Confederate army of 50,000 advanced in a magnificent charge and swept Pope's 70,000 from the field. The latter fled across the Bull Run to Centerville. Jackson made another circuit, struck Pope's flank at Chantilly (September 1), and hastened his flight northward.

The entire Federal forces under both Pope and McClellan retreated to Washington and McClellan was placed in charge of the defenses of the city. Within three weeks Lee and Jackson had driven 80,000 men from the James beyond the Potomac. Virginia was free from invasion.

**358. Lee in Maryland. September, 1862.**—On September 4, 1862, Lee's army crossed the Potomac River and occupied Frederick City and the line of the Monocacy River in Maryland. Most of the Confederate soldiers were poorly clad and destitute of shoes. Lee expected to secure additional soldiers

losses during this retreat were some 16,000. The Confederate losses were about 20,000.

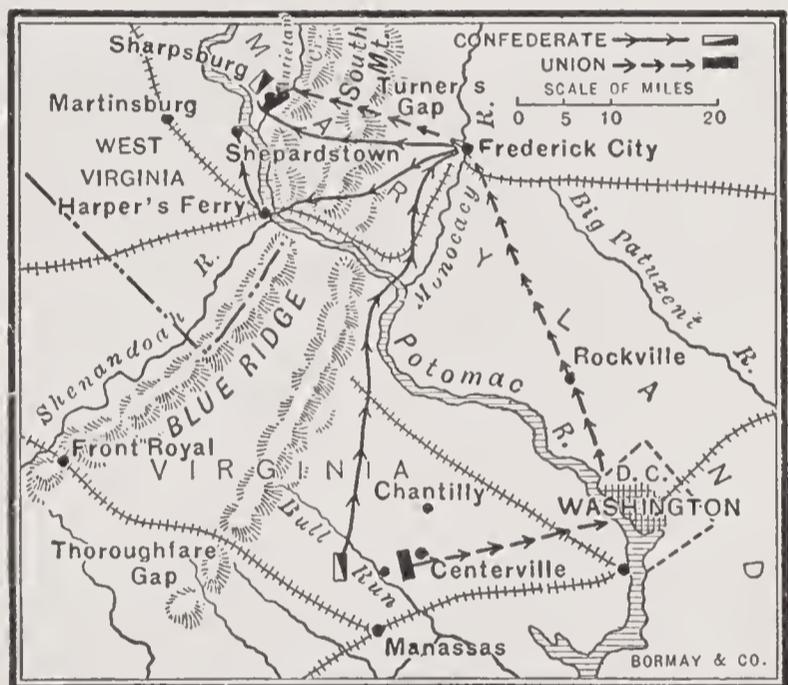
<sup>1</sup> Jackson made this march of fifty miles in thirty-six hours (August 25-26). At Manassas he was between Pope's army and Washington. He destroyed Pope's vast collection of supplies, marched across Bull Run toward Washington, and then recrossed Bull Run to Groveton near the old battlefield.

among the people of Maryland. He wished, also, to turn the defenses of Washington and Baltimore.

McClellan organized a large army in Washington, and led it against Lee. The latter moved into the mountains of western Maryland, and sent Jackson to capture **Harper's Ferry**. Jackson took this stronghold with 12,500 Federal prisoners, seventy-three pieces of artillery and a large amount of supplies.

Meanwhile, two other divisions of Lee's army, commanded by D. H. Hill and Longstreet, held McClellan in check an entire day in Turner's Gap in the **South Mountain** (September 14). Jack-

son moved rapidly from Harper's Ferry to unite his forces with the troops of Hill and Longstreet. With an army of less than 40,000 men, Lee prepared to defend the ridge at **Sharpsburg** against McClellan's larger force of 87,000. During most of the day, on September 17, McClellan sent column after column in bold and desperate attacks against the Confederate line. With



THE FIRST INVASION OF THE NORTH.

unfailing courage and skill Lee's troops met these assaults and drove them back with heavy loss to the Federal army. At every point where he attacked the Confederates McClellan was defeated. Sharpsburg was the bloodiest single day's battle of the entire war. During the whole day, on September 18th, Lee maintained his position on the field. Heavy reënforcements, however, came to McClellan's aid, and the next day Lee quietly crossed the Potomac and went into camp near Martinsburg.

**359. Fighting Around Fredericksburg.**—Lee's army encamped in the midst of the cornfields of the Valley of Virginia, and awaited the advance of the Federal army. McClellan delayed the third invasion of Virginia and spent much time in

recruiting his forces on the northern bank of the Potomac near Sharpsburg. In October, J. E. B. Stuart<sup>1</sup> led 1,800 horsemen northward across the Potomac to Chambersburg, and thence entirely around the Federal army. McClellan then advanced southward into Virginia along the eastern base of the Blue Ridge toward Culpeper, to deliver a return blow in exchange for Lee's campaign in Maryland. Lee kept a close watch upon McClellan's movements. Richmond was the objective point of the Federal army.

In November, 1862, McClellan was removed from command and General Burnside was placed in charge of the Army of the



THE BATTLEFIELD OF SHARPSBURG.

Potomac. Burnside at once changed the course of this army and marched eastward toward Fredericksburg, only to find that Lee had hastened from the Valley and held the heights on the southern bank of the Rappahannock, at Fredericksburg, between the Federal army and Richmond.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> James E. B. Stuart (1833-1864) resigned his commission in the United States army in 1861 to serve with the forces of his native state, Virginia. He became chief commander of cavalry in the Army of Northern Virginia and was intimately associated with Jackson and Lee. He was killed near Richmond, May 12, 1864.

<sup>2</sup> The Army of Northern Virginia, under the command of Robert E. Lee, numbered at this time about 72,000 men. The first corps, commanded by James Longstreet, of Georgia, consisted of the divisions of McLaws, R. H.

On December 13th, Burnside sent nearly 100,000 men across the river at Fredericksburg to attack Lee's army. The larger part of Burnside's forces crossed two miles below the town, and attempted to open a way around Lee's right flank, but they were driven back with heavy loss by Stonewall Jackson. In front of Fredericksburg Burnside's columns advanced in repeated and desperate assaults against Lee's position on Marye's Heights, but they were driven back by the Confeder-



GENERAL McCLELLAN.

GENERAL BURNSIDE.

ates with fearful loss of life among the Federal troops.<sup>1</sup> It was a severe defeat for Burnside, and the news sent a thrill of horror throughout the North.

**360. Results in the East in 1862.**—In 1862 three campaigns on a large scale were organized by the Federal government for the purpose of capturing Richmond. All of them ended in failure. The first campaign was conducted by McClellan. He led the Army of the Potomac to Fortress Monroe, but his advance was delayed by the work of the *Virginia* in Hampton Roads, and by the campaign of Stonewall Jackson in the Valley of Virginia. Jackson had a force of only 16,000, but with these he met and

Anderson, Pickett, Hood and Ransom. The second corps, under Stonewall Jackson, was composed of the divisions of D. H. Hill, A. P. Hill, Jubal A. Early and W. B. Taliaferro.

The Army of the Potomac, commanded by Ambrose E. Burnside, numbered about 116,000 men, and was arranged in three Grand Divisions under E. V. Sumner, Joseph Hooker and W. B. Franklin.

<sup>1</sup> Seven thousand riflemen from the Carolinas and Georgia, under Kershaw, Ransom and T. R. R. Cobb, aided by the artillery under the command of Walton and Alexander, did most of the fighting in defense of Marye's Heights. Burnside's loss in the entire battle was nearly 13,000; Lee's loss was a little more than 5,000.

H<sup>d</sup> - 915 13 Dec 62

Gen

Will you direct your Ordnance officer Major Bier to send to Guinness' depot immediate -ly all the empty ordnance weapons he can to be replenished with ammunition, for which they must remain <sup>there</sup> till loaded. To obtain as many weapons as possible, let him empty all he can, in replenishing the ammunition of men & batteries

Very resp<sup>d</sup> R Lee

P.S. I need not assume you to have the ammunition of your men & batteries replenished to night & every thing ready by daylight tomorrow. I am truly grateful to the God of all victory for having blessed us thus far in our terrible struggle. I pray he may continue it

R Lee

Gen Jackson

GENERAL LEE'S ORDERS TO JACKSON ON THE EVE OF THE BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG.

defeated four Federal forces which numbered altogether 70,000 men.

J. E. Johnston, the Confederate commander, attacked McClellan at Seven Pines near Richmond. Johnston was wounded, and R. E. Lee became the leader of the Army of Northern Virginia. Jackson marched from the Valley to Richmond, and aided Lee in the Seven Days' struggle with McClellan, which resulted in the retreat of the latter from Richmond.

The second campaign against Richmond was led by John Pope, who was driven back at Cedar Run by Jackson, and completely defeated at the second battle of Manassas by Lee's army. Lee then advanced into Maryland, Jackson captured Harper's Ferry, and Lee checked McClellan on the bloody field of Sharpsburg. The Federal army was then placed under the command of Burnside, who organized the third campaign of the year against Richmond. Burnside was disastrously defeated at Fredericksburg, and the Federal forces were assigned to Joseph Hooker as their chief commander.

### Questions.

1. Tell the plan of the Federals in 1862.
2. Tell of the capture of New Orleans. What other places were taken along the Mississippi? Tell of the work of Sibley and Canby.
3. Tell of Garfield, Zollicoffer and George B. Crittenden. Tell of the surrender of Fort Henry and Fort Donelson. What were the results?
4. What was the importance of the Battle of Pea Ridge? What did General Pope do? Explain the movements of Grant, Buell and A. S. Johnston. What were the results of the Battle of Shiloh?
5. Who succeeded Beauregard? Tell of the work of Forrest and Morgan. Tell of the battle of Perryville.
6. What did Price and Van Dorn do in Mississippi?
7. Describe the battle of Murfreesboro.
8. What were the results of the war in the West in 1862?
9. What was the policy of the Confederate government with reference to the war? What was the policy of the Federals in the East?
10. Tell how the *Virginia* was constructed. What was the *Monitor*? Tell of the fight between the two.
11. Tell the number of battles that Jackson won in the Valley. What Federal generals did he defeat? What can be said of this campaign?
12. When and how did General Magruder check McClellan's advance against Richmond? What did Joseph E. Johnston do with the Confederate troops in the Peninsula?
13. Tell of the battle of Seven Pines. Who took command of the army at this time? Tell of McClellan's seven days' retreat. What were the results of the battles around Richmond?
14. Who took command of the new Federal army? Tell about the battle of Cedar Run. Describe the second battle of Manassas.

15. Why did Lee cross into Maryland? Tell of the capture of Harper's Ferry. Describe the battle of Sharpsburg.

16. Tell of the movements of the Confederates in Virginia after the battle of Sharpsburg. Who became commander of the Federal forces in Virginia in November, 1862? Describe the battle of Fredericksburg.

17. What were the results of the war in the East in 1862?

### Geography Study.

Locate New Orleans, Natchez, Vicksburg, Fort Henry, Fort Donelson, New Madrid, Island Number 10, Shiloh, Corinth, Murfreesboro, Louisville, Perryville, Iuka, Chattanooga, Hampton Roads, Fortress Monroe, York River, Winchester, Fredericksburg, Staunton, Seven Pines, Williamsburg, the Chickahominy River, Culpeper, Manassas, Harper's Ferry and Sharpsburg.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

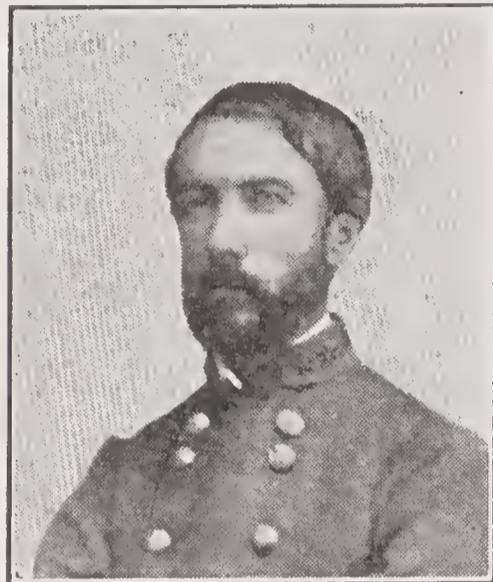
### EVENTS OF THE WAR IN 1863.

**361. The Emancipation Proclamation.**—President Lincoln entered office with the pledge that he would not interfere with slavery in the states; but in March, 1862, he asked Congress to set free the slaves in the states that had not seceded, by paying their value to their owners. Congress passed a resolution to that effect, but the slaveholding states still in the Union—namely, Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri—refused to emancipate their slaves. The Abolitionists brought great pressure to bear upon the President, and on January 1, 1863, he issued the Emancipation Proclamation, declaring that all slaves in the seceded states were free. This proclamation was simply a military decree, based upon the war power which the President claimed for himself. It did not, in fact, set free a single slave. The proclamation meant that the war against the South was to be henceforth distinctly an anti-slavery war.

**362. West Virginia.**—On April 20, 1863, President Lincoln issued a proclamation to the effect that forty-eight counties in

the northwestern part of Virginia had been admitted to the Union as the separate state of West Virginia.<sup>1</sup>

**363. Movements and Plans in the Beginning of 1863.**—The Confederate government formed plans, early in 1863, to regain possession of the coasts of Virginia and North Carolina. General D. H. Hill organized the North Carolina militia and attacked some Federal forts. This caused the withdrawal of Federal troops from Virginia into North Carolina, and General James Longstreet then laid siege to the town of Suffolk, near Norfolk in Virginia, for the purpose of driving the Federal forces out of the coast region of Virginia; but in this effort he did not succeed.



GENERAL D. H. HILL.

General Joseph Hooker held the Army of the Potomac in its camp near Fredericksburg while preparing for an attack against Lee's army.

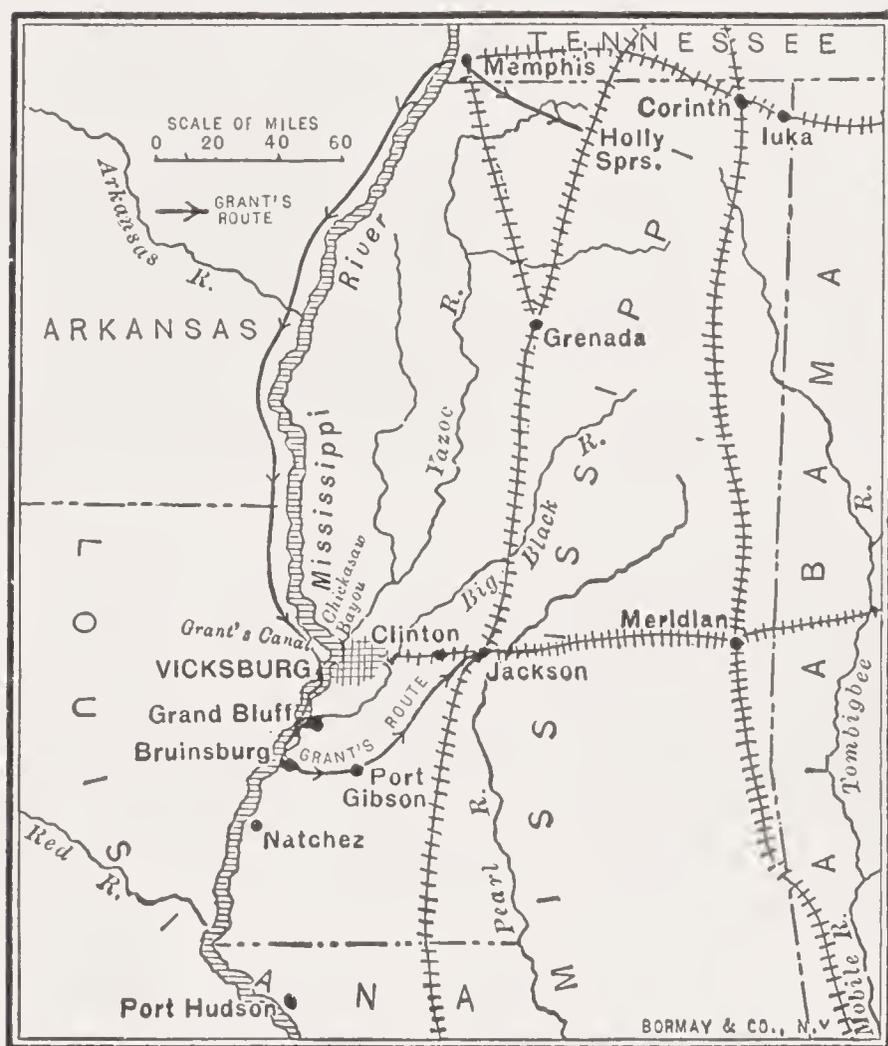
In the West the Federal forces were making plans to open the Mississippi River. U. S. Grant and Admiral David D. Porter were advancing down that river against Vicksburg, and Banks and Farragut were moving up from New Orleans to attack Port Hudson, in Mississippi. General J. E. Johnston was in command of all the Confederate forces between the Alleghanies and

<sup>1</sup> Many of the people of this section of Virginia did not favor the ordinance of secession adopted by the Virginia Convention, April 17, 1861. On June 11, 1861, some people from the northwestern corner of the state met at Wheeling, claiming to represent all of the people of Virginia. They established a form of government which they called the Commonwealth of Virginia, with Francis H. Pierpont as governor. Under the claim that they were the old State of Virginia, the members of Pierpont's new legislature granted permission to themselves to make a new state. The Congress at Washington sanctioned this revolutionary movement, and declared that the new state should embrace as many as forty-eight Virginia counties, although ten of these counties did not cast a vote on the new State and Constitution. In the same way the counties of Berkeley and Jefferson were afterwards transferred, against the will of their people, to the State of West Virginia. By such procedure, fifty of the counties of Virginia were made into a new state.

the Mississippi River, consisting of Bragg's army in Tennessee and Pemberton's army in Mississippi.

### I. The War in the West in 1863.

**364. Grant Captures Vicksburg. July, 1863.**—In November, 1862, Grant began his first movement against Vicksburg. Van Dorn boldly advanced to Holly Springs, Grant's base



THE VICKSBURG CAMPAIGN.

of supplies, and destroyed all of the Federal stores, thus forcing Grant to retreat. Sherman<sup>1</sup> was sent by Grant from Memphis, with 32,000 men, to capture Vicksburg, but he was severely defeated at Chickasaw Bayou, five miles from Vicksburg, by a Confederate force under General Stephen D. Lee. Grant then attempted to cut a canal across the peninsula formed by the bend of the river in front of the city. He expected

in this manner to draw the stream into a new channel through which his transports might pass beyond the range of the heavy Confederate guns at Vicksburg. This scheme also proved a failure.

<sup>1</sup> William Tecumseh Sherman (1820-1891) came from Ohio, was a West Point graduate and saw service in the Seminole War and in California during the Mexican War. In 1861 he was superintendent of the Louisiana State Military Academy, but he at once entered the Federal army. He took part in several campaigns, and was distinguished chiefly for his march of devastation through Georgia in 1864. He was made commander-in-chief of the United States army in 1869.

Grant did not waver in his purpose to take the city. In April, 1863, he marched down the western bank of the Mississippi, while his fleet ran down-stream past the batteries at Vicksburg. His army was ferried across the river to the eastern bank, below Vicksburg. Grant seized Port Gibson and advanced up the east side of the Big Black River until he captured the railroad at Clinton. He then drew his lines around Vicksburg, and shut Pemberton's army in the city. Pemberton's men were cut off from food, but they continued to offer a gallant defense for seven weeks. J. E. Johnston advanced with an army to relieve Pemberton, but on July 4, 1863, Vicksburg was surrendered, with 28,000 men as prisoners of war, to Grant's army of 75,000. On July 9th, Port Hudson was also surrendered by the Confederates. The control of the Mississippi River was thus lost completely to the Confederacy.



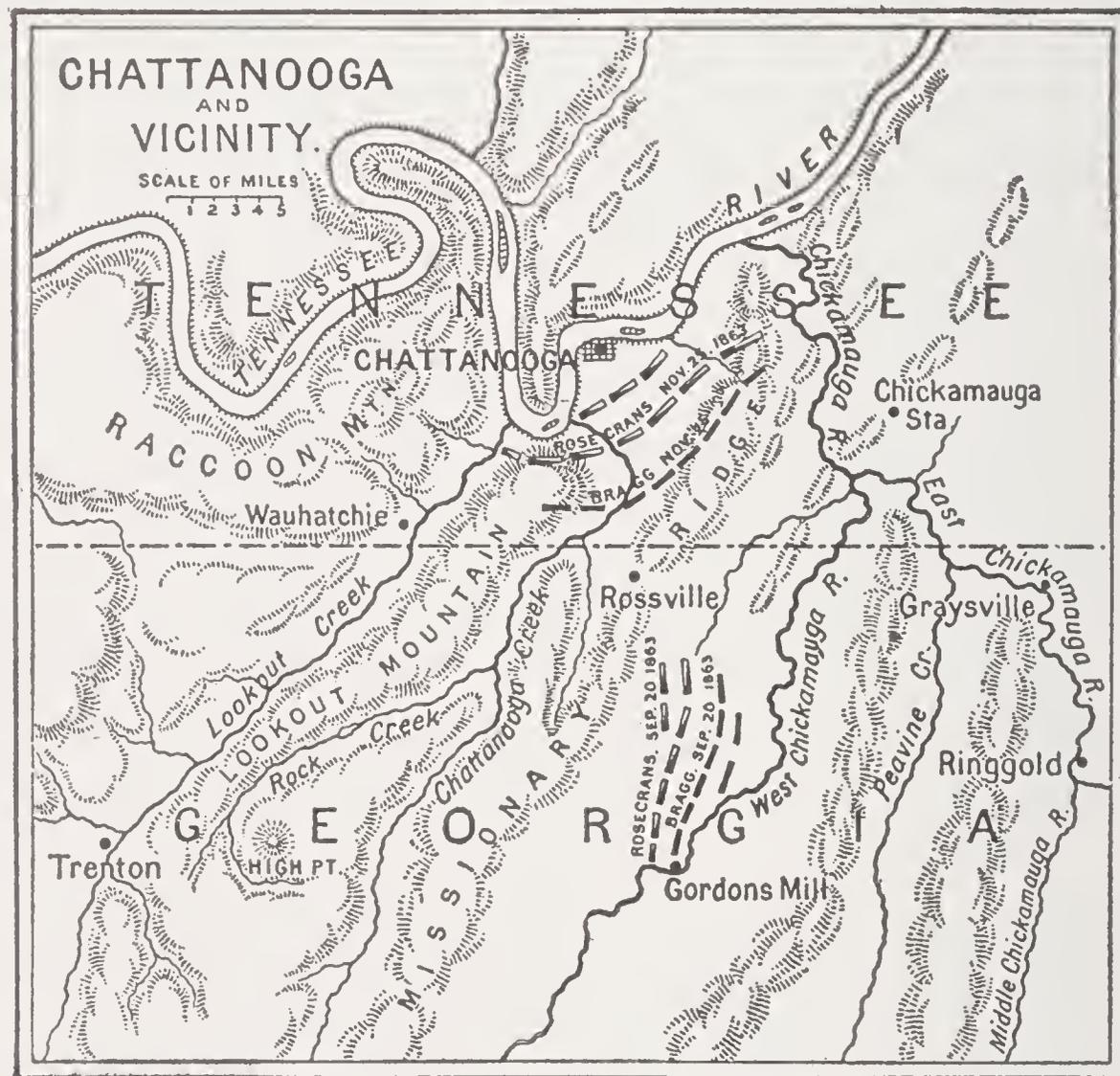
GENERAL G. H. THOMAS.

**365. The Campaign in Tennessee.**—From January until July, 1863, Bragg and Rosecrans continued to face each other near Murfreesboro. Rosecrans had an army of 70,000 men; Bragg had 47,000.<sup>1</sup> Bragg's cavalry, under Forrest and Wheeler, made a bold dash as far as Fort Donelson; Forrest and Van Dorn also captured some 1,300 Federal soldiers near Franklin. With about 1,000 troopers, Forrest captured Colonel Straight and 2,000 Federal cavalrymen near Rome, Georgia, where they had gone

<sup>1</sup> In July, 1863, Bragg was aided by an expedition under the command of John H. Morgan, of Kentucky, who led some four thousand horsemen through Indiana and Ohio, burning mills and factories and destroying bridges and railroads. Great consternation reigned in these two states until some of the bold Confederates were overtaken and captured at Parkersburg, on the Ohio River. Morgan was thrust into prison at Columbus, but four months afterwards he escaped and made his way home in safety.

on a raid with the intention of cutting the railroads south of Chattanooga.<sup>1</sup>

Finally, Rosecrans advanced and Bragg withdrew through Chattanooga to Chickamauga Creek, twelve miles from Chattanooga. Bragg was reinforced by Longstreet's corps from Lee's army in Virginia, and, on September 19, he crossed Chickamauga Creek and drove back the left wing of Rosecrans's army. The next day the Confederate attack was renewed. Longstreet defeated Rosecrans's right wing and drove it from the field in utter rout. The Federal left wing, commanded by George H. Thomas, held its ground until the close of the day



with great courage and tenacity, and thus saved the Federal army from destruction. During the night Thomas withdrew

<sup>1</sup> This daring work of Forrest was the most remarkable cavalry exploit that took place during the entire war. During this famous pursuit, Emma Sanson, sixteen years of age, accompanied Forrest under the fire of the enemy's guns, to point out a ford which enabled Forrest to cross a difficult stream and capture the Federals.

his forces from the field. Chickamauga was one of the greatest Confederate victories of the war, but it was won at heavy cost. Bragg lost 18,000 men; Rosecrans lost 16,000 men and thirty-six guns. Rosecrans gathered the fragments of his army into Chattanooga; Bragg drew his lines almost entirely around the city and prepared to besiege it. Longstreet at the same time surrounded Burnside's army in Knoxville, but was afterwards forced to give up the siege and return to Virginia.

In October, 1863, Grant was placed in command of all the Federal forces in the West. He assumed control of the army in Chattanooga, which was increased to 60,000 men. Bragg's main force held the southern bank of the Tennessee River, with the right end of his line upon Missionary Ridge and the left on Lookout Mountain. On November 24th, Grant advanced across the river against Bragg, and his forces under Hooker captured **Lookout Mountain** in the famous Battle above the Clouds. On the 25th, a Federal column under Thomas assailed the Confederate position on Missionary Ridge, and Bragg retreated in confusion from Chattanooga.

**366. The War on the Gulf.**—The Federal forces made several attempts to invade Texas, but failed. In the summer of 1862 they seized Galveston, but General John B. Magruder drove them out of this city the following winter. In September, 1863, General Banks sent a force of infantry upon some ships to effect a landing at Sabine Pass; but a small body of Confederate soldiers, only forty-two in number, under Dowling and Smith, severely repulsed Banks's detachment, and thus prevented the invasion of Texas from that direction. Banks then attempted to invade Texas by marching from the Mississippi by way of Bayou Teche and Vermillionville, but again he failed. He succeeded finally in November, 1863, in gaining an entrance into



GENERAL MAGRUDER.

Texas by seizing the towns at the mouths of the Nueces and the Rio Grande.

**367. Results of the War in the West in 1863.**—The capture of Vicksburg and Port Hudson, in 1863, brought the Mississippi River under the control of the Federal government. The Confederacy was thus separated into two parts.

In Tennessee, Rosecrans forced Bragg from Chattanooga, but Bragg turned against Rosecrans at Chickamauga and defeated him. Rosecrans was then shut up in Chattanooga, until Grant went to his assistance. Bragg was defeated at Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, and gave up his command, which was assigned to Joseph E. Johnston.

## II. The War in the East in 1863.

**368. The War in Virginia.**—From the middle of December, 1862, until the end of the following April, the principal Confederate and Federal forces in Virginia remained in camp at Fredericksburg. Large numbers of the Confederate soldiers were clad in rags, but they protected themselves against the snow and the rain by erecting log huts and booths made of the branches of trees. The daily ration of the men was only a little corn and a quarter of a pound of bacon.<sup>1</sup> The Army of the Potomac, under command of "Fighting Joe" Hooker, spent this winter in its comfortable tents, at Falmouth, opposite Fredericksburg.

In April,<sup>2</sup> Hooker led some 80,000 men in a flank movement across the upper Rappahannock and established himself at **Chancellorsville**, in the midst of a region so thickly covered with undergrowth that it was called the Wilderness. Sedgwick, at the same time, made a show of leading the rest of Hooker's army across the river at Fredericksburg. Although a part of

<sup>1</sup> During these months, a religious revival stirred the entire Confederate camp and many were led to accept the Christian faith.

<sup>2</sup> In April, 1863, Hooker's fighting force was about 130,000, while Lee's army numbered only some 53,000.

Lee's army was absent with Longstreet, the Confederate general prepared to deliver a double battle. Some 8,500 men were left under Jubal A. Early to check Sedgwick, while the main body of Confederates marched against Hooker at Chancellorsville. On May 2d, Stonewall Jackson led 26,000 Confederates across the front and around the right flank of the Federal army. His sudden attack through the dense forest took Hooker by surprise. The Federal right wing was completely crushed, and the whole Federal army was thrown into confusion. In the hour of his greatest triumph, however, Stonewall Jackson was fatally wounded by the fire of some of his own men, who mistook him and his staff, in the darkness of night, for a company of Federal cavalry. On May 10, 1863, this great soldier, whom Lee called his "right arm," died. The Confederacy had no other leader who could fill the place that Jackson's death left vacant.

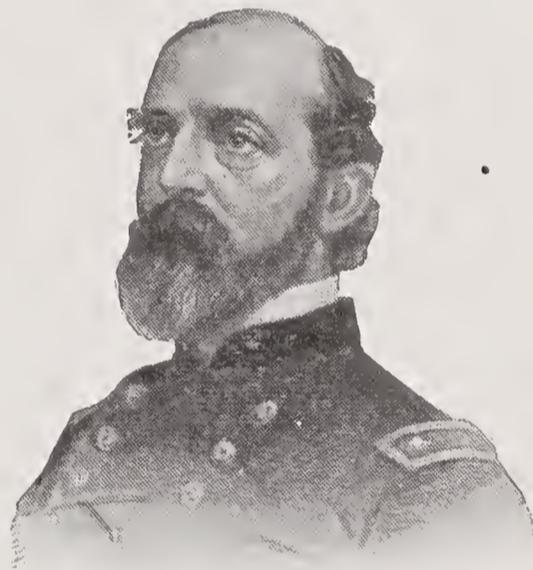
On May 3d, Lee attacked Hooker and drove him out of the dense thickets at Chancellorsville.<sup>1</sup> Lee then turned against Sedgwick and forced him back across the Rappahannock to join Hooker's defeated regiments at Falmouth. The brilliant victories of Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville were followed up by a Confederate invasion of the North.

The time seemed ripe for such an advance. Grant had just failed in his first efforts to capture Vicksburg, and Hooker's army was growing weaker by

<sup>1</sup> Jackson's corps was led in this attack by J. E. B. Stuart, who sang as he rode forward into the battle, "Old Joe Hooker, won't you come out of the wilderness?"



GENERAL HOOKER.

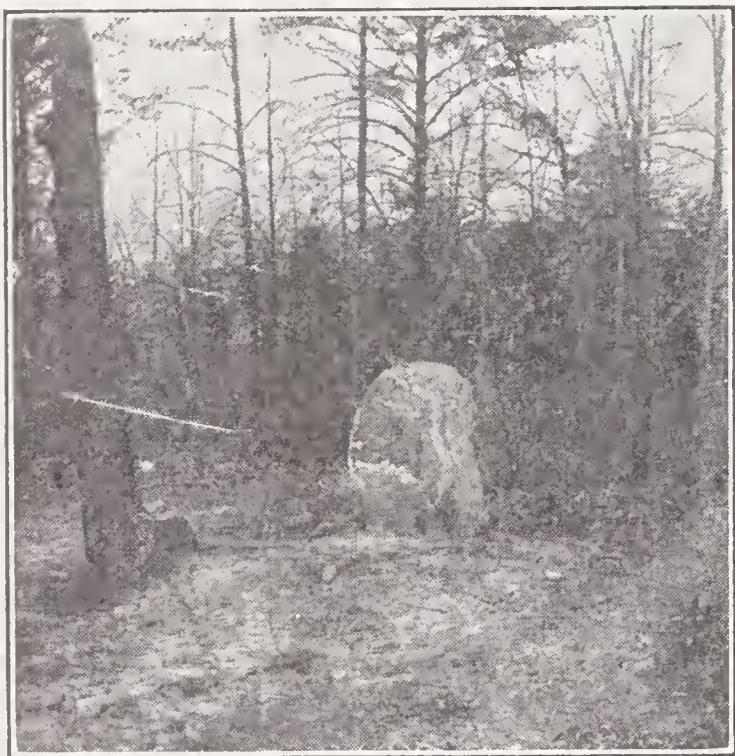


GENERAL MEADE.

reason of the rapid desertion of his men. A party in the North which denounced the war as "wicked slaughter" was demanding that peace be restored. At the beginning of the war Lincoln's calls for volunteers were promptly answered. Now it became necessary to use different methods, and in order to fill up the ranks of the army, the Federal government ordered a draft. Resistance was openly made to this conscription. In the summer of 1863 a riot broke out in New York in opposition to the drafts, and during a period of four days the mob burned buildings, hanged negroes and fought the Federal troops until a thousand of the rioters were slain.

**369. Lee's Northern Campaign.**—Before Lee set out upon his march northward across the Potomac, the Army of Northern Virginia was rearranged in three corps under Longstreet, Ewell, and A. P. Hill.<sup>1</sup> Ewell's corps led the advance into the Valley of Virginia and, at Winchester, defeated Milroy's army of 10,000

Federal soldiers, capturing 4,000 men and twenty-nine cannon.



THE STONE MARKING THE SPOT  
WHERE JACKSON FELL.

Hooker now began to move northward from Fredericksburg toward the Potomac in order to defend the city of Washington against the Confederates. Lee led his entire army of 64,000 into Pennsylvania. Great fear came upon the people of the North, and multitudes fled from Washington and Philadelphia toward

New York and Pittsburg. Ewell advanced to the Susquehanna River and threatened Harrisburg. Longstreet and Hill encamped at Chambersburg.

Lincoln now called for 120,000 additional men, and the Army

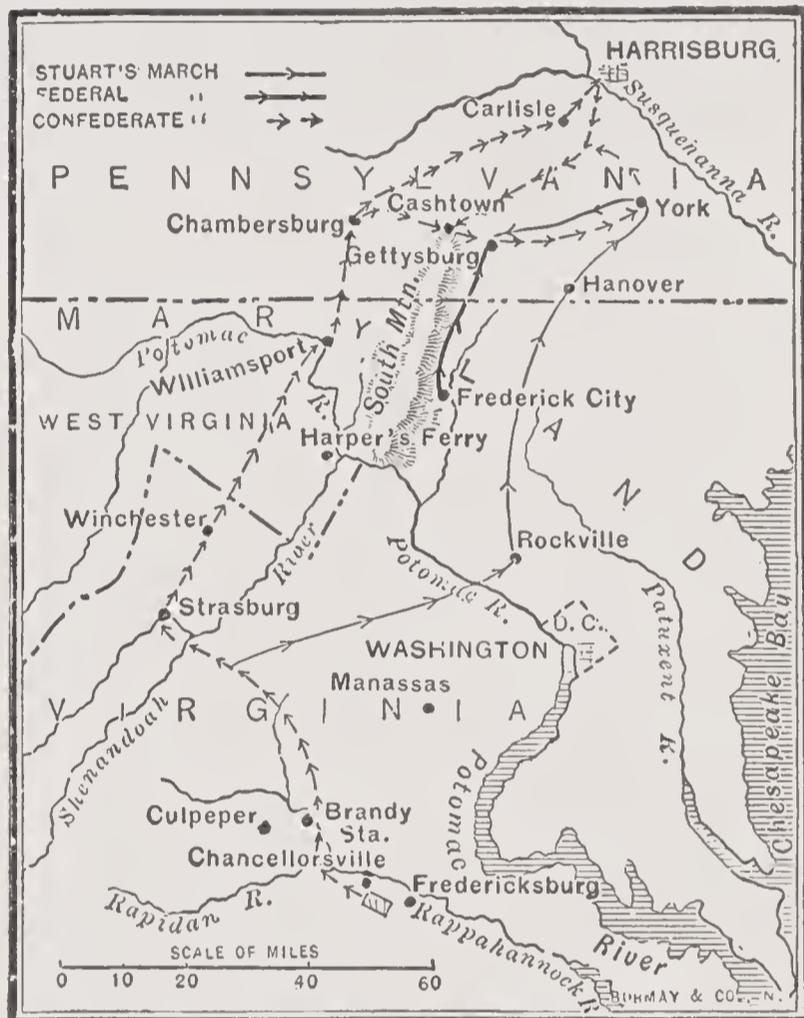
<sup>1</sup> Lee advanced Longstreet and Ewell, with Stuart's cavalry, to Culpeper. A. P. Hill was left at Fredericksburg to watch Hooker. The Federal cavalry crossed the Rappahannock and attacked Stuart at Brandy Station, only to be driven back with loss. This battle was the most extensive cavalry engagement of the entire war.

of the Potomac moved northward into Maryland, where General George G. Meade was made commander in place of Hooker. Meade marched from Frederick City, Maryland, into Pennsylvania with 95,000 men to stand between the Confederates and the city of Washington. Lee was now threatening Harrisburg, Baltimore and Philadelphia. When he learned of Meade's approach, Lee ordered the various divisions of his army to concentrate at Cashtown, in Pennsylvania, at the eastern base of South Mountain.

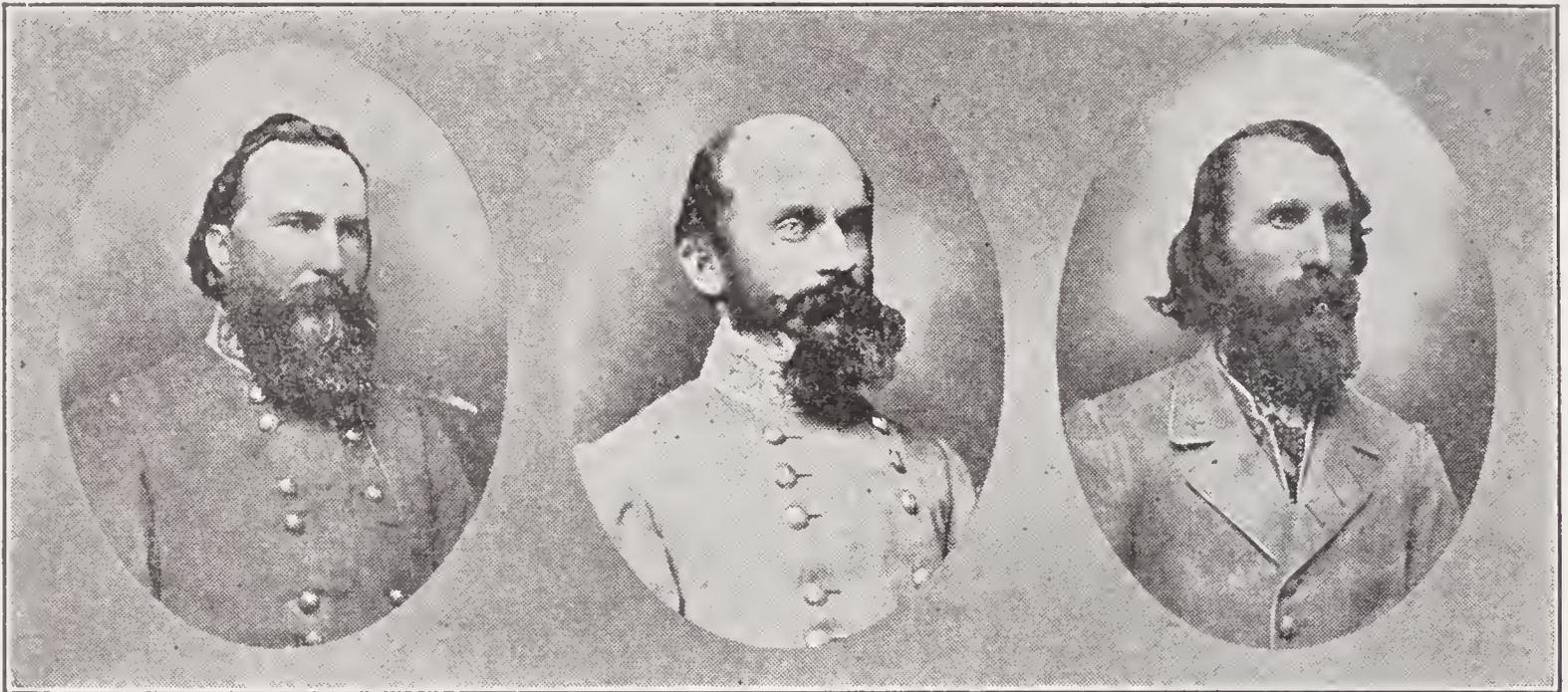
**370. The Battle of Gettysburg, July 1, 2, 3, 1863.**—On July 1st, A. P. Hill led his corps through Cashtown to Gettysburg where he met two corps of Meade's army. There the great battle began. Ewell came from the direction of Harrisburg to Hill's assistance, and these two Confederate leaders completely defeated

Meade's advanced troops and drove them back in confusion through the town of Gettysburg. Meade's two advanced corps, consisting of some 20,000 men, were routed with great slaughter by about 20,000 Confederates under Hill and Ewell. The Confederates captured 5,000 Federal prisoners.

Southward from the town of Gettysburg extends a slight elevation known as Cemetery Ridge, which terminates in two rocky peaks called Little Round Top and Round Top. At its northern end and in touch with the town this ridge bends itself in the shape of a fishhook. Just where the curve of the hook begins stands Cemetery Hill, and at the point of the hook rises



THE SECOND INVASION OF THE NORTH.



JAMES LONGSTREET.

R. S. EWELL.

A. P. HILL.

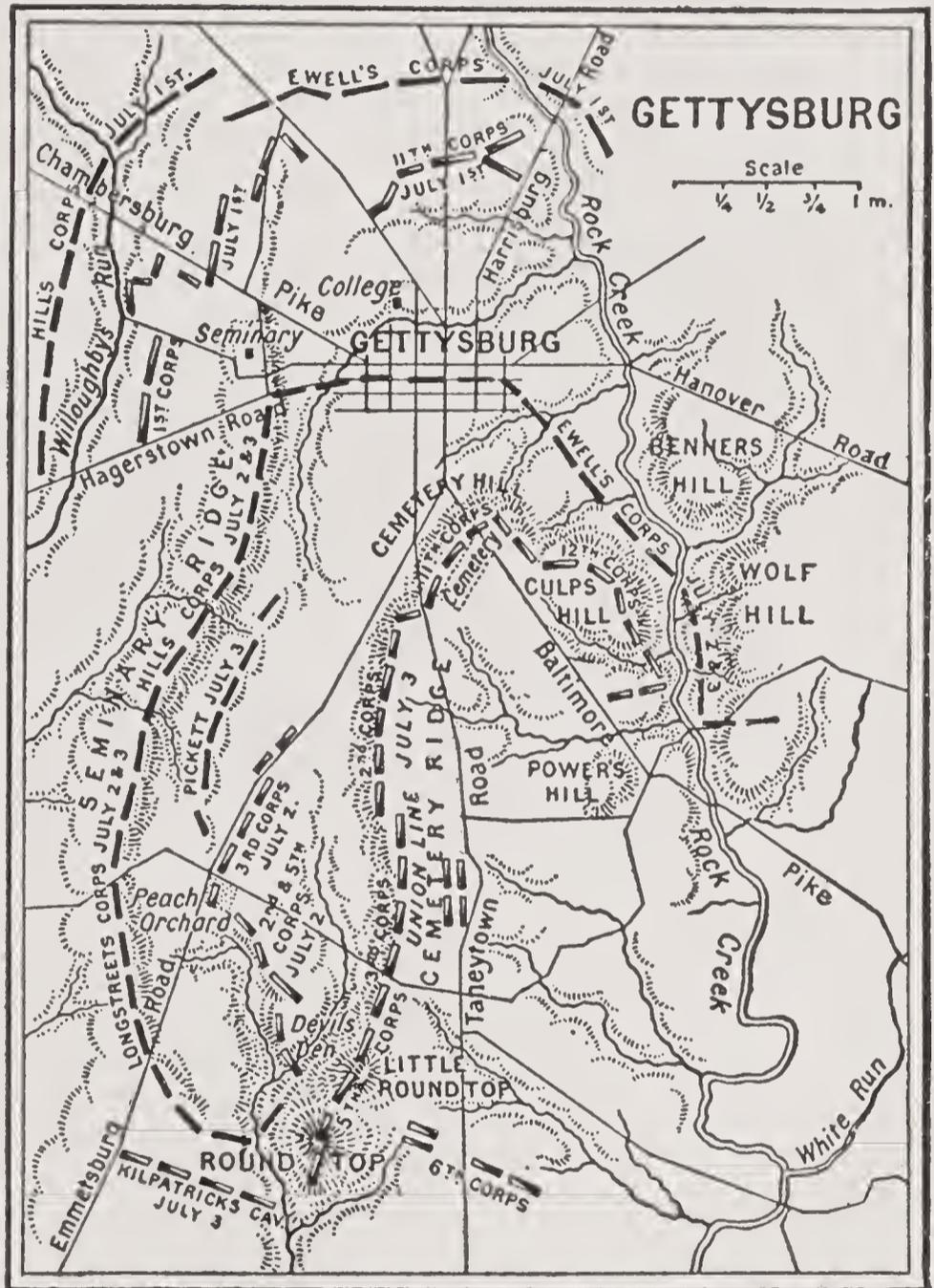
Culp's Hill. Parallel with Cemetery Ridge and about a mile west of Gettysburg lies Seminary Ridge.

At the close of the first day's battle, the fragments of the two defeated Federal corps, about 6,000 men, took refuge behind the stone wall on Cemetery Hill. The victorious Confederates paused in their pursuit to await the arrival, from Chambersburg, of Longstreet's corps. Meade hastened the march of his remaining corps, and by noonday, on July 2, the chief part of the Federal army was arranged in a strong defensive position on Cemetery Ridge. In the afternoon of July 2, Longstreet and Hill attacked Meade's line on Cemetery Ridge, while Ewell attacked Meade's forces on Culp's Hill. Longstreet's onslaught was terrific, and he drove back the Federal troops with great slaughter. Ewell captured and held the Federal fortifications at the edge of Culp's Hill. Meade was now barely able to maintain his position on the field. He had lost 20,000 men in two days' fighting. The advisability of retreating at once was discussed by Meade and his subordinates, but they decided to remain one day longer to await Lee's further attack.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Stuart's cavalry did not enter Pennsylvania with Lee's three corps of infantry. Stuart crossed the Potomac between the Federal army and Washington, and marched northward *via* Rockville, Hanover and York, reaching Gettysburg on the afternoon of July 2. On July 3, Stuart attempted to seize the roadway in the rear of Meade's army, but was held in check by Gregg's cavalry.

On the morning of July 3, Lee proposed to assail the Federal center on Cemetery Ridge. There was delay in making this attack. Meanwhile, Ewell was driven out of the breastworks which he had captured on Culp's Hill. At one o'clock in the afternoon, 138 Confederate cannon opened fire; they were answered by 80 Federal guns. At the close of the terrific

cannonade, Pickett's division of Longstreet's corps and Pettigrew's (Heth's) division and the brigades of Lane, Scales and Wilcox of Hill's corps—some 13,000 men in all—advanced against Meade's center. With steady courage these Confederate troops advanced under the fire of the rifles and cannon of the Federal army, rushed over the stone wall on Cemetery Ridge, broke Meade's line, and planted their bat-



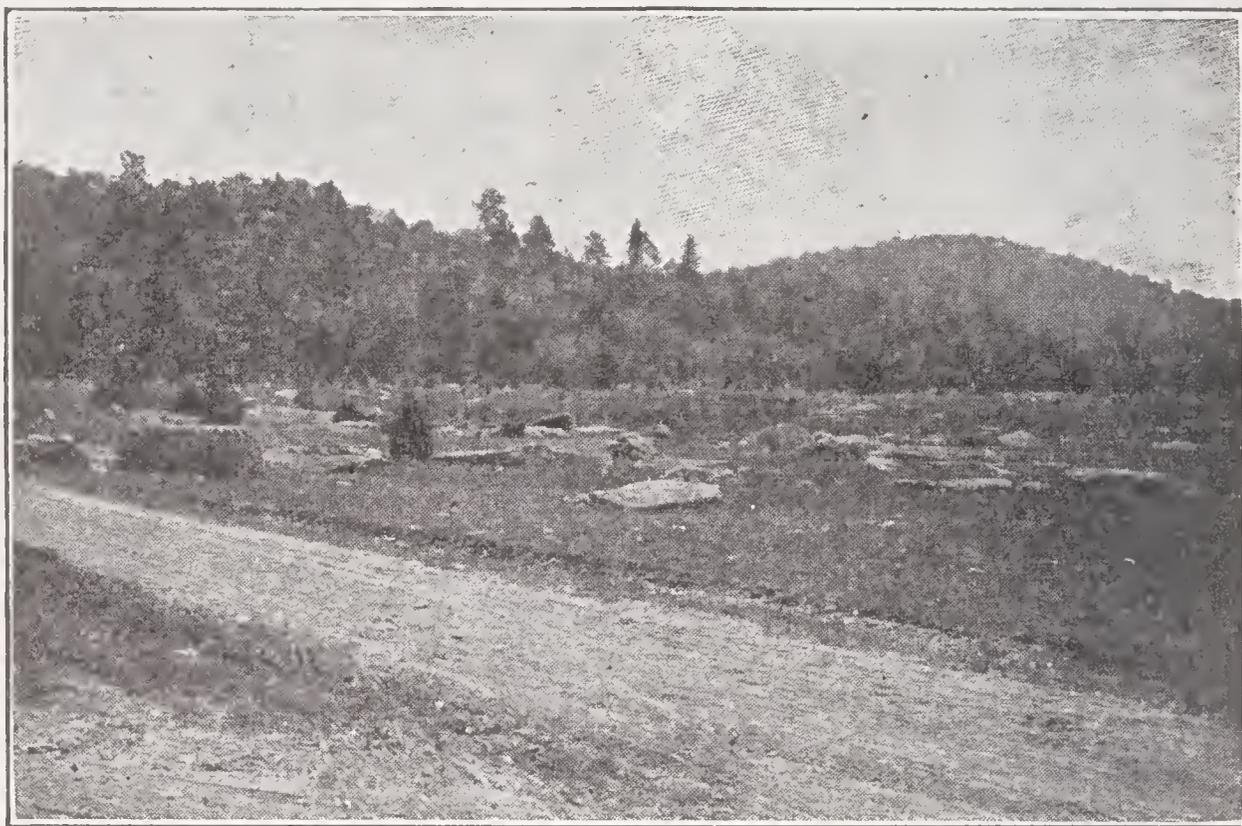
tle-flags in the center of the Federal stronghold. No additional troops, however, were sent to their aid. Meade's divisions assailed them on both flanks and the gallant Confederates were driven back with heavy loss.<sup>1</sup>

During the entire day of July 4, Lee's army stood defiant, with guns in position on Seminary Ridge. Meade's army was so shat-

<sup>1</sup> The Federal loss in the whole battle was 23,003; the Confederate loss was 20,451.

tered by the three days' fighting that he did not attack the Confederates. Lee's army withdrew to the Potomac. Meade hung upon its rear, but did not venture to attack, and the Confederate forces crossed without difficulty into Virginia.

In September, 1863, Lee sent a part of his forces into Tennessee, and with only 46,000 men, he awaited Meade's army at Mine Run, on the Rapidan River, in Virginia. Meade was not willing to



ROUND TOP AND LITTLE ROUND TOP—THE BATTLEFIELD OF GETTYSBURG.

attack the Confederates and therefore withdrew his army northward across the Rapidan and went into winter quarters in Culpeper. Lee's army encamped for the winter at Orange Courthouse.

The loss of the field of Gettysburg on July 3, and the surrender of Vicksburg on July 4, 1863, marked a turning-point in the war. From this time onward the Confederates could only stand on the defensive against greater odds than ever before.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The failures at Vicksburg and Gettysburg kept England and France from changing their attitude of neutrality and recognizing the independence of the Southern Confederacy. Before this, in 1862, Gladstone, then a member of the British Cabinet, said, "Jefferson Davis and other leaders of the South have made an army; they are making, it appears, a navy; and they have made, which is more important than either, a nation. We may anticipate

**371. Operations on the Coast in 1863.**—From the beginning of the war a strong Federal fleet blockaded the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina. June 16, 1862, a Federal command attacked the Confederate works on James Island, but it suffered severe repulse by T. G. Lamar's artillery. In spite of the blockade, swift Confederate vessels continued to enter and to depart from Charleston Harbor under cover of the darkness of the night.

In April, 1863, nine Federal ironclads bombarded Fort Sumter. Alfred Rhett successfully defended the fort and five of the Federal vessels were disabled by the Confederate artillery. In July, a Federal land and naval force renewed the attempt to capture Charleston.<sup>1</sup> Having failed in this, the Federal fleet began to throw shells into the city of Charleston itself.



GENERAL PICKETT.

This bombardment was continued until the State of South Carolina (February, 1865) fell under the power of the Federal armies.

**372. Results of the War in the East in 1863.**—The war in the East in 1863 began with Hooker's advance across the Rappahannock to Chancellorsville. Jackson made his swift movement around Hooker's flank, and defeated the Federal right wing. Lee then drove Hooker beyond the Rappahannock. The death of Jackson, however, was a loss from which the Confederacy could not recover.

Lee's invasion of Pennsylvania was at first very successful. Meade, however, checked his assaults in the third day's battle

with certainty the success of the Southern States, so far as their separation from the North is concerned."

<sup>1</sup>Battery Wagner, a Confederate fortification on Morris Island, was the principal object of attack. About 1,000 Confederates under William B. Taliaferro successfully defended this post against the fire of seventy heavy naval guns and the assault of a strong land force. The Federal loss in this disastrous attack was about 2,000 men. After enduring a siege of fifty-eight days, the Confederates withdrew from Battery Wagner.



GENERAL PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG.

at Gettysburg, and the Confederates were forced to return to Virginia. Henceforth the Army of Northern Virginia fought on the defensive. The men lost at Gettysburg could not be replaced, and the supplies of the Confederates were failing. The withdrawal of Meade from the field in front of the Confederate lines at Mine Run showed that Lee's army was still formidable. The city of Richmond was not yet captured, and the coast line remained unbroken, at the close of 1863, in spite of the Federal attacks against Charleston.

### Questions.

1. What were Lincoln's views on emancipation in the early years of the war? When was the Emancipation Proclamation issued? What force did it have?
2. Tell of the formation of the State of West Virginia.
3. What was the Federal plan of campaign in 1863?
4. What did Van Dorn do at Holly Springs? Tell of the battle between Sherman and Stephen D. Lee. Describe the capture of Vicksburg. What effect did this have on the Confederacy?

5. Tell of Forrest, Wheeler and Morgan in their raids. Describe the battles of Chickamauga, of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. Who commanded the Federals? Who commanded the Confederates?
6. Tell of the efforts made by Federal troops to invade Texas.
7. What were the results of the war in the West in 1863?
8. What was the condition of the Confederate army in the winter of 1862-1863? Describe the battle of Chancellorsville. Who were the chief generals? Tell about the death of Jackson.
9. What movement did Lee now make? What is the importance of the battle of Brandy Station? of Winchester? Describe the battle of Gettysburg. What is the importance of this battle?
10. What did Meade and Lee do during the rest of 1863?
11. Tell of the efforts of the Federals against Charleston.
12. What were the results of the war in the East in 1863?

### Geography Study.

Find West Virginia, Wheeling, Vicksburg, Port Hudson, Port Gibson, Holly Springs, Chickasaw Bayou, Franklin, Chickamauga, Knoxville, Missionary Ridge, Lookout Mountain, Galveston, Chancellorsville, Falmouth, Brandy Station, Winchester, Harrisburg, Chambersburg, the Susquehanna River, Cashtown, Gettysburg, James Island and Morris Island.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### EVENTS OF THE WAR IN 1864.

**373. The Federal Plan of Campaign.**—In March, 1864, Ulysses S. Grant was made lieutenant general and was placed in command of the Federal forces in the field. Grant's main idea was to capture Richmond, and he knew that in order to do this the Confederate forces in every part of the South would have to be crushed. There were practically only two Confederate armies in the field at the close of 1863. One was at Dalton, Georgia, under command of Joseph E. Johnston, and the other was Lee's Army of Northern Virginia. Grant selected General W. T. Sherman to lead the Federal army southward from Chattanooga to destroy Johnston's army, and then to march through

Georgia and cut off all the Confederate supplies from the south. Several minor campaigns were planned for Mississippi, Alabama, Louisiana and Florida.<sup>1</sup> Grant himself was to lead the main Federal army which General Meade, after the battle of Gettys-



GENERAL JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

burg, had stationed for the winter at Culpeper in northern Virginia. General B. F. Butler was to ascend the James River and assail Richmond in Lee's rear. General Sigel was to move through the Valley of Virginia, and General Crook was to advance from the Kanawha region to aid Sigel in cutting all railroad connections so that Lee would be without supplies. The system of warfare adopted by Grant was to hammer continuously, with superior numbers, against the forces of the Confederacy until they should be worn out.

#### 374. The Campaign in Northern Virginia. May, 1864.—

<sup>1</sup> In February, 1864, a Federal force invaded Florida, but it was defeated by the Confederates at Olustee.

In February and March, 1864, Sherman led an expedition from Vicksburg against Meridian, Mississippi, and set fire to the town.

In April, 1864, about 50,000 Federal soldiers under Banks and Porter advanced against Shreveport, Louisiana. About 30,000 Confederate soldiers under Kirby Smith and Richard Taylor suddenly attacked and defeated Banks in the pine forests at a place called Sabine Cross Roads, Louisiana (April 8, 1864), and forced the entire Federal expedition to return to New Orleans.

On April 12, 1864, N. B. Forrest captured Fort Pillow on the Mississippi River above Memphis. The garrison in this fort consisted largely of negro troops who refused to surrender, and who, in attempting to escape from the place, were nearly all slain. General S. D. Sturgis with 8,000 Federal troops now marched into Mississippi for the express purpose of capturing Forrest. The latter with 4,900 men fell upon Sturgis and completely routed the Federal command.

From December, 1863, to May, 1864, Lee's army lay along the southern bank of the Rapidan River, near Orange Courthouse. In their winter quarters, the ragged Confederate soldiers lived in log huts and slept on beds of straw. Their daily allowance of food was a little meal, or a few crackers, with a small quantity of fat pork.<sup>1</sup> The Federal Army of the Potomac, well supplied with provisions, spent the winter in tents at Culpeper Courthouse.

In March, 1864, Kilpatrick and Dahlgren led a force of Federal cavalry through Spotsylvania county toward Richmond. The expedition was a complete failure and Dahlgren lost his life.

On May 4, 1864, Grant's army crossed the Rapidan and entered the thickets of "the Wilderness" in which the battle of Chancellorsville had been fought. Grant's intention was to pass around Lee's army and thus place the Federal forces between Lee and Richmond. Lee turned quickly and fell upon the right flank of Grant's columns (May 5) and engaged them in battle in the dense forest.<sup>2</sup> On



GENERAL GRANT.

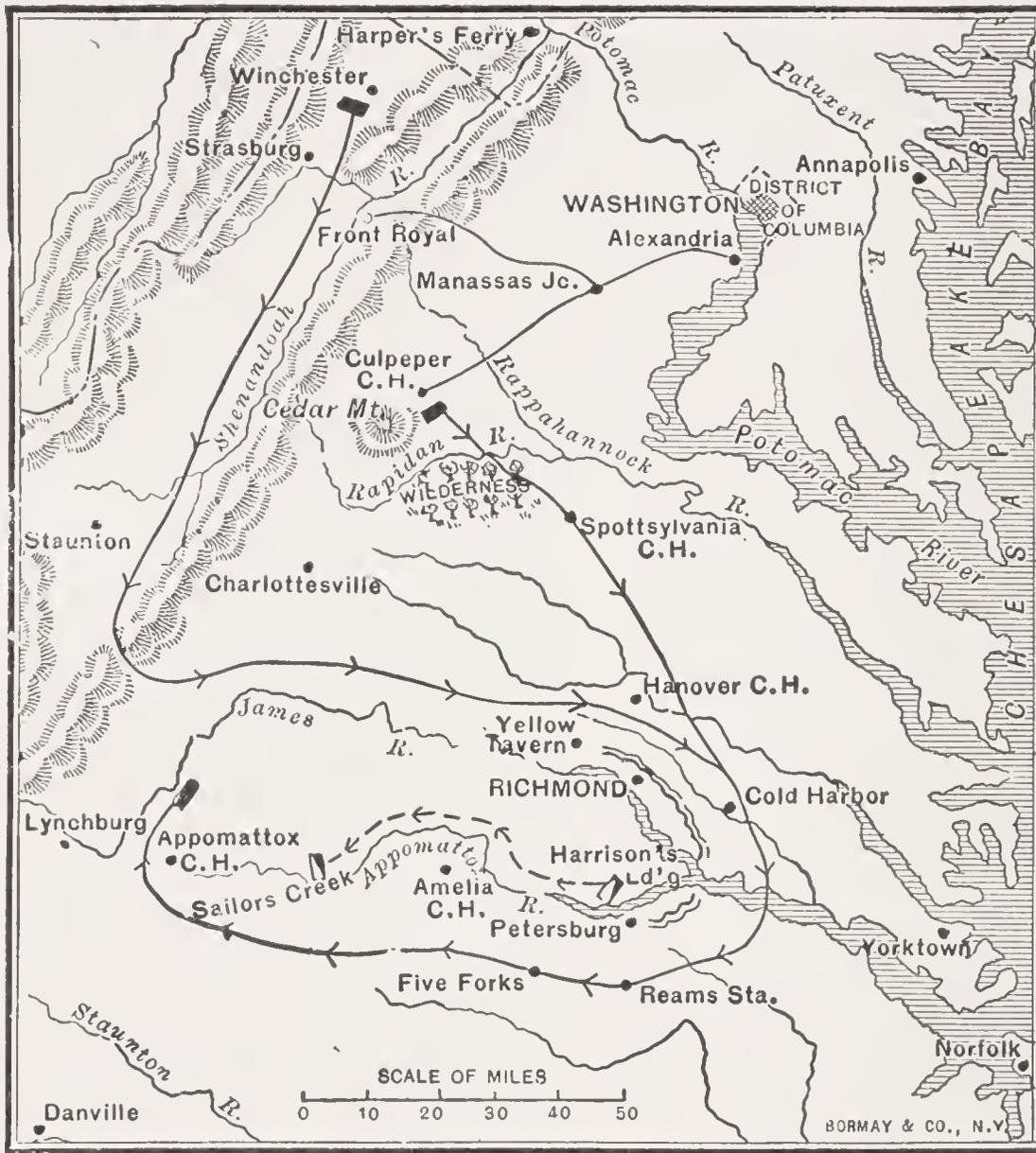
the morning of May 6, Lee struck the head of Grant's army, broke it into fragments and was driving it in a rout as complete as that of the first battle of Manassas. At this critical moment Longstreet, the leader of the Confederate attack, was wounded and Grant's men were thus given time to make another stand behind strong breastworks.

On the following morning Grant withdrew his army from its

<sup>1</sup> In the paper currency of the Confederacy bacon was \$8 and sugar \$20 a pound; beans were \$60, and corn meal \$50 a bushel.

<sup>2</sup> Grant's army numbered about 122,000 efficient men; it advanced in two separate columns. Lee had only about 62,000 men. Grant's loss during the two days was about 18,000 men; Lee's was less than half that number.

position in the Wilderness and turned the heads of his columns southward. Lee made a swift march and threw up fortifications



UNION FORCES ———→ ■      CONFEDERATE FORCES - - - - -> ■  
THE CAMPAIGN FROM THE WILDERNESS TO APPOMATTOX.

across Grant's pathway at Spotsylvania Courthouse. Grant ordered his men to advance against the Confederate works by direct assault all along the line; but the Federal troops were driven back with fearful slaughter. During a period of about twelve days Grant continued to throw his soldiers in

vain attacks against the Confederate lines.<sup>1</sup> He then again drew his men out of the fight and marched toward the James River.

**375. Grant Advances from Spotsylvania. May-June, 1864.**—When Grant moved southward from Spotsylvania, Lee's army by swift marching was able to place itself across Grant's pathway behind the North Anna River. Grant did not attack

<sup>1</sup> On May 12, at Spotsylvania, Grant's forces captured a salient point in the Confederate fortifications. About 2,800 Confederates became prisoners. In order to recapture this salient, Lee placed himself at the head of J. B. Gordon's Georgians and Virginians to lead a charge. The men shouted "Lee to the rear" until the commander withdrew, and then the advance was made and the salient was retaken. On the same morning, Harris's Mississippians refused to allow Lee to lead them in a charge. Six days before this, in the Wilderness, Gregg's brigade of Texans paused to urge Lee to go to the rear, and afterward made the gallant charge that checked the advance of Grant's army.

the Confederate works, but with unwavering determination led his army southward across the Pamunkey. The Confederates were again too swift for Grant, for they marched to the Chickahominy and arranged themselves in line of battle between the Federal forces and Richmond.

The two armies faced each other at **Cold Harbor**, near the former battlefield of Gaines's Mill. On the morning of June 3, Grant sent 80,000 men in lines six miles in length to make an attack against Lee's intrenchments. The aim of the Confederate riflemen and cannoneers was deadly, and 6,000 Federal soldiers fell upon the field within ten minutes. The assault proved to be a disastrous defeat for Grant's army. Grant now gave up the plan of attempting to force a direct entrance into Richmond and turned his columns toward the James, with the intention of assailing Petersburg.<sup>1</sup>

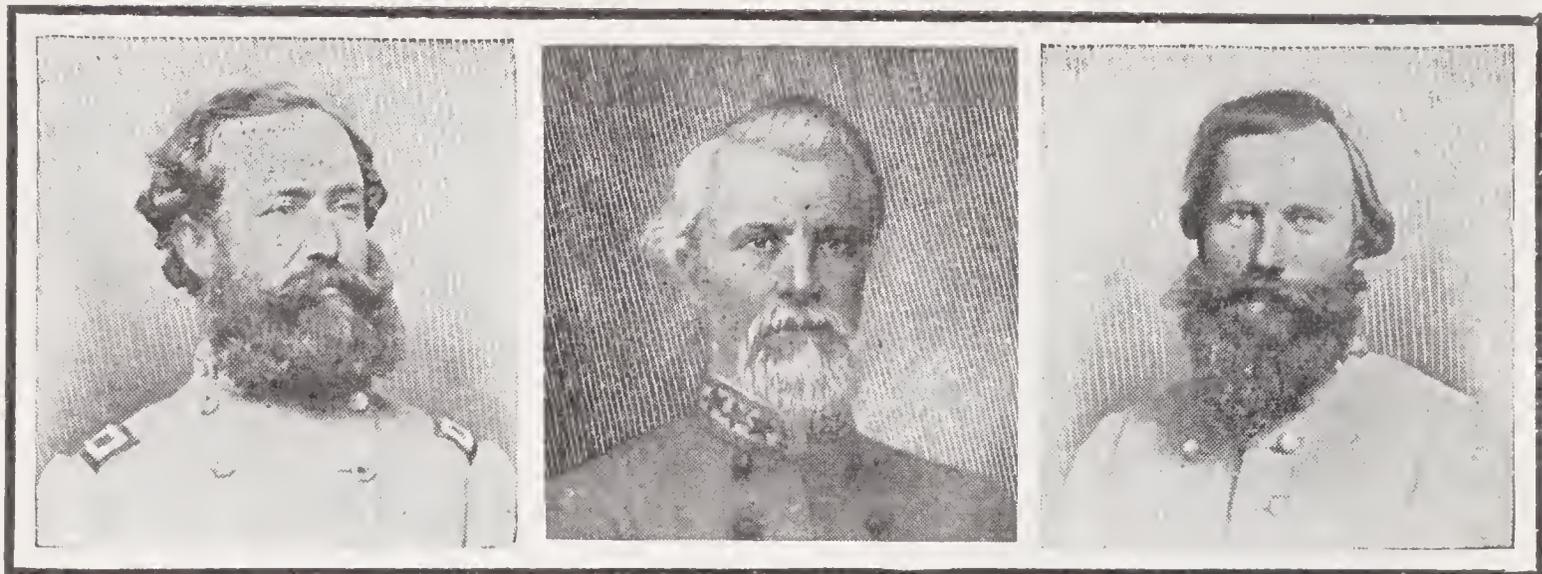
While Lee was facing Grant at Spotsylvania, Sheridan<sup>2</sup> brought some Federal cavalry to the west of Richmond, and J. E. B. Stuart led his horsemen to the defense of the Confederate capital. He was wounded in battle against Sheridan at the Yellow Tavern, but his men kept Sheridan away from Richmond. On the following day the gallant Stuart died.

Meanwhile, Butler's army moved up the James River to a point near Richmond, to await the arrival of Grant. Beauregard marched from North Carolina and drove Butler back into the narrow point of land between the James and the Appomattox. There Butler remained "bottled up," as Grant expressed it, until the campaign was nearly at an end.

**376. Battles Around Petersburg.**—From Cold Harbor, Grant moved southeastward across the James to Petersburg.

<sup>1</sup> Grant's campaign of forty days from the Rapidan to the James was a disastrous failure; his loss amounted to 60,000 men, a number equal to Lee's whole army. Lee's loss amounted to 20,000 men.

<sup>2</sup> Philip Henry Sheridan (1831-1888) was educated at West Point. After 1861 he served successively as quartermaster, colonel of cavalry in Tennessee, and commander of all the cavalry of the Army of the Potomac. He became lieutenant general in 1869 and commander of the United States Army in 1883.



WADE HAMPTON.

N. B. FORREST.

J. E. B. STUART.

Lee moved swiftly into position in front of that city and repulsed Grant, with heavy loss to the Federal army. Grant then made a two-fold attempt to extend his lines southward and to seize the Weldon railroad, one of the three lines by which supplies for the Confederates were brought from the south. Grant was twice repulsed here with heavy loss.<sup>1</sup>

Finding that he could not take by assault the Confederate works at Petersburg, Grant ordered a mine to be dug under them for the purpose of blowing them up. On July 30th, the powder in the mine was ignited, and a breach was made in the Confederate line. Grant had troops ready to march into Petersburg through the "Crater" made by the explosion. As the Federal troops entered the "Crater," they were exposed to a heavy fire from the Confederates, and were driven back with the loss of 5,000 men.

In August, 1864, Grant made four desperate efforts to break through Lee's line, but he failed utterly, with the loss of 8,000 men. September saw two more Federal assaults, with a loss to Grant of nearly 5,000 men. In October, some 3,000 Federal soldiers fell in the further efforts made to break the Confederate line. The Confederate loss in these engagements was small.

### **377. Sigel and Hunter in the Valley of Virginia.—**Grant

<sup>1</sup> The Confederates also took 2,200 Federal prisoners, and forced the Federal troops back into their intrenchments. At the same time, at Reams's Station, on the Weldon railroad, J. H. Wilson's Federal cavalymen were routed by W. H. F. Lee, Wade Hampton and Fitzhugh Lee.

attempted to aid his campaign further by ordering Crook's army from the Kanawha into the Valley of Virginia. At the same time, Sigel moved from the Potomac up the Valley to New Market, where he was defeated by General J. C. Breckinridge.<sup>1</sup> Breckinridge marched from New Market to Cold Harbor in time to take part in the battle at that place, in the month of June.

David Hunter was placed in command of the forces of Sigel and Crook, some 18,000 men. After burning much public and private property in the Valley, Hunter advanced to seize Lynchburg. Sheridan started to the aid of Hunter, but was defeated by Wade Hampton at Trevilian Station (June 12, 1864). At the same time, Lee sent Early with Jackson's old corps to move rapidly from Cold Harbor to Lynchburg. Early arrived in time to confront Hunter before Lynchburg, and the Federal raider was forced westward through the mountains to the Kanawha.

**378. Early's Valley Campaign.**—Soon after the beginning of the struggle at Petersburg, Lee sent Early to threaten Washington, hoping thereby to cause Grant to withdraw from around Richmond to defend the Federal capital. Early, with 10,000 soldiers, crossed the Potomac at Sheperdstown, defeated Lew Wallace's army on the Monocacy River, near Frederick City, Maryland, and advanced to the gates of Washington. Federal troops were hastened to Washington from Baltimore and Virginia, and Grant's army was thus weakened, so that some of the Federal disasters at Petersburg were the result in part of Early's campaign. As he returned, Early sent a detachment to burn the town of Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, in retaliation for Hunter's burnings in the Valley.

Grant sent Sheridan into the Valley to oppose Early.<sup>2</sup> With

<sup>1</sup> At New Market, the corps of cadets from the Virginia Military Institute, mere boys in age, made a gallant charge and captured a battery from the center of Sigel's line.

<sup>2</sup> Sheridan's force was increased until it became a well-equipped army of 40,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry. Lee sent Kershaw and Fitzhugh Lee to reënforce Early.

only about 13,000 men, Early awaited Sheridan's attack at Winchester, September 19, 1864. The Confederates were driven up the Valley. At Fisher's Hill, September 22, Sheridan attacked Early in front and flank, and drove the Confederates from the field. On October 19th, Early's force fell suddenly upon the flank and rear of Sheridan's army at Cedar Creek; the Federal troops were routed and fled toward Winchester. Sheridan rode out from that place, rallied his men, and drove Early again up the Valley. Sheridan then marched through the Valley, destroying the property of private citizens wherever he went.<sup>1</sup>



GENERAL SHERMAN.

**379. Fighting in Georgia.**—While Grant was struggling with Lee in the Wilderness, Sherman moved his army from Chattanooga against Bragg's old army, now under J. E. Johnston.<sup>2</sup> Sherman began his campaign by moving around Johnston's flank and the latter was forced to withdraw southward. A series of battles was fought, but in each case Sherman moved around towards Johnston's rear, and the Confederates were compelled to retire. Joseph Wheeler's cavalry operated against Sherman's line of communications, but Sherman could not be checked.

At Kenesaw Mountain, near Marietta, Georgia, Sherman made three assaults against Johnston's fortifications, but was repulsed each time with loss. The Confederates withdrew to the north of Atlanta, and Johnston threw up works behind Peach Tree Creek, and awaited the Federal attack.<sup>3</sup> President Davis,

<sup>1</sup> During Sheridan's campaign, his line of communication was frequently assailed by Col. John S. Mosby, with a force of rangers. These daring troopers, never exceeding four hundred in number, compelled Sheridan to employ a large body of troops in guarding his wagon trains.

<sup>2</sup> Sherman had an army of 110,000 men and 254 guns. Johnston had only about 60,000 men and was poorly supplied with artillery and ammunition.

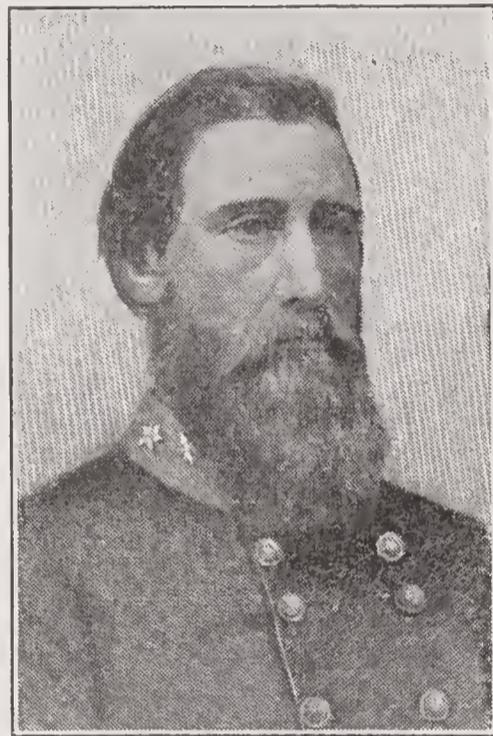
<sup>3</sup> Johnston had conducted the campaign with great skill; he had drawn

however, was not satisfied with Johnston's policy of retreating; he, therefore, removed Johnston and appointed General John B. Hood in his place. Hood at once rushed to the attack against the Federal forces, but was driven back repeatedly with loss. He was forced out of the city, and Atlanta, with machine shops and great stores of supplies, fell into Sherman's hands.

**380. The Capture of Mobile.**—Mobile, Alabama, was strongly fortified. In the bay were three Confederate gunboats and the iron-clad ram *Tennessee*. On August 6, 1864, Farragut's Federal fleet passed the Confederate forts and entered the bay.

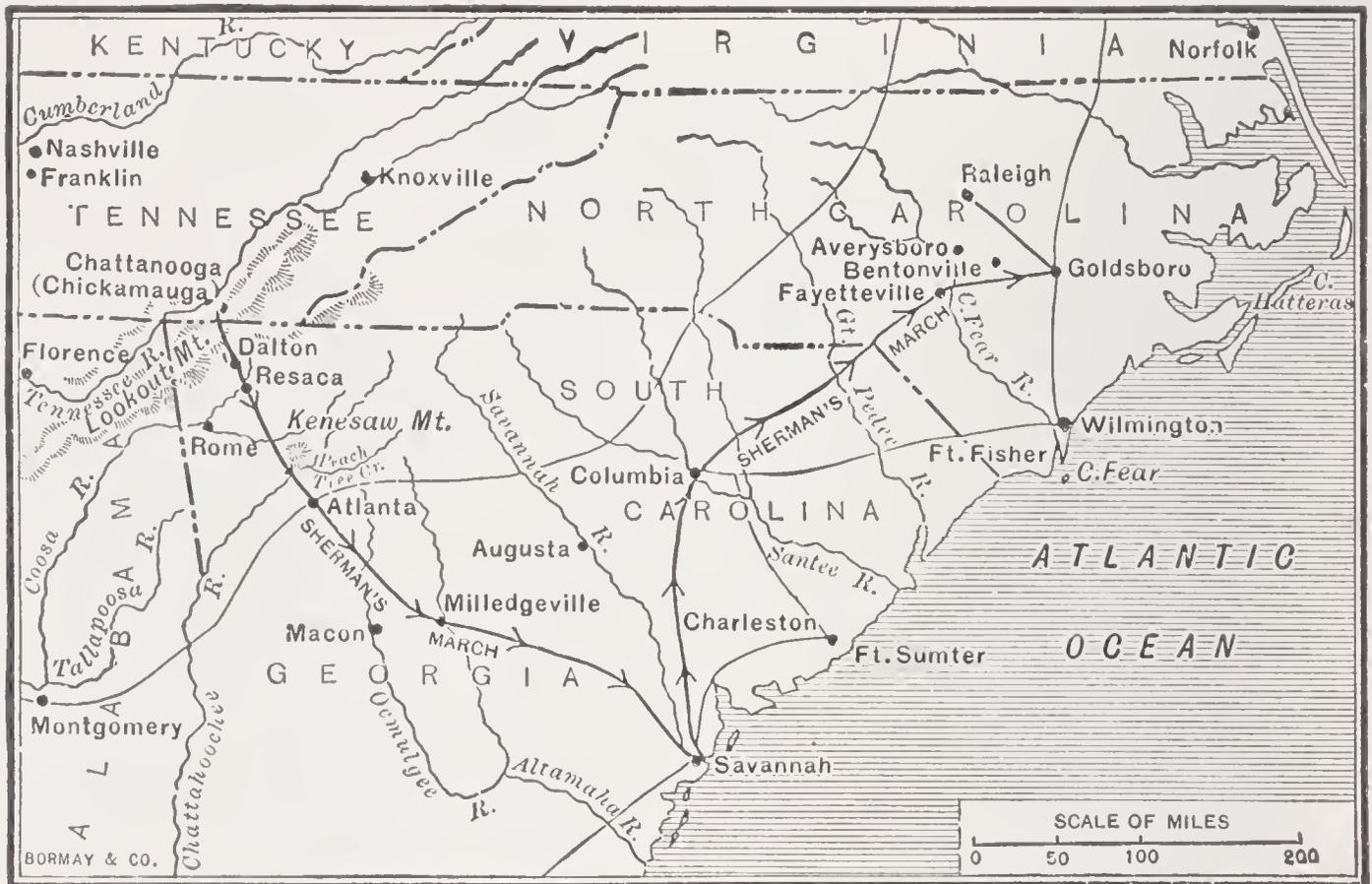
The *Tennessee* gallantly fought the entire Federal squadron of eighteen vessels, but was overpowered. A land force acted in conjunction with Farragut, and the siege of Mobile was begun. A heroic defense was made by the people of Mobile for many months, under the leadership of General Dabney H. Maury. Not until April, 1865, were they overpowered, and then only by a strong land force which marched into Alabama from Florida.

**381. The Campaign in Tennessee.**—Hood marched into Tennessee to attack Sherman's line of communication with Chattanooga, and thus draw the Federal army away from Atlanta. Thomas and Schofield were sent by Sherman into Tennessee with a portion of the army to resist Hood, while Sherman remained in Atlanta with 60,000 men. Hood crossed the Tennessee River at Florence, marched to Franklin, and by a desperate battle (November 30) forced Schofield into Nashville. Thomas attacked Hood's army in front of Nashville, December 15-16, 1864, and completely defeated the Confederates. Hood's



GENERAL J. B. HOOD.

Sherman far away from his base of supplies; Sherman's losses had been 25,000, while Johnston's were 10,000; moreover, Johnston was now in a good position to fight.



SHERMAN'S CAMPAIGN.

regiments fled in confusion and were saved from destruction only by the gallant work of the rear guard under command of Generals S. D. Lee and N. B. Forrest.

**382. Sherman's March to Savannah.**—Early in November, 1864, Sherman cut his army loose from the railroads and set forth through Georgia from Atlanta towards Savannah. He wished to put himself in communication with the Federal fleet on the Atlantic Ocean. His 60,000 men made a path of desolation forty miles in width. No resistance could be offered, because Georgia's soldiers were all absent in Tennessee and Virginia. Near the end of December, 1864, Sherman's troops entered Savannah.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "The track of Sherman's troops was one broad trail of fire, plunder, robbery and destruction. Nothing was left. If a cyclone of fire had rushed along the country, the ruin and desolation could not have been more complete. The rules of civilized warfare were utterly disregarded. Helpless women and children were shown no consideration. Along a belt of country thirty to forty miles wide, extending from Chattanooga to the Atlantic Ocean, he spared neither towns, cities, nor habitations; he seized all the stock, horses, mules, cows, hogs, chickens, and everything that would support or feed the helpless women and children; he destroyed beautiful villages and homes, leaving nothing but crumbling walls and tottering chimneys." C. H. Smith's "History of Georgia," p. 90.

**383. Confederate Cruisers and Blockade-runners.**—At the outbreak of the war the South had few ships of any kind. Vessels were built, however, to run through the line of blockade established by the Federal government along the southern coast. These blockade-runners were long steam-vessels, capable of high speed. Goods were brought from England to Nassau in the Bahamas and there placed on board the swift runners. Under cover of darkness, these vessels carried the goods into Charleston or Wilmington on the Carolina coast. On the return voyage they carried a cargo of cotton to Nassau.

In addition to these runners, the Confederacy made use of armed vessels to destroy Northern commerce on the seas. The first of these was the *Sumter*, which ran out of the Mississippi into the Gulf of Mexico in June, 1861. Within a week she captured seven merchantmen, and seven Federal cruisers were sent in pursuit. The *Sumter* drove many Northern ships in from the ocean. She finally sailed into the port of Gibraltar, and as her captain was unable to obtain coal there the vessel was sold.

The most successful of the Confederate cruisers were the *Florida*, *Georgia*, *Alabama* and *Shenandoah*.<sup>1</sup> These Confederate

<sup>1</sup>The *Florida* made many captures, but was herself seized by the Federal government within the neutral harbor of Bahia, in flagrant violation of the authority of Brazil. The *Georgia* made captures along the African coast, but her slow speed soon compelled the Confederacy to sell her.

The *Alabama* was built for the Confederacy in Liverpool. England was then selling large quantities of muskets and rifles to the Federal government. The *Alabama* was equipped with guns in the Azores and placed under the command of Raphael Semmes, in August, 1862. Sixty-six merchant vessels were captured by this daring seaman. Semmes finally entered the harbor of Cherbourg, France. On June 19, 1864, he gallantly came outside the harbor to engage a larger vessel, the *Kearsarge*. After a short battle, the *Alabama* was sunk. Semmes and most of his crew were saved by the men of the *Deerhound*, an English yacht.

The *Shenandoah* was fitted for service at an island near Madeira. She



RAPHAEL SEMMES.

war vessels destroyed, or drove from the sea, almost the entire trade of the North.

**384. President Lincoln's Reëlection.**—The war against the South was urged on by the Republican party. After the Confederate victories of 1862, the Democratic party of the North secured a general victory at the polls in the election of state and congressional representatives. The Democrats wished to make peace and bring the war to an end. The elections of 1863, on the other hand, were carried by those in favor of continuing the war against the South and against slavery.

On June 7, 1864, Abraham Lincoln was nominated by the Republican party for reëlection to the presidency. Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was the candidate for the vice-presidency.

The Democratic party of the North nominated George B. McClellan for the presidency. The Democratic platform charged President Lincoln with (1) failure in the management of the war, (2) violating the Federal Constitution, (3) using the army to control elections and (4) a "shameful disregard" for the sufferings of Federal soldiers in Confederate prisons. In the election, McClellan carried only three states, New Jersey, Delaware and Kentucky. He showed great strength, however, in other states, for his total vote was 1,802,237 votes to 2,213,665 cast for Lincoln.

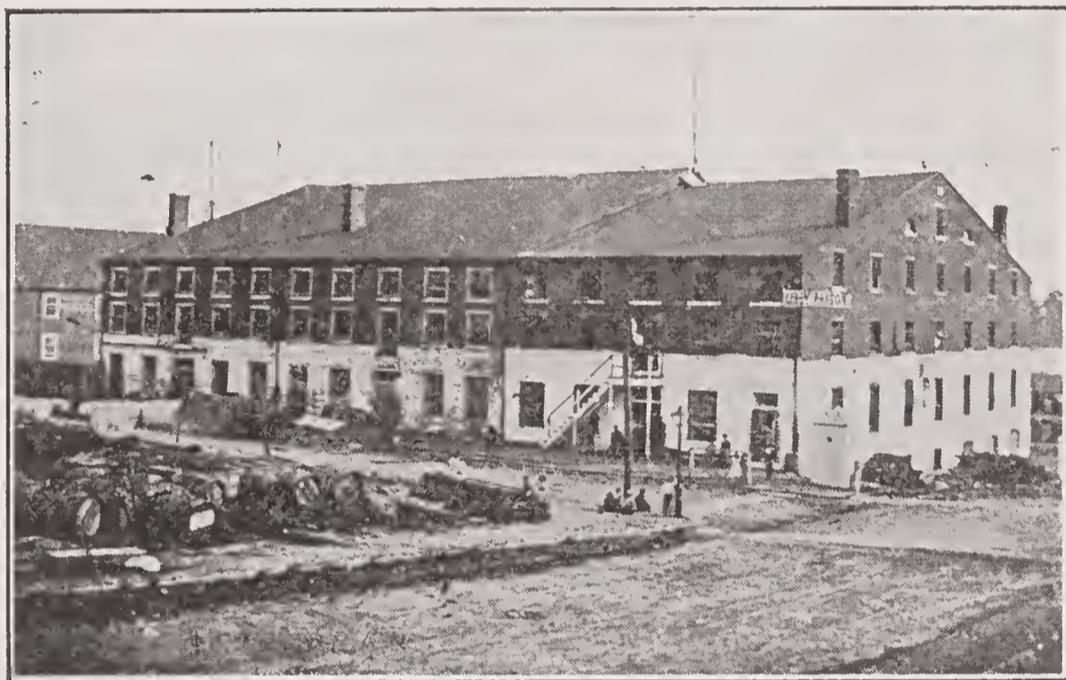
**385. Prisoners of War.**—The Northern Democratic party, in the campaign of 1864, laid upon Lincoln's administration the chief share of the blame for the failure to exchange prisoners of war taken on both sides. From the beginning of the struggle until August, 1862, the Confederates released on parole a larger number of prisoners than were released by the Federal commanders. In July, 1862, an agreement was signed for the release on parole of all prisoners taken in war on both sides. Under this contract the Confederates, still holding the excess of prisoners, again set

sailed to Australia and thence into the Pacific as far northward as Bering Strait. She made havoc among New England whaling vessels in the northern seas.

free on parole a much greater number of prisoners than were released by the Federal authorities.

After the summer of 1863, the Federal armies held the excess of prisoners. The Federal authorities, therefore, refused to keep the agreement of July, 1862, and no longer released able-bodied Confederates.

Confederate Commissioner Ould offered (August 10, 1864) to exchange prisoners, "officer for officer and man for man." Complete authority, with reference to exchange, had been already given to Grant, who refused the offer.<sup>1</sup> Grant thus decided to leave Federal soldiers in prison, in preference to releasing the Confederates taken in battle. The latter were kept in close confinement in twenty different prisons in the North, often under the charge of negro soldiers. As



LIBBY PRISON.

many as 26,436 Confederates died in these prisons, through lack of food and through exposure to the northern winter. The Federal soldiers taken in war were kept in thirty-three different prisons in the South. 22,576 Federal captives died in the South, owing to lack of food and to overcrowding in some of the prisons.

<sup>1</sup> His reasons were:—"It is hard on our men held in Southern prisons not to exchange them, but it is humanity to those left in the ranks to fight our battles. Every man we hold, when released on parole, or otherwise, becomes an active soldier against us at once, either directly or indirectly. If we commence a system of exchange which liberates all prisoners taken, we will have to fight on until the whole South is exterminated. If we hold those caught they amount to no more than dead men."

**386. The Situation at the Close of 1864.**—The year 1864 saw the Confederacy in desperate circumstances. Hood's army had been dispersed. The Federals held Tennessee, Missouri and most of Mississippi and Alabama. Georgia and the Valley of Virginia had been laid waste. Sherman was at Savannah ready to march back through the Carolinas into Virginia to join Grant. There was but one large Confederate force in the field, the Army of Northern Virginia under Lee, at Petersburg and Richmond. Lee had scarcely 50,000 men, and he could not get supplies for these. Railroad connection with the far South was cut off. The war was drawing to a close, and yet the soldiers under Lee wished to continue the fight.

### Questions.

1. What was the plan of campaign in 1864? What was Grant's method?
2. Tell of Dahlgren's raid. Describe the battles of the Wilderness and of Spotsylvania Courthouse.
3. Tell of Grant's repulse at North Anna River and Cold Harbor. When and where was Stuart killed? What became of Butler's army?
4. Describe the campaign around Petersburg.
5. Tell of the Battle of New Market. How was Hunter's advance on Lynchburg checked?
6. Describe Early's campaign in the Valley of Virginia. What was its purpose? Tell of Sheridan in the Valley. What was done by Colonel Mosby?
7. Tell of Sherman and Johnston in Georgia. Why was Johnston removed from command?
8. Describe the capture of Mobile.
9. Give an account of Hood's campaign in Tennessee.
10. Tell of Sherman's march through Georgia.
11. How was Confederate commerce carried on for a while? Give an account of the chief Confederate war vessels.
12. What was the attitude of the Democratic party in the North towards Lincoln? Who were the candidates for the presidency in 1864? What were the results of the election?
13. Tell of the exchange of prisoners. Why did Grant refuse to exchange?
14. Describe the condition of the Confederacy at the close of 1864.

### Geography Study.

Find Culpeper Courthouse, North Anna River, Spotsylvania Courthouse, the Appomattox River, Petersburg, New Market, Lynchburg, Frederick (Md.), Winchester, Fisher's Hill, Cedar Creek, Chattanooga, Dalton, Atlanta, Mobile, Franklin (Tenn.), Nashville, Savannah, Charleston, Wilmington, Nassau, Shreveport, the Red River.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### THE END OF THE WAR.

1865.

**387. The Plan of Campaign.**—The Federal plan of campaign at the opening of the year 1865 was that Sherman should lead his army through the Carolinas and unite it with Grant's forces at some point south of Richmond. The Confederate plan was still one of defense. J. E. Johnston was placed in command of the scattered forces of Hood and of other Confederate forces in the Carolinas, with orders to resist the advance of Sherman. Lee's army, drawn out to the length of fifty miles, was to continue the defense of Petersburg and Richmond. As a preliminary to the march of Sherman along the coast northward from Savannah, the Federalists considered it necessary to capture Wilmington, North Carolina, which was the only port still open to blockade-runners in the beginning of the year 1865.

**388. The Capture of Fort Fisher.**—In December, 1864, Grant sent a fleet and an army under B. F. Butler to capture Fort Fisher, which defended the harbor of Wilmington, but the attempt proved a failure. The next month a Federal fleet of about sixty vessels bombarded the fort, while a land force under Terry assaulted it. Whiting and Lamb, with their Confederates, made a gallant resistance, but Fort Fisher was taken and the Confederacy was completely shut off from sea communication with other countries.

**389. Sherman's Campaign in the South.**—February 1, 1865, Sherman started northward from Savannah. His columns covered a region of country fifty miles in width, burning and pillaging as they marched. Columbia, the beautiful capital of South Carolina, was captured and burned by Sherman's army. For four years Charleston had made a gallant defense. Fort Sumter had been knocked to pieces by Federal cannon-balls, but

the Carolinians held the ruins and the fort was never taken. Hardee's Confederates now left Charleston and joined Hampton in the fight against Sherman.



GENERAL JOHN B. GORDON.

At **Averysboro**, North Carolina, Johnston threw Hardee's force of 7,500 men across the path of Sherman's army and held it in check for one day. On March 19th Johnston led some 19,000 Confederates in an attack against Sherman's force of 32,000 men at **Bentonville**, where Sherman was driven from the field with the loss of three cannon. On

March 23d Sherman entered Goldsboro, where reënforcements brought his numbers to 90,000 men. Johnston occupied Raleigh and awaited the coming of Lee from Petersburg.<sup>1</sup>

**390. The Capture of Petersburg and Richmond.**—In February, 1865, Robert E. Lee was made commander-in-chief of all the Confederate forces in the field.<sup>2</sup> The strength of the Confederacy was broken by the Federal invasions of the Mississippi

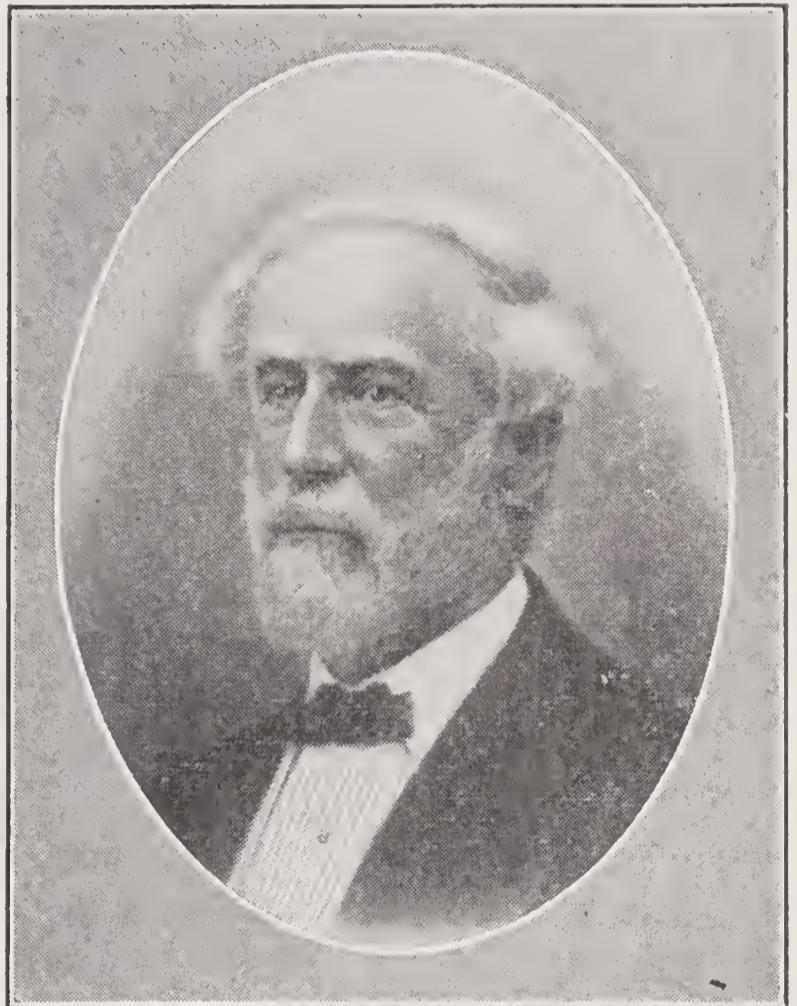
<sup>1</sup> In March and April, 1865, a Federal force under Stoneman advanced as far as Salisbury, North Carolina. In March, 1865, J. H. Wilson led some 14,000 Federal soldiers into Alabama, and defeated Forrest's force of 2,000 men near Selma.

<sup>2</sup> Lee recommended the enlistment of negro troops to fill up the ranks of the Confederate armies, upon the condition that negroes thus serving in war should first be set free.

Valley, and by Sherman's march to the sea. The railroads of all this region were broken up, fields were laid waste, the crops were destroyed, all living beasts were driven away, the wheat and the corn were seized, and the homes of the people were burned. The supplies saved for the armies of Johnston and Lee could not be transported northward. These armies were weakened by disease and battle, and by the withdrawal of brave men who heard the cry of distress sent up by the women and children left at home.

Lee's army in front of Petersburg numbered about 45,000 men. They were surrounded as by a wall of fire. Their supply of food was nearly exhausted. Grant confronted them with 125,000 men well supplied with food and heavy guns. The marvellous courage of the Southern soldiers under Lee endured even unto the end. Never had any people fought more nobly for their rights than the citizen-soldiers of the Southern Confederacy. Their magnificent bravery did not fail in the last struggle.

On March 25, 1865, General John B. Gordon's storming party seized Fort Stedman in the very center of Grant's line, but there were not men enough in his command to hold it. On April 1st, Pickett's Confederate division was defeated at Five Forks. On April 2d, Grant broke through Lee's weak line four miles southwest of Petersburg. The brave A. P. Hill endeavored to throw his command into the breach, but he was slain, and Lee was forced to retreat from Petersburg. The fighting spirit of his ragged troops was unbroken as the head of the Confederate column was turned



GENERAL LEE.

towards Amelia Courthouse, along the banks of the Appomattox River.

When the lines at Petersburg were broken, it became at once necessary to evacuate Richmond. The papers and property of the Confederate government were placed on cars and moved to Danville. The tobacco warehouses were set on fire. The flames spread to the adjoining buildings, and the entire business part of the city was destroyed. On April 3d, Grant's army took possession of Petersburg and Richmond.

**391. The Surrender of the Confederate Forces.**—Lee marched along the north bank of the Appomattox toward Danville, with the expectation of uniting his force with that of J. E. Johnston in North Carolina. An entire day was lost by the Confederates in search of food at Amelia Courthouse, and Grant was thus enabled to throw a strong force between Lee's army and Danville. The Confederate army then turned toward Lynchburg. As they were crossing Sailor's Creek, Grant attacked the Confederate column from the left flank, and captured some 8,000 Confederate soldiers. On April 9th, a large force of Federal infantry and cavalry moved around Lee's left and occupied the roads at Appomattox between the Confederates and Lynchburg. Lee formed a line of battle to cut his way through, but he found that his forces were surrounded by Grant's large army. No other course but surrender was open to Lee. The Confederates were starving, for after leaving Petersburg they had scarcely anything to eat except parched corn, and buds which they gathered from the trees.

Lee and Grant met in the McLean House in the village of **Appomattox Courthouse**. Lee was accompanied by his chief of staff, Colonel Charles Marshall. Grant brought with him some members of his staff, with Generals Sheridan and Ord. The terms of surrender were quickly arranged. When the Confederates saw Lee returning from the McLean House, their grief was well-nigh unspeakable, for they did not wish to surrender. Strong men wept like children and Lee was only able to say, "Men, we

have fought through the war together. I have done the best I could for you. My heart is too full to say more." The glorious career of the Army of Northern Virginia closed at Appomattox, but the men in line were ready to fight to the last. The number of Confederate soldiers paroled amounted to 28,000. Grant magnanimously checked the spirit of exultation in his own army and allowed the Confederates to take with them for the spring plowing the few horses that were left.



THE MCLEAN HOUSE.

On April 10, 1865, General Lee issued a farewell address to his soldiers and returned to Richmond.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The address read: "After four years of arduous service, marked by unsurpassed courage and fortitude, the Army of Northern Virginia has been compelled to yield to overwhelming numbers and resources. I need not tell the survivors of so many hard-fought battles, who have remained steadfast to the last, that I have consented to this result from no distrust of them; but, feeling that valor and devotion could accomplish nothing that could compensate for the loss that would have attended the continuation of the contest, I have determined to avoid the useless sacrifice of those whose past services have endeared them to their countrymen. By the terms of agreement, officers and men can return to their homes and remain there until exchanged. You will take with you the satisfaction that proceeds from the consciousness of duty faithfully performed; and I earnestly pray that a merciful God will extend to you His blessings and protection. With an unceasing admiration of your constancy and devotion to your country, and a grateful remembrance of your kind and generous consideration of myself, I bid you an affectionate farewell. R. E. Lee, General."

On October 12, 1870, General Robert E. Lee died at Lexington, Virginia. The last years of his life had been spent as President of the Washington College, which afterward was named the Washington and Lee University. Even

After the surrender of Lee in Virginia, all of the other forces of the Southern Confederacy laid down their arms.<sup>1</sup>

**392. The Cost of the War.**—The war waged by the North against the South cost the North the lives of half a million men; about 110,000 Northern men were killed or mortally wounded, and 200,000 were the victims of disease in the army; nearly as many more died after leaving the army as the result of disease or wounds received in the service. The South lost in killed and mortally wounded men, 94,000. The number of Southern soldiers who yielded their lives to disease is not known. The South put into the field altogether about 650,000 men, while the North enlisted for various terms of service 2,772,408 soldiers.

The cost in money to the North, including bounties to hired soldiers, was more than \$6,000,000,000. The loss in property in the South was beyond calculation, for practically everything was destroyed.

**393. The Assassination of President Lincoln.**—On the night of April 14, 1865, President Lincoln was shot at Ford's Theater, Washington City, by an actor, John Wilkes Booth. Mr. Lincoln died the following morning. The assassin escaped from the theater, but was afterward slain in the effort made to capture him. Booth's accomplice, Powell, attempted to kill Secretary Seward with a dagger, but did not succeed. Secretary Stanton charged President Davis with planning the murder of Lincoln and placed the price of \$100,000 upon his head.<sup>2</sup>

to the last, by his own example, he helped his people to bear with patience the burdens laid upon them by congressional reconstruction.

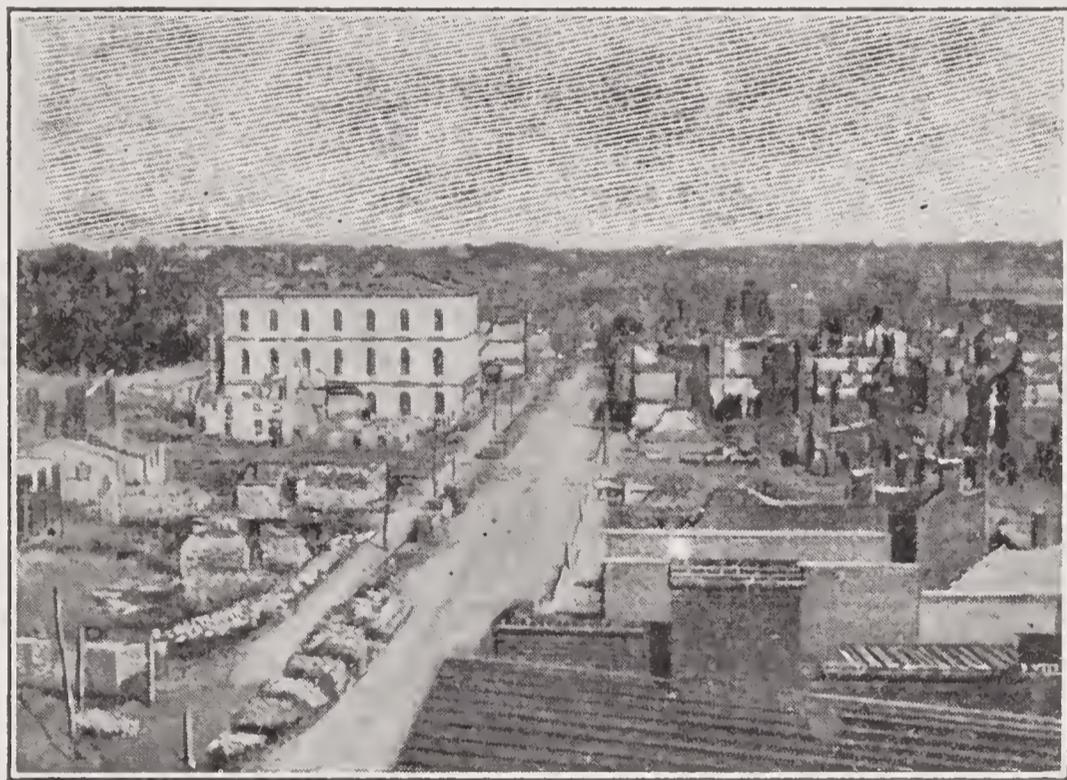
<sup>1</sup>The Army of Tennessee, under J. E. Johnston, consisting of 31,243 men, was surrendered to Sherman, April 26, 1865. M. Jefferson Thompson's Army of Missouri, 7,978 men; the Army of the Department of Alabama, under Richard Taylor, 42,293 men; and the Army of the Trans-Mississippi Department, under E. Kirby Smith, 17,686 men, all surrendered by May 26, 1865. Other scattered Confederate forces were paroled, making a total of 174,233 men. The number of soldiers in all the Federal armies in April, 1865, was 1,000,576.

<sup>2</sup>Secretary Stanton caused the arrest of a number of persons in Washington who had known Booth before he committed his crime. These persons were arraigned before a military tribunal, and found guilty of conspiring against

**394. President Davis Captured and Imprisoned.**—President Davis had passed southward from the Carolinas after the surrender of J. E. Johnston, and on May 10, 1865, he was made prisoner by Federal cavalry in the State of Georgia. He was taken to Fortress Monroe in Virginia, and there placed in solitary confinement. For a period of two years President Davis was subjected to the greatest personal indignities. Only the scantiest supply of clothing and the coarsest food were furnished him. On one occasion irons were placed on his ankles. On May 13, 1867, President Davis was brought to Richmond to stand trial before the Federal Court, and was bailed. He was never really brought to trial for treason, as the charge was abandoned.

**395. The Condition of the Country.**—At the close of the war in 1865, the South was in a state of desolation. A large number of the population had given up their lives during the long struggle. The

services of the negro laboring class were no longer under the control of the white people who survived the war. Large cities such as Atlanta, Charleston, Columbia and Richmond were almost destroyed



A VIEW OF RICHMOND AFTER THE EVACUATION.

by fire. Railroad tracks were torn up, bridges and houses and bales of cotton were burned, farms were laid waste, and cattle the life of President Lincoln. Four of them were condemned to imprisonment and four were hanged (July 7, 1865). Among the latter was Mrs. Mary Surratt, at whose house some of the persons known to Booth had lived for a time. A great many think that there was no evidence whatever to connect her with Booth's crime.

were driven away. There were no manufactures, there was little food to meet present needs, and the crops of 1865 were short. None other than a brave people could hope to bring prosperity back to a country marked by such wide-spread ruin.

In the Northeastern states, there were manufactures in abundance. Trade and agriculture were carried forward on a large scale. During the war a rapid growth of population and trade took place in the states that now form the Middle West.

The far West had been developing during the last decade. The discovery of gold near Pike's Peak, Colorado, in 1858, and of silver in Utah, in 1859, led vast numbers of people into the country east of the Rocky Mountains. In 1862 the Federal Congress chartered the Union Pacific and the Central Pacific Railway companies, and gave them about \$55,000,000 in bonds, with vast tracts of public land, for building a railroad from Omaha through Utah to the Pacific Ocean. The road was completed May 10, 1869.

On June 19, 1863, **West Virginia** was admitted into the Federal Union as a separate state. **Nevada** came in as a state, October 31, 1864. **Montana** and **Wyoming** were organized as territories by the year 1870.

### Questions.

1. What was Grant's plan of campaign for 1865?
2. Describe the capture of Fort Fisher.
3. Tell of Sherman in South Carolina. Why was Charleston evacuated? Tell of the campaign between Johnston and Sherman in North Carolina.
4. What was the condition of Lee's army at the beginning of 1865? Why was Lee compelled to evacuate Richmond? What was the course of his march?
5. Tell of the surrender at Appomattox. Tell of the parting scenes with the soldiers. What spirit did Grant show? Tell of the surrender of all the Confederate forces. What was the last battle of the war?
6. How much did the war cost in money, soldiers and property?
7. How was Lincoln assassinated?
8. What was done with Jefferson Davis?

9. What was the condition of the South at the close of the war? Of the North? Tell of the development of the West.

### Geography Study.

Find Wilmington, Fort Fisher, Columbia, Goldsboro, Averysboro, Bentonville, Appomattox Courthouse, Lynchburg, Fortress Monroe, Utah, Nevada, Colorado, Montana and Wyoming.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

### RECONSTRUCTION.

1865-1877.

**396. Andrew Johnson as President.**—In 1861, Andrew Johnson<sup>1</sup> was a Democrat and member of the United States Senate from Tennessee. He was an advocate of the general theory of States' rights, and had no sympathy with the Abolitionist view of the negro question. He did not believe, however, in the expediency of secession, and remained in the Senate when Tennessee withdrew from the Union. He was placed on the ticket with Lincoln in 1864 to secure Democratic support for the war administration.

After the death of Lincoln, Johnson as Vice-President was sworn into the office of President. He wished to carry out Lincoln's policy with reference to the Southern states.

**397. President Lincoln's Policy.**—Throughout the great struggle, the War Department constituted the real Federal government at Washington. The President exercised arbitrary power almost continuously. Lincoln claimed that as President he had authority to control any one of the states of the Southern

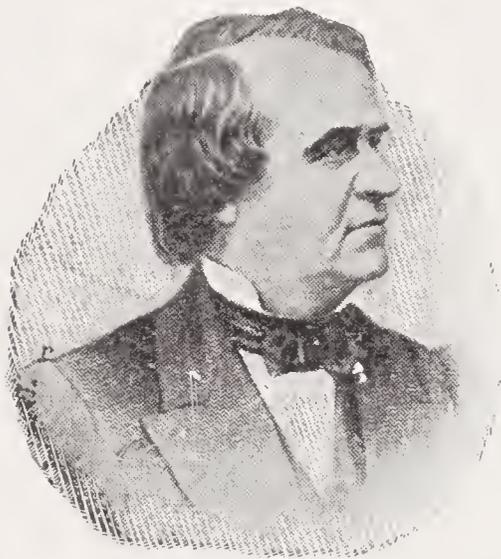
<sup>1</sup> Andrew Johnson (1808-1875) was born in North Carolina, but at eighteen settled in Tennessee. After holding several local and state offices, he was elected to the House of Representatives (1843-53); then he became governor of Tennessee (1853-57), and United States Senator (1857-62). Lincoln appointed him military governor of Tennessee in 1862.

Confederacy. On December 8, 1863, he said that the Southern states had never been out of the Union, but that the machinery of their state governments was "out of gear." He announced that these states might be "reconstructed" or brought into harmony with the Federal administration at Washington by the President himself.

On the theory that the President could reconstruct the Southern states, Lincoln, in 1863, issued a proclamation saying that any Southern state would be considered as restored to its former rights in the Federal Union whenever one-tenth of the voters of that state had taken the oath of allegiance to the Federal government, and had reëstablished the government of that state. On this basis, Arkansas, Louisiana and Tennessee were reconstructed before the war closed, and Lincoln claimed that they were states in the Union.

### 398. Johnson's Reconstruction of the Southern States.

—When Andrew Johnson succeeded Lincoln, he proposed to



*Andrew Johnson*

restore all the Southern commonwealths to the Union through his own authority as President. He carried out this plan by issuing a series of proclamations. He declared that the Southern ports were opened to trade, and May 29, 1865, he offered pardon to all persons connected with the Southern Confederacy, except military and state officers, who were expected to make special applications for pardon. Temporary governors were appointed by him for each of the Con-

federate States, and conventions were called which (1) repealed the ordinances of secession, (2) refused to pay the debts of the Confederacy, and (3) ratified the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution. The Southern states were then considered to be restored to their former position as members of the Federal Union.

**499. The Thirteenth Amendment. 1865.**—Early in 1865 Congress proposed the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution. This amendment abolished slavery in the United States and their territories and laid upon Congress the duty of carrying out this law. Eight of the states that had seceded voted for this amendment, and on December 18, 1865, it was declared to be a part of the Federal Constitution, since three-fourths of all the states, as required by the Constitution, had supported it.<sup>1</sup>

**400. The Freedmen's Bureau.**—On March 3, 1865, the Federal Congress established the so-called Freedmen's Bureau. Provisions and clothing and fuel were to be issued to the negroes, who were to be allowed to occupy abandoned and confiscated lands. The agents of the Bureau were the authors of the many evils that followed. Their promises to the negroes led the latter away from their homes and brought them in flocks to the towns and military camps. The great mass of the young negroes were thus taught to do nothing, and to get their living by begging.<sup>2</sup>

**401. Congress Assumes Complete Authority Over the States. December, 1865.**—The necessity of maintaining law and order forced the Southern legislatures in 1865 to enact laws for the prevention of idleness on the part of the negroes. A negro who would not work was, by these laws, declared a vagrant, and could be fined, and, in default of payment, be put to work.

When Congress assembled in December, 1865, the Southern senators and representatives presented their credentials. These

<sup>1</sup> Arkansas, Louisiana and Tennessee were considered as already reconstructed under Lincoln's plan. The Pierpont government at Alexandria was recognized as constituting the old State of Virginia.

<sup>2</sup> The difficult and dangerous state of affairs which was created in large measure by the Freedmen's Bureau, was only one of the many problems to be solved by the new Southern legislatures in 1865. Horses, oxen and implements needful for the processes of agriculture were nearly all destroyed. A severe drought in the summer of 1865 caused a failure of crops in large portions of the South. The abandonment of many of the farms by the negro laborers, because of the Freedmen's Bureau, only made the situation more difficult.

were not accepted, and the new representatives were not allowed to take their seats. It was charged by the Northern leaders that the recent vagrancy laws of the South constituted a "new slave code." They declared that the South intended to reënslave the negro. President Johnson's work of reconstruction was ignored, and a Committee of Fifteen was appointed by Congress to consider the whole question of the legal status of the South.

The Southern states thought that they should be readmitted at once, and so did President Johnson. Many of the Northern leaders thought that the South should be dealt with as conquered territory, and should have no rights except those that Congress granted. Congress proceeded upon this plan of the Northern leaders, and the military reconstruction system was adopted.

**402. Military Reconstruction. 1866 - 1870.**—Congress adopted, in 1866, the Civil Rights Bill, over the veto of the President. This Bill made the negroes citizens of the United States, but without the right to vote, and it provided that cases concerning the civil rights of freedmen should be heard in United States courts instead of state courts. This Bill was made a part of the Fourteenth Amendment which was submitted (1866) to the states for ratification.<sup>1</sup> This amendment not only gave citizenship to the negroes, but it took away the right to hold office from all white men who had formerly held office and had supported the Southern Confederacy. All the Southern states except Tennessee<sup>2</sup> refused to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment, and because of this refusal Congress passed the reconstruction measures of March 2 and March 23, 1867. These acts (1) overthrew the state governments already reconstructed by President Johnson, and (2) divided the territory of the Southern

<sup>1</sup> In July, 1866, the powers of the Freedmen's Bureau were enlarged by Congress, and the army was ordered to support the Bureau. This was done over the veto of President Johnson, who claimed that the Bureau had become a political machine, and was used for the personal advantage of its agents.

<sup>2</sup> Tennessee ratified in 1866, and was readmitted into the Union on July 24, 1866.

commonwealths into five military districts.<sup>1</sup> In these districts Congress proposed to create a new body of citizens and also a new body of voters.

Each of the districts was placed under the control of a military commander. The laws of the former states were displaced by military orders. The military commanders were ordered to organize new state governments, and to refuse the right of voting to every white man who had supported the Southern Confederacy, but to give this right to all negro men. The former supporters of the Confederacy were not allowed to hold office, and, therefore, adventurers from the North, called "carpet-baggers," who were chiefly agents of the Freedmen's Bureau, became the political leaders in the South. Conventions were called in each state, to frame a state constitution. These new constitutions were to be ratified by a body of voters, nearly all of whom were negroes and carpet-baggers. Afterwards, Congress itself must approve the state constitution. The reconstructed state was then to be admitted to representation as soon as its new legislature would ratify the Fourteenth Amendment. The Southern commonwealths were thus placed under the control of Africans who had never before taken part in the work of government. Moreover, these states were required to enter a new kind of Union by the adoption of a Constitution that had been changed in its character through Congressional Amendments.

**403. Readmission of the States. 1867-1870.**—The Constitutional conventions of the Southern states were in session during the winter of 1867-1868. The majority of the members of each convention were Northern carpet-baggers and negroes. In 1868, the state constitutions and the Fourteenth Amendment also were ratified in Arkansas, North Carolina, South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana; and these states were admitted to representation in Congress. Alabama was likewise declared to be

<sup>1</sup> The districts were: Virginia, Military District No. 1; North Carolina and South Carolina, District No. 2; Georgia, Alabama and Florida, District No. 3; Mississippi and Arkansas, District No. 4; Louisiana and Texas, District No. 5.

admitted along with the other states, in spite of the fact that a majority of the votes cast in the election was against the ratification of the Constitution.

The process of reconstruction was not yet completed in Georgia, Mississippi, Texas and Virginia. On July 28, 1868, it was announced that the requisite number of states had ratified the Fourteenth Amendment. On February 26, 1869, Congress



THE NATIONAL CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

proposed the Fifteenth Amendment, granting the ballot to the negro in all the states. The four states just named were required to ratify this amendment as well as the previous one, as the condition of admission to the Union. This process was finally accomplished in 1870. The white people of the South were not responsible for the reorganization of their commonwealths. The reconstructed states were in fact “born of the bayonet.”

**404. The Impeachment of President Johnson. 1868.—**  
Congress in 1867 passed a law depriving the President of the power of removing officers without the consent of the Senate.

Johnson then demanded the resignation of Edwin M. Stanton from the Cabinet, as Secretary of War. Stanton refused, and Johnson suspended him from the office and appointed Ulysses S. Grant to the vacancy.

February 24, 1868, the House of Representatives undertook to impeach the President on the ground that he had refused to obey a law passed by Congress. The Senate sat as a bench of judges. The trial began March 5, 1868, and was concluded on May 16th, by the acquittal of Johnson, although the change of a single vote in the Senate would have resulted in his conviction.

**405. Events of Johnson's Administration.**—The first ocean telegraph cable was laid in 1858, but it did not prove a success. In 1866, Cyrus W. Field, of New York, laid the first successful cable under the Atlantic Ocean from Valentia Bay, Ireland, to Newfoundland.

The year 1867 marked the purchase of Alaska from Russia for some seven million dollars.

On March 1, 1867, **Nebraska** was admitted as a state into the Federal Union.

On June 19th, 1867, Archduke Maximilian of Austria was shot by order of a military commission in Mexico. Napoleon III. of France had established (1862) a monarchy in Mexico, and placed Maximilian upon the throne. The United States demanded the withdrawal of the French troops, for the reason that their presence in Mexico was contrary to the Monroe Doctrine. The Mexicans then executed the foreign king, and restored their republic.

**406. Negro Rule in the South, 1868-1877.**—With the adoption of the new state constitutions began the attempt of negroes to administer the affairs of the Southern states. Legislatures were chosen in each of the eleven Confederate States, and the majority of the delegates in each legislature was composed of negroes and the carpet-baggers, who were, as a rule, unscrupulous white men. Heavy taxes were laid upon the white people, and public money was taken in large sums and in various ways by the legislators and their friends.<sup>1</sup> Enormous debts were rolled

<sup>1</sup> Many members of the legislatures took the money of the state upon the pretext that they would use it in building railroads. The roads were rarely

up by the dishonest lawmakers. In a period of five years the public debt of South Carolina was increased by the sum of \$16,000,000, and yet no public works of any importance were constructed. Some other states suffered almost to the same extent.

There was no law and no justice under this negro and carpet-bag rule. Crime went unpunished. Property was not safe. Corrupt and ignorant men were appointed to judgeships and other high offices. Some of the governors pardoned offenders before trial, or made executive pardons a matter of bargain and sale.

A club of young white men, organized under the name "Ku Klux" in Pulaski, Tennessee, in 1866, for the purpose of amusement, became an important political factor in many parts of the South. Southern men, in their desperation under negro tyranny, formed a large number of secret societies, called the Ku Klux Klan, and through these organizations they overawed the superstitious black race. Disguised horsemen rode about the country at night, and frightened turbulent negroes to such an extent that they remained away from the polls. Sometimes severe forms of violence were practiced in order to prevent the negro from voting.

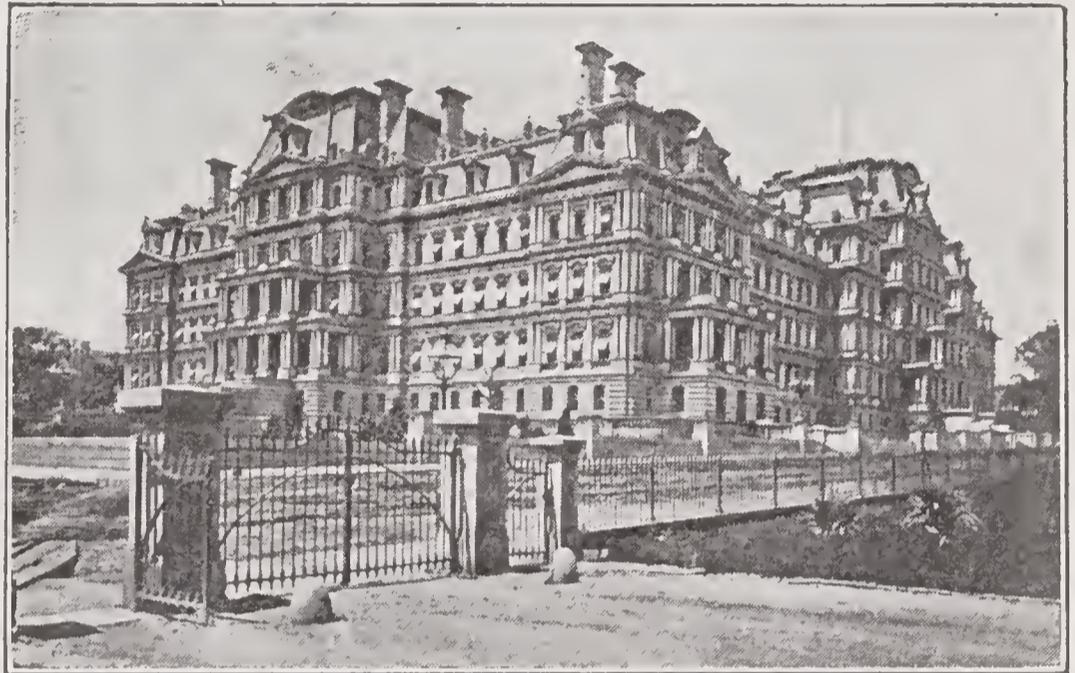
Congress again came to the aid of the negro by enacting two Force Bills. These imposed fine and imprisonment upon all persons who attempted to interfere with the negro's voting, or with the counting of the votes cast in an election.

In 1872 rival Democratic and Republican governments were established in Louisiana. Each claimed to be the legal government. Federal troops entered the State and supported the claims of the carpet-bag governor.

completed, but the carpet-baggers retained the state's money. The South Carolina legislature spent over \$200,000 for furniture to place in the State House. Most of this furniture was carried away by the legislators. The "incidental" expenses of this legislature amounted in one session to the sum of \$350,000.

**407. The Presidential Election of 1868.**—In the search for presidential candidates in 1868, Johnson was not acceptable to either of the political parties. The Republicans nominated Grant, and the Democrats selected Horatio Seymour, of New York. Grant re-

ceived 214 electoral votes to 60 cast for Seymour, but four of the Southern states did not take part in the election. The popular vote for Seymour was 2,703,249 to 3,012,833 for



THE BUILDING OF THE STATE, NAVY AND WAR DEPARTMENTS.

Grant. Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, was chosen to be Vice-President. Grant was inaugurated as President on March 4, 1869.

**408. International Arbitration.**—During Grant's administration the "Alabama Claims" were pressed by the United States against Great Britain. These claims were based on the charge that the British government permitted the *Alabama* and other Confederate cruisers to go to sea from British shipyards. An arbitration court at Geneva (1872) awarded to the United States \$15,500,000 as damages to be paid by Great Britain.

The question of the northwestern boundary between the United States and Canada, and the rights of American fishermen in Canadian waters, which were matters in dispute between the United States and Great Britain, were adjusted by the Treaty of Washington in 1871. The northwest boundary was referred to the German Emperor as arbiter, who gave his decision in favor of the United States. Other matters were referred to courts of arbitration or to joint commissions.

San Domingo, the eastern half of the island of Haiti, is a negro republic. In 1869, President Grant made a treaty with these negroes, annexing their republic to the United States. The Senate, however, refused to confirm the treaty.

**409. Financial Matters. 1866-1873.**—On January 1, 1866, the public debt of the United States amounted to \$2,740,000,000. In 1869 a law was passed providing that, at the earliest practicable period, a certain part of the public debts should be paid, not in paper money, but in money coined from gold or silver or from both metals. Another law was passed in 1873, providing that the old silver dollar should be dropped out of the list of coins in use. By this act silver was said to be “demone-tized.”

In 1872 Congress advanced the salary of the President of the United States from \$25,000 a year to \$50,000, and that of each congressman from \$5,000 to \$7,500. The increase was made to apply to the case of the members of the Congress which passed the bill, and also to date back to the time when these members entered Congress. Such disapproval was expressed by the people against this “Salary Grab Act” that the measure was repealed in so far as it applied to congressmen.

In 1873 a financial and commercial panic swept over the country. It began in New York City, in September, with the failure of the banking house of Jay Cooke & Company, which was interested in the building of the Northern Pacific Railroad. Another large house failed also, and there followed the panic of “Black Friday” at the Stock Exchange. This panic affected the entire country; factories were closed, banks were suspended, and much want and suffering came upon the people.

**410. The Election of 1872.**—There was a strong element in the Republican party which was not in sympathy with the use of the army to hold the Southern people in subjection to negro rule. These men organized the **Liberal Republican party** in 1872, which nominated Horace Greeley for the presidency. The platform charged Grant’s administration with “arbitrary and unpatriotic conduct toward the South, and with selfish and unscrupulous use of power.” Upon this platform Greeley was accepted as candidate, by the Democratic party. Grant was renominated by the Republicans, and was reelected by an elec-

toral vote of 286 to 63. Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, became Vice-President.

**411. Corruption in the Government 1873-1877.**—During Grant's second administration, the management of the affairs of the government was brought into great reproach by some of the men appointed to public office by the President. His Secretary of War, General Belknap, was impeached for accepting bribes, but escaped punishment by resigning his office (1876). Many government officials were indicted (1875) for their connection with the whisky distillers in the West, through which large amounts of the public revenue were stolen. In 1872 some Cabinet officers and members of Congress were openly charged with accepting Pacific Railway stock as a bribe from a corporation known as the Credit Mobilier, which had undertaken to build the Union Pacific Railroad. Congress investigated the charges, censured two of its own members, and then allowed the matter to drop.



HORACE GREELEY.

*Horace Greeley*

**412. Indian Wars. 1872-1878.**—Two Indian wars broke out during Grant's administration. The Modoc Indians of southern Oregon began a war in 1872, but they were completely overcome, and those who were left were removed to the Indian Territory. In 1878 the Sioux Indians, under their chief, Sitting Bull, attacked the white settlers in Montana and Wyoming. General Custer with only 250 men followed the Indians into the country near the Black Hills of Dakota, where he was surrounded by a large force, and he and all of his men were slain. The Indians were afterward overcome, and Sitting Bull and those who remained with him fled into Canada.

**413. The Centennial Exposition. 1876.**—The year 1876 marked the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence, and it was celebrated by a great international Ex-

position at Philadelphia. The material development of the American people in the course of a hundred years was placed before the eye in a great series of inventions, implements, furnishings, books, periodicals and works of art.

In this centennial year the commonwealth of Colorado was admitted as the thirty-eighth State in the Union, August 1, 1876.

**414. The Presidential Election of 1876-1877.**—The Republican party, in 1876, nominated Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for the presidency; the Democratic party, Samuel J. Tilden, of New York. In Louisiana, Florida and South Carolina there



THE SCENE OF GENERAL CUSTER'S FIGHT.

existed two state governments, one representing the negroes and carpet-baggers, and the other the whites. In each instance Grant supported, with Federal troops, the carpet-bag government. The face of the returns in these three states indicated

the election of Tilden electors, but the certificates were given by the carpet-bag governments to the Hayes electors. Tilden lacked only one elector of winning the election, so that if he could have received the vote of one of the disputed states, he would have been President.

To settle the dispute Congress appointed an electoral commission, consisting of five senators, five representatives and five justices of the Supreme Court. The disputes connected with the election were brought before this commission, only to be decided by the vote of eight Republicans to seven Democrats.

On March 2, 1877, the commission awarded the presidency to Rutherford B. Hayes. William A. Wheeler, of New York, was made Vice-President.

### Questions.

1. Who was Andrew Johnson?
2. What was Lincoln's plan for reconstructing the Southern states?
3. What was Johnson's plan of reconstruction?
4. When Congress opened in December, 1865, what Southern states were reconstructed?
5. What was the Thirteenth Amendment?
6. What was the Freedmen's Bureau? What trouble did it cause in the South?
7. What laws were passed by the Southern legislatures?
8. What attitude did Congress take towards the reconstructed Southern states?
9. Give an account of the military plan of reconstruction. What was the Fourteenth Amendment?
10. For what purpose were conventions called in the South in 1867? Who controlled them? What states were admitted into the Union in 1868? What was the Fifteenth Amendment? Which were the last four states to be admitted?
11. Why was President Johnson impeached?
12. Tell of ocean cables. What territory was acquired in 1867? What state was admitted in 1867? Tell of the interference by the United States in Mexico.
13. What did the negro legislatures of the South do? Tell especially about South Carolina. What was the Ku Klux movement in the South? What were the Force Bills? How were the carpet-bag governments upheld in the South?
14. Tell of the presidential election of 1868.
15. Tell of the Treaty of Washington. What were the Alabama claims? What was done about San Domingo?
16. What financial legislation was enacted in 1869 and in 1873? What was the "Salary Grab" act? What was the panic of 1873?
17. Tell of the presidential election of 1872.
18. Tell of the corruption of the government during Grant's second administration.
19. Tell of the wars with the Indians.
20. What was the Centennial Exposition? What state was admitted in 1876?
21. Tell of the presidential election of 1876-77.

### Geography Study.

Locate the five military districts into which the South was divided. Name the four slaveholding states that did not secede. Trace the course of the first successful Atlantic cable. Find Alaska and Nebraska. Trace the northwestern boundary of the United States. Trace the different railroads running from the East to the Pacific coast. Locate the home of the Modoc Indians in 1872 and the home of the Sioux Indians in 1878. Find Colorado.

### THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE CONFEDERATE FLAG.



#### 1. THE STARS AND BARS.

This was the flag first adopted in 1861 by the Confederacy of seven states. The two outside bars were red and the central bar was white. The field of the union was blue and it was occupied by seven five-pointed stars. The colors were the same as those of the old flag of the United States.

On the afternoon of July 21, 1861, while Early's brigade was marching from the Confederate right to aid the Confederate left, Early's flag was folded so closely about the flagstaff in the still air that Beauregard could not, at first, decide whether it was a Federal or a Confederate flag. After some time a slight breeze blew the folds of the flag away from the staff, and then Beauregard recognized the stars and bars of the Confederate brigade. After the Battle of Manassas, Johnston and Beauregard agreed upon a flag to be used by the Confederate regiments upon the field of battle.

#### 2. THE BATTLE FLAG, OR THE SOUTHERN CROSS.

This was not the official flag of the Confederate States, but the banner carried by the soldiers into battle. It was the union of the

official flag, with a red field crossed by two bars of blue. These bars had narrow borders of white and contained thirteen white stars, each star having five points.



### 3. THE FLAG OF THE CONFEDERATE STATES.

On the first of May, 1863, the Confederate Congress declared that the flag of the Confederate States should be as follows: "The field to be white, the length double the width of the flag, with the union—now used as the battle flag (No. 2)—to be a square of two-thirds the width of the flag, having the ground red; thereon a broad saltier of blue bordered with white and emblazoned with white mullets or five-pointed stars, corresponding in number to that of the Confederate States." The number of stars was thirteen, for the reason that Missouri (November, 1861) and Kentucky (December, 1861) were formally declared to be members of the Southern Confederacy.

When this flag fell in folds around the flagstaff, only the white color was seen. It looked like a flag of truce. Another change was, therefore, necessary.

### 4. THE NEW FLAG OF THE CONFEDERATE STATES.

On March 4, 1865, the Confederate Congress adopted a new flag as follows: "The width shall be two-thirds of its length, with the union (now used as the battle flag) to be in width three-fifths of the width of the flag, and so proportioned as to leave the length of the field on the side of the union twice the width of the field below it; it shall have the ground red and a broad blue saltier thereon, bordered with white and emblazoned with mullets or five-pointed stars corresponding in number to that of the Confederate States (thirteen). The field of the flag shall be white, except the outer half from the union, which shall be a red bar extending the width of the flag."

## PART VI. SECESSION AND RECONSTRUCTION. 1856-1877.

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS.

	SECTION
STEPS LEADING TO THE WAR.	1. The Dred Scott Decision . . . . . 323
	2. The John Brown Raid . . . . . 325
	3. The Split of the Democratic Party . . . . . 327
	4. Lincoln's Election . . . . . 327
	5. Secession . . . . . 328
	6. Organization of the Confederacy . . . . . 331
	7. Failure of Compromise . . . . . 329, 330
THE WAR IN 1861.	1. The Controversy over Fort Sumter and its Bombardment . . . . . 333
	2. Lincoln's Policy . . . . . 332, 335
	3. The Virginia Campaign . . . . . 337
	4. War in the West . . . . . 338
	5. The Blockade of the Coast . . . . . 339
	6. The Strength of the Two Confederacies . . . . . 340
	7. The Principles Involved . . . . . 342
THE WAR IN 1862.	1. The Plan of the Campaign . . . . . 344
	2. The Capture of New Orleans . . . . . 345
	3. The Federal Gains along the Mississippi 346-349
	4. The Confederate Advances into Tennessee and Kentucky . . . . . 348
	5. Murfreesboro . . . . . 350
	6. Results in the West . . . . . 351
	7. The Defensive Policy of the Confederacy in the East . . . . . 352
	8. The <i>Virginia (Merrimac)</i> and the <i>Monitor</i> 353
	9. Jackson's Valley Campaign . . . . . 354
	10. McClellan driven from Richmond . . . . . 355, 356
	11. War in Northern Virginia and Maryland 357-359
	12. The Situation in Virginia at the close of 1862 . . . . . 360

	SECTION
THE WAR IN 1863.	1. Lincoln's Policy of Freeing the Slaves . . . . . 361
	2. West Virginia Formed . . . . . 362
	3. The Federal Plan to Divide the Confederacy . . . . . 363
	4. The Mississippi in the hands of the Federals . . . . . 364
	5. War in Tennessee . . . . . 365
	6. War on the Gulf . . . . . 366
	7. The Federals Driven Out of Virginia . . . . . 368
	8. The Confederates Invade Maryland and Pennsylvania . . . . . 369, 370
	9. Operations along the Coast . . . . . 371
	10. The Situation of the Confederacy in West and East at the Close of 1863 . . . . . 367, 372
THE WAR IN 1864.	1. The Federal Plan of Campaign . . . . . 373
	2. Grant and Lee in Virginia . . . . . 374-376
	3. The Campaigns in the Valley of Virginia . . . . . 377, 378
	4. Sherman in Georgia . . . . . 379, 382
	5. Hood in Tennessee . . . . . 381
	6. The Confederate Cruisers . . . . . 383
	7. The Political Situation in the North . . . . . 384
	8. War Prisoners . . . . . 385
	9. The Condition of the Confederacy at the Close of 1864 . . . . . 386
THE WAR IN 1865.	1. The Federal Plan for the Subjection of the Confederacy . . . . . 387
	2. The Capture of Fort Fisher . . . . . 388
	3. Sherman in North and South Carolina . . . . . 389
	4. Lee and Grant around Richmond . . . . . 390
	5. Appomattox . . . . . 391
	6. Comparison of Federal and Confederate Forces . . . . .
	7. Cost of the War . . . . . 392
	8. Lincoln's Assassination . . . . . 393
	9. The Treatment of Davis . . . . . 394
	10. The Condition of the Country at the Close of the War . . . . . 395

		SECTION	
RECONSTRUC- TION.	1.	Reconstruction as Proposed by Lincoln . . . . .	397
	2.	Johnson's Reconstruction of the Southern States . . . . .	398
	3.	Congressional Legislation Bearing on the South . . . . .	399-402
	4.	Military Reconstruction . . . . .	402
	5.	The Southern States Readmitted . . . . .	403
	6.	Amendments to the Constitution . . . . .	399, 402, 403
	7.	Johnson's Impeachment . . . . .	404
	8.	Negro and Carpet-bag Governments of the South . . . . .	402, 406, 414
	9.	The Sending of Federal Troops into Southern States . . . . .	402, 414
	10.	Main Events of Grant's Administration . . . . .	408-413
	11.	The Election of Hayes . . . . .	414





## PART VII.

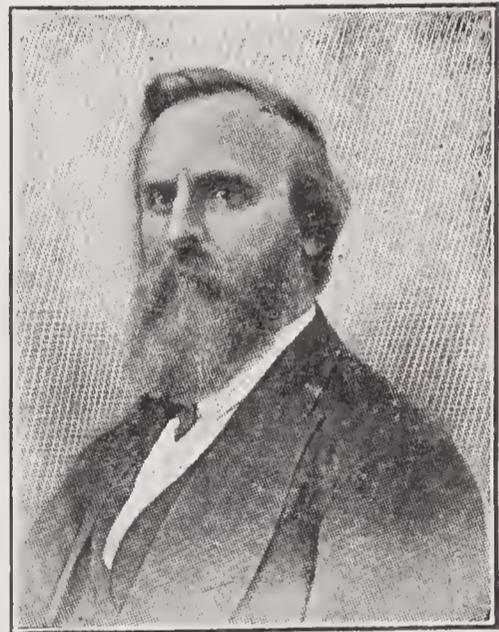
### PERIOD OF THE NEW FEDERAL UNION.

1877-1904.

#### CHAPTER XL.

##### INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT.

**415. Hayes's Administration. 1877-1881.**—Rutherford B. Hayes<sup>1</sup> was inaugurated as President on the 4th of March, 1877. Soon afterwards he recalled from Louisiana, Florida and South Carolina the Federal troops that had been stationed there. Public sentiment in the North had turned strongly in favor of this withdrawal during Grant's second administration. The carpet-bag governments fell at once with the departure of the Federal soldiers. The control of public affairs was quietly assumed by the governors chosen by the white people of Louisiana, Florida and South Carolina.



*R. B. Hayes.*

In the year 1877, several railroad companies in the North reduced the wages of their men. Almost all of the railroad employees between New England and the Mississippi River refused

<sup>1</sup> Rutherford B. Hayes (1822-1893) was from Ohio. In early life he became a lawyer. In 1861 he entered the Federal army and attained the rank of major general of volunteers. He was a member of the House of Representatives 1865-67, and governor of Ohio 1867-71 and 1875-76.

to work at the reduced rate, and would not allow other men to take their places. Trains were not allowed to run, and railway traffic was brought to a standstill. This mode of demanding higher wages is called a strike. The Pennsylvania coal-miners took part in the movement ; they burned freight-cars and railroad buildings, and actually fought battles against the state militia.

In 1878 the yellow fever broke out in the lower Mississippi Valley, and nearly 15,000 persons died. Great courage was shown by many in remaining, at the peril of their lives, to nurse the sick.

The Mississippi River had gradually become more shallow at the point where it emptied its waters into the Gulf of Mexico. James B. Eads, designer of a bridge across the Mississippi at St. Louis, proposed a plan to deepen the channel of the great river. Congress appropriated money, and Eads began (1875) to build walls of wood and stone, called jetties, which confined the current of the stream within a narrow channel. The mud which lay in the bed of the river was carried into the gulf by the current, and the channel was made deep enough to allow the passage of sea-going vessels up the Mississippi as far as New Orleans.

**416. Financial and Political Measures.**—On January 1, 1879, John Sherman, Secretary of the Treasury Department, announced that he would give out gold in payment of any public debts that were due. The credit of the government was increased by this resumption of specie payment, as it was called, and a large portion of the public debt was placed at a lower rate of interest.<sup>1</sup>

Both branches of Congress became Democratic in 1879. This Congress endeavored to repeal the election laws which authorized the use of Federal soldiers at the voting places in the South.

<sup>1</sup> In 1878, the Bland-Allison Bill was passed, which provided for the recoinage of the silver dollar containing by weight  $412\frac{1}{2}$  grains. The government was authorized to issue silver dollars to the value of not less than \$2,000,000 nor more than \$4,000,000 a month.

President Hayes vetoed all of those measures and the Democrats could not pass them over the veto.

**417. The Presidential Election of 1880.**—The Democratic presidential candidates in 1880 were Winfield S. Hancock and W. H. English. A strong attempt was made to nominate U. S. Grant as the candidate of the Republican party for a third term in the presidency, but this movement was defeated, and James A. Garfield,<sup>1</sup> of Ohio, became the Republican standard-bearer. Chester A. Arthur, of New York, was nominated for the vice - presidency. Two new political organizations calling themselves the **Greenback party** and the **Prohibition party** also placed candidates in the field.



PRESIDENT GARFIELD.



PRESIDENT ARTHUR.

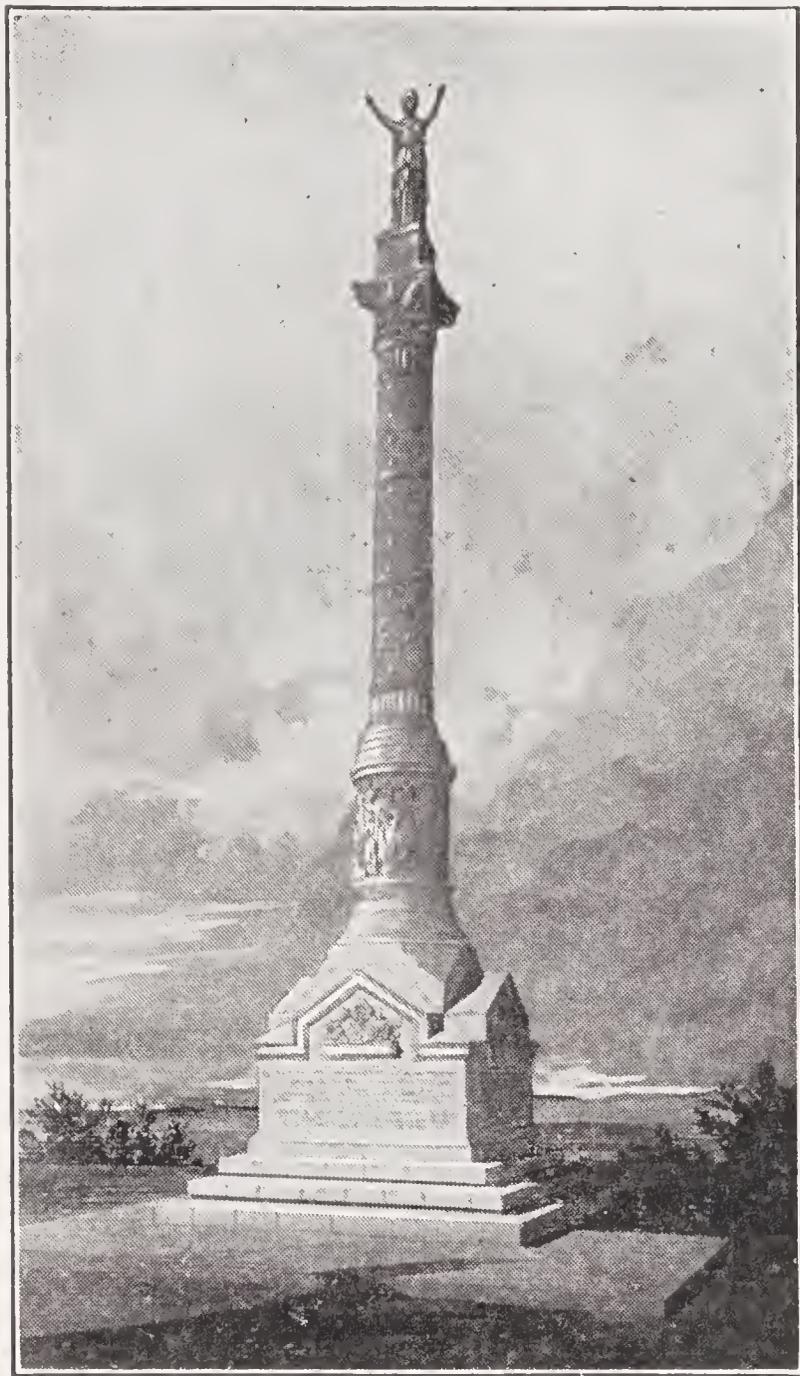
The chief issue in the campaign was the declaration of the Democrats in favor of a tariff for revenue only. Garfield received 214 electoral votes to 155 cast for Hancock.

**418. President Garfield. 1881.**—James A. Garfield was inaugurated as President, March 4, 1881. The Republican party was at that time separated into different factions. The members of the radical faction that had fought for the nomination of Grant for a third term were known as “Stalwarts.” Their leader was Roscoe Conkling, of New York. Some of President Garfield’s appointments to office did not please the Stalwarts and a serious political fight began.

In the midst of the excitement in connection with the new

<sup>1</sup> James A. Garfield (1831–1881) grew up in great poverty but managed to attain graduation from Williams College, Massachusetts, and later to study law. He became major general in the Federal army, in 1863. He was a member of the House of Representatives, 1863–80, and was a Senator at the time of his nomination to the presidency.

administration, a fanatic named Guiteau (Gē-tō') came to Washington to seek an office. He did not secure what he wished, and in consequence his hatred was aroused against the President. On the morning of July 2, he shot Garfield in the Pennsylvania Railway station in Washington. The hope was at first entertained that the wound was not mortal. The sympathies of the people of every section of the country were deeply stirred in be-



THE MONUMENT AT YORKTOWN.

half of the President, who bore his sufferings with great fortitude. He died at Elberon, New Jersey, September 19, 1881. Vice-President Arthur<sup>1</sup> at once succeeded to the office of chief executive.

**419. Events in Arthur's Administration. 1881-1885.**—On October 19, 1881, the centennial anniversary of the surrender of Cornwallis was celebrated at Yorktown, Virginia. The cornerstone of the Yorktown Centennial Monument was laid, and the ceremony was marked by the presence of President Arthur and of the representatives of the families of the French and German officers who aided

Washington in pressing the siege a hundred years before.

In 1883 Congress passed an Act providing for a Civil Service Commission, which should see that government places were filled

<sup>1</sup> Chester A. Arthur (1830-1886) was a native of Vermont; after his graduation from college, he taught school and then became a lawyer. He was quartermaster general of New York troops, in 1862, and was collector of the port of New York, 1871-78.

only by competent men and women—the appointments to be made upon the basis of competitive examinations. President Arthur put this law into effect at once.

An Industrial Fair was held in Atlanta in 1881, another in Louisville in 1883, and in 1884 the centennial anniversary of the first shipment of cotton from the United States was celebrated at New Orleans. Eight bags of cotton, about one bale, made up the first shipment of this article in 1784. There were 3,898,905 bales sent out in 1884, and of these some 2,000,000 bales were exported from New Orleans.

The year 1885 marked the completion, in the city of Washington, of the monument in honor of George Washington. The cornerstone was laid in 1848 by an association of individuals. Congress furnished the money to erect the shaft of white marble, 555 feet in height, capped with aluminum.

In 1887, the Edmunds-Tucker Act was enacted by Congress for the suppression of polygamy among the Mormons of Utah and neighboring territories. This bill dissolved the Mormon Church as a corporation and placed all of its property, except the sum of \$50,000, in the hands of trustees. The Mormon Church has continued, however, to be the source of discussion in the halls of Congress down to the present time.

In 1879 the New York *Herald* organized an expedition, under Captain DeLong, to explore the Arctic Ocean north of Bering's Strait. DeLong's vessel, the *Jeannette*, was crushed in the icebergs, and most of the party were lost. A few made their way to Siberia in eastern Russia. In 1884, Lieutenant Greeley's exploring party, which had entered the Arctic regions in 1881, was sought for and found by Captain W. S. Schley near the western coast of Greenland.

**420. The Presidential Election of 1884.**—Four candidates were placed in the field in the presidential campaign of 1884. Grover Cleveland,<sup>1</sup> Governor of New York, was nominated by the Democrats, and James G. Blaine, of Maine, by the Republicans. The Prohibitionists nominated John P. St. John, Governor of

<sup>1</sup> Grover Cleveland was born in New Jersey, in 1837, but he grew up in New York State. In 1859 he began to practice law. After holding many local offices, he became governor of New York, in 1883, and the next year he was elected President. He was defeated in the presidential election of 1888, but was reëlected in 1893. Since his retirement from the presidency, in 1894, he has lived at Princeton, N. J.

Kansas. A party variously named as the Anti-Monopoly, Greenback, Labor and People's party, nominated Benjamin F. Butler, of Massachusetts. Party lines were not closely drawn. Cleveland was elected by a vote of 219 to 182, the first Democratic President to enter office since 1856. Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, was chosen Vice-President.

**421. Cleveland's First Administration. 1885-1889.—**

The administration of President Cleveland<sup>1</sup> began with a faithful



PRESIDENT CLEVELAND.

carrying out of the Civil Service laws. Very few changes were made among minor office-holders. Many other offices, not covered by the first Civil Service law, were filled only by those who were successful in the competitive examinations.

In November, 1885, Vice-President Hendricks died. Soon afterward, Congress passed a law fixing the line of succession to the office of chief executive in case of the death of both President and Vice-President. It was

provided that in such an event the duties of the presidential office should be assumed by the members of the Cabinet in the following order: (1) Secretary of State; (2) Secretary of the Treasury; (3) Secretary of War; (4) Attorney General; (5) Secretary of the Navy; (6) Postmaster General; (7) Secretary of the Interior.<sup>2</sup>

In 1887 Congress passed the Electoral Count Act, providing that the individual states themselves shall have authority to

<sup>1</sup> The President's first message recommended five important measures to Congress: (1) The reduction of the tariff, (2) the extension of reform in the Civil Service, (3) the settlement of the fisheries dispute with Great Britain, (4) the regulation of the currency, and (5) the settlement of the presidential succession.

<sup>2</sup> The eighth in the order of succession to the office of President is the Secretary of the Department of Commerce and Labor, organized in 1903.

make final "determination of controversies" with reference to the choosing of presidential electors.

There were numerous labor strikes during Cleveland's administration, all organized for the purpose of securing higher wages and shorter hours for the workingmen. Another class of agitators, who styled themselves Anarchists, wished to overthrow the existing form of government and of society. In 1886 a number of anarchists made wild speeches to a crowd assembled in the Old Haymarket Square in Chicago. Some policemen who attempted to disperse the crowd were killed by the explosion of a dynamite bomb. The anarchist leaders, all foreigners, were brought to trial, and found guilty of murdering the policemen, and four of them were sent to the gallows.

President Cleveland (1887) urged the establishment of a tariff for revenue only. In response to his message, a tariff bill proposed by Roger Q. Mills, of Texas, was passed through the House. This measure proposed a heavy reduction in the duties laid on imports. The Republican majority in the Senate defeated the proposed law.

In 1887 Congress created, by the Interstate Commerce Act, a commission of five persons, upon whom was laid the duty of seeing that railroads offer just and uniform rates in every part of the country. The Commission was authorized to appeal to the courts for aid, if the railway companies should refuse to adopt their suggestions.

In August, 1886, a severe earthquake visited the coast region of the Carolinas and Georgia. Many houses in Charleston, South Carolina, were destroyed, and many more were seriously damaged.

**422. The Election of 1888.**—The Democrats, in 1888, nominated Grover Cleveland and Allen G. Thurman, of Ohio. The Republican candidates were Benjamin Harrison,<sup>1</sup> of Indiana, for President, and Levi P. Morton, of New York, for Vice-President. The chief issue in the campaign was the tariff. The Democrats announced themselves in favor of lowering the tariff duties, while the Republicans advocated a high tariff as

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Harrison (1833-1901) was a grandson of President William Henry Harrison, and great grandson of Benjamin Harrison, of Virginia, a signer of the Declaration of Independence. He practised law at Indianapolis, Indiana, served in the Federal army 1862-65, and was made brigadier general. He was a United States Senator from Indiana 1881-87.

constituting "the American system of protection" for home industries. Harrison received a majority in the electoral college, although Cleveland received at the polls 100,000 more votes than his opponent. Harrison had 233 electoral votes to 168 cast for Cleveland.

**423. The Pan-American Congress. 1889.**—A few months after the inauguration of Harrison, delegates came together in Washington from eighteen of the principal governments established on the American continent. Since this body represented all of the different American people, it was called the Pan-American Congress. There was much discussion of the problems arising out of trade among the several countries, and closer friendly relations were secured between the United States and the States of Central and South America.

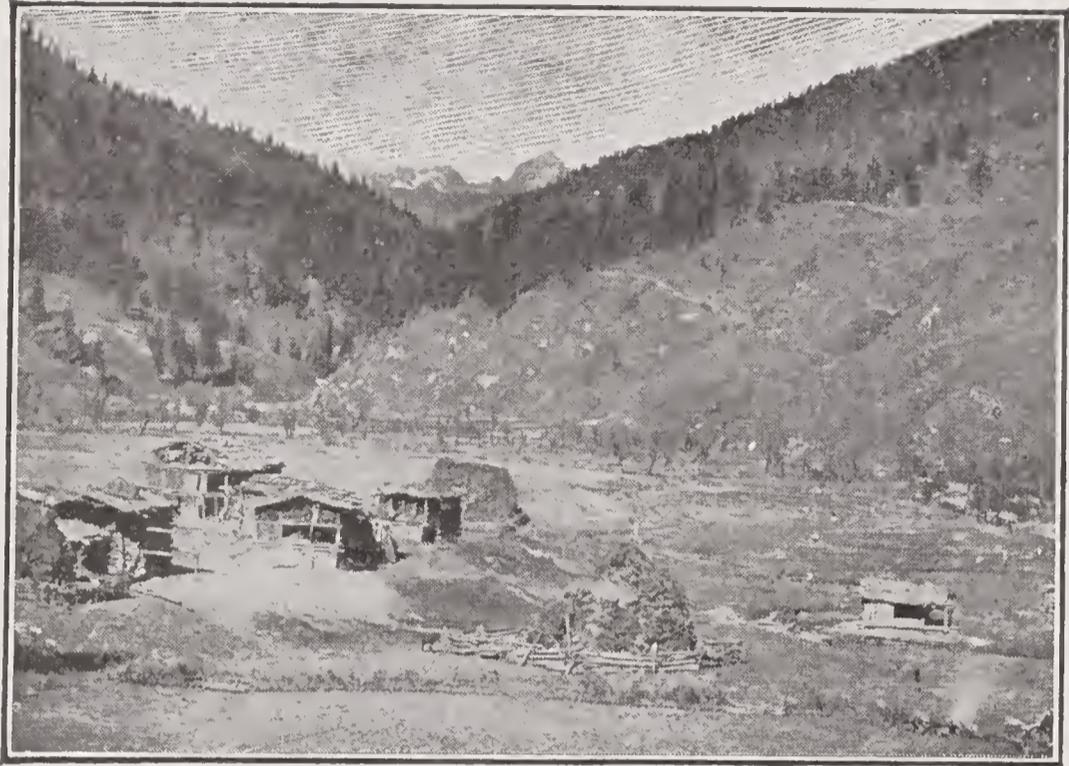
The Republican majority in the House of Representatives in December, 1889, was small. The Democratic minority attempted to delay action on certain political measures by refusing to answer to their names when the roll was called. The speaker, Thomas B. Reed, insisted on counting, as part of a quorum, members who were present, but who refused to answer when their names were called. The House finally changed its Rules, authorizing the speaker thus to count all members present as part of a quorum.

**424. A New Territory and New States. 1889, 1890.**—In 1889, the territory of **Oklahoma** was opened to white settlers. This tract of 39,030 square miles lies in the heart of the Indian Territory. At noon on April 22, 1889, the time fixed by President Harrison, a great crowd of settlers rushed across the border into Oklahoma, and began to stake off land. Within five months the new town of Guthrie had 4,000 inhabitants, four daily papers, a number of banks, and lines of street cars. In 1900 the population of Oklahoma was 398,245.

In 1889 four new states were admitted into the Union. These were **North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana** and **Washington**. In 1890 **Idaho** and **Wyoming** were admitted as states.

**425. The Tariff and Financial Measures.**—In 1890 the tariff bill proposed by William McKinley became a law. This measure placed some articles on the free list and reduced the rate on

others, but it imposed a higher tax on certain specific articles for the sole purpose of protecting American products and manufactures. The duties under the McKinley Tariff averaged nearly one half the value of the imported goods themselves, the heaviest tariff rate ever imposed in the history of our country.<sup>1</sup>



A SETTLEMENT AT THE FOOT OF THE ROCKIES.

In his first message to Congress (1885), President Cleveland advised the repeal of the Bland-Allison Act of 1878 (§ 416, Note), and the suspension of the coinage of silver dollars. In 1890, while Harrison was President, Congress repealed the Bland-Allison Act and passed the Sherman Act, which provided for the purchase of 4,500,000 ounces of silver each month; of this amount, 2,000,000 ounces a month were to be coined into dollars until July, 1891. In return for the silver thus purchased the United States Treasury issued its notes or promises to pay, which are known as silver certificates.

In 1880 a law was passed providing that pensions for Federal soldiers should begin with the date of the injury received. In 1883 the United States paid out \$66,000,000 in pensions.<sup>2</sup>

President Cleveland, however, vetoed hundreds of bills that proposed to give pensions to certain individuals who could not

<sup>1</sup>The McKinley Act provided for what is called reciprocity with other countries, by authorizing the President to regulate the tariff rates upon certain goods according to the way in which other countries do or do not levy duties upon goods from the United States.

<sup>2</sup>In 1820 the amount paid in pensions to Revolutionary veterans was only \$2,700,000.

claim pensions under the general law. In 1887 the Dependent Pension Bill was passed by Congress, providing pensions for all who had served ninety days in the war and were not able to labor, and for the widows, children and dependent parents of such persons; but Cleveland vetoed the bill. The measure was passed again, however, and approved by Harrison in 1890. By this increase, pension appropriations in 1893 amounted to about \$159,000,000. The annual amount in 1904 was about \$150,000,000, the largest single charge upon the Federal Treasury.<sup>1</sup>

**426. Events in Harrison's Administration. 1889-1893.—**

In 1891 some of the people of New Orleans broke into a jail and



PRESIDENT HARRISON.

*Benjamin Harrison*

put to death certain Italians who were in confinement. These prisoners were members of a secret society of cut-throats who had added to their list of assassinations the murder of the chief of police. Juries were overawed by threats and these outlaws were acquitted. The indignant community at once lynched the outlaws. This affair almost brought on war between Italy and the United States. The Italian government demanded reparation, and the Federal government paid \$25,000 to the families of the Italians.

A dispute arose with Great Britain, in the same year, with reference to the seal fisheries off the coast of Alaska. The United States claimed that the seals that passed from Alaska to the outer islands in the Bering Sea should not be taken by foreign fishermen. A treaty was finally made, providing for the settlement of the entire dispute by a court of arbitration.

<sup>1</sup> The states which once formed the Southern Confederacy have contributed for the support of disabled Confederate veterans a yearly aggregate sum of about one million dollars. The South thus assists in supporting the veterans of both the Federal and Confederate armies.

The court, which met in Paris (1893), gave a decision unfavorable to the claim of the United States.

In the summer of 1892 a violent labor riot broke out at Homestead, near Pittsburg, Pennsylvania. A general strike followed among the iron workers of that state. The entire militia of the Commonwealth was called out and kept under arms for some weeks before order was restored.

On October 16, 1891, some sailors wearing the uniform of the United States navy were attacked by a mob in Valparaiso, Chili. Two of the sailors were killed. The assault was due to the feeling of hostility toward the United States, held by one of the parties engaged in the existing civil war in Chili. Some time passed before the government of Chili was ready to apologize to the United States, and during this period of sharp correspondence, there was much talk concerning the possibility of war.

Among the last acts of President Harrison was the framing of a treaty for the annexation of the island of Hawaii to the United States. The Senate did not confirm the treaty and it was withdrawn by President Cleveland, two days after his inauguration.

**427. The Election of 1892.**—In 1892 the Republicans renominated Benjamin Harrison, and named Whitelaw Reid, of New York, for the vice-presidency. The Democrats nominated ex-President Grover Cleveland, and A. E. Stevenson, of Illinois. The People's or Populist party nominated J. B. Weaver, of Iowa, and J. G. Field, of Virginia. The main issue was the tariff. The Democratic party declared in favor of low tariff, the Republican party in favor of high tariff, while the People's party declared for Free Silver. Cleveland received 277 electoral votes, Harrison 145, and Weaver 22. The people of the country thus showed themselves in favor of a low tariff.<sup>1</sup>

**428. Cleveland's Second Administration. 1893-1897.**—The inauguration of Cleveland on March 4, 1893, brought the Democrats into full control of all branches of the Federal government. Congress met in extra session in August, 1893, and repealed the Sherman Act of 1890 (§ 425).

<sup>1</sup>There was, at this time, a great financial panic throughout the country, and the people were complaining of the "hard times." Congress repealed the Sherman Act, but the financial panic was not relieved.

The four-hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America was observed in 1892. "Columbus Day" was celebrated in various ways by the school children of the United States. In 1893 a World's Fair was held at Chicago as a memorial of the work of Columbus. Congress appropriated money for the construction of handsome buildings on the shore of Lake Michigan. All the countries of the earth were invited to take part in the Exposition. It continued with great success from May until October, 1893.

During the year 1894, Chicago was the center of a series of railway strikes. Property was destroyed on a large scale by the strikers and the traffic of the railroads was checked. Cleveland sent Federal troops to Chicago to protect the mails and interstate traffic, and the rioters were subdued.

On December 17, 1895, Cleveland sent a special message to Congress with reference to the refusal of Great Britain to arbitrate the question of a boundary line, in dispute with Venezuela. The government of the United States insisted that Great Britain should submit the matter to arbitration, basing this demand on the Monroe doctrine (§ 268). The possibility of war between the United States and England roused the country to a high pitch of excitement. Great Britain yielded to the demand for arbitration. A tribunal was selected, which rendered its decision (1899) in favor of the chief claims advanced by England.

Cleveland urged the Democrats in Congress to reduce the tariff duties. A bill was therefore presented in the House of Representatives by William L. Wilson, of West Virginia, proposing to abolish duties on raw materials and on the necessaries of life. A proposal to lay a tax upon the incomes of individuals was attached to the measure, and it was sent to the Senate. In this body the bill received more than six hundred amendments, which changed its character to such an extent that the President would not approve it, and it became law without his signature.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The completed measure, known now as the Wilson-Gorman tariff, reduced the rate of duties from the previous average of forty-eight per cent. to an average of thirty-seven per cent. Wool was admitted without duty. The Supreme

**429. The Election of 1896.**—In 1896 the Republican nominees for President and Vice-President were William McKinley,<sup>1</sup> of Ohio, and Garret A. Hobart, of New Jersey. The Democrats nominated William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, and Arthur Sewall, of Maine. The Gold Democrats nominated J. M. Palmer, of Illinois, and S. B. Buckner, of Kentucky. A majority of the Democratic party favored the free and unlimited coinage of silver. On this proposition the party split, and therefore the Republicans won an easy victory. The Republican party declared against the free coinage of silver in favor of the gold standard.



ON A WESTERN WHEATFIELD.

McKinley received 271 electoral votes to 176 cast for Bryan, and was therefore inaugurated as President, with Hobart as Vice-President, on March 4, 1897.

**430. The Development of the Far Northwest.**—The Union and Central Pacific railroads, forming one continuous line across the continent, were completed in 1869. In 1870 work was begun upon the Northern Pacific Railway. Congress gave forty-seven million acres of public land for the construction of this road from Duluth to Puget Sound.

Court, by a vote of five to four, declared that Congress had no right to levy a tax upon incomes.

<sup>1</sup> William McKinley (1843–1901) entered the Federal army as a private soldier in 1861 and rose to the rank of major. After the war he became a lawyer. He was a member of the House of Representatives 1876–91, where he came into notice particularly for his tariff measures. He was governor of Ohio 1892–96, and was President from 1897 until his death by assassination.

The "Great American Desert" of the Northwest was transformed by the railways into a vast domain of corn and wheat farms and cattle ranches.<sup>1</sup>

Utah was admitted as a state in 1896. There were now forty-five commonwealths in the Federal Union.

**431. Growth of the South Since the War.**—The development of the resources of the South was begun by the Confederate soldiers who returned from the war to find their plantations the scene of desolation. When Federal troops were withdrawn from the South in 1877, that entire region suddenly entered upon a new life.<sup>2</sup> The Southern Pacific Railroad was built to connect New Orleans with the Pacific coast. Birmingham and Chattanooga have become great iron-making cities, and Atlanta has grown to an inland commercial center. The coal crop of the South increased from 6,048,000 tons in 1880 to about 28,000,000 in 1893. Cotton mills have been multiplied at so rapid a rate that the South, with more than three million spindles in 1900, bids fair to take from the North that manufacturing industry. Galveston, New Orleans, Mobile, Pensacola, Savannah, Charleston, Wilmington, Norfolk, Newport News and Baltimore have become important shipping ports. The ship-building plant at Newport News is one of the most extensive in the United States.

The industrial and commercial progress of the South has been marked by a series of important expositions, some of which have been already mentioned.<sup>3</sup> All of these displays of Southern re-

<sup>1</sup> Montana contained three million sheep in 1896; Idaho and Wyoming each had over one million. Sixty million bushels of wheat and thirty million bushels of corn were grown in the Dakotas. Chicago has been made a vast emporium for the grain and cattle trade of the Northwest. The mountain ranges are rich in mineral treasures. Colorado produced \$15,000,000 in gold and \$29,000,000 in silver in 1896.

<sup>2</sup> More than half of the standing timber of the United States was in the South. Wonderful veins of mineral wealth lay hidden in the mountains of the southern Appalachian range. The fruitfulness of the agricultural lands in the South is beyond calculation.

<sup>3</sup> The Cotton States and International Exposition opened its doors at Atlanta, Georgia, September 18, 1895. This city contained only about 100,000 inhabitants, and yet the exposition of 1895 was on a more extensive scale than

sources reveal a great manufacturing, commercial and agricultural section, no longer dependent on foreign countries.

The South contains fewer whites of foreign origin than any other section of the United States. The census of 1900 shows that the present population is almost entirely composed of native-born citizens, the descendants of those who first planted these commonwealths. Moreover, the rate of increase in population has been slightly greater in the South during the period from 1890 to 1900, than in any other part of the United States.



THRESHING RICE IN LOUISIANA.

In the North are included twenty-one states, from Maine to the Dakotas; in the West nine states and two territories, from New Mexico to California; in the South fifteen states, Oklahoma and Indian territories and the District of Columbia.

**432. The Chinese Race-Issue in the West.**—When Chinamen first came to California, in 1849, a race war between the Chinese and the white people was the almost immediate result.

the Centennial Exposition at Philadelphia in 1876. The month of December, 1901, marked the opening of a great Exposition at Charleston, South Carolina. Another, held in St. Louis in 1904, commemorated the Purchase of Louisiana, and Virginia celebrates, by an Exposition in 1907, the three-hundredth anniversary of the founding of the first commonwealth in America (1607).

The Burlingame Treaty (1868) allowed the further immigration of Chinamen into the United States, but the Californians continued to show bitter hostility towards them. In 1882 Congress passed a law prohibiting the entrance of Chinese into the United States for a period of ten years.

The spirit of race hatred against the Chinaman grew fiercer in the West. In 1888 a new Chinese Exclusion Bill was passed, virtually excluding all further immigrants from China. In 1892 the terms of this measure were made still more rigid, and Chinamen are now almost entirely debarred from our country.

**433. The Negro Race.**—When, in 1877, the carpet-bag governments were ended and the white people of the South resumed control over the governments of their states, they gave to the negroes profitable employment and encouraged them to acquire property. They taxed themselves to the amount of one hundred and fifty millions of dollars to furnish a system of schools for negro children. A fair percentage of the negroes have become property-holders. Many of them have learned to read. Some have received manual training in such schools as those at Hampton, Virginia, and Tuskegee, Alabama.

In the year 1890 Mississippi led the way among the Southern states in removing the negro from politics. This was done by the adoption of a new state constitution, which took away the right of voting from illiterate and non-property-holding men, white and colored. South Carolina adopted a similar plan in 1895. Louisiana, North Carolina, Alabama and Virginia also have changed their constitutions so as to limit suffrage. These constitutions are intended to free the white people from the political influence of the negroes.

The census reports for 1890–1900 indicate the fact that the negro race is not increasing at the same rapid rate that marks the growth of the white race. Moreover, the negro has begun to move slowly out of the South Atlantic states into the cities of the North, and into the new regions of the Southwest, especially into Oklahoma and Indian territories. The great African race problem may finally be settled through the distribution of the negroes among all the states.

### Questions.

1. What did Hayes do with reference to the South? Tell of the strike of 1877. Tell of the yellow fever scourge of 1878. How was the channel of the Mississippi River deepened?

2. What was the Bland-Allison Silver Bill?

3. Tell of the presidential election of 1880.

4. What was the condition of the Republican party in 1881? Tell of the assassination of Garfield.

5. What centennial was held in 1881? What was the Edmunds-Tucker Bill? For what purpose was a Civil Service Commission established? What industrial exhibitions were held during the Garfield-Arthur administration? What Arctic expeditions were undertaken?

6. Tell of the presidential election of 1884.

7. What were Cleveland's recommendations to Congress? What was the Presidential Succession Act? Tell of the Anarchists in Chicago. What was the Inter-State Commerce Act? What was the Mills Bill? What terrible disaster befell Charleston?

8. Tell of the election of 1888.

9. What was the Pan-American Congress? Tell of Reed and the change of the rules of the House of Representatives.

10. Describe the growth of Oklahoma. What states were admitted in Harrison's administration?

11. What was the McKinley Tariff Act? What was the Sherman Act? Tell of the Pension System.

12. What trouble occurred in New Orleans over the Italians? Tell of the trouble with Chili. What dispute was settled with Great Britain? What kind of riot occurred in Pennsylvania in 1892?

13. Tell of the presidential election of 1892.

14. What great exposition was held in 1893? What labor troubles occurred in 1894? What was the controversy with England over Venezuela? What was the Wilson Tariff Bill?

15. Tell of the presidential election of 1896.

16. Describe the development of the far Northwest. What was the last state to be admitted to the Union?

17. Tell of the great industries of the South. Tell of the exposition at Atlanta in 1895. What exposition has been held recently? What is the character of the white population of the South?

18. What is the great race question of California? What bills have been passed by Congress to regulate it?

19. How has the negro been treated by the white population of the South? Into what sections are the negroes migrating? What are the present educational and political conditions of the negro race?

### Geography Study.

Locate Pittsburg, Elberon, Yorktown, Louisville, New Orleans, Behring Strait, Greenland, Siberia, Chicago, Charleston, Oklahoma, Guthrie, North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, Washington, Idaho, Wyoming, Valparaiso, Hawaii, Venezuela, Duluth and Puget Sound. Find on the map the main seaport towns of the South. Trace the lines of the great railroads in the United States.

## CHAPTER XLI.

### TERRITORIAL EXPANSION AND SOME RECENT EVENTS.

1897-1916.

#### 434. McKinley's First Administration. 1897-1901.—

President McKinley was committed to the enactment of a tariff for the protection of home industries. (See §425.) On July 24, 1897, the Tariff Bill proposed by Nelson Dingley, of Maine, became a law. This measure virtually restored the high rate of tariff duties imposed by the McKinley Tariff measure of 1890.<sup>1</sup>



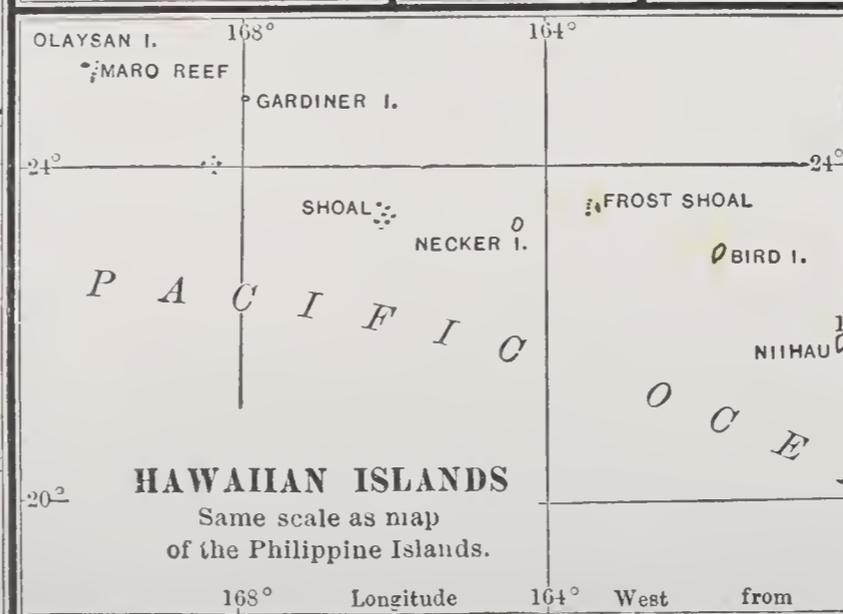
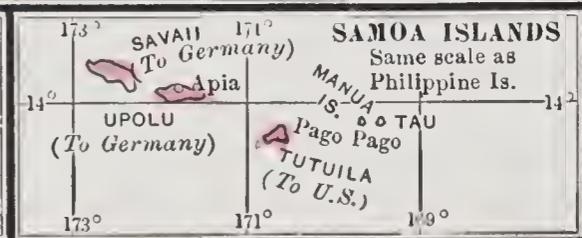
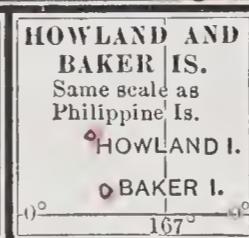
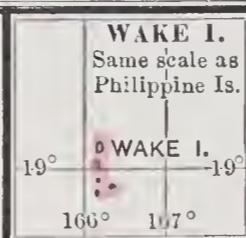
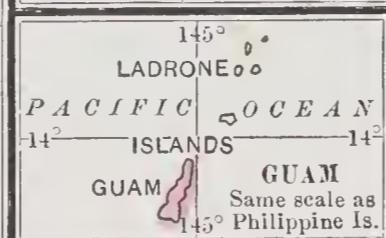
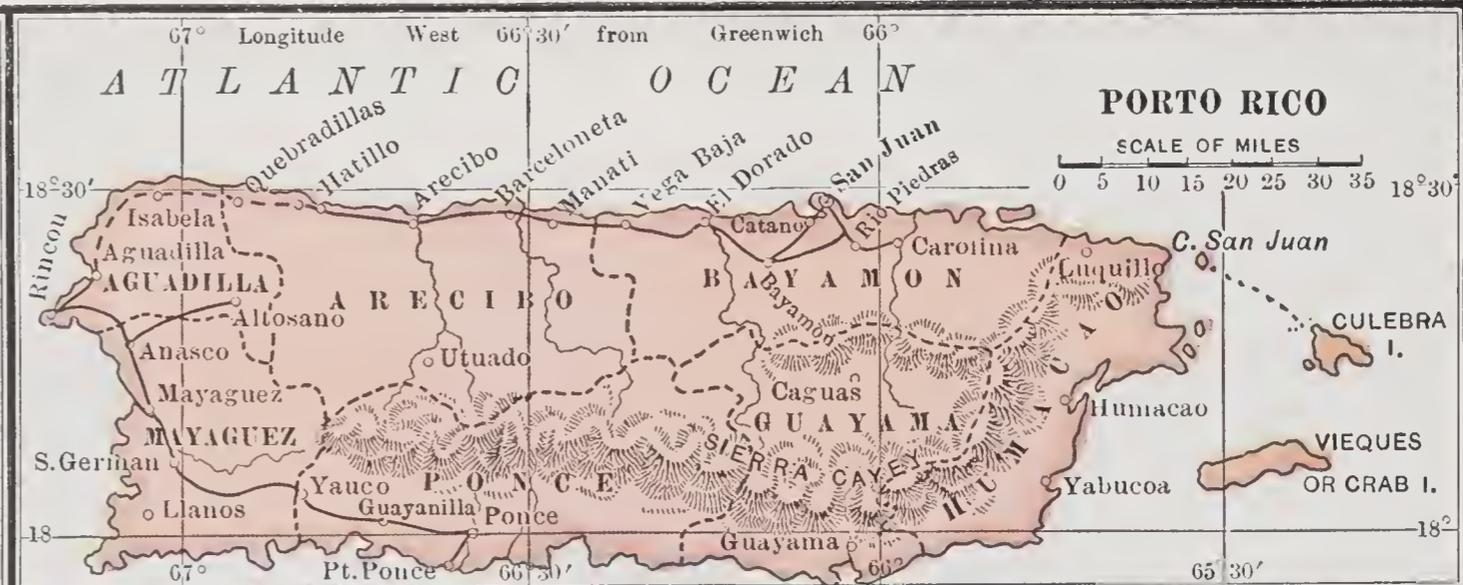
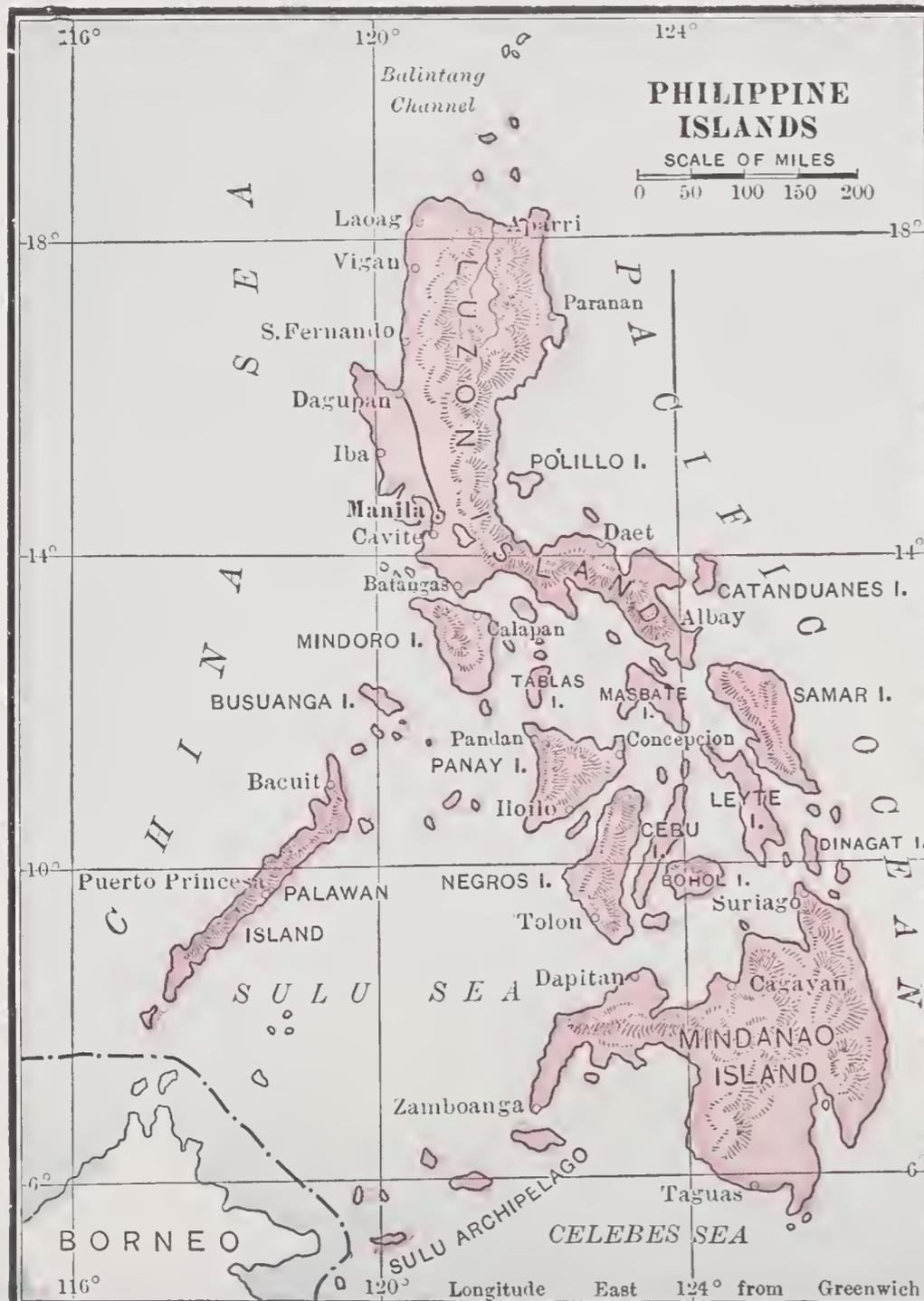
PRESIDENT MCKINLEY.

In April, 1897, McKinley appointed a monetary commission, consisting of three members, who visited Europe for the purpose of persuading a number of different countries to put gold and silver upon an equality as money.

The purpose of the commission was not accomplished.

Vast combinations of business enterprises, known as trusts, were formed during this administration, many of them under

<sup>1</sup> In 1898 the Dingley war-revenue tariff was enacted, imposing special additional taxes on beer and tobacco, placing a stamp tax on legal documents, bank checks and proprietary articles, and authorizing the issue of bonds to the amount of \$400,000,000.



Copyright, 1909, by Silver, Burdett and Company

**TERRITORIAL DEPENDENCIES OF THE UNITED STATES.**

the laws of New Jersey and Delaware. Some of the states have attempted to pass laws to prevent these combinations, but without effect. The consolidation of nearly all the steel manufacturing into one great business, and the organization of the leading western railroads under a single board of directors (1901), marked the climax in these great business ventures. Afterwards, in 1904, the Supreme Court decided that this combination of railroads under one board of management was not allowed by the Federal Constitution.

Gold in large quantities was discovered, in 1897, in the Klondike country, located in the British territory near Alaska, and a great throng of gold-seekers long continued to rush northward on the Pacific coast.

**435. The Revolt of Cuba against Spain. 1894-1898.**—Spain's mode of government in the island of Cuba was burdensome and oppressive to the people of Cuba. In 1868 Cuba first revolted against Spain and the war that followed was drawn out for ten years.<sup>1</sup> In 1894 the Cubans again organized a revolt against the authority of Spain. Spanish soldiers burned the homes of the people and laid waste the country in order to make it more difficult for the Cubans to get food. The Spanish Captain-General Weyler issued his reconcentration order, in obedience to which the people of Cuba were driven in large numbers into the towns or kept under guard near the towns by the Spanish army. Men, women and children, thus imprisoned, were called reconcentrados. Since they received in these prisons scarcely any food at all, thousands of them died of starvation.

**436. American Protest Against Spain's Policy.**—On January 8, 1898, the American consul-general at Havana, Fitzhugh Lee, reported that Weyler's order had brought together "about

<sup>1</sup> During the progress of this war the steamer *Virginus*, flying the flag of the United States, was brought into the harbor of Santiago de Cuba by a Spanish warship. Fifty-three of the men of the *Virginus* were shot by the Spaniards on the charge that the *Virginus* was in the service of the Cubans. Spain, however, gave up the *Virginus* to the United States and paid an indemnity for the murdered men.

400,000 self-supporting people, principally women and children," and had left them to die of starvation or of fever. Lee said further that as many as 200,000 people in the interior of Cuba had already died through lack of food. The sufferings of the



GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE.

Cubans aroused the deep indignation of the people of the United States, and the formal protest of President McKinley led Spain to make promises of reform in the government of Cuba.

In January, 1898, the United States battleship *Maine* was sent to protect American interests in Havana. On the night of February 15th, the *Maine* was destroyed by an explosion and 253

of her men perished.<sup>1</sup> Many of the people of the United States declared that the *Maine* had been blown up with the knowledge of the Spanish authorities and they began to demand the immediate expulsion of Spain from Cuba.

**437. The Declaration of War. 1898.**—On April 19, 1898, Congress adopted resolutions declaring that the Cuban people ought to be free and independent, in accordance with their own claim, and directed the President to use the military power of the United States to compel Spain to withdraw her forces from the island. In reply to this, Spain dismissed the United States minister, General Stewart Woodford, from Madrid; and Congress, on April 25th, declared that war existed between the two countries.

**438. The Battle of Manila Bay. 1898.**—The American fleet in Asiatic waters was concentrated at Hong Kong, China,

<sup>1</sup> A United States board of inquiry reported that the vessel was destroyed by a mine placed beneath her, but the board did not attempt to determine the responsibility. A Spanish board claimed that the explosion occurred inside the ship.

under Commodore George Dewey. Spain's Asiatic fleet was in Manila Bay. Dewey received orders from President McKinley to "capture or destroy the Spanish fleet." He, therefore, sailed from Hong Kong towards the Philippines, passed the Spanish forts at the entrance of Manila Bay in the early morning of May 1st, and opened fire on the Spanish fleet. The Spanish ships, ten in all, were speedily destroyed. Not a man was killed on the American ships. The country went wild with delight at Dewey's victory. Troops were sent across the Pacific from the United States, and on August 13, 1898, the American land and naval forces, under the command of General Wesley Merritt, captured the city of Manila.



ADMIRAL DEWEY.

**439. The Destruction of Spain's Atlantic Fleet.**—Two American squadrons were organized for the defense of the cities and harbors on our Atlantic coast.<sup>1</sup> Commodore Sampson was ordered to blockade the coast of Cuba, and Commodore Schley was stationed in Chesapeake Bay to protect the coast of the United States. A Spanish fleet of four swift cruisers and three torpedo-boat destroyers crossed the Atlantic under the command of Admiral Cervera and suddenly appeared in the West Indies. Sampson and Schley both sailed in search of this Spanish fleet, which was found at anchor in Santiago harbor, on the southern coast of Cuba.

Strong Spanish shore batteries compelled the American ships

<sup>1</sup>The battleship *Oregon* was on the Pacific Coast when the *Maine* was destroyed. On March 19th, she sailed from San Francisco southward. She passed around Cape Horn, and thence up the eastern coast of South America, and completed the journey of 15,000 miles to Florida, in time to take part in the blockade of Santiago.

to stand off and watch the mouth of the harbor. Lieutenant Victor Blue, of South Carolina, went around the city and harbor of Santiago and noted the position of the Spanish fleet. At the same time a land force under General William R. Shafter was sent against Santiago. The entrance of Santiago harbor is narrow and winding. For the purpose of closing this entrance, and thus keeping the Spanish fleet from coming out of the harbor,



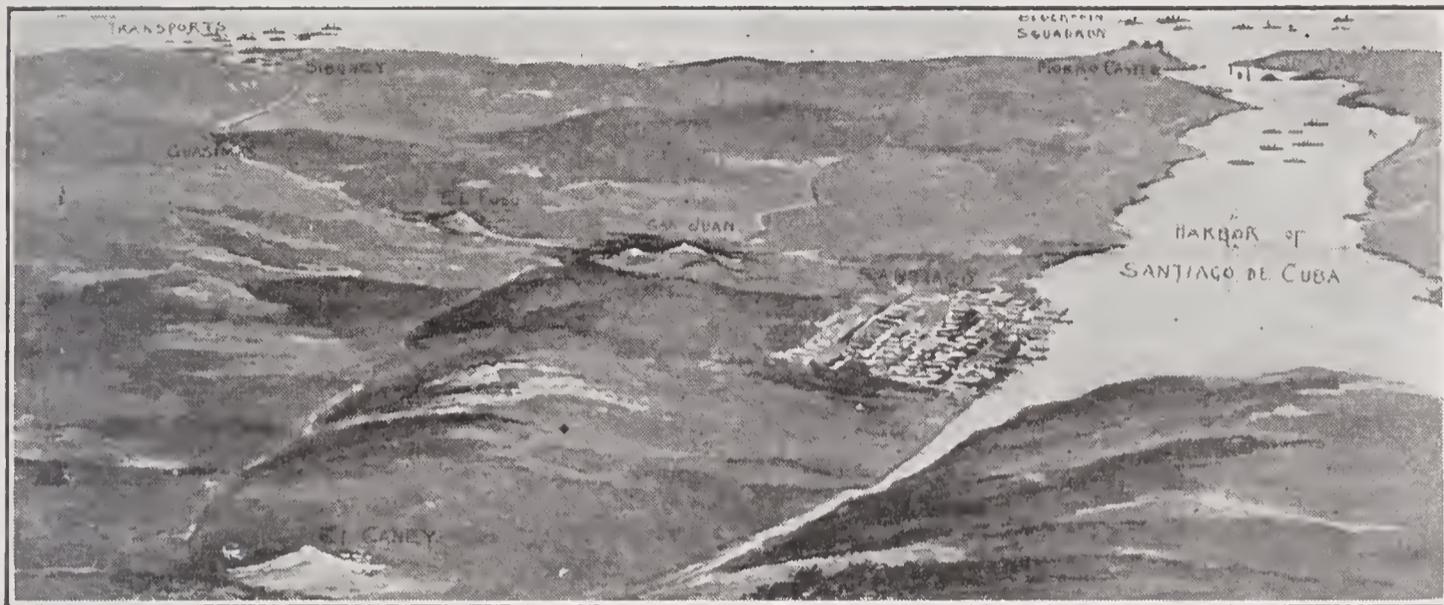
LIEUTENANT HOBSON.

Lieutenant Richmond P. Hobson, of Alabama, volunteered to take the collier *Merrimac* and sink her across the channel at the narrowest part. A Spanish shot broke the *Merrimac's* rudder chains and caused her to drift too far within the harbor before she sank. Hobson and his comrades fell into the hands of the Spaniards, but they were treated kindly by Cervera and were speedily exchanged.

On Sunday morning, July 3, 1898, Cervera suddenly and swiftly led his fleet out of the harbor with the intention of breaking through the blockading squadron. The American battleship *Massachusetts* was absent in search of a supply of coal, and the cruiser *New York* was ten miles away, bearing Sampson to a conference with Shafter. The eight remaining American vessels, under the leadership of Schley on the cruiser *Brooklyn*, rushed to meet Cervera's fleet. The Spanish torpedo-boat destroyers were sunk just outside the harbor. Cervera turned his four light cruisers westward, with the hope of escaping along the coast, but they were speedily overtaken and destroyed. Many of the Spaniards were slain; about 1,200 of them, with Admiral Cervera himself, were captured; and Spain was left without a navy.

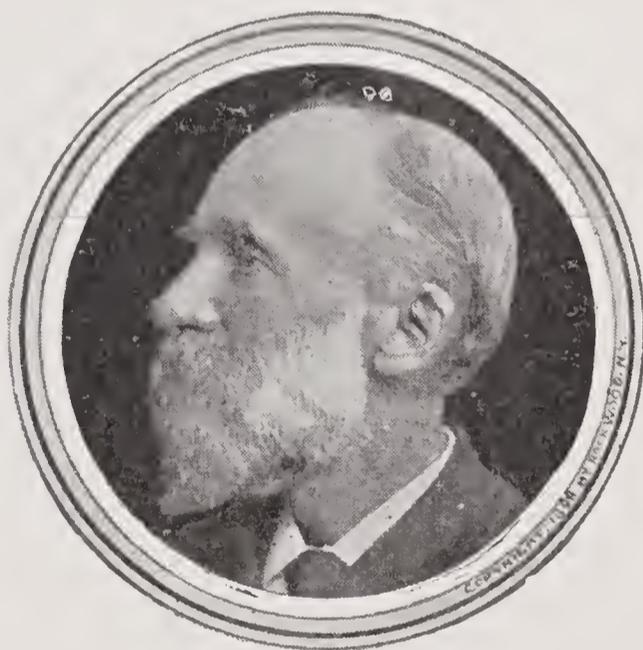
**440. The Army in Cuba. 1898.**—President McKinley's call for volunteers brought immediately some 200,000 men into the field. They came with eagerness from every section of the

United States—east and west, north and south.<sup>1</sup> Many veterans of the Federal and Confederate armies entered this war against Spain. Shafter's army of 16,500 was landed on the island



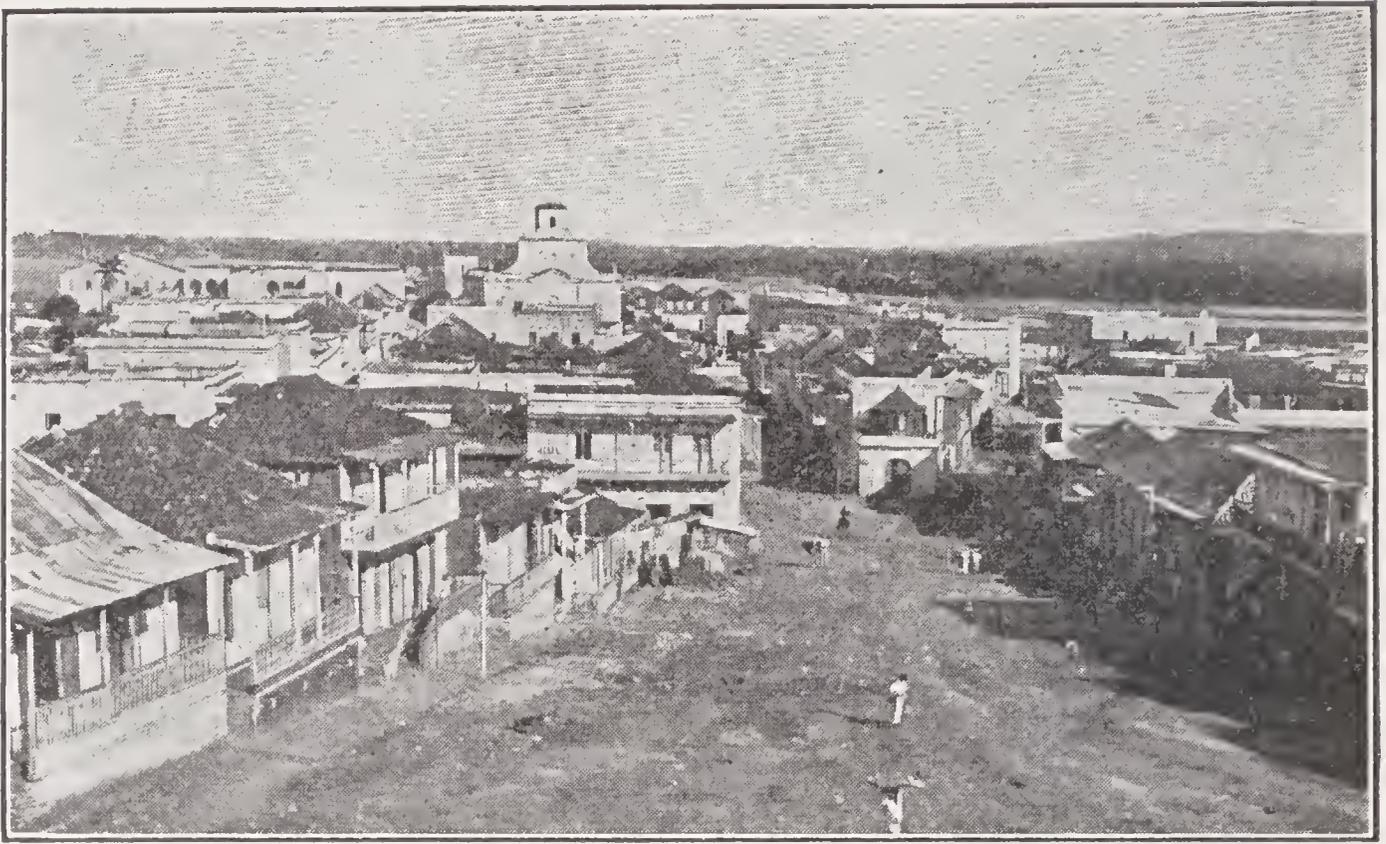
A BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF SANTIAGO AND VICINITY.

of Cuba at a point east of Santiago (June 22-23, 1898). The American soldiers were eager for the strife and pressed forward over steep mountains, in spite of the heat of the tropical region. The Spaniards occupied strong positions near Santiago at **El Caney** and **San Juan**. The regulars and volunteers advanced across wide open spaces under a hot fire from the Spaniards. The latter were driven from these strongholds (July 1-2), but the American troops found themselves in an advanced position under the fire of the batteries and rifles of the Spanish army at **Santiago**. Through the advice and encouragement offered by General Joseph Wheeler, of Alabama, a former Confederate cavalry leader, this advanced position was fortified and firmly held, and the Spaniards in



JOSEPH WHEELER.

<sup>1</sup> One noted company was known as Roosevelt's Rough Riders, a regiment of cavalry under the leadership of Leonard Wood and Theodore Roosevelt, composed of cowboys from the West and young men of university training from the East.



ARECIBO, A PORTO RICAN CITY.

Santiago were so hotly pressed by the American troops that the place was surrendered on July 17, 1898.

**441. The Campaign in Porto Rico.**—Porto Rico was the next object of attack. Commodore Sampson bombarded San Juan, a city on the northern coast of the island of Porto Rico, but without effect. On August 1st, General Nelson A. Miles, Commander-in-Chief of the United States Army, landed a force on the southern coast of Porto Rico, near Ponce (Pōn'thā). In a short while Porto Rico was in the hands of American soldiers.

**442. The Treaty of Peace. 1898, 1899.**—On August 12, 1898, Spain announced that she was ready to make peace. Commissioners from the two countries met at Paris in October, 1898, to arrange terms of peace. The treaty, signed December 10th, contained three provisions: Spain agreed (1) to surrender all claim of sovereignty over Cuba; (2) to give to the United States Porto Rico and other islands of the West Indies, and Guam, which is one of the Ladrone Islands in the Pacific Ocean; (3) to cede to the United States the Philippine Islands, for which the United States agreed to pay twenty million dollars. This treaty was ratified by the Senate of the United States, February 6, 1899.

**443. The Philippine Islands. 1899-1904.**—Emilio Aguinaldo was the leader of certain tribes in the Philippines, which desired independence. When Aguinaldo learned that these islands were to be transferred from the rulership of Spain to that of the United States, he attacked the American forces at Manila. Reinforcements were sent from the United States, and the American troops, led by General Otis, captured certain points in the islands of Luzon, Panay, Cebu and Negros. Our troops remained in active service on the islands, and in 1901 Aguinaldo was captured. The Filipino leader then advised his fellow countrymen to submit to the authority of the United States.

In January, 1899, three civil commissioners were ap-



A MARKET SCENE IN THE PHILIPPINES.

pointed by President McKinley to act with Otis in the management of the affairs of the islands. On account of the war the authority of these commissioners did not extend more than a few miles beyond the city of Manila.

In February, 1900, a new Philippine Commission consisting of five members appointed by President McKinley was inaugurated with imposing ceremonies at Manila. This commission was under the presidency of Judge William H. Taft, of Ohio. In 1902 Congress decided to establish a Civil Government in the islands. Taft, president of the commission, was appointed governor. He afterwards reported great progress in the work of pacifying and educating the people, and the Civil Government has been gradually extended. An assembly was organized consisting of representatives elected by the Filipinos. Large numbers of American teachers were sent to the islands to take charge of the public schools. In 1903 Taft was appointed Secretary of War as a member of President Roosevelt's cabinet, and Luke E. Wright, of Tennessee, was made governor of the Philippines.

**444. The Election. 1900.**—In 1900 the Republicans renominated William McKinley for President and Theodore Roosevelt, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democratic candidates were William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, and A. E. Stevenson, of Illinois. The Democratic platform declared that imperialism was to be the chief issue involved in the campaign. This meant that the people must decide the question whether the United States should annex and govern countries that lie beyond the sea. McKinley was elected by 292 electoral votes to 155 cast for Bryan.

**445. The Annexation of the Hawaiian Islands. 1893-1898.**—In 1893 a revolution took place in Hawaii and an attempt was made to secure the annexation of Hawaii by the United States, but President Cleveland thwarted the scheme. The following year, the revolutionists proclaimed a republic in Hawaii, with Sanford B. Dole as president.

In July, 1898, Congress adopted a joint resolution annexing the so-called Republic of Hawaii, and in 1900 Congress made provision for a regular territorial government in these islands. The Hawaiians are citizens of the United States and are represented by a delegate in Congress.

**Our Island Territories.**—The **Hawaiian Islands** are twelve in number, with a total population in 1900 of 154,001. There are about 3,000 Americans in the island, and one-half the population is Chinese and Japanese.

**Guam** is an island in the Pacific, some 900 miles from Manila. Its population of 9,000 is Filipino. It was ceded by Spain in the Treaty of Paris, 1898.

**Tutuila** is the largest of the islands of the Samoan group. It possesses the excellent harbor of Pago-Pago. The Samoan islands were seized by the United States and Germany in 1899. Tutuila and other islands of the group east of the longitude  $171^{\circ}$  west were appropriated by the United States as their part of the seized lands.

The **Philippine Archipelago** contains more than 1,500 islands with a population of some 8,000,000; about 5,000,000 of these are in the island of Luzon. The inhabitants are nearly all of the Malay race.

**Porto Rico**, and the three small islands that lie near it in the Atlantic, have a population of about one million, one-half of whom are white people.



A MAP OF THE WORLD SHOWING THE UNITED STATES AND DEPENDENCIES.

**446. The Administration of McKinley and Roosevelt.**—Soon after his second inauguration, in 1901, President McKinley made a journey through the Southern states and thence to the Pacific coast. He was greeted at every stage of his progress by the most cordial demonstrations on the part of the people. On September 6, 1901, while attending the Pan-American

Exposition at Buffalo, New York, President McKinley was shot by an anarchist.<sup>1</sup> The President lingered for several days and died on the morning of September 14, 1901.

Vice-President Roosevelt<sup>2</sup> was sworn into office and entered upon the duties of the presidency in Buffalo, on the same day that witnessed the death of President McKinley. President Roosevelt retained the members of his predecessor's Cabinet and announced his purpose of carrying out McKinley's policy.

The month of October, 1901, was marked by stately ceremonies at old Yale in commemoration of the founding of the college two hundred years before.

On December 2, 1901, President Roosevelt pressed the electric button which set in operation the wheels of the machinery in the Charleston Interstate and West Indian Exposition in South Carolina.

In February, 1902, Prince Henry of Prussia, brother of the German Emperor, paid a friendly visit to the United States. He was received with cordial greetings by President Roosevelt, and with great demonstrations of respect from the people.

**447. The Canal Across the Isthmus, and the Republic of Panama.**—In December, 1898, President McKinley asked Congress to authorize the construction of a ship canal from ocean to ocean across Central America. Congress failed to undertake the task, but appointed a commission to make inquiry as to the most feasible route. This commission recommended (1899) the route by Lake Nicaragua. A later commission recommended the Panama route under certain conditions. The Clayton-Bulwer treaty of 1850 (§ 316) was abolished in the signing of a new agreement with Great Britain (1901), whereby the control of the proposed canal was conceded to the United States.

In 1903 a treaty was proposed to Colombia through which the United States was to acquire permanent control over a strip of

<sup>1</sup> The assassin, Leon F. Czolgosz, was executed on October 29, 1901.

<sup>2</sup> Theodore Roosevelt was born in New York City in 1858 and was graduated from Harvard in 1880. He served in the New York legislature 1882-84, as civil service commissioner 1889-95, as president of the New York police board 1895-97, and as assistant secretary of the navy 1897-98. In 1898 he organized the regiment of Rough Riders and fought in the battles in Cuba. After the Spanish war, he was governor of New York 1899-1900, which position he resigned to become Vice-President.

land six miles in width across the Isthmus of Panama. The United States agreed to pay to Colombia the sum of \$10,000,000 and an annual rental of \$250,000. While Colombia delayed her acceptance of this agreement the district of Panama withdrew her allegiance from Colombia, declared herself to be an independent republic, and in 1904 made a treaty upon similar terms with the United States, granting to the latter the ownership of land ten miles in width.

**448. Foreign Affairs During Roosevelt's Presidency.—**

After the withdrawal of Spain from Cuba, that island was occupied by an American army under General Leonard Wood. In 1901 a constitution was adopted by the new republic of Cuba and Señor Thomas Estrada Palma was elected president. On May 20, 1902, the American troops were withdrawn. In 1903 a reciprocity treaty was made between the United States and Cuba, providing for the mutual reduction of tariff duties upon goods sent from either republic to the other.

The boundary between Alaska and Canada was adjusted in 1903 by a commission which met in London, composed of representatives appointed by the governments of Great Britain, Canada and the United States.

The latter part of the year 1903 was marked by the completion of a new commercial treaty with China, whereby some additional ports and cities of that empire were opened to American merchants.



*Copyright, 1902, by Rockwood, N. Y.*

PRESIDENT ROOSEVELT.

In 1904, upon the outbreak of war between Russia and Japan, the United States government addressed a note to these two powers asking that the scene of military operations be limited to a narrow territory. To this request the two foreign powers gave assent.

**449. The Louisiana Purchase Exposition.**—In 1904, a world's fair was held in the city of St. Louis to commemorate the purchase of the Louisiana Territory by President Jefferson. The progress of the West, as well as the growth of the entire country, was illustrated by extensive exhibits.

**450. The Election of 1904.**—In the summer of 1904, the Republicans nominated Theodore Roosevelt for President. The Democratic candidate was Judge Alton B. Parker, of New York. Roosevelt was elected by a large majority.

**451. Roosevelt's Second Administration, 1905-1909.**—Among the important laws passed by Congress in response to the wishes of the President was the Hepburn Rate Bill, adopted in 1906, conferring power upon the Interstate Commerce Commission to regulate the rates charged by railroads.

The pure-food laws, advocated by Roosevelt, were enacted for the protection of the people. One of these laws provided for the inspection of meat shipped from one commonwealth into another. Another law prohibited the adulteration of foods, and required the placing of correct labels upon all drugs and foods shipped beyond the borders of a state.

Near the close of this administration, the President invited the governors of the states and other prominent men to meet together in Washington for the purpose of holding a conference concerning our natural resources. The conference was held and valuable suggestions were formulated for the conservation of our soil, mines, forests, and water supply, and for the development of our waterways.

**452. The Jamestown Exposition, 1907.**—In 1907, an international exposition was held near Norfolk, Virginia, to commemorate the three hundredth anniversary of the first permanent settlement made in America. Exhibits from many lands were

arranged in handsome buildings to show the progress made by our country since English settlers laid the foundation of Virginia at Jamestown.

**453. The Election of 1908.**—In 1908, the Republicans nominated for the presidency William H. Taft, of Ohio, Secretary of War in Roosevelt's cabinet. The Democrats put forward for the third time as their national standard-bearer, William J. Bryan, of Nebraska. After an exciting campaign, Taft was elected.

**454. Taft's Administration, 1909-1913.**—Soon after his inauguration, Taft summoned the members of Congress to meet in extra session. After some debate, the Republicans adopted the Payne-Aldrich Tariff Bill. Under this measure, the tax on a few articles was cut down, but on many other articles it was made much higher.

The congressional elections of 1911 resulted in a great victory for the Democrats. The Democratic majority thus established in Congress passed a number of laws that were not sanctioned by the President.

In 1910, steps were taken by Congress to bestow statehood upon the territories of Arizona and New Mexico. Afterwards, when the people of each territory had adopted a state constitution, they formally entered the Federal Union. Our republic, therefore, now contains forty-eight separate states.

**455. Peary Discovers the North Pole, 1909.**—On April 6, 1909, Commander Robert E. Peary, of the United States Navy, after a journey of great hardship over ice and snow, reached the North Pole. Thus, after centuries of effort on the part of explorers from many different countries, an American won a signal triumph in the field of Arctic exploration.

**456. The Election of 1912.**—In 1912, the regular Republicans nominated William H. Taft to succeed himself as President. Some of the Republicans, calling themselves the Progressives, nominated former President Theodore Roosevelt. The Democrats put forward Woodrow Wilson, Governor of New Jersey, as their candidate. Wilson was elected.

**457. Opening of the Panama Canal, 1914.**—Early in 1914 the work of digging the Panama Canal was completed, and later in the same year the great waterway was opened for the passage of ships between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. Colonel George W. Goethals, chief engineer in charge of the enterprise, was appointed first governor of the Panama Canal Zone, the narrow strip of country in which the waterway is located.

**458. Trouble with Mexico.**—For several years the republic of Mexico was in a state of unrest. In various parts of that country small bodies of armed men fought against one another. The Mexican government was not strong enough to maintain peace and order, and could not even restrain Mexicans from committing acts of violence against Americans. Consequently, on April 21, 1914, armed marines and sailors, followed soon afterwards by regular troops of the United States Army, were sent ashore from American vessels to take military possession of the Mexican city of Vera Cruz on the coast of the Gulf of Mexico. Peace and order were at once established in Vera Cruz and in the adjacent regions by the American soldiers. At the same time President Wilson informed the Mexicans that the people of the United States had no desire nor purpose to attempt to conquer the republic of Mexico.

**459. The Peace Conference, 1914.**—On May 20, 1914, a number of delegates met together at Niagara Falls, Canada. This meeting was called the A. B. C. Peace Conference, from the fact that Argentina, Brazil and Chile, three important countries of South America, took the lead in suggesting and in organizing the peace movement. Delegates from these countries, together with representatives of Mexico and the United States, made up the membership of the conference, whose purpose was to adjust the differences between the United States and Mexico, and to prepare a plan for the establishment of peace in the Mexican republic. This benevolent purpose was accomplished only in part, but the way was prepared for better government in Mexico. In November, 1914, after the conclusion of the conference, President Wilson withdrew the American troops from Vera Cruz, and thus gave the

people of Mexico a further opportunity to settle their own affairs. A year later, the President recognized the government of General Carranza, who was rapidly restoring peace and order in Mexico.

**460. Business Troubles.**—In July, 1914, most of the large countries of Europe plunged suddenly into a terrible war. Much of our trade with those countries was cut off by reason of this state of warfare. The business of our banks, stores, railways, factories and workshops decreased to so great an extent that working people in large numbers were thrown out of employment. The serious decline in the price of cotton brought unusual hardships upon the cotton farmers of the South. After a few months of depression, however, business confidence was restored. In the autumn of 1914, Southern farmers began to plant larger tracts of land in wheat, oats, grass and other crops for food. Although the war in Europe went on, faith in the resources of our own country was re-established among our people, and men returned to work in every field of labor.

**461. The Federal Reserve Bank System.**—The Democratic majorities which have been in control of both houses of Congress during President Wilson's administration have made many changes for the improvement of our financial and currency laws. The most extensive change has been the establishment of the new Federal Reserve Bank System. In accordance with the provisions of this system, our entire country has been divided into twelve districts, with a large Federal bank located in an important city within each district. Each of these federal banks issues currency notes, lends money to other banks, and also in other ways helps to sustain the financial interests of the district. In this manner the resources of the Federal Government are used to aid and strengthen the local banking interests of every part of our country.

**462. A Hundred Years of Peace.**—A little more than one hundred years ago, Great Britain and the United States were engaged in war against each other on land and sea. But on December 24, 1814, a treaty of peace was signed in the Belgian city of

Ghent by English and American commissioners, and, in consequence, the fighting soon ceased. When the centennial anniversary of the Treaty of Ghent drew nigh, preparations were made in England and in the United States to celebrate it. The most important part of the celebration as carried out in England was the purchase of Sulgrave Manor, once the home in that country of the ancestors of George Washington, now to be preserved as a memorial of a hundred years of peace. In our own country, on January 8, 1915, a tall shaft of granite was unveiled at Chalmette, near New Orleans, to mark the field of battle upon which General Andrew Jackson won a great victory over British troops one hundred years before.

**463. The Panama-Pacific Fair at San Francisco, 1915.**—During the greater part of the year 1915, an exposition was held at San Francisco in honor of the completion of the Panama Canal. An extensive display of products from field, forest and factory placed before the eyes of multitudes of visitors the wonderful material resources and the marvelous industrial activities of our whole country.

**464. The Pan-American Conference, 1915 - 1916.**—Delegates from South America and from the United States met in the city of Washington during the closing days of the year 1915 and the early part of 1916. They formulated plans for establishing unity of action among the governments of both North America and South America, with reference to questions of trade and finance and the settlement of disputes with foreign countries.

**465. Increase in Our Population.**—So vast a stream of settlers has been pouring into our country annually from foreign lands that our home population now numbers more than one hundred millions. In addition, several millions more live in our island possessions.

One-third of our vast population is gathered in cities and towns. This increase in the size of the cities belongs chiefly to the Northeastern states, and to those near the Lakes. Many cities of the South, also, have begun to increase rapidly in size, such as New

Orleans, St. Louis and St. Joseph, in Missouri, Memphis and Nashville, in Tennessee, Atlanta and Savannah, in Georgia, and Richmond, in Virginia.

Since the year 1865, a vast movement has been in progress, bringing the people of Europe to the United States in numbers greater than during any previous period. These have built homes chiefly in the Western and Northwestern states, and most of them have become valuable citizens. Strict laws have been passed to keep out of our country all who are paupers or criminals.

**466. Transportation.**—The old sailing-vessel, the stagecoach and the canal-boat have been almost entirely laid aside as modes of traveling. Even the steamboat on the rivers and on the lakes is used chiefly for carrying merchandise. The railroads, which cover the whole country like a network, bear the traveler in a luxurious car at a high rate of speed. The continent can now be crossed from New York to San Francisco in five days. Over the railroads, through the canals, and upon the rivers and lakes, passes our great inland commerce, which is much more valuable than our foreign commerce.

The street railway has made great progress. The first cable-cars ran in San Francisco in 1873. The first electric railway was started in Richmond, Virginia, in 1888. Electric trolley railways now run in all of the principal towns, and are reaching far out into the country districts. Large numbers of bicycles are in use, and the automobile is helping to solve the problem of traveling in both city and country. The flying-machine has been developed to such a high degree of efficiency that it is now regularly used in connection with the training of our soldiers and sailors.

**467. Irrigation.**—There is a region in the West that is almost rainless. Water for the irrigation of this district is brought in by canals from rivers and mountain streams, and is spread over the ground by means of a large number of small channels. In this way large tracts in several Western states have been made fertile, and profitable crops are grown on lands that were once dry and fruitless. In 1902 Congress enacted a law appropriating

a portion of the proceeds of the sales of certain lands in the West for the purpose of irrigating arid lands.

**468. Telegraphs and Telephones.**—Since the sending of the first message by wire, in 1844, from Baltimore to Washington, telegraph lines have been stretched over almost our entire country and under the seas to every foreign land. Marconi has invented the wireless telegraph system, and messages have been sent by it through the air from the shores of America to Europe.

Since 1876 the telephone has extended its wires throughout the country. It is now bringing the agricultural sections into close communication with the towns and cities.

**469. The Postal System.**—In 1792 it cost twenty-five cents to send a letter from New York to Richmond, Virginia. In 1883 the rate was fixed at two cents per half ounce for all distances within the United States, and in 1885 it was reduced to two cents



A TEXAS OIL GUSHER.

per ounce. Postal routes are established like a spider's web throughout every part of our land. By the recent establishment of the parcels post system, articles of merchandise may be sent to any part of the country at a moderate cost.

**470. Natural Gas and Oil Fields.**—In 1878 large quantities of gas began to rise out of an oil well near Pittsburg, Pennsylvania. When the gas was set on fire it gave off great heat, and it was later used in the manufacture of steel. In 1884 the gas was brought into Pittsburg in pipes, and used to furnish light and heat in houses and factories. Extensive deposits of this natural gas have been found at various other points west of the Alleghany

Mountains, and it is coming, in these places, into more extensive use.

In 1899 borings for oil were begun in southeastern Texas, and on January 13, 1901, a great stream of oil rushed up to the height of several hundred feet. The outpour amounted to about one thousand barrels an hour. Pipe lines were laid to convey the oil to the coast for shipment. Other wells have been opened and vast quantities of oil for fuel are now furnished by the fields of Texas.

**471. The Development of the Southwest and South.**—A new era of progress has dawned upon the South and the Southwest. Between 1890 and 1916 there was an exceptionally rapid increase in the population of Texas, Missouri, Arkansas and Oklahoma.

In 1860 the growing of cotton, tobacco and rice were the chief industries in the South. In 1916 the reports indicated that she was almost ready to surpass every other section of the country in the manufacture of iron and cotton goods. Oranges are sent northward in large quantities from Florida, and green vegetables from Alabama, Mississippi, Florida, Georgia, the Carolinas and Virginia. Moreover, the cotton crop of the South in 1860 was 4,669,770 bales, but more than three times that quantity is now grown annually. In addition, the making of oil from cotton seed brings a large return, while the production of corn, wheat, grass and other food crops, together with the raising of cattle, have greatly increased the wealth of the South.

**472. The Pacific Coast.**—This development has reached even to the Pacific coast. The population of California, Washington and Oregon increased very greatly during the period from 1890 to 1900. In the southern part of California grow large quantities of figs, lemons, oranges, grapes, raisins, plums and nuts, and Washington and Oregon also are productive agricultural regions.

**473. Progress in Industries.**—The tillage of the soil is the industry which has passed through the largest course of development in our country. The culture of Indian corn, a native American food-plant, has been extended until the annual production

amounts now to about two billion bushels. Over four hundred million pounds of tobacco are grown each year in the United States; almost one-half of this is produced in the single state of Kentucky. More than five million tons of sugar are made in this country, more than half of it from the sugar beet. Farm animals, also, to the value of over two billion dollars, are now owned in the United States.

The progress in manufactures has been upon the same large scale with the growth in population. The talent for invention shown by Americans is not surpassed by that of any other people in the world. All kinds of cloth, farming implements, steel rails and material for steel bridges, tools of iron and steel, as well as labor-saving machinery of every kind, are made in the United States in untold quantities, and are now entering the markets of many foreign countries.<sup>1</sup> The United States will soon become, at the present rate of progress, the most extensive manufacturing country of the entire world.

**474. Education.**—Nearly all of the old schools in our country, founded in colonial times, are still doing their work. Many new institutions with large endowments have been established in recent years. More than fourteen million pupils, or one-fifth of the population, are enrolled in the public and private schools of the country.

Public libraries on a large scale have been established in various places, such as the Newberry Library, Chicago; the Astor Library, New York City; the Boston Public Library; the Enoch Pratt Library, Baltimore, and the Congressional Library, Washington. Moreover, Mr. Andrew Carnegie has given the sum of more than eleven million dollars to found libraries, in a number of cities and

<sup>1</sup> Only the most important inventions and manufactures can be named here, such as the screw-propeller for steamships, the breech-loading gun, the steel safe with time-lock, the typewriter, the type-setting machine, the grain elevator, the steam dredger, the floating steel dry-dock for ships, the various developments in photography including photography in colors, printing-presses, rubber goods, electric lights and electrical appliances, surgical instruments and appliances, reapers and rakes and threshers and sewing-machines.

towns of the United States. Most important among all these educational influences is the multitude of small libraries that furnish books everywhere to the great body of the people.

The strongest agencies developed in our country for the moulding of the sentiment of the people, are the newspapers and the periodical magazines. The great papers of our large cities bring together each day from every quarter of the earth the latest and most accurate news. Wide knowledge is thus offered to every man in our country who desires to find it. In this opening of the twentieth century, no other people on the earth have privileges so



THE CONGRESSIONAL LIBRARY.

great as the privileges enjoyed by the people of the United States. No other people have opportunities so varied for aiding in the material and moral advancement of all the rest of the world.

### Questions.

1. Tell of the Dingley Tariff Bill. What was the monetary commission? What are trusts?
2. Why did Cuba revolt against Spain? What was the *Virginian* affair? Who were the reconcentrados?
3. What was General Lee's report from Cuba? Tell of the destruction of the *Maine*.
4. Why did the United States declare war against Spain?

5. What did Admiral Dewey do?
6. Tell of Sampson and Schley around Cuba. What did Victor Blue do? Tell of the voyage of the *Oregon*. Tell of the destruction of Cervera's fleet.
7. How was Santiago captured? Who were the "Rough Riders?"
8. How was Porto Rico taken?
9. What were the terms of the treaty with Spain?
10. What did Aguinaldo do? What is the Philippine Commission?
11. Tell of the presidential election of 1900.
12. Give an account of the annexation of the Hawaiian Islands. Tell of our island territories.
13. Tell of President McKinley's assassination. Give some account of President Roosevelt.
14. What events led to the United States obtaining control of the territory bordering upon the Panama Canal?
15. What foreign treaties were concluded during President Roosevelt's administration?
16. Who were the Republican and Democratic candidates for the presidency in the election of 1904?
17. Name two important laws passed during President Roosevelt's administration. What was the purpose of each of these laws?
18. What was the result of the presidential election of 1908?
19. What is the Payne-Aldrich Tariff Bill?
20. Tell what you know about the discovery of the North Pole.
21. Name the three presidential parties in the campaign of 1912. Who was elected?
22. When was the Panama Canal completed?
23. Describe the situation in Mexico during President Wilson's administration.
24. What was the effect of the great European War upon trade and industry in our own country?
25. What is meant by the Federal Reserve Bank System?
26. Name some results of the Pan-American conference.
27. Name three important expositions of recent years, and tell what each commemorated.
28. What is the present population of the United States? What is to be noted about immigration?
29. Tell of transportation within the United States.

- 30.** What is irrigation?
- 31.** To what extent is the telegraph used? The telephone?
- 32.** Tell of the mail facilities.
- 33.** How is natural gas used? Where have large oil fields been found?
- 34.** Tell of the growth of the Southwest. What are the chief products of the South?
- 35.** What are the chief products of the Pacific slope?
- 36.** Describe the development of the industries of our country. Give some account of the progress in manufacturing.
- 37.** What great schools have been founded? What fine libraries have we? What is the work of newspapers and magazines?

### Geography Study.

Locate the gold region of Alaska, Lake Nicaragua, the Isthmus of Panama, Cuba, Spain, Santiago de Cuba, Havana, Hong Kong, Manila Bay, the Philippine Islands, Porto Rico, Ponce, Guam, Luzon, Panay, Cebu, Negros, Hawaii, Tutuila, Buffalo, Cleveland and St. Joseph.

## PART VII.

### PERIOD OF THE NEW FEDERAL UNION.

#### TOPICAL REVIEW.

	SECTION.
<b>1.</b> Hayes's Administration . . . . .	415-417
<b>2.</b> The Garfield-Arthur Administration . . . . .	418-420
<b>3.</b> Cleveland's First Administration . . . . .	421, 422
<b>4.</b> Harrison's Administration . . . . .	423-427
<b>5.</b> Cleveland's Second Administration . . . . .	428, 429
<b>6.</b> McKinley's First Administration . . . . .	434-445
<b>7.</b> The McKinley-Roosevelt Administration . . . . .	446
<b>8.</b> Tariff Legislation . . . . .	421, 425, 428, 434, 454
<b>9.</b> Financial Legislation . . . . .	416, 425, 428, 461
<b>10.</b> Political Issues and Parties, 417, 418, 420, 422, 427, 429, 444, 450, 453, 456	
<b>11.</b> The Race Problem — Chinese and Negro . . . . .	432, 433, 450
<b>12.</b> Spain and Cuba . . . . .	435

<b>13.</b> The Spanish-American War . . . . .	436-442
<b>14.</b> Territorial Expansion . . . . .	442, 445
<b>15.</b> The Development of the South and West, 424, 430, 431, 471, 473	
<b>16.</b> The State of the Country . . . . .	460, 465-474
<b>17.</b> Roosevelt's Administration . . . . .	446, 448, 450-452
<b>18.</b> Taft's Administration . . . . .	453-455
<b>19.</b> Wilson's Administration . . . . .	456-464
<b>20.</b> The Panama Canal and the Canal Zone . . . . .	447, 457, 463
<b>21.</b> Trouble with Mexico . . . . .	458, 459
<b>22.</b> Business Troubles Resulting from the War in Europe . . . . .	460
<b>23.</b> Development of Our Country . . . . .	465-474

## CHRONOLOGY OF IMPORTANT EVENTS.

1000. Leif Ericson sails from Greenland to North America.
1492. Columbus sails from Palos, Spain, August 3.  
Columbus lands at San Salvador in the West Indies, Oct. 12.
1498. Voyage of John and Sebastian Cabot to North America.
- 1497-1499. Vasco da Gama voyages around Africa to India.
- 1499-1503. Americus Vesputius makes four voyages to America.
1507. Waldseemüller suggests the name America.
1513. Ponce de Leon discovers Florida.  
Balboa discovers the Pacific.
1522. One of Magellan's ships completes first circumnavigation of the world.
1541. De Soto discovers the Mississippi River.
- 1562-1565. Huguenots in South Carolina and Florida.
1565. St. Augustine, Florida, founded by the Spaniards.
- 1577-1580. Drake voyages around the world.
- 1578-1583. Sir Humphrey Gilbert's voyages.
1584. Raleigh sends out Amidas and Barlow, who make explorations on Roanoke Island.  
The name Virginia given to the entire territory claimed by England in North America.
1585. Raleigh's first colony on Roanoke Island.
- 1587-1590. Raleigh's second colony on Roanoke Island.
1604. The French begin the settlement of Nova Scotia.
1606. The London and Plymouth companies receive charters from King James I.
1607. Founding of Jamestown—the first permanent English colony in America and in the world—May 13.
1608. Champlain founds Quebec in Canada.
1609. Henry Hudson discovers the Hudson River.  
Second charter granted to the Virginia Company of London.
1614. The Dutch establish a trading-post on Manhattan Island.
1619. The Virginia House of Burgesses, the first legislative body in America, meets at Jamestown, July 30.  
First negroes brought from Africa to Virginia.
1620. Landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth, December 21.
1622. Massacre by Indians in Virginia.

1624. Virginia becomes a royal colony.
1626. The Dutch buy Manhattan Island from the Indians and call it New Amsterdam.
1628. Colony of Salem founded by John Endicott.
1630. Boston founded.
1634. Leonard Calvert founds St. Mary's, Maryland.
1636. Thomas Hooker leaves Cambridge, Massachusetts, and founds Hartford, Connecticut.  
Roger Williams founds Providence, Rhode Island.  
Harvard College founded.
1638. New Haven settled.  
Swedes settle on the Delaware River.
1643. New England Confederacy established.
1649. Maryland Toleration Act.
- 1652-1660. Virginia a self-governing commonwealth.
1663. Rhode Island receives a charter.
1664. The English seize New Netherland (New York) and settle in New Jersey.
1665. New Haven annexed to Connecticut.
- 1675-1678. King Philip's War in New England.
1676. Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.
1677. William Penn and others buy West Jersey.
1681. William Penn and others buy East Jersey.
1682. La Salle explores Mississippi River.  
Penn sails to America and founds Philadelphia.
1684. Massachusetts Charter annulled.
1689. Carolinas called by separate names, North and South Carolina.
- 1689-1697. King William's War.
1690. Colonial Congress at New York.
1692. Massachusetts made a royal province.  
Witchcraft delusion in Salem, Massachusetts.
1693. William and Mary College (Virginia) founded.
1697. Peace of Ryswick ends King William's War.
1701. Yale College founded.
- 1702-1713. Queen Anne's War.
1713. Treaty of Utrecht ends Queen Anne's War.
1718. The French found New Orleans.
1729. Carolina Proprietors surrender charter and the Carolinas become royal colonies.
1730. Baltimore, Maryland, founded.
1733. Richmond and Petersburg, Virginia, laid off by William Byrd.  
Savannah, Georgia, founded by Oglethorpe.

- 1744-1748. King George's War.
1745. Capture of Louisburg, June 17.
1746. College of New Jersey (Princeton) founded.
1748. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle ends King George's War.  
Ohio Company organized.
1749. University of Pennsylvania founded.
1754. King's (Columbia) College founded.  
French and Indian War begun by Washington at battle of  
Great Meadows.
1755. Braddock defeated near site of Pittsburg, July 7.
1758. Fort Duquesne (Pittsburg) captured by the English, Nov. 25.
1759. Capture of Quebec by General Wolfe, September 13.
1760. Montreal captured. England gains Canada.
1763. Indian Conspiracy organized by Pontiac.  
Mason and Dixon's line established between Maryland and  
Pennsylvania.
1765. The Stamp Act passed by the English Parliament.
1766. Repeal of the Stamp Act.
1767. Townsend Acts impose tax on tea and other articles.
1768. English troops sent to Boston to enforce Townsend Acts.
1770. Boston Massacre, March 5.  
All taxes except that on tea repealed by Parliament, April.  
Destruction of tea at Boston, Philadelphia, Annapolis and  
Charleston.
1774. Boston Port Bill passed by Parliament, April.  
First Continental Congress meets at Philadelphia, Sept. 5.
1775. Battles of Lexington and Concord, April 19.  
Ticonderoga captured, May 10.  
Second Continental Congress meets at Philadelphia, May 10.  
Mecklenburg (North Carolina) Declaration, May 20.  
Washington made Commander-in-Chief of Continental forces,  
June 15.  
Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17.  
Washington takes command at Cambridge, Mass., July 3.  
Montgomery and Arnold attack Quebec, December 3.
1776. Colonial flag displayed by Washington at Cambridge, Jan. 1.  
British troops evacuate Boston, March 17.  
R. H. Lee's proposal of independence adopted by the vote of  
twelve colonies, July 2.  
Declaration of Independence drawn by Thomas Jefferson,  
adopted July 4.  
Declaration of Independence signed by members of the Con-  
tinental Congress, August 2.

1776. Battle of Long Island, August 27.  
 Washington evacuates New York City, September 14.  
 Washington retreats through New Jersey and crosses the Delaware River, December.  
 Washington wins victory at Trenton, December 26.
1777. Washington's successful battle at Princeton, January 3.  
 Lafayette joins Americans, July 1.  
 Battle of Oriskany, August 6.  
 Battle of Bennington, August 16.  
 Battle of the Brandywine, September 11.  
 Battle of Germantown, October 4.  
 Surrender of Burgoyne at Saratoga, October 17.  
 Congress adopts Articles of Confederation, November 15.
- 1777-1778. Washington at Valley Forge.
1778. France makes Treaty of Alliance with the United States, February 6.  
 British evacuate Philadelphia, June 18.  
 Battle of Monmouth, June 28.  
 Massacre at Wyoming, Pennsylvania, July 3.  
 British capture Savannah, Georgia, December 29.  
 George Rogers Clark captures Vincennes, February 23.
1779. Naval victories of Paul Jones.
1780. British capture Charleston, May 12.  
 American defeat at Camden, August 16.  
 Discovery of Arnold's treason at West Point, September 25.  
 Execution of André, October 2.  
 American victory at King's Mountain, October 7.  
 Nathanael Green takes command in the South, December 2.
1781. American victory at Cowpens, January 17.  
 Articles of Confederation adopted by Maryland, March 1.  
 Battle at Guilford Courthouse, March 15.  
 Battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, September 8.  
 Cornwallis surrenders at Yorktown, October 19.
1782. Preliminary Treaty of Peace with Great Britain, November 30.
1783. Definitive Treaty of Peace with Great Britain at Versailles, September 3.  
 New York evacuated by the British, November 25.  
 Washington resigns as Commander-in-Chief, December 23.
1785. Virginia and Maryland's Commissioners meet at Mount Vernon, March.
1786. Annapolis Convention, September 11.  
 Rebellion led by Shays in Massachusetts, December.  
 Federal Convention meets in Philadelphia, May 14.

1787. Ordinance concerning the Northwest Territory passed by Congress, July 13.  
Constitution signed by members of the Convention, Sept. 17.  
Delaware ratifies the Constitution, December 6; Pennsylvania, December 12; New Jersey, December 18.
1788. Georgia ratifies the Constitution, January 2; Connecticut, January 9; Massachusetts, February 6; Maryland, April 28; South Carolina, May 23; New Hampshire, June 21; Virginia, June 25; New York, July 26.
1789. First Presidential election; votes cast by ten states, Jan. 7.  
Washington and Adams declared President and Vice-President, April 6.  
Washington inaugurated as President in New York City, April 30.  
Federal government organized in New York City.  
North Carolina ratifies the Constitution, November 21.
1790. Rhode Island ratifies the Constitution, May 29.  
First census of the United States.
1791. First United States Bank chartered for period of twenty years.
1792. Formation of Federalist and Democratic-Republican parties.
1793. The cotton-gin invented by Eli Whitney.
1794. Whiskey Insurrection in Pennsylvania.
1795. John Jay's Treaty with England, November 19.
1796. Washington's Farewell Address.
1797. John Adams, President, and Thomas Jefferson, Vice-President, March 4.
1798. The X. Y. Z. dispatches.  
The Alien and Sedition Laws passed by Congress.
- 1798-1799. The Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions.
1799. President Adams makes peace with France.  
Death of Washington at Mt. Vernon, December 14.
1800. The City of Washington becomes the capital of the Republic.
1801. Thomas Jefferson elected President by the House of Representatives, February 17.  
War begins with Tripoli.
1802. West Point Military Academy established, March 16.
1803. Purchase of Louisiana from France, April 30.
- 1804-1806. Expedition of Lewis and Clark to the mouth of the Columbia River.
1807. The *Leopard* fires upon the *Chesapeake*.  
Fulton's steamboat, the *Clermont*, journeys from New York to Albany.

1807. Congress passes the Embargo Act, December 22.
1808. Foreign slave-trade made illegal by Congress.
1809. The Non-intercourse Act passed by Congress, March 1.  
James Madison inaugurated President, March 4.
1811. Indians defeated in battle of Tippecanoe, November 7.
1812. Congress declares war against Great Britain, June 18.  
Great Britain revokes her Orders in Council, June 23.  
Detroit surrendered by Hull, August 16.  
The *Constitution* captures the *Guerrière*, August 19.
1813. Perry's victory over the British on Lake Erie, September 10.
1814. Battle of Chippewa, July 4.  
Battle of Lundy's Lane, July 25.  
British capture and burn Washington, August 24, 25.  
McDonough's victory on Lake Champlain, September 11.  
British repulsed at Baltimore, September 13.  
The Hartford Convention meets, December 15.  
Treaty of peace signed at Ghent, December 24.
1815. The battle of New Orleans, January 8.
1816. Second Bank of the United States chartered for a period of  
twenty years, April.
1817. James Monroe, President, March 4.  
Erie Canal begun, July 4.
1819. Florida purchased from Spain.
1820. The Missouri Compromise adopted by Congress.
1823. The Monroe Doctrine announced in President Monroe's Mes-  
sage, Dec. 2.
1824. Congress adopts a protective tariff bill.
1825. John Quincy Adams elected President by the House of Repre-  
sentatives, February 9; inaugurated, March 4.  
Panama Congress.  
University of Virginia opened, March 25.  
Opening of the Erie Canal, October 26.
1826. Thomas Jefferson and John Adams die the same day, July 4.
1828. "Tariff of Abominations" adopted by Congress.
1829. Andrew Jackson, President, March 4.
1830. Hayne-Webster debate in the United States Senate, January.  
Baltimore and Ohio Railroad opened.
1831. Garrison begins to publish *The Liberator*, January 1.
1832. Jackson vetoes the United States Bank Bill, July 10.  
Ordinance of Nullification adopted by South Carolina,  
November 19.  
Jackson's Nullification proclamation, December 11.  
New England Anti-Slavery Society organized.

1833. Compromise Tariff Bill adopted, March 2.  
Jackson orders cessation of deposits in United States Bank,  
September.
1834. Cyrus McCormick patents reaper.
1836. Texas declares herself independent, March 2.  
The Specie Circular sent out, July 11.
1837. **Martin Van Buren**, President, March 4.  
A financial panic disturbs the country.
1840. United States sub-treasury system established.  
Liberty party organized.
1841. **William Henry Harrison**, President, March 4.  
Death of President Harrison, April 4.  
**John Tyler**, the Vice-President, becomes President, April 4.
1842. Ashburton Treaty with Great Britain, August 7.  
Dorr Rebellion in Rhode Island.
1844. Morse completes the first telegraph line between Baltimore  
and Washington, May 24.
1845. Texas annexed to the Federal Union, March 3.  
**James K. Polk**, President, March 4.  
Naval Academy founded at Annapolis.
1846. Smithsonian Institution founded.  
Oregon Treaty, June 15.  
Battle of Palo Alto, May 8.  
Battle of Resaca de la Palma, May 9.  
Congress declares that war exists by the act of Mexico,  
May 13.  
The Wilmot Proviso introduced in Congress, August.  
California and New Mexico seized by the United States.
1847. Scott captures the city of Mexico, September 14.
1848. Discovery of gold in California, January.  
Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2.  
John Quincy Adams dies, February 23.
1849. **Zachary Taylor**, President, March 4.
1850. President Taylor dies and **Millard Fillmore** becomes Presi-  
dent, July 9.  
Compromise Measures of 1850 passed by Congress, September  
Clayton-Bulwer Treaty.
1852. Rise of Know-Nothing party.
1853. **Franklin Pierce**, President, March 4.  
Gadsden Purchase.
1854. Perry's Treaty with Japan, March 21.  
Kansas-Nebraska Bill passed by Congress, May 30.  
Republican party formed.

1857. James Buchanan, President, March 4.  
Dred Scott Decision published, March 6.  
Financial panic disturbs business.
1858. First Atlantic cable.
1859. John Brown seizes Harper's Ferry, October 16.
1860. Abraham Lincoln, elected President, November.  
South Carolina adopts Ordinance of Secession, December 20.
1861. Six other states pass ordinances of secession by February 1.  
Congress of the Confederate States meets at Montgomery, Alabama, February 4.  
Provisional Constitution of the Confederate States adopted, February 8.  
Jefferson Davis and Alexander H. Stephens elected President and Vice-President of the Confederate States, February 9 ; inaugurated at Montgomery, February 18.  
Abraham Lincoln, President of the United States, March 4.  
The Confederates open fire upon Fort Sumter, April 12.  
Fort Sumter surrendered, April 13.  
Lincoln calls for 75,000 volunteers to invade the South, April 15.  
Virginia passes Ordinance of Secession, April 17.  
Arkansas passes Ordinance of Secession, May 6.  
North Carolina passes Ordinance of Secession, May 20.  
Richmond made the capital of the Southern Confederacy, May 29.  
Tennessee passes Ordinance of Secession, June 8.  
Federal Congress assembles, July 4.  
First battle of Manassas, July 21.  
Capture of Fort Hatteras, August 29.  
Mason and Slidell taken from the *Trent*, November 8.
1862. Surrender of Forts Henry and Donelson, February.  
Battle between *Virginia* and *Monitor*, March 9.  
Battle of Shiloh, April 6, 7.  
Surrender of Island No. 10, April 7.  
Surrender of New Orleans, April 25.  
Evacuation of Yorktown, May 4.  
Battle of Seven Pines, May 31, June 1.  
Robert E. Lee made Commander of Army of Northern Virginia, June 1.  
Jackson's Valley Campaign, May, June.  
Seven Days' Battles, June 25 to July 1.  
Pope's campaign, August.  
Second battle of Manassas, August 28-30.

1862. Battle of South Mountain, September 14.  
Capture of Harper's Ferry, September 15.  
Battle of Sharpsburg, September 17.  
First Emancipation Proclamation, September 22.  
Battle of Perryville, October 8.  
Battle of Fredericksburg, December 13.  
Battle of Murfreesboro, December 31 to January 2, 1863.
1863. Second Emancipation Proclamation, January 1.  
Battle of Chancellorsville, May 2, 3.  
Death of "Stonewall" Jackson, May 10.  
Battle of Gettysburg, July 1-3.  
Surrender of Vicksburg, July 4.  
Surrender of Port Hudson, July 9.  
Battle of Chickamauga, September 19, 20.  
Siege of Knoxville, November and December.  
Battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, November 24, 25.
1864. Grant made lieutenant general, March 3.  
Battles of the Wilderness, May 5-7.  
Battles at Spotsylvania, May 8-20.  
Battle of Resaca, May 14, 15.  
Butler "bottled up" at Bermuda Hundred, May 16.  
Battle of Cold Harbor, June 3.  
Siege of Petersburg, June 16 to April 2, 1865.  
Battle of *Kearsarge* and *Alabama*, June 19.  
Battle of Kenesaw, June 27.  
Battle of Monocacy, July 9.  
Battle of The Crater, July 30.  
Battle of Mobile Bay, August 5-23.  
Capture of Atlanta, September 2.  
Battle of Winchester, September 19.  
Battle of Cedar Creek, October 19.  
Sherman's march to the sea begins, November 12.  
Atlanta burned, November 16.  
Battle of Franklin, November 30.  
Battle of Nashville, December 15, 16.  
Capture of Savannah, December 21.
1865. General Lee made Commander-in-Chief of all the forces of the Confederacy, February 5.  
Burning of Columbia, February 17.  
Capture of Charleston, February 18.  
Battle of Five Forks, April 1.  
Petersburg evacuated, April 2.

1865. Evacuation of Richmond, April 3.  
Surrender at Appomattox, April 9.  
Assassination of President Lincoln, April 14.  
**Andrew Johnson**, President, April 15.  
Surrender of J. E. Johnston, April 26.  
Surrender of Taylor, May 4.  
Capture of President Davis, May 10.  
Surrender of Kirby Smith, May 26.  
Thirteenth Amendment to Constitution, December 18.
1866. Successful laying of the Atlantic Cable, July 28.
1867. Purchase of Alaska, March 30.
1868. Impeachment of President Johnson, March 5 to May 16.  
Six States readmitted to the Union—Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Louisiana, North Carolina, South Carolina, June.  
Fourteenth Amendment to Constitution, July 28.
1869. **Ulysses S. Grant**, President, March 4.  
Completion of the Pacific Railroad, May 10.
1870. Fifteenth Amendment to Constitution, March 30.  
Four States—Georgia, Mississippi, Texas and Virginia—readmitted to the Union.
1871. Treaty referring Alabama claims to arbitrators, May 8.  
Great fire in Chicago, October 9.
1872. Great fire in Boston, November 9.
1873. Financial panic.  
Congress demonetizes silver.
1876. Centennial Exhibition, Philadelphia, May–November.
1877. Congress appoints Electoral Commission, January.  
**Rutherford B. Hayes**, President, March 4.  
Federal troops withdrawn from the South.  
Railroad strikes.
1878. Bland-Allison Act of Congress partially remonetizing silver.
1879. Resumption of specie payments, January 1.  
Mississippi jetties established.
1881. **James A. Garfield**, President, March 4.  
President Garfield shot by an assassin, July 2.  
Death of President Garfield, September 19.  
**Chester A. Arthur**, President, September 19.  
Yorktown Centennial Celebration, October 19.
1883. Civil Service Reform Commission authorized by Congress.  
Brooklyn Bridge opened for travel, May 24.  
Letter postage reduced to two cents.
1884. Cotton Centennial Exhibition at New Orleans, December 16
1885. Washington Monument dedicated, February 21.

1885. Grover Cleveland, President, March 4.
1886. Anarchist riot in Chicago, May.  
Charleston earthquakes, August 31 to September 1-3.
1887. Interstate Commerce Act passed by Congress.
1888. Chinese Immigration Act passed by Congress.
1889. Benjamin Harrison, President, March 4.  
Centennial Celebration of Washington's inauguration, April 29 to May 1.
1890. Sherman Silver Law enacted.
1891. International Copyright Act passed by Congress.
1892. Rise of People's Party.  
Labor troubles at Homestead, Pennsylvania.
1893. Grover Cleveland, President, second time, March 4.  
Columbian Fair at Chicago, May 1 to October 31.  
Sherman Silver Bill repealed by Congress.
1894. Congress enacts Wilson Tariff Bill.
1896. United States and Great Britain agree to arbitrate Venezuelan affairs, November.
1897. William McKinley, President, March 4.  
Dingley Tariff Bill enacted by Congress.
1898. Battleship Maine destroyed in harbor of Havana, February 15.  
President McKinley's message concerning affairs in Cuba, April 11.  
Congress declares war against Spain, April 25.  
Dewey destroys Spanish fleet in harbor of Manila, May 1.  
War Revenue Bill enacted by Congress, June 13.  
Battles of El Caney and San Juan, July 1, 2.  
Cervera's fleet destroyed at Santiago, July 3.  
Annexation of Hawaii, July 7.
1899. Spanish army evacuates Cuba, January 1.  
Senate ratifies Treaty of Peace with Spain, February 6.  
Annexation of Tutuila and adjacent islands of Samoan group, December 2.
1900. Samoan Treaty ratified by Senate, January 16.  
Disaster at Galveston, September 8, 9.
1901. Hay-Pauncefote Treaty between United States and Great Britain.  
President McKinley shot by assassin at Buffalo, New York, September 6.  
President McKinley dies at Buffalo, September 14.  
Theodore Roosevelt, Vice-President, becomes President, September 14.

1901. Capture of Aguinaldo, March 23.
1902. Troops withdrawn from Cuba, May 20.
1903. The Republic of Panama recognized by President Roosevelt.  
Reciprocity with Cuba enacted by Congress, December 16.  
Centennial Celebration at New Orleans of Louisiana Purchase, December 18-20.
1904. Louisiana Purchase Exposition at St. Louis.  
Great fire in Baltimore, Maryland, February 7.  
Treaty with Republic of Panama, ratified February 23.  
Cuban reciprocity treaty ratified, March 22.
1905. Theodore Roosevelt, President, second time, March 4.  
Treaty of Peace between Japan and Russia signed at Portsmouth, New Hampshire.  
Lewis and Clarke Centennial Exposition at Portland, Oregon.
1906. Strike among anthracite coal miners in Pennsylvania.  
Earthquakes and fire destroy a large part of San Francisco.  
Negro soldiers take part in riot at Brownsville, Texas.  
New Interstate Commerce Law.  
William H. Taft, Provisional Governor of Cuba.  
Anti-negro riot at Atlanta, Georgia.  
Japanese excluded from public schools of San Francisco.  
President Roosevelt visits Isthmus of Panama and Porto Rico.  
Pure Food Act adopted by Congress.
1907. Jamestown Tercentenary Exposition.  
Anti-trust laws adopted by several state legislatures.  
Laws regulating railway rates adopted by several state legislatures.  
New Immigration Law, February 20.  
Meat Inspection Law, June 30, 1906, and March 4, 1907.  
Second Peace Conference at The Hague.  
First Assembly in Philippines.  
Oklahoma admitted as a state, November 16.  
Temporary financial stringency.  
American battleship fleet begins cruise around the world.
1908. First Conference of Governors at Washington, May.  
Anti-negro riot at Springfield, Illinois.
1909. William H. Taft, President, March 4.  
Payne-Aldrich Tariff Bill passed.  
Peary reaches North Pole, April 6, 1909.  
Wright Brothers make aeroplane for United States Government.  
United States troops withdrawn from Cuba.  
Alaska-Pacific-Yukon Exposition.  
Hudson-Fulton Celebration in New York.
1910. Changes in Supreme Court.  
Death of Edward VII of England, May 6.

1910. Postal Savings Banks established.
1911. Congress adopts Canadian Reciprocity Bill, February 14.  
President Taft sends troops to maintain order along Mexican border, March 8.  
Supreme Court upholds tax on corporations, March 13.  
Supreme Court dissolves Standard Oil Company, May 15.  
President Diaz forced by revolutionists to resign presidency of Mexico, May 25.  
Supreme Court dissolves American Tobacco Company, May 29.  
Congress adopts bill providing for direct election of United States Senators, June 12.  
Signing of arbitration treaties between the United States and Great Britain, and between the United States and France, August 3.  
Canada rejects reciprocity, September 21.  
Francisco Madero elected President of Mexico, October 1.
1912. Chinese Republic organized.  
New Mexico and Arizona admitted as States, February.  
Disastrous floods in the Mississippi Valley, March-April.  
Loss of Steamship *Titanic*, April 15.  
Republican National Convention in Chicago, June.  
Democratic National Convention in Baltimore, June.  
Progressive National Convention in Chicago, August.  
Increase in pensions to Federal soldiers.  
World's Temple of Peace opened at The Hague, Holland, December.
- Supreme Court dissolves Union Pacific Railway System, December.
1913. Parcel post system goes into operation, January.  
Amendment to Federal Constitution adopted, providing for a tax on the incomes of individuals, February.  
Francisco Madero, President of Mexico, assassinated, February 9.  
President Wilson inaugurated, March 4.  
Federal Department of Labor established, March.  
Tariff Revision Bill adopted by Democrats in Congress, September.  
Currency Act signed, December 23.
1914. Panama Canal opened for traffic.  
Vera Cruz, a city in Mexico, occupied by American troops, April 21.  
Industrial war in Colorado.  
Great war begins in Europe, August 1.  
Financial crises in United States.
1915. Panama-Pacific Exposition held at San Francisco.  
Sinking of the Steamship *Lusitania*, May 7.

Controversies with European belligerents concerning rights of neutral countries.

**1916.** Military expedition sent into Mexico to punish Mexican outlaws. State militia called out by the President to patrol the Mexican border.

Congress adopts measures increasing the size of the Federal army and the Federal navy.

Commission appointed to settle Mexican affairs.

Presidential campaign.

---

---

APPENDIX.

## APPENDIX I.

---

### THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.<sup>1</sup>

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

#### THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WHEN in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the Powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same Object evinces a design to reduce them under absolute Despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such Government, and to provide new Guards for their future

<sup>1</sup> The original copy of the Declaration of Independence, which was signed at Philadelphia, is kept at the Department of State, Washington, District of Columbia. The writing is much faded, and some of the signatures have nearly disappeared.

security.—Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former Systems of Government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute Tyranny over these States. To prove this, let Facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his Assent to Laws, the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass Laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his Assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other Laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of Representation in the Legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their Public Records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved Representative Houses repeatedly, for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused for a long time, after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the Legislative Powers, incapable of Annihilation, have returned to the People at large for their exercise; the State remaining in the mean time exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the Laws for Naturalization of Foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new Appropriations of Lands.

He has obstructed the Administration of Justice, by refusing his Assent to Laws for establishing Judiciary Powers.

He has made Judges dependent on his Will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of New Offices, and sent hither swarms of Officers to harrass our People, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, Standing Armies without the Consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the Military independent of and superior to the Civil Power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his Assent to their Acts of pretended Legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock Trial, from Punishment for any Murders which they should commit on the Inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our Trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our Consent:

For depriving us in many cases, of the benefits of Trial by Jury:

For transporting us beyond Seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free System of English Laws in a neighbouring Province, establishing therein an Arbitrary government, and enlarging its Boundaries so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies:

For taking away our Charters, abolishing our most valuable Laws, and altering fundamentally the Forms of our Governments:

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with Power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated Government here, by declaring us out of his Protection and waging War against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our Coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to compleat the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of Cruelty & perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the Head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow Citizens taken Captive on the high Seas to bear Arms against their Country, to become the executioners of their friends and Brethren, or to fall themselves by their Hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavoured to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian Savages, whose known rule of warfare, is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes and conditions.<sup>1</sup>

In every stage of these Oppressions We have Petitioned for Redress in the most humble terms: Our repeated Petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A Prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a Tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free People.

Nor have We been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them from time to time of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded

<sup>1</sup> He has waged cruel war against human nature itself, violating its most sacred rights of life and liberty in the persons of a distant people who never offended him, captivating and carrying them into slavery in another hemisphere, or to incur miserable death in their transportation thither. This piratical warfare, the opprobrium of INFIDEL powers, is the warfare of the CHRISTIAN King of Great Britain. Determined to keep open a market where MEN should be bought and sold, he has prostituted his negative for suppressing every legislative attempt to prohibit or to restrain this execrable commerce. And that this assemblage of horrors might want no fact of distinguished die, he is now exciting those very people to rise in arms among us, and to purchase that liberty of which he has deprived them, by murdering the people on whom he also obtruded them: thus paying off former crimes committed against the LIBERTIES of one people, with crimes which he urges them to commit against the LIVES of another.

This clause concerning the African slave-trade was written by Thomas Jefferson as a part of the original draft of the Declaration. The Congress, however, refused to adopt it.

them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which, would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our Separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, Enemies in War, in Peace Friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the united States of America, in General Congress, Assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States; that they are Absolved from all Allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved; and that as Free and Independent States, they have full Power to levy War, conclude Peace, contract Alliances, establish Commerce, and to do all other Acts and Things which Independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the Protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our Lives, our Fortunes and our sacred Honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.	NEW JERSEY.	THOS. STONE, CHARLES CARROLL of Carroll ton.
JOSIAH BARTLETT, WM. WHIPPLE, MATTHEW THORNTON.	RICHD. STOCKTON, JNO. WITHERSPOON, FRAS. HOPKINSON, JOHN HART, ABRA. CLARK.	VIRGINIA.
MASSACHUSETTS BAY.	PENNSYLVANIA.	GEORGE WYTHE, RICHARD HENRY LEE, TH. JEFFERSON, BENJA. HARRISON, THOS. NELSON, jr., FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE, CARTER BRAXTON.
SAML. ADAMS, JOHN ADAMS, ROBT. TREAT PAINE, ELBRIDGE GERRY.	ROBT. MORRIS, BENJAMIN RUSH, BENJA. FRANKLIN, JOHN MORTON, GEO. CLYMER, JAS. SMITH, GEO. TAYLOR, JAMES WILSON, GEO. ROSS.	NORTH CAROLINA.
RHODE ISLAND.	DELAWARE.	WM. HOOPER, JOSEPH HEWES, JOHN PENN.
STEP. HOPKINS, WILLIAM ELLERY.	CÆSAR RODNEY, GEO. READ, THO. M'KEAN.	SOUTH CAROLINA
CONNECTICUT.	MARYLAND.	EDWARD RUTLEDGE, THOS. HEYWARD, Junr., THOMAS LYNCH, Junr., ARTHUR MIDDLETON.
ROGER SHERMAN, SAM'EL HUNTINGTON, WM. WILLIAMS, OLIVER WOLCOTT.	SAMUEL CHASE, WM. PACA.	GEORGIA:
NEW YORK.		BUTTON GWINNETT. LYMAN HALL, GEO. WALTON.
WM. FLOYD, PHIL. LIVINGSTON, FRANS. LEWIS, LEWIS MORRIS.		

## APPENDIX II.

---

### ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.<sup>1</sup>

#### To all to Whom

these Presents shall come, we the undersigned Delegates of the States affixed to our Names send greeting. Whereas the Delegates of the United States of America in Congress assembled did on the fifteenth day of November in the Year of Our Lord One thousand seven Hundred and Seventy seven, and in the second Year of the Independence of America agree to certain articles of Confederation and perpetual Union between the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts-bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, South-Carolina, and Georgia in the Words following, viz. "ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION and perpetual Union between the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts-bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, South-Carolina and Georgia."

ARTICLE I. THE Stile of this confederacy shall be "THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA."

ARTICLE II. EACH state retains its sovereignty, freedom and independence, and every Power, Jurisdiction and right, which is not by this confederation expressly delegated to the United States, in Congress assembled.

ARTICLE III. THE said states hereby severally enter into a firm league of friendship with each other, for their common defence, the security of their Liberties, and their mutual and general welfare,

<sup>1</sup> These articles were agreed to by the Congress, Nov. 15, 1777. A copy was written out and sundry amendments were made in the diction without altering the sense, and the articles as given above were adopted by the Congress, July 9, 1778.

binding themselves to assist each other, against all force offered to, or attacks made upon them, or any of them, on account of religion, sovereignty, trade, or any other pretence whatever.

ARTICLE IV. THE better to secure and perpetuate mutual friendship and intercourse among the people of the different states in this union, the free inhabitants of each of these states, paupers, vagabonds, and fugitives from Justice excepted, shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several states; and the people of each state shall have free ingress and regress to and from any other state, and shall enjoy therein all the privileges of trade and commerce, subject to the same duties, impositions and restrictions as the inhabitants thereof respectively, provided that such restriction shall not extend so far as to prevent the removal of property imported into any state, to any other state of which the Owner is an inhabitant; provided also that no imposition, duties or restriction shall be laid by any state, on the property of the united states, or either of them.

IF any Person be guilty of, or charged with treason, felony, or other high misdemeanor in any state, shall flee from Justice, and be found in any of the united states, he shall upon demand of the Governor or executive power, of the state from which he fled, be delivered up and removed to the state having jurisdiction of his offence.

FULL faith and credit shall be given in each of these states to the records, acts and judicial proceedings of the courts and magistrates of every other state.

ARTICLE V. FOR the more convenient management of the general interest of the united states, delegates shall be annually appointed in such manner as the legislature of each state shall direct, to meet in Congress on the first Monday in November, in every year, with a power reserved to each state, to recall its delegates, or any of them, at any time within the year, and to send others in their stead, for the remainder of the Year.

No state shall be represented in Congress by less than two, nor by more than seven Members; and no person shall be capable of being a delegate for more than three years in any term of six years; nor shall any person, being a delegate, be capable of holding any office under the united states, for which he, or another for his benefit receives any salary, fees or emolument of any kind.

EACH state shall maintain its own delegates in a meeting of the states, and while they act as members of the committee of the states.

IN determining questions in the united states, in Congress assembled, each state shall have one vote.

FREEDOM of speech and debate in congress shall not be impeached or questioned in any Court, or place out of Congress, and the members of Congress shall be protected in their persons from arrests and im-

prisonments, during the time of their going to and from, and attendance on congress, except for treason, felony, or breach of the peace.

ARTICLE VI. No state without the Consent of the united states in congress assembled, shall send any embassy to, or receive any embassy from, or enter into any conference, agreement, alliance or treaty with any King, prince or state; nor shall any person holding any office of profit or trust under the united states, or any of them, accept of any present, emolument, office or title of any kind whatever from any king, prince or foreign state; nor shall the united states in congress assembled, or any of them, grant any title of nobility.

No two or more states shall enter into any treaty, confederation or alliance whatever between them, without the consent of the united states in congress assembled, specifying accurately the purpose for which the same is to be entered into, and how long it shall continue.

No state shall lay any imposts or duties, which may interfere with any stipulations in treaties, entered into by the united states in congress assembled, with any king, prince or state, in pursuance of any treaties already proposed by congress, to the courts of France and Spain.

No vessels of war shall be kept up in time of peace by any state, except such number only, as shall be deemed necessary by the united states in congress assembled, for the defence of such state, or its trade; nor shall any body of forces be kept up by any state, in time of peace, except such number only, as in the judgment of the united states, in congress assembled, shall be deemed requisite to garrison the forts necessary for the defence of such state; but every state shall always keep up a well regulated and disciplined militia, sufficiently armed and accoutred, and shall provide and constantly have ready for use, in public stores, a due number of field pieces and tents, and a proper quantity of arms, ammunition and camp equipage.

No state shall engage in any war without the consent of the united states in congress assembled, unless such state be actually invaded by enemies, or shall have received advice of a resolution being formed by some nation of Indians to invade such state, and the danger is so imminent as not to admit of a delay, till the united states in congress assembled can be consulted: nor shall any state grant commissions to any ships or vessels of war, nor letters of marque or reprisal, except it be after a declaration of war by the united states in congress assembled, and then only against the kingdom or state and the subjects thereof, against which war has been so declared, and under such regulations as shall be established by the united states in congress assembled, unless such state be infested by pirates, in which case vessels of war may be fitted out for that occasion, and kept so long as the danger shall continue, or until the united states in congress assembled shall determine otherwise.

ARTICLE VII. WHEN land-forces are raised by any state for the common defence, all officers of or under the rank of colonel, shall be appointed by the legislature of each state respectively by whom such forces shall be raised, or in such manner as such state shall direct, and all vacancies shall be filled up by the state which first made the appointment.

ARTICLE VIII. ALL charges of war, and all other expenses that shall be incurred for the common defence or general welfare, and allowed by the united states in congress assembled, shall be defrayed out of a common treasury, which shall be supplied by the several states, in proportion to the value of all land within each state, granted to or surveyed for any Person, as such land and the buildings and improvements thereon shall be estimated according to such mode as the united states in congress assembled, shall from time to time, direct and appoint. The taxes for paying that proportion shall be laid and levied by the authority and direction of the legislatures of the several states within the time agreed upon by the united states in congress assembled.

ARTICLE IX. THE united states in congress assembled, shall have the sole and exclusive right and power of determining on peace and war, except in the cases mentioned in the sixth article—of sending and receiving ambassadors—entering into treaties and alliances, provided that no treaty of commerce shall be made whereby the legislative power of the respective states shall be restrained from imposing such imposts and duties on foreigners, as their own people are subjected to, or from prohibiting the exportation or importation of any species of goods or commodities whatsoever—of establishing rules for deciding in all cases, what captures on land or water shall be legal, and in what manner prizes taken by land or naval forces in the service of the united states shall be divided or appropriated—of granting letters of marque and reprisal in times of peace—appointing courts for the trial of piracies and felonies committed on the high seas and establishing courts for receiving and determining finally appeals in all cases of captures, provided that no member of congress shall be appointed a judge of any of the said courts.

THE united states in congress assembled shall also be the last resort on appeal in all disputes and differences now subsisting or that hereafter may arise between two or more states concerning boundary, jurisdiction or any other cause whatever; which authority shall always be exercised in the manner following. WHENEVER the legislative or executive authority or lawful agent of any state in controversy with another shall present a petition to congress, stating the matter in question and praying for a hearing, notice thereof shall be given by order of congress to the legislative or executive authority of the other state in controversy, and a day assigned for the appearance of the parties

by their lawful agents, who shall then be directed to appoint by joint consent, commissioners or judges to constitute a court for hearing and determining the matter in question: but if they cannot agree, congress shall name three persons out of each of the united states, and from the list of such persons each party shall alternately strike out one, the petitioners beginning, until the number shall be reduced to thirteen; and from that number not less than seven, nor more than nine names as congress shall direct, shall in the presence of congress be drawn out by lot, and the persons whose names shall be so drawn or any five of them, shall be commissioners or judges, to hear and finally determine the controversy, so always as a major part of the judges who shall hear the cause shall agree in the determination: and if either party shall neglect to attend at the day appointed, without shewing reasons, which congress shall judge sufficient, or being present shall refuse to strike, the congress shall proceed to nominate three persons out of each state, and the secretary of congress shall strike in behalf of such party absent or refusing; and the judgment and sentence of the court to be appointed, in the manner before prescribed, shall be final and conclusive; and if any of the parties shall refuse to submit to the authority of such court, or to appear or defend their claim or cause, the court shall nevertheless proceed to pronounce sentence, or judgment, which shall in like manner be final and decisive, the judgment or sentence and other proceedings being in either case transmitted to congress, and lodged among the acts of congress for the security of the parties concerned: provided that every commissioner, before he sits in judgment, shall take an oath to be administered by one of the judges of the supreme or superior court of the state, where the cause shall be tried, "well and truly to hear and determine the matter in question, according to the best of his judgment, without favour, affection or hope of reward:" provided also that no state shall be deprived of territory for the benefit of the united states.

ALL controversies concerning the private right of soil claimed under different grants of two or more states, whose jurisdictions as they may respect such lands, and the states which passed such grants are adjusted, the said grants or either of them being at the same time claimed to have originated antecedent to such settlement of jurisdiction, shall on the petition of either party to the congress of the united states, be finally determined as near as may be in the same manner as is before prescribed for deciding disputes respecting territorial jurisdiction between different states.

THE united states in congress assembled shall also have the sole and exclusive right and power of regulating the alloy and value of coin struck by their own authority, or by that of the respective states—fixing the standard of weights and measures throughout the United States—regulating the trade and managing all affairs with the Indians, not members of any of the states, provided that the legislative

right of any state within its own limits be not infringed or violated—establishing and regulating post-offices from one state to another, throughout all the united states, and exacting such postage on the papers passing thro' the same as may be requisite to defray the expenses of the said office—appointing all officers of the land forces, in the service of the united states, excepting regimental officers—appointing all the officers of the naval forces, and commissioning all officers whatever in the service of the united states—making rules for the government and regulation of the said land and naval forces, and directing their operations.

THE united states in congress assembled shall have authority to appoint a committee, to sit in the recess of congress, to be denominated “A Committee of the States,” and to consist of one delegate from each state; and to appoint such other committees and civil officers as may be necessary for managing the general affairs of the united states under their direction—to appoint one of their number to preside, provided that no person be allowed to serve in the office of president more than one year in any term of three years; to ascertain the necessary sums of Money to be raised for the service of the united states, and to appropriate and apply the same for defraying the public expenses—to borrow money, or emit bills on the credit of the united states, transmitting every half year to the respective states an account of the sums of money so borrowed or emitted,—to build and equip a navy—to agree upon the number of land forces, and to make requisitions from each state for its quota, in proportion to the number of white inhabitants in such state; which requisition shall be binding, and thereupon the legislature of each state shall appoint the regimental officers, raise the men and clothe, arm and equip them in a soldier like manner, at the expense of the united states; and the officers and men so clothed, armed and equipped shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on by the united states in congress assembled: But if the united states in congress assembled shall, on consideration of circumstances judge proper that any state should not raise men, or should raise a smaller number than its quota, and that any other state should raise a greater number of men than the quota thereof, such extra number shall be raised, officered, clothed, armed and equipped in the same manner as the quota of such state, unless the legislature of such state shall judge that such extra number cannot be safely spared out of the same, in which case they shall raise, officer, clothe, arm and equip as many of such extra number as they judge can be safely spared. AND the officers and men so cloathed, armed and equipped, shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on by the united states in congress assembled.

THE united states in congress assembled shall never engage in a war, nor grant letters of marque and reprisal in time of peace, nor enter into any treaties or alliances, nor coin money, nor regulate the value

thereof, nor ascertain the sums and expenses necessary for the defence and welfare of the united states, or any of them, nor emit bills, nor borrow money on the credit of the united states, nor appropriate money, nor agree upon the number of vessels of war, to be built or purchased, or the number of land or sea forces to be raised, nor appoint a commander in chief of the army or navy, unless nine states assent to the same: nor shall a question on any other point, except for adjourning from day to day be determined, unless by the votes of a majority of the united states in congress assembled.

THE congress of the united states shall have power to adjourn to any time within the year, and to any place within the united states, so that no period of adjournment be for a longer duration than the space of six months, and shall publish the Journal of their proceedings monthly, except such parts thereof relating to treaties, alliances or military operations, as in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the delegates of each state on any question shall be entered on the Journal, when it is desired by any delegate; and the delegates of a state, or any of them, at his or their request shall be furnished with a transcript of the said Journal, except such parts as are above excepted, to lay before the legislatures of the several states.

ARTICLE X. THE committee of the states, or any nine of them, shall be authorized to execute, in the recess of congress, such of the powers of congress as the united states in congress assembled, by the consent of nine states, shall from time to time think expedient to vest them with; provided that no power be delegated to the said committee, for the exercise of which, by the articles of confederation, the voice of nine states in the congress of the united states assembled is requisite.

ARTICLE XI. CANADA acceding to this confederation, and joining in the measures of the united states, shall be admitted into, and entitled to all the advantages of this union: but no other colony shall be admitted into the same, unless such admission be agreed to by nine states.

ARTICLE XII. ALL bills of credit emitted, monies borrowed and debts contracted by, or under the authority of congress, before the assembling of the united states, in pursuance of the present confederation, shall be deemed and considered as a charge against the united states, for payment and satisfaction whereof the said united states, and the public faith are hereby solemnly pledged.

ARTICLE XIII. EVERY state shall abide by the determinations of the united states in congress assembled, on all questions which by this confederation are submitted to them. AND the Articles of this confederation shall be inviolably observed by every state, and the union

shall be perpetual; nor shall any alteration at any time hereafter be made in any of them; unless such alteration be agreed to in a congress of the united states, and be afterwards confirmed by the legislatures of every state.

**And Whereas** it hath pleased the Great GOVERNOR of the World to incline the hearts of the legislatures we respectively represent in congress, to approve of, and to authorize us to ratify the said articles of confederation and perpetual union. **Know We** that we the undersigned delegates, by virtue of the power and authority to us given for that purpose, do by these presents, in the name and in behalf of our respective constituents, fully and entirely ratify and confirm each and every of the said articles of confederation and perpetual union, and all and singular the matters and things therein contained: AND we do further solemnly plight and engage the faith of our respective constituents, that they shall abide by the determinations of the united states in congress assembled, on all questions, which by the said confederation are submitted to them. AND that the articles thereof shall be inviolably observed by the states we respectively represent, and that the union shall be perpetual. IN WITNESS whereof we have hereunto set our hands in Congress. DONE at Philadelphia in the state of Pennsylvania the ninth Day of July in the Year of our Lord one Thousand seven Hundred and Seventy eight, and in the third year of the independence of America.

On the part & behalf of the State of Delaware	{ Thos M: Kean Feb 12. 1779 John Dickinson, May 5th 1779 Nicholas VanDyke,	Josiah Bartlett, John Wentworth Junr } august 8th 1778	} on the part & behalf of the State of New Hampshire
on the part and behalf of the State of Maryland	{ John Hanson March 1st 1781 Daniel Carroll. do.	John Hancock. Samuel Adams Elbridge Gerry. Frances Dana James Lovell Samuel Holten.	} on the part and behalf of the State of Massachusetts Bay
On the Part and Behalf of the State of Virginia	{ Richard Henry Lee John Bannister Thomas Adams Jno Harvie Francis Lightfoot Lee	William Ellery Henry Marchant John Collins	} On the part and behalf of the State of Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations
on the part and Behalf of the State of No. Carolina	{ John Penn July 21st 1778 Corns Harnett Jno. Williams	Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington Oliver Wolcott Titus Hosmer Andrew Stearns	} on the Part and behalf of the State of Connecticut
On the part and behalf of the State of South-Carolina	{ Henry Laurens. William Henry Drayton Jno. Mathews Richd Hudson Thos. Heyward Junr.	Jas. Duane. Fras. Lewis Wm Duer. Gouv. Morris,	} On the Part and Behalf of the State of New York
On the part and behalf of the State of Georgia	{ Jno Walton 24th July 1778 Edwd. Telfair. Edwd. Langworthy.	Jno Witherspoon Nath. Scudder	} On the Part and in Behalf of the State of New Jersey. Novr. 26. 1778
		Robt Morris. Daniel Roberdean Jon. Bayard Smith William Clingan Joseph Reed. 22d July 1778	} On the part and behalf of the State of Pennsylvania

## THE CONFEDERACY COMPLETED.

“According to the order of the day the honorable John Hanson and Daniel Carroll two of the delegates for the State of Maryland in pursuance of the act of the legislature of that state entitled ‘An Act to empower the delegates of this state in Congress to subscribe and ratify the Articles of Confederation’ which was read in Congress the 12 of February last and a copy thereof entered on the minutes did in behalf of the said state of Maryland sign and ratify the said articles, by which act the Confederation of the United States of America was completed, each and every of the thirteen united states from New Hampshire to Georgia both included having adopted and confirmed and by their delegates in Congress ratified the same.”—*Manuscript Journal of Congress*. March 1, 1781.

## APPENDIX III.

---

### CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

#### PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

#### ARTICLE I.—LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

##### SECTION 1.—CONGRESS.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

##### SECTION 2.—HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES.

The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors<sup>1</sup> in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors<sup>1</sup> of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,<sup>2</sup> which shall be determined by adding to

<sup>1</sup> This word "Electors" means voters. This clause is modified by the 14th Amendment.

<sup>2</sup> At present (1904) there is one representative for every 193,291 persons.

the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.<sup>1</sup> The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative: and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### SECTION 3.—SENATE.

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

<sup>1</sup> This word "Persons" means slaves. The Fourteenth Amendment has superseded this clause.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments:<sup>1</sup> When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

#### SECTION 4.—BOTH HOUSES.

The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.<sup>2</sup>

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION 5.—THE HOUSES SEPARATELY.

Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

<sup>1</sup> This is the mode of trial in the case of a public officer charged with wrongdoing. The House of Representatives must first pass a bill of impeachment. The Senate then sits as a court to try the accused. A two-thirds vote of the Senate is necessary for conviction.

<sup>2</sup> Otherwise, Congress would have power to fix the places of meeting of state legislatures.

## SECTION 6.—PRIVILEGES AND DISABILITIES OF MEMBERS.

The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation<sup>1</sup> for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

## SECTION 7.—METHOD OF PASSING LAWS.

All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of

<sup>1</sup> At present (1904) this is \$5,000 a year, with \$125 annual allowance for stationery, twenty cents for every mile traveled by direct route to and from the capital, and the services of a private secretary.

the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8.—POWERS GRANTED TO CONGRESS.

The Congress shall have power:

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

To establish a uniform rule of naturalization,<sup>1</sup> and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

To establish post-offices and post-roads;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal,<sup>2</sup> and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

To provide and maintain a navy;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions.

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the

<sup>1</sup> This is the legal process by which a foreigner becomes entitled to the rights and privileges of a citizen of the United States.

<sup>2</sup> "Letters of marque and reprisal" are papers giving authority to a ship owned by private citizens to attack the ships of another country. These ships are called privateers.

government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings;—And

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

#### SECTION 9.—POWERS FORBIDDEN TO THE UNITED STATES.

The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.<sup>1</sup>

The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus<sup>2</sup> shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder<sup>3</sup> or ex-post-facto law<sup>4</sup> shall be passed.

No capitation<sup>5</sup> or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.<sup>6</sup>

#### SECTION 10.—POWERS FORBIDDEN TO THE STATES.

No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit;

<sup>1</sup> A temporary clause, no longer in force.

<sup>2</sup> A writ requiring an accused person who has been imprisoned to be brought before a judge to inquire whether he is legally held.

<sup>3</sup> An act of a legislative body inflicting the death penalty without judicial trial.

<sup>4</sup> A law relating to the punishment of acts committed before the law was passed.

<sup>5</sup> Capitation tax, or poll tax, means a tax upon a person.

<sup>6</sup> The personal rights set forth in Section 9 have been extended by Amendments I.-X.

make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships-of-war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.—EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION 1.—PRESIDENT AND VICE-PRESIDENT.

The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from

two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.]<sup>1</sup>

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.<sup>2</sup>

No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation<sup>3</sup> which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

#### SECTION 2.—POWERS OF THE PRESIDENT.

The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

<sup>1</sup> This clause in brackets has been superseded by Amendment XII.

<sup>2</sup> The electors are chosen on the Tuesday following the first Monday in November, preceding the close of a Presidential term. The electoral votes are cast on the second Monday in January following, for President and Vice-President. The votes are counted in Congress on the second Wednesday of the next February.

<sup>3</sup> The President now receives \$50,000 a year; the Vice-President, \$8,000.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

#### SECTION 3.—DUTIES OF THE PRESIDENT.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time or adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

#### SECTION 4.—IMPEACHMENT.

The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.—JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

#### SECTION 1.—UNITED STATES COURTS.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation<sup>1</sup> which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

<sup>1</sup> The chief justice of the Supreme Court receives \$10,500 a year; the associate justices \$10,000 each.

## SECTION 2.—JURISDICTION OF UNITED STATES COURTS.

The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more States;—between a State and citizens of another State;<sup>1</sup>—between citizens of different States;—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

## SECTION 3.—TREASON.

Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.—RELATIONS OF THE STATES TO EACH OTHER

## SECTION 1.—OFFICIAL ACTS.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

<sup>1</sup> Modified by Amendment XI.

## SECTION 2.—PRIVILEGES OF CITIZENS.

The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.<sup>1</sup>

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.<sup>2</sup>

## SECTION 3.—NEW STATES AND TERRITORIES.

New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

## SECTION 4.—PROTECTION OF THE STATES.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.—AMENDMENTS.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case,

<sup>1</sup> Extended by Amendment XIV.

<sup>2</sup> Superseded by Amendment XIII.

shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

#### ARTICLE VI.—GENERAL PROVISIONS.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the confederation.<sup>1</sup>

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII.—RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,  
*President, and Deputy from Virginia.*

<sup>1</sup> Extended by Amendment XIV, Section 4.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.	PENNSYLVANIA.	VIRGINIA.
JOHN LANGDON, NICHOLAS GILMAN.	BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, THOMAS MIFFLIN, ROBERT MORRIS, GEORGE CLYMER, THOMAS FITZSIMONS, JARED INGERSOLL, JAMES WILSON, GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.	JOHN BLAIR, JAMES MADISON, JR.
MASSACHUSETTS.		NORTH CAROLINA.
NATHANIEL GORHAM, RUFUS KING.		WILLIAM BLOUNT, RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT, HUGH WILLIAMSON.
CONNECTICUT.	DELAWARE.	
WILLIAM SAMUEL JOHNSON, ROGER SHERMAN.	GEORGE READ, GUNNING BEDFORD, JR., JOHN DICKINSON, RICHARD BASSETT, JACOB BROOM.	SOUTH CAROLINA.
NEW YORK.		JOHN RUTLEDGE, CHARLES C. PINCKNEY, CHARLES PINCKNEY, PIERCE BUTLER.
ALEXANDER HAMILTON.		
NEW JERSEY.	MARYLAND.	GEORGIA.
WILLIAM LIVINGSTON, DAVID BREARLEY, WILLIAM PATERSON, JONATHAN DAYTON.	JAMES M'HENRY, DANIEL OF ST. THOMAS JENIFER, DANIEL CARROLL.	WILLIAM FEW, ABRAHAM BALDWIN.
		<i>Attest:</i> WILLIAM JACKSON, <i>Secretary.</i>

## AMENDMENTS.

ARTICLE I.<sup>1</sup>—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a

<sup>1</sup> The first ten amendments were proposed by Congress in 1789, and were proclaimed to be in force December 15, 1791.

grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reëxamined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of common law.

ARTICLE VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.<sup>1</sup>—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against any of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.<sup>2</sup>—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they

<sup>1</sup> Proposed in 1794; proclaimed to be in force January 8, 1798.

<sup>2</sup> Proclaimed to be in force September 25, 1804.

shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person having a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.<sup>1</sup>—*Section 1.* Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

*Section 2.* Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.<sup>2</sup>—*Section 1.* All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process

<sup>1</sup> Proclaimed to be in force December 18, 1865.

<sup>2</sup> Proclaimed to be in force July 28, 1868.

of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

*Section 2.* Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

*Section 3.* No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

*Section 4.* The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

*Section 5.* Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.<sup>1</sup>—*Section 1.* The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

*Section 2.* Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

<sup>1</sup> Proclaimed to be in force March 30, 1870.

ARTICLE XVI.—The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several States, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

ARTICLE XVII.—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. The electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislatures.

When vacancies happen in the representation of any State in the Senate, the executive authority of such State shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: *Provided*, That the legislature of any State may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any Senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the Constitution.

PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

APPENDIX IV.

NO.	PRESIDENT.	STATE.	TERM OF OFFICE.	VICE-PRESIDENT.	SECRETARY OF STATE.
1	George Washington	Virginia	Two terms; 1789-1797	John Adams	Thomas Jefferson. Edmund Randolph. Timothy Pickering. Timothy Pickering. John Marshall. James Madison.
2	John Adams	Massachusetts	One term; 1797-1801	Thomas Jefferson	
3	Thomas Jefferson	Virginia	Two terms; 1801-1809	Aaron Burr	
4	James Madison	Virginia	Two terms; 1809-1817	George Clinton	Robert Smith. James Monroe.
5	James Monroe	Virginia	Two terms; 1817-1825	Elbridge Gerry	John Quincy Adams. Henry Clay.
6	John Quincy Adams	Massachusetts	One term; 1825-1829	Daniel D. Tompkins	
7	Andrew Jackson	Tennessee	Two terms; 1829-1837	John C. Calhoun	Martin Van Buren. Edward Livingston. Louis McLane.
8	Martin Van Buren	New York	One term; 1837-1841	Martin Van Buren	John Forsyth.
9	William H. Harrison	Ohio	One month; 1841	Richard M. Johnson	John Forsyth. Daniel Webster.
10	John Tyler	Virginia	3 years 11 months; 1841-1845	John Tyler	Hugh S. Legaré. Abel P. Upshur. John C. Calhoun.
11	James K. Polk	Tennessee	One term; 1845-1849	George M. Dallas	James Buchanan.
12	Zachary Taylor	Louisiana	1 year 4 months; 1849, 1850	Millard Fillmore	John M. Clayton. Daniel Webster.
13	Millard Fillmore	New York	2 years 8 months; 1850-1853	William R. King	Edward Everett.
14	Franklin Pierce	New Hampshire	One term; 1853-1857	J. C. Breckinridge	William L. Marcy. Lewis Cass.
15	James Buchanan	Pennsylvania	One term; 1857-1861	Hannibal Hamlin	Jeremiah S. Black. William H. Seward.
16	Abraham Lincoln	Illinois	One term and 6 weeks; 1861-1865	Andrew Johnson	
17	Andrew Johnson	Tennessee	3 years 10½ months; 1865-1869	Schuyler Colfax	William H. Seward. Elihu B. Washburn. Hamilton Fish.
18	Ulysses S. Grant	Illinois	Two terms; 1869-1877	Henry Wilson	William M. Evarts. James G. Blaine.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio	One term; 1877-1881	William A. Wheeler	F. T. Frelinghuysen.
20	James A. Garfield	Ohio	6 months 15 days; 1881	Chester A. Arthur	Thomas F. Bayard. James G. Blaine.
21	Chester A. Arthur	New York	3 years 5 months 15 days; 1881-1885	Thomas A. Hendricks	Walter Q. Gresham.
22	Grover Cleveland	New York	One term; 1885-1889	Levi P. Morton	John Sherman. William R. Day.
23	Benjamin Harrison	Indiana	One term; 1889-1893	Adlai E. Stevenson	John Hay.
24	Grover Cleveland	New York	One term; 1893-1897	Garrett A. Hobart	John Hay. Elihu Root.
25	William McKinley	Ohio	One term and 6 mos. 10 days; 1897-1901	Theodore Roosevelt	Philander Knox. William J. Bryan. Robert Lansing.
26	Theodore Roosevelt	New York	One term, 3 years, 5 months, 21 days; 1901-1909	Charles W. Fairbanks	
27	William H. Taft	Ohio	1909-1913	James S. Sherman	
28	Woodrow Wilson	New Jersey	1913-	Thomas R. Marshall	

## APPENDIX V.

Table of the States: Admission, Area, Population, Representation.

	Date of Admission.	Square Miles.	Population.*			No. of Representatives.
			WHITE.	NEGRO.	TOTAL.	
	<b>Ratified the Constitution.</b>					
Delaware . . . . .	Dec. 7, 1787	2,050	171,102	31,181	202,322	1
Pennsylvania . . .	Dec. 12, 1787	45,215	7,467,713	193,919	7,665,111	36
New Jersey . . . .	Dec. 18, 1787	7,815	2,445,894	89,760	2,537,167	12
Georgia . . . . .	Jan. 2, 1788	59,475	1,431,802	1,176,987	2,609,121	12
Connecticut . . . .	Jan. 9, 1788	4,990	1,098,897	15,174	1,114,756	5
Massachusetts . .	Feb. 6, 1788	8,315	3,324,926	38,055	3,366,416	16
Maryland . . . . .	Apr. 28, 1788	12,210	1,062,639	232,250	1,295,346	6
South Carolina . .	May 23, 1788	30,570	679,161	835,843	1,515,400	7
New Hampshire . .	June 21, 1788	9,305	429,906	564	430,572	2
Virginia . . . . .	June 25, 1788	42,450	1,389,809	671,096	2,061,612	10
New York . . . . .	July 26, 1788	49,170	8,966,845	134,191	9,113,614	43
North Carolina . .	Nov. 21, 1789	52,250	1,500,511	697,843	2,206,287	10
Rhode Island . . .	May 29, 1790	1,250	532,492	9,529	542,610	3
	<b>Admitted.</b>					
Vermont . . . . .	Mar. 4, 1791	9,565	354,298	1,621	355,956	2
Kentucky . . . . .	June 1, 1792	40,400	2,027,951	261,656	2,289,905	11
Tennessee . . . . .	June 1, 1796	42,050	1,711,432	473,088	2,184,789	10
Ohio . . . . .	Feb. 19, 1803	41,060	4,654,897	111,452	4,767,121	22
Louisiana . . . . .	Apr. 8, 1812	48,720	941,086	713,874	1,656,388	8
Indiana . . . . .	Dec. 11, 1816	36,350	2,639,961	60,320	2,700,876	13
Mississippi . . . .	Dec. 10, 1817	46,810	786,111	1,009,487	1,797,114	8
Illinois . . . . .	Dec. 3, 1818	56,650	5,526,962	109,049	5,638,591	27
Alabama . . . . .	Dec. 14, 1819	52,250	1,228,832	908,282	2,138,093	10
Maine . . . . .	Mar. 15, 1820	33,040	739,995	1,363	742,371	4
Missouri . . . . .	Aug. 10, 1821	69,415	3,134,932	157,452	3,293,335	16
Arkansas . . . . .	June 15, 1836	53,850	1,131,026	442,891	1,574,449	7
Michigan . . . . .	Jan. 26, 1837	58,915	2,785,247	17,115	2,810,173	13
Florida . . . . .	Mar. 3, 1845	58,680	443,634	308,669	752,619	4
Texas . . . . .	Dec. 29, 1845	265,780	3,204,848	690,049	3,896,542	18
Iowa . . . . .	Dec. 28, 1846	56,025	2,209,191	14,973	2,224,771	11
Wisconsin . . . . .	May 29, 1848	56,040	2,320,555	2,900	2,333,860	11
California . . . . .	Sept. 9, 1850	158,360	2,259,672	21,645	2,377,549	11
Minnesota . . . . .	May 11, 1858	83,365	2,059,227	7,084	2,075,708	10
Oregon . . . . .	Feb. 14, 1859	96,030	655,090	1,492	672,765	3
Kansas . . . . .	Jan. 29, 1861	82,080	1,634,352	54,030	1,690,949	8
West Virginia . .	June 19, 1863	24,780	1,156,817	64,173	1,221,119	6
Nevada . . . . .	Oct. 31, 1864	110,700	74,276	513	81,875	1
Nebraska . . . . .	Mar. 1, 1867	77,510	1,180,293	7,689	1,192,214	6
Colorado . . . . .	Aug. 1, 1876	103,925	783,415	11,453	799,024	4
North Dakota . .	Nov. 3, 1889	70,795	569,855	617	577,056	3
South Dakota . .	Nov. 3, 1889	77,650	563,771	817	583,888	3
Montana . . . . .	Nov. 8, 1889	146,080	360,580	1,834	376,053	2
Washington . . . .	Nov. 11, 1889	69,180	1,109,111	6,058	1,141,990	5
Idaho . . . . .	July 3, 1890	84,800	319,221	651	325,594	2
Wyoming . . . . .	July 10, 1890	97,890	140,318	2,235	145,965	1
Utah . . . . .	Jan. 4, 1896	84,970	366,583	1,144	373,351	2
Oklahoma . . . . .	Nov. 16, 1907	70,057	1,444,531	137,612	1,657,155	8
New Mexico . . .	Feb. 14, 1912	122,634	304,594	1,628	327,301	1
Arizona . . . . .	Feb. 14, 1912	113,956	171,468	2,009	204,354	1
Total . . . . .		3,026,147	81,731,957	9,827,763	91,972,266	435
Outlying possessions . . . . .					9,130,411	
Total population under American flag . . . . .					101,102,677	

Indians, Chinese, Japanese and others, numbering altogether 412,546, are included in the total number.

\* According to the census of 1910.

## APPENDIX VI.

### A SELECTED LIST OF REFERENCE BOOKS.

#### Period of Discovery and Exploration.

- John Fiske's *The Discovery of America*. Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
Washington Irving's *Life and Voyages of Columbus*. Any standard edition.  
Justin Winsor's *Christopher Columbus*. Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
Francis Parkman's *Pioneers of France in the New World*.  
Little, Brown and Company.  
Justin Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America* : Vols. I-II.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
E. W. Gosse's *Raleigh*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.

#### Period of Colonization.

- Justin Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History* : Vols. III-V.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
Justin Winsor's *From Cartier to Frontenac*. Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
John Fiske's *Old Virginia and Her Neighbors*.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
John Fiske's *The Beginnings of New England*, and *The Dutch and Quaker Colonies*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
P. A. Bruce's *Economic History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century*.  
The Macmillan Company.  
Edward Eggleston's *The Beginners of a Nation*.  
D. Appleton and Company  
W. B. Weedon's *Economic and Social History of New England*.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
J. G. Palfrey's *A Compendious History of New England*.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company, and Little, Brown and Company.  
Francis Parkman's *The Jesuits in North America in the Seventeenth Century*,  
and *La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West*.  
Little, Brown and Company.  
H. C. Lodge's *A Short History of the English Colonies in America*.  
Harper Brothers

- A. B. Hart's *American History Told by Contemporaries*: Vol. I.  
The Macmillan Company.
- E. McCrady's *The History of South Carolina*: Vol. I.  
The Macmillan Company.
- Alexander Brown's *The Genesis of the United States*.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- Alexander Johnston's *Connecticut*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- E. H. Roberts's *New York*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- W. H. Browne's *Maryland*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- Henry Bruce's *James Edward Oglethorpe*. . . . . Dodd, Mead and Company.
- Harriet C. Cooper's *James Oglethorpe*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.

### The English and French in North America.

- Francis Parkman's *The Old Régime in Canada; Count Frontenac and New France under Louis XIV.; A Half-Century of Conflict; Montcalm and Wolfe*. . . . . Little, Brown and Company.
- Justin Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*: Vol. V.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- Benjamin Franklin's *Autobiography*. . . . . Any standard edition.
- Washington Irving's *Washington*. . . . . Any standard edition.
- H. C. Lodge's *George Washington*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- Charles W. Baird's *A History of the Huguenot Emigration to America*.  
Dodd, Mead and Company.
- E. McCrady's *The History of South Carolina*: Vol. II.  
The Macmillan Company.
- B. A. Hinsdale's *The Old Northwest*. . . . . Silver, Burdett and Company.
- C. C. Jones's *Georgia*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.

### Period of the Revolution.

- John Fiske's *The American Revolution*. 2 vols.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- John Fiske's *Critical Period of American History*.  
Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- W. W. Henry's *Patrick Henry*. . . . . Charles Scribner's Sons.
- Washington Irving's *Washington*. . . . . Any standard edition.
- H. C. Lodge's *George Washington*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- J. K. Hosmer's *Samuel Adams*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- J. T. Morse's *Benjamin Franklin*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- W. G. Sumner's *Robert Morris*. . . . . Dodd, Mead and Company.
- James Parton's *Thomas Jefferson*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.
- S. N. Randolph's *Domestic Life of Thomas Jefferson*. Harper and Brothers.
- Kate M. Rowland's *Life and Correspondence of Mason*. G. P. Putnam's Sons.
- G. Hunt's *Life of James Madison*. . . . . Doubleday, Page and Company.
- J. T. Morse's *John Adams*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.

- H. C. Lodge's *Alexander Hamilton*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company  
 E. McCrady's *Revolution in South Carolina*. . . . . The Macmillan Company.  
 Jonathan Elliot's *Debates*. . . . . Lippincott and Company.  
 A. B. Hart's *American History Told by Contemporaries* : Vol. II.  
 . . . . . The Macmillan Company.

### Period of Expansion.

- John B. McMaster's *History of the People of the United States*.  
 . . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
 Henry Adams's *History of the United States, 1801-1817*. 9 vols.  
 . . . . . Scribner and Sons.  
 E. S. Maclay's *History of the United States Navy, 1775-1901*.  
 . . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
 J. T. Morse's *John Adams*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 H. C. Lodge's *Alexander Hamilton*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 James Parton's *Thomas Jefferson*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 G. Hunt's *Life of James Madison*. . . . . Doubleday, Page and Company.  
 H. C. Lodge's *Webster*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 Calvin Colton's *Life and Times of Henry Clay*. A. S. Barnes and Company.  
 W. G. Sumner's *Andrew Jackson*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 James Parton's *Andrew Jackson*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 D. C. Gilman's *James Monroe*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 J. T. Morse's *John Quincy Adams*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 A. M. Williams's *Sam Houston*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 John C. Calhoun's *Works*. 6 vols. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
 Theodore Roosevelt's *Thomas H. Benton*. Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 Benton's *Thirty Years' View*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
 Alexander H. Stephens's *War Between the States*. . . . . Philadelphia.  
 L. G. Tyler's *Letters and Times of the Tylers*. . . . . G. P. Putnam's Sons.  
 A. B. Hart's *American History Told by Contemporaries* : Vol. III.  
 . . . . . The Macmillan Company.

### Period of Secession and Reconstruction.

- J. F. Rhodes's *History of the United States from the Compromise of 1850*.  
 . . . . . The Macmillan Company.  
 G. T. Curtis's *Life of James Buchanan*. . . . . Harper and Brothers.  
 J. T. Morse's *Abraham Lincoln*. . . . . Houghton, Mifflin and Company.  
 Alexander H. Stephens's *Constitutional View of the War Between the States*.  
 . . . . . Philadelphia.  
 Jefferson Davis's *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*.  
 . . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
*Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*. 4 vols. . . . . The Century Company.  
 J. C. Ropes's *Story of the Civil War*, 2 vols. . . . . G. P. Putnam's Sons.

- G. F. R. Henderson's *Stonewall Jackson*. Longmans, Green and Company.  
 H. A. White's *Robert E. Lee*. . . . . G. P. Putnam's Sons.  
 R. M. Hughes's *General Johnston*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
 J. A. Wyeth's *Life of General Forrest*. . . . . Harper and Brothers.  
 John B. Gordon's *Reminiscences of the Civil War*. . Charles Scribner's Sons.  
 U. S. Grant's *Memoirs*. . . . . The Century Company.  
 E. S. Maclay's *History of the U. S. Navy*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.  
 W. A. Dunning's *Essays on the Civil War and Reconstruction*.  
 The Macmillan Company.  
 A. B. Hart's *American History Told by Contemporaries* : Vol. IV.  
 The Macmillan Company.

**Period of the New Federal Union.**

- E. Benjamin Andrews' *A History of the Last Quarter Century*.  
 Charles Scribner's Sons.  
 Joseph Wheeler's *The Santiago Campaign*. . . . . Biddle.  
 Theodore Roosevelt's *The Rough Riders*. . . . . Charles Scribner's Sons.  
 Appleton's *Annual Cyclopaedia*. . . . . D. Appleton and Company.

## INDEX.

- Abercrombie, General, 105  
Abolitionists, 250, 251  
Abominations, Bill of, 234  
Acadia, 27, 86, 100  
Adams, John, in Continental Congress, 135; Vice-President, 185; President, 197; portrait of, 199; death of, 210; *footnote*  
Adams, John Q., Commissioner at Ghent, 221; President, 230-237; biography of, 231, *footnote*; champions Abolitionists, 251; 255, *footnote*.  
Adams, Samuel, 132; 133, *footnote*; 135 *footnote*; 136  
Aguinaldo, 399  
Alabama, admitted as state, 225  
"Alabama Claims," 365  
Alamance, battle of, 133  
Alaska, purchase of, 363; boundary dispute with Canada, 403  
Albany Congress, 103  
Albemarle, Lord, 74  
Algiers, treaty with, 221  
Alien and Sedition Laws, 199  
Allen, Ethan, 139  
Amendments to Constitution, 188, 359, 360, 362  
Amherst, General, 105, 106, 107  
Anderson, Major, 289  
André, John, 158  
Andros, Sir Edmund, 61, 62  
Appomattox Courthouse, 352, 353  
Arkansas, admitted as a state, 244  
Army of Northern Virginia, under Lee, 313; 316, *footnote*; 318, 334; 335  
Army of the Potomac, 316, 317, 321, 326, 328, 329, 337  
Arnold, Benedict, at Quebec, 141; at Saratoga, 153; treason of, 158  
Arthur, Chester A., elected Vice-President, 377; succeeds Garfield, 378; biography of, 378, *footnote*  
Ashburton and Webster treaty, 253  
Atlanta, Ga., fall of, 343; exposition at, 388, *footnote*  
Augusta, capture of, 160  
Austin, Moses, 253  
Austin, Stephen F., 253  
Averysboro, battle of, 350  
  
Bacon, Nathaniel, 39  
Balboa, 12  
Bank, *see* U. S. Bank  
Banks, N. P., 310, 311, 321, 325  
Barbary States, war with, 202  
Baton Rouge, 303  
Beauregard, G. F., biography of, 289, *footnote*; portrait of, 290; in Civil War, 305; 339  
Bee, General, 294, *footnote*  
Belknap, General, impeachment of, 367  
Bell, John, nominated for President, 281  
Bentonville, battle of, 350  
Bering Sea, fisheries of, 384  
Berkeley, Sir William, 37-40  
Berlin and Milan Decrees, 208  
Bienville, founds New Orleans, 89  
Birney, James G., 252, 255  
Black Hawk war, 244  
Blaine, James G., nominated for President, 379  
Blair, James, 40  
Bland-Allison Act, passage of, 376, *footnote*; repeal of, 383  
Boone, Daniel, 123, 124, 157  
Booth, John Wilkes, 354  
Border States, 290, 298  
Boston settled by Puritans, 52; Massacre, 132; Tea-Party, 133; Port Bill, 134; campaign about, 141; evacuated, 146  
Bradford, William, 51  
Bragg, Braxton, 259, 306, 307, 323-326  
Brandy Station, 328, *footnote*

- Brandywine, battle of, 152  
 Bratton, William, 161  
 Breckinridge, John C., 274, 281  
 Brown, Gen. Jacob, 218  
 Brown, John, raid of, 280, 281  
 Bryan, William J., nominated for President, 387, 400  
 Buchanan, James, candidate for President, 270; inaugurated as President, 278; portrait, 279; last message to Congress, 283; in War between the States, 289  
 Buckner, S. B., nominated for Vice-President, 387  
 Buell, Don Carlos, 305, 306, 307  
 Bull Run, *see* Manassas  
 Bulwer, Henry Lytton, effects treaty, 269, 403  
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 140  
 Burgesses, House of, in Virginia, 33, 36  
 Burgoyne, Captures Ticonderoga, 152; surrender of, 154  
 Burlingame Treaty, 390  
 Burnside, Ambrose E., 316, 317, 325  
 Burr, Aaron, candidate for Vice-President, 200; duel with Hamilton, 205; tried for treason, 205  
 Butler, Benjamin F., 302, 303, 336, 339, 349, 380  
  
 Cabinet, the, 188, *footnote*  
 Cable, Atlantic Ocean, 363  
 Cabot, John and Sebastian, 9, 10  
 Cahokia, capture of, 156  
 Calhoun, John C., biography of, *footnote* 214; Vice-President, 231; frames Exposition and Protest, 234, *footnote*; 235  
 California ceded by Mexico, 260; gold found in, 263; made a territory, 264.  
 Calvert, Cecilius, 43-47  
 Calvert, George (first Lord Baltimore), 42, 43, 45  
 Calvert, Leonard, 43, 44  
 Camden, battle of, 162  
 Campbell, Archibald, 160  
 Campbell, William, 164  
 Canada, settled by French, 86; capture of, 106; invaded by Montgomery, 141; boundary disputes with, 253, 403  
 Canby, Gen. Edward R. S., 303  
 Capitol of the United States, on the Potomac, 200, *footnote*  
 Carlton, Guy, 144, 148  
 Carolinas, North and South, 72; unsuccessfully invaded, 144  
 Carpet-baggers, origin of, 361; government of, 368; fall of, 375  
 Carteret, George, 68  
 Cartier, Jacques, 14  
 Carver, John, 51  
 Cass, Lewis, 265, 270  
 Caswell, Richard, 145  
 Cebu, island of, 399  
 Cedar Run, battle of, 314, 319  
 Cemetery Ridge, 329, 330, 331  
 Centennial Exposition, 367  
 Cervera, Admiral, 395, 396  
 Champlain, Samuel de, Governor of Canada, 86  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 326, 327  
 Charleston (S. C.), settled, 76, 77; captured, 160; abandoned, 167; convention of 1860, 281, 283; harbor, map of, 289; blockaded, 333; earthquake, 381  
 Chatham, *see* William Pitt  
 Chattanooga, battle of, 324, 326  
 Cherokee Indians, 105, 156, 233, 239  
 Cherry Valley, 158  
*Chesapeake*, attacked by *Leopard*, 208; captured, 217  
 Chickamauga, battle of, 324-326  
 Chickasaw Bayou, battle of, 322  
 China, commercial treaty with, 403  
 Chinese Exclusion Bill, 389, 390  
 Chippewa, battle of, 218  
 Christian, Colonel, 156  
 Churubusco, 260  
 Civil Rights Bill, 360  
 Civil Service Commission, 378  
 Claiborne, William, 44  
 Clark, George Rogers, 156, 157  
 Clark, William, 205  
 Clay, Henry, biography of, 214; commissioner at Ghent, 221; candidate for President, 230; supports Tariff Law, 230; Sec'y of State, 232; 235, 252, 255, 256  
 Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 269, 402  
*Clermont*, 207  
 Cleveland, Grover, elected President, 379, 380; biography of, 379, *footnote*; renominated for President, 381, 382; reëlected, 385  
 Clinton, George, 191, 204

- Clinton, Sir Henry, 145, 158  
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 339  
 Colfax, Schuyler, elected Vice-President, 365  
 Coligny, Gaspard de, 16  
 Colonial Homes, 94, 110, 114-116  
 Colonization Society, 227  
 Colorado, admitted as a state, 368  
 Columbus, Christopher, voyages and discoveries of, 3-9  
 Commerce between the states, 174  
 Committees of Correspondence, 133  
 Compromise of 1850, 266  
 Compromises of United States Constitution, 183  
 Confederacy, the Southern, organization of, 285; adopts a constitution, 286, 287; prepares for war, 292; resources of, 298, 299; division of, 301  
 Confederate cruisers, 345, 346  
 Confederate flag, development of, 370, 371  
 Confederation, Articles of, 171, 172  
*Congress*, the, 309  
 Conkling, Roscoe, 377  
 Connecticut, founding of, 54, 55  
*Constitution and Guerriere*, 215  
 Constitution of the United States, 179-185  
 Constitutions adopted by the Colonies, 141, 142  
 Continental Congress, 135  
 Continental Currency, 155, 172  
 Convention, Federal, at Annapolis, 179  
 Corinth, Miss., 307  
 Cornwallis, Lord, 151, 161-167  
 Coronado, 15  
 Corpus Christi, 258  
 Cowpens, battle of, 164  
 "Crater," the, 340  
 Crawford, William H., candidate for President, 231  
 Credit Mobilier, 367  
 Creek Indians, 195, 218, 233  
 Crittenden, George B., 303  
 Crittenden, John J., proposes Compromise, 284, 285  
 Cross Keys, battle of, 311  
 Crown Point, 104, 105  
 Cuba, 273; revolt of, 393; free from Spain, 398  
 Culp's Hill, 330, 331  
*Cumberland*, 309  
 Cumberland Road, 236  
 Currency, Paper, 242  
 Curtis, S. R., 304  
 Custer, General, 367, 368  
 Dahlgren, John A., death of, 337  
 Dakotas, the, admission as states, 382  
 Dale, Sir Thomas, 31  
 Dallas, George M., nominated for Vice-President, 256  
 Dare, Virginia, 19  
 Davenport, John, 56  
 Davis, Jefferson, in Mexico, 259; Secretary of War, 273; Resolutions of, 281; portrait of, 284; biography of, 285, *footnote*; President of Confederacy, 286; war policy of, 293, 294, 308; capture of, 355  
 Dearborn, General, 215, 218, *footnote*  
 Debt of United States, 189, 242, 366  
 Decatur, Stephen, 221  
 Declaration of Independence, 143  
 Declaration of Independence, Mecklenburg, 140  
 Delaware, settlements in, 70, 71  
 Delaware, Lord, 31  
 Democratic-Republican party, 191  
 De Soto, 16  
 Dewey, George, 395  
 Dickinson, John, 135, *footnote*; 141  
 Dingley, Nelson, tariff bill of, 392  
 Dinwiddie, Governor of Virginia, 101, 102  
 Dole, Sanford B., 400  
 Douglas, Stephen A., candidate for President, 270; in debate with Lincoln, 279, 280; nominated for President, 281.  
 Drake, Francis, 17  
 Dunmore, Lord, 139  
 Dutch West India Company, 64  
 Eads, James B., 376  
 Early, Jubal A., 295, 327, 341, 342  
 Edmunds-Tucker Act, 379  
 El Caney, battle of, 397  
 Electoral Count Act, 380  
 Eliot, John, 60  
 Emancipation Proclamation, 320  
 Embargo Law, 209  
 Endicott, John, 52  
 English, W. H., candidate for Vice-President, 377

- Erie, battle of Lake, 217  
 Erie Canal, 236  
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 166  
 Everett, Edward, nominated for Vice-President, 281  
 Ewell, R. S., 328-331
- Fair Oaks, battle of, 312  
 Farragut, David G., 303, 304, 321  
 Federalist party, 191, 200  
 Field, Cyrus W., 363  
 Field, J. G., 385  
 Fillmore, Millard, 269  
 Financial Panic of 1837, 244  
 Fitch, John, 207  
 Five Forks, battle of, 351  
 Flags, 147, 154, 171, 255, 370, 371  
 Florida, discovered, 13; East and West, 123; dispute over boundary of, 208; purchase of 226  
 Floyd, General J. B., 304  
 Foote, Commodore, 304  
 Force Bills, 364  
 Forrest, N. B., 306, 307, 323, 324, *footnote*; 336, *footnote*; 340, 344  
 Fort Dearborn, 206, 207, 208  
 Fort Donelson, 296, 303, 304  
 Fort Du Quesne, 103  
 Fort Fisher, 349  
 Fort Henry, 296, 303, 30  
 Fort Le Bœuf, 103  
 Fort Loudon, 105  
 Fort McHenry, 219  
 Fort Mimms, 218  
 Fort Moultrie, 146  
 Fort Necessity, 103  
 Fort Niagara, 104  
 Fort Pickens, 289  
 Fort Pillow, 305  
 Fort Raleigh, 19  
 Fort Sumter, 288-290  
 Fort Washington, 149  
 Fort William Henry, 104  
 Fortress Monroe, 312, 317, 355  
 France, alliance with, 173  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 103, 169  
 Franklin, battle of, 343  
 Franklin, state of, 176  
 Fredericksburg, 315-317; 326, 327  
 Freedman's Bureau, the, 359  
 Free Soil party, 265  
 Frémont, John C., 259, *footnote*; 311  
 French Revolution, 192  
 Frontenac, Count, 87, 100  
 Fulton, Robert, 207
- Gadsden, Christopher, 129  
 Gadsden Purchase, 260  
 Gage, General, 138, 140  
 Gaines's Mill, battle of, 313  
 Gallatin, Albert, 202  
 Garfield, James A., in Kentucky, 303; elected President, 377; biography of, 377, *footnote*; assassinated, 378  
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 250  
 Gates, Horatio, 153  
 Genet, "Citizen," 192  
 Georgia, settled, 79-85  
 Georgia Indians, 233, 239  
 Germaine, Lord George, 144  
 Gerry, Elbridge, Commissioner to France, 198; Vice-President, 216  
 Gettysburg, battle of, 329-332  
 Ghent, treaty signed at, 220  
 Gilbert, Humphrey, 18  
 Gold in California, 263  
 Good Hope, Cape of, 11  
 Gordon, Gen. John B., 350, 351  
 Grant, Gen. Ulysses S., captures Paducah, 296; biography of, 296, *footnote*; in War between the States, 304, 305, 322, 323, 325, 335-342, 347, 349, 351-353; President, 365-367  
 Gray, Captain, 206  
 Great Britain Boundary agreement with, 226  
 Greeley, Horace, 283; nominated for President, 366, 367  
 Greenback party, 377  
 Greene, Nathanael, 164, 165  
 Greenland, discovery of, 1  
 Grenville, George, 127  
 Guam, island of, 398, 401  
 Guilford Courthouse, battle of 165  
 Guiteau, 378
- Haarlem Heights, 149  
 Hale, John P., 270  
 Halleck; General, 305  
 Hamilton, Alexander, signs the Constitution, 183; as Secretary of Treasury, 188, 189; leader of Federal party, 190  
 Hamilton, Governor, 156  
 Hamlin, Hannibal, elected Vice-President, 282  
 Hampton, Wade, 340, 341, 350  
 Hampton Roads, battle of, 310  
 Hancock, John, 131, 143

- Hancock, Winfield S., nominated for President, 377  
 Hardee, General, 350  
 Harmar, General 195  
 Harper's Ferry, capture of, 280-315  
 Harrison, Benjamin, President, 381-384; biography of, 381, *footnote*; renominated President, 384, 385  
 Harrison, William Henry, at Tippecanoe, 213; candidate for President, 244; President, 252  
 Hartford Convention, 221, *footnote*  
 Harvard, John, 59  
 Harvard University, 58, 59  
 Hawaii, Harrison's treaty for annexation of, 385; map of, 392-393; annexed, 400  
 Hawkins, Sir John, 17  
 Hayes, Rutherford B., President, 368, 369, 375-377  
 Hayne, Robert Y., in debate with Webster, 239, 240  
 Hendricks, Thomas A., 380  
 Hennepin, Father, 88, 102  
 Henry, Prince of Portugal, 3  
 Henry, Prince of Prussia, 402  
 Henry, Joseph, 263  
 Henry, Patrick, at Hanover courthouse, 125; opposes Stamp Act, 125, 128; portrait of, 130; in the Continental Congress, 136; commander of Virginia forces, 139  
 Hill, A. P., 328, 329, 330, 351  
 Hill, D. H., 315, 321  
 Hobart, Garret A., Vice-President, 387  
 Hobkirk's Hill, Greene's defeat at, 165  
 Hobson, Lieut., R. P., 396  
 Homestead, Pa., labor riot at, 385  
 Hood, Gen. J. B., 343, 349  
 Hooker, Joseph, 319, 321, 325-327, 333  
 Hooker, Thomas, 55  
 Hopkins, Stephen, 135, *footnote*  
 Horseshoe Bend, 218  
 Houston, Samuel, 254  
 Howe, Robert, 160  
 Howe, Sir William, 144, 146, 148  
 Hudson, Henry, 63  
 Hudson Bay Company, 87, *footnote*  
 Hudson, Port, capture of, 323  
 Huger, Benjamin, 312  
 Huguenot Colony in South Carolina, 16, 73  
 Hull, Isaac, 215  
 Hull, William, Governor of Michigan, 215  
 Hunter, Gen. David, 340, 341  
 Hutchinson, Anne, 53  
  
 Iberville, 88  
 Idaho, admitted as a state, 382  
 Illinois, admitted as a state, 225  
 Immigration, 263  
 Impressment of American seamen, 207  
 Independence, Declaration of, 143; Hall, 180  
 Indiana, admitted as a state, 223  
 Indian Aborigines, 21-24  
 Indian Chiefs, Pontiac, 123; Little Turtle, 195; Tecumseh, 213; Osceola, 244; Black Hawk, 244; Sitting Bull, 367  
 Indian Mound Builders, 23  
 Indian Wars, 123, 158, 175, 195, 213, 244, 367  
 Industries, progress in, 407  
 Internal improvements vetoed by Madison, 222; by Monroe, 236  
 International Exposition at Atlanta, Ga., 388, *footnote*  
 Interstate Commerce Act, 381  
 Inventions, mechanical, 263, 408  
 Iowa, admitted as state, 264  
 Irrigation, 405  
 Island No. 10, fall of, 305  
 Iuka, battle of, 307  
  
 Jackson, Andrew, at Horseshoe Bend, 218; at New Orleans, 219, 220; candidate for presidency, 231; President, 238-244  
 Jackson, "Stonewall," at Manassas, 294; biography of, 294, *footnote*; valley campaign of, 309-319; death of, 327, 328, 333  
 James I., 34  
 Jamestown, settlement of, 28, 30, 33  
 Japan, treaty with, 269  
 Jasper, John, 146  
 Jay, John, 135, *footnote*; 141, 188, 190, 193  
 Jefferson, Thomas, biography of, 135, *footnote*; drafts Declaration of Independence, 143; Secretary of State, 188; attitude toward state debts, 189; Vice-

- President, 197; President, 202-209; death of, 210  
 Johnson, Andrew, Vice-President, 346; President, 357, 358, 363; biography of, 357; *footnote*; impeachment of, 362  
 Johnson, Herschel V., 281  
 Johnson, Richard M., 244  
 Johnson, Sir William, 104, 106  
 Johnston, A. S., 289, *footnote*; 304, 305, 306  
 Johnston, Joseph E., 294, 308, 312, 318, 323, 326, 335, 336, 342, 343, 349, 351  
 Joliet, 87  
 Jones, John Paul, 167-168  
 Judiciary Act, repeal of, 202  
  
 Kansas, admitted as state, 272, 278  
 Kansas-Nebraska Act, 271  
 Kearney, Commodore S. W., 259  
 Kenesaw Mountain, battle of, 342  
 Kentucky, first exploration of, 98; settlement of, 175; admitted as a state, 196  
 Kernstown, battle of, 310  
 Kieft, William, 65  
 King, Rufus, 210  
 King, William R., Vice-President, 270  
 King's Mountain, battle of, 164  
 Klondike country, discovery of gold in, 393  
 Know-Nothing party, 270  
 Knox, Henry, 188  
 Ku Klux Klan, origin of, 364  
  
 Labor in Colonies, 116  
 Lafayette, Marquis de, biography of, 151, *footnote*; in Revolution, 165, 166  
 Lake Champlain, 86, 218; Huron, 86; Maurepas, 88; Ontario, 86; of the Woods, 261; Pontchartrain, 88  
 Lane, Joseph, nominated for Vice-President, 281  
 La Salle, 87, 88, 102  
*La Vengeance*, 198  
 Laurens, Henry, 105  
 Lecompton Convention, 272  
 Lee, Charles, 149, 157  
 Lee, Fitzhugh, 340, *footnote*; 393, 394  
 Lee, "Light-Horse Harry," 158, 196, 197  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 135, 143  
  
 Lee, Robert E., at Harper's Ferry, 280; resigns commission in Union Army, 292, 293; biography of, 292, *footnote*; in War between the States, 295, 297, 298, 313-319, 327-342, 348-354  
 Lee, Stephen D., 322, 344  
 Legislature, first in America, 33  
 Leif, son of Eric, 1  
*Leopard*, attacks the *Chesapeake*, 208  
 Lewis, Andrew, 105  
 Lewis and Clark's exploration of West, 205  
 Lewis, Meriwether, 205  
 Lexington, battle of, 138, 139  
 Libby Prison, 347  
 Liberal Republican party, organization of, 366  
 Libraries, public, 408, 409  
 Lincoln, Abraham, his debates with Douglas, 279, 280; President, 282; biography, 282, *footnote*; inaugural address of, 288; assumes war powers, 291, 292; issues Emancipation Proclamation, 320; calls for volunteers, 328; reëlected, 346; assassination of, 354; Presidential policy of, 357  
 Lincoln, Benjamin, 160  
*Little Belt*, the, 213  
 Livingston, Robert R., 187, 204  
 Locke, John, 73  
 London Company, the, 32, 34  
 Longstreet, James, 314-316, *footnote*; 321, 324, 325, 327, 328, 330, 337  
 Lookout Mountain, 325, 326  
 Louis, XIV., 100  
 Louisburg, 101  
 Louisiana, purchase of, 203; admitted as a state, 223; 389  
 Loyalists, 122  
 Lundy's Lane, 219  
 Luzon, island of, 399  
 Lyon, Colonel Nathaniel, 295  
  
 McClellan, George B., 294, 308, 312-319; nominated for President, 346  
 McCormick, C. H., 263  
 McCulloch, Gen. Benjamin, 296, 304  
 MacDonough, Thomas, 219  
 McDowell, Irvan, 294, 295  
*Macedonian*, capture of the, 215

- McKinley, William, tariff bill of, 382, 383, *footnote*; President, 387, 392; biography of, 387, *footnote*; reëlected President, 400; death of, 401, 402
- Madison, James, in Virginia Assembly, 200; Secretary of State, 202; President, 212
- Magruder, John B., 312, 325
- Mails, U. S., establishment of, 111
- Maine, part of Massachusetts, 54; admitted as state, 228
- Maine*, the, destruction of, 394
- Manassas, first battle of, 294, 301; second battle of, 314
- Manhattan Island, purchase of, 64
- Manila Bay, battle of, 394, 395
- Marietta founded, 124
- Marion, Francis, 105, 161, 162, 164
- Marquette, Father, 87
- Marshall, Col. Humphrey, 303
- Marshall, John, 198
- Marye's Heights, battle of, 317
- Maryland settled, 42-45
- Mason, James M., 266, *footnote*; 297
- Mason and Dixon's Line, 71
- Massachusetts Bay Colony, 52
- Matamoras, 258
- Maury, Matthew F., 297, *footnote*
- Maximilian, Archduke, 363
- Mayflower*, the, 50 51
- Meade, Gen. G. G., 327, 329-332
- Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, 140
- Mercer, Hugh, 150
- Merrimac*, the, see the *Virginia*; in Spanish war, 396
- Merritt, Gen. Wesley, 395
- Mexican War, 258, 264
- Mexico, boundary dispute with, 257
- Michigan admitted as a State, 244
- Miles, Gen. Nelson A., 398
- Mills, Roger Q., proposed tariff law of, 381
- Milroy, General, 328
- Mine Run, 332, 334
- Minnesota, admitted as state, 278
- Missionary Ridge, 326
- Mississippi, admitted as state, 225
- Mississippi, navigation of, 87, 88
- Missouri, admitted as state, 227, 228; secession of 296, *footnote*
- Missouri Compromise, 227, 271
- Mobile, Ala., 101, *footnote*; capture of, 343
- Modoc Indians, 367
- Molino del Rey, 260
- Monitor*, battles with the *Virginia*, 308, 309
- Monmouth, battle of, 157
- Monroe, James, minister to France, 204; President, 223, 229
- Monroe Doctrine, 229
- Montana, admission as state, 382
- Montcalm, General, 107
- Monterey, battle of, 259
- Montgomery, Richard, 141
- Montreal, capture of, 141
- Moore, James, 78
- Morgan, Daniel, 141, 164, 165
- Morgan, John B., 306, 307, *footnote*
- Morgan, William, 241, *footnote*
- Mormons, 245, 278, 379
- Morris, Robert, 155
- Morristown, 149
- Morse, S. F. B., 263
- Morton, Levi P., 381
- Moultrie, William, 105, 145
- Mount Vernon, 193, 198
- Murfreesboro, battle of, 307
- Nantes, Edict of, repealed, 93
- Napoleon Bonaparte, 199
- Narvaez, 14
- Natchez, capture of, 303
- National Republicans, 233
- Natural Gas, deposits of, 406
- Navigation Laws, 96, 174
- Nebraska, 270, 271; admitted as a state, 363
- Negroes, imported into Virginia, 34; into New York, 64; free, 249; made citizens, 360; rule in the South, 363; statistics of, 390
- Negros, island of, 399
- Neutrality Proclamation by Great Britain (1861), 293
- Nevada, silver discovered in, 278; admitted as a state, 356
- Newburg, 173
- Newport, R. I., 150, 158
- Newspapers, 110
- New Amsterdam, 66
- New Berne, 297, *footnote*
- New England Confederacy, 59
- New Hampshire, settled, 54; ratifies Constitution, 184
- New Haven, colony of, 56
- New Jersey, settlements in, 68
- New Madrid, capture of, 305
- New Market, battle of, 341

- New Mexico, 259, 264, 266  
 New Netherland, 66  
 New Orleans, founding of, 89;  
   battle of, 219  
 New Sweden, 66  
 Niagara, surrender of, 215  
 Nicholson, Governor, 68  
 Nicolet, Jean, 86  
 Non-Importation, 132, 209  
 North, the, in 1861, 298-301; in  
   1869-70, 387, 388  
 North Carolina refuses to ratify  
   Constitution, 184, 185; ratifies,  
   190  
 Northwest Territory, 172, 177,  
   *footnote*  
 Northwestern Boundary, 365  
 Nova Scotia, 86  
 Nullification, 240
- Oak Hill, battle of, 296  
 Oglethorpe, James Edward, 80, 81,  
   82  
 Ohio, admitted as a state, 203  
 Ohio Company, 98  
 Ohio Valley, settlement of, 175  
 Oil fields, location of, 406  
 Oklahoma Territory, opening of,  
   382  
 Ordinance of 1787, 177  
*Oregon, the, 395, footnote*  
 Oregon, admission as state, 278  
 Oregon boundary, 60, 261  
 Otis, General, 399  
 Otis, James, 124  
 Ould, Confederate Commissioner,  
   347
- Paducah, capture of, 296  
 Pakenham, Sir Edward, 219  
 Palma, Señor Thomas Estrada,  
   403  
 Palmer, J. M., nominated for Pres-  
   ident, 387  
 Palo Alto, 258  
 Panama, Isthmus of, 269, 402  
 Panama Canal, 402  
 Pan-American Congress, 382; Ex-  
   position, 401  
 Panay, island of, 399  
 Paris, treaty with, 107  
 Parker, Sir Peter, 145  
 Parliament, Oppressive acts of,  
   134  
 Parson's Case, 125  
 Patriots and Tories, 122  
 Paulus Hook, 158
- Peace Conference of 1861, 285  
 Pea Ridge, battle of, 304  
 Pemberton, Gen. J. C., 323  
 Penn, William, 68, 71  
 Pension Law of 1880, 383; of 1887,  
   384  
 Perry, Matthew C., 269  
 Perry, Oliver El., 217, 218  
 Perryville, battle of, 306  
 Petersburg, battles around, 339,  
   340; capture of, 350-352  
 Philadelphia, founded, 69  
 Philip, King, 60  
 Philippi, battle of, 294  
 Philippine Archipelago, 401  
 Philippine Commission, 399  
 Philippine Islands, map of, 392-  
   393; ceded to the United States,  
   398; war in, 399  
 Pickens, Andrew, 105, 161, 162  
 Pickett, General, 331, 333, 334  
 Pierce, Franklin, 273  
 Pike's explorations, 205  
 Pilgrims, 49-51  
 Pinckney, Charles C., 197, 213  
 Pitt, William, 106, 121  
 Pittsburg, 106  
 Pittsburg Landing, battle of, 305  
 Plymouth Company, 28  
 Plymouth, settlement at, 51  
 Pocahontas, 29, 30  
 Point Pleasant, battle of, 136  
 Polk, General, 296  
 Polk, James K., President, 256-264  
 Polo, Marco, 2, 3  
 Ponce de Leon, 13, 14  
 Pope, Gen. John, 305, 314, 319  
 Population, 194, 203, 235, 389, 390,  
   404  
 Port Hudson, capture of, 326  
 Port Republic, battle of, 311  
 Port Royal, 100  
 Porto Rico, map of, 392-393; 398,  
   401  
 Portuguese Voyages, 3, 11  
 Postal System, 110, 405, 406  
 Powhattan, 29  
 Preble, Edward, 202  
 Prescott, William, 140  
*President, the, 213*  
 Presidential Succession, 380  
 Price, Gen. Stirling, 295, 296, 307  
 Princeton, battle of, 150  
 Prohibition party, 377  
 Providence Plantations, 53  
 Puritans, 49-53  
 Putnam, Israel, 148

- Quakers, origin of, 59, 60; settle in the Jerseys, 68; in the Carolinas, 75
- Quebec, beginning of, 86; capture of, 106, 107, 141
- Quincy, Josiah, 214
- Railroads, growth of, 237; "underground," 268; strike, 375, 376; in the Northwest, 387, 388; of to-day, 404, 405
- Raleigh, Walter, 18, 26
- Raleigh Tavern, 132
- Randolph, John, of Roanoke, 228
- Randolph, Peyton, 136
- Reconstruction of Southern States 358; military, 360, 361
- Reed, Thomas B., 382
- Reid, Whitelaw, 385
- Religion in Colonies, 118
- Religious freedom, 174
- Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 258
- Revere, Paul, 139
- Revolutionary War, causes of, 121-126; campaigns of (maps), 144, 151, 153, 161
- Rhode Island, settled, 53; independence of, 177; refuses to ratify Constitution, 184; ratifies, 190
- Richmond (Ky.), battle of, 306
- Richmond (Va.), the Confederate capital, 293, 300; retreat from, 312; failure to capture, 317; capture of, 350, 351; after evacuation, 355
- Rich Mountain, 294
- Roanoke Island, settlement of, 18, 19, 297, *footnote*
- Robertson, James, 123, 156
- Rochambeau, 166
- Roosevelt, Theodore, leader of Rough Riders, 397, *footnote*; Vice-President, 400; becomes President, 402; biography of, 402, *footnote*; 403
- Rosecrans, Gen., 295, 307, 323, 326
- Rumsey, James, 207
- Rutledge, Edward, 135, *footnote*
- Rutledge, John, 135, *footnote*
- Ryswick, treaty of, 100
- Sacs and Foxes, 244
- St. Augustine, 17
- St. Clair, General, 195
- St. John, John P., nominated for President, 379
- St. Leger, General, 148
- Salary Grab Act, 366
- Salem, Mass., founded, 52
- Sampson, Commodore, 395
- San Diego, 239
- San Domingo, 273, *footnote*; 365
- Sandys, Sir Edwin, 32
- San Jacinto, 255
- San Juan, 397, 398
- Santa Anna, 254
- Santiago, battle of, 396, 397
- Savannah, founded, 81; advance against, 160; abandoned, 167
- Schley, Winfield S., 379, 395, 396
- Schofield, General, 343
- Schuyler, Philip, 153
- Scott, Dred, 278, 279
- Scott, Winfield, 218, 260
- Search Warrants, 124
- Seddon, James A., 296
- Seminary Ridge, 330, 331
- Seminole Indians, 244
- Semmes, Raphael, 345
- Seneca Indians, 158
- Serapis*, the, 168
- Seven Pines, battle of, 312, 318
- Seven Years' War; 104, *footnote*
- Sevier, John, 123, 156, 176
- Sewall, Arthur, nominated for Vice-President, 387
- Seward, William H., 273, 288, *footnote*; 354
- Sewell Mountain, battle of, 295
- Sewing-machine, invention of, 263
- Seymour, Horatio, nominated for President, 365
- Shafter, Gen. William R., 396
- Shaftesbury, Earl of, 77, 78
- Sharpsburg, battle of, 315, 316
- Shawnee Indians, 157
- Shays's Rebellion, 176
- Shelby, Evan, 157
- Shelby, Isaac, 123, 217
- Sheridan, Philip H., 339, 341, 342
- Sherman Act, passage of, 383; repeal of, 385
- Sherman, John, Secretary of Treasury, 376
- Sherman, Roger, 135; *footnote*
- Sherman, William T., 322, 335, 342-344, 348-351
- Shields, Gen. James, 310, 311
- Shiloh Church, battle of, 305
- Shirley, Governor, 104
- Sibley, Gen. Henry H., 303
- Sigel, Franz, 295, 296, 336, 340, 341

- Silver "demonetized," 366  
 Sioux Indians, outbreak of, 367  
 Sitting Bull, Indian chief, 367  
 Slaves, brought to Virginia, 34;  
 to New York, 64; to Georgia,  
 83; compromises concerning,  
 181, 264-266; Quakers' move-  
 ment to abolish, 195; Southern  
 sentiment against holding, 247;  
 conditions and treatment of,  
 248, 249; burden of, 250; fugi-  
 tive, 195; *footnote*, 268; abol-  
 ishment of, 359  
 Slidell, John, 297  
 Smith, E. Kirby, 294, 295, 306, 336,  
*footnote*  
 Smith, John, 29  
 Smith, Joseph, 245  
 Smuggling, 124  
 Soulé, Pierre, 273, *footnote*  
 South, in 1861, 298-301; growth of,  
 since the War, 388; present de-  
 velopment of, 406  
 Southampton Insurrection, 248  
 South Mountain, 315  
 Southwest, development of, 406  
 Spain, treaty (1795) with, 194;  
 Florida boundary dispute with,  
 208; trouble with, in 1854, 273;  
 war with, 394; treaty of peace  
 with (1899), 398  
 Specie payment, resumption of,  
 376  
 Spotswood, Governor of Virginia,  
 97  
 Spotsylvania Courthouse, battle  
 of, 338, 339  
 Squatter Sovereignty, 265, *foot-*  
*note*  
 "Stalwarts," 377  
 Stamp Act, 127-131  
 Standish, Myles, 51  
 Stanton, Edwin M., 354  
*Star of the West*, the, 289  
 States, readmission of Southern,  
 361  
 Steamboat, the first, 207  
 Stephens, Alexander H., quoted,  
 285; Vice-President of Confed-  
 eracy, 286; biography of, 286,  
*footnote*  
 Steuben, Baron, 155  
 Stevenson, A. E., Vice-President,  
 385, 400  
 Stockton, Com. R. F., 259, *foot-*  
*note*  
 • Stony Point, 158  
 Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 268  
 Stuart, James E. B., 316, *foot-*  
*note*; 327, *footnote*; 328, *foot-*  
*note*; 330, *footnote*; 339, 340  
 Stuyvesant, Peter, 65, 66  
 Sub-Treasury Act, 245, 252, 263  
 Suffrage, limitations respecting  
 negro, 360, 361  
 Sullivan, John, 158, 263  
 Sumter, Thomas, 161, 162  
 Swedes, settlement by, 66, 70  
 Taft, Judge William H., 399, 400  
 Taney, Roger B., 242; 292, *foot-*  
*note*  
 Tariff of 1816, 222; 1824, 230;  
 1828, 234; 1833, 240; 1842, 253;  
 1846, 262; 1857, 262; 1890, 382;  
 1893, 386; 1897, 392; 1903, 403  
 Tariff of Abominations, 234, 240  
 Tarleton, General, 161, 164, 166  
 Taylor, John W., 228  
 Taylor, Zachary, subdues Semi-  
 noles, 244; in Mexican War, 258,  
 259; President, 265-269  
 Tea Tax, resistance to, 133, 134  
 Tecumseh, 213, 218  
 Tennessee, beginning of, 123;  
 ceded by North Carolina, 178;  
 admitted as a state, 196  
*Tennessee*, the, in siege of Mobile,  
 343  
 Territory, cession of, by states,  
 176, 178  
 Texas, surrendered to Spain, 226;  
 revolution of, 254; admitted as  
 a state, 255; invasion of, 325,  
 326  
 Thames, battle of the, 213, 217  
 Thomas, Gen. George H., 304, 323,  
 324, 343  
 Thomson, Charles, 143  
 Thurman, Allen G., Vice-Presi-  
 dent, 381  
 Ticonderoga, captured by Am-  
 herst, 107; by Ethan Allen, 139;  
 by Burgoyne, 152  
 Tilden, Samuel J., nominated for  
 President, 368  
 Tippecanoe, battle of, 213  
 Tobacco, cultivation of, 33, 34  
 Toleration, religious, in Mary-  
 land, 45; in Pennsylvania, 70  
 Tompkins, Daniel D., 223  
 Topeka, convention at, 271  
 Tories, origin of, 122  
 Townshend Acts, 130

- Transportation, 404  
*Trent* affair, the, 297  
 Trenton, battle of, 149  
 Trevilian Station, battle of, 341  
 Tripoli, capture of, 202  
 Troup, George M., 233, 234  
 Truxton, Thomas, 198  
 Tutuila, island of, 401  
 Tyler, John, President, 252; pre-  
 sides over Peace Conference of  
 1861, 285  
  
 "Uncle Tom's Cabin," 268  
 Union, withdrawals from, 282,  
 283, 290  
*United States*, the, captures the  
*Macedonia*, 215  
 United States Bank, established,  
 190; opposition to, 213; re-  
 chartered, 222; destroyed by  
 Jackson, 241; vetoed by Tyler,  
 253  
 United States government, organ-  
 ization of, 188  
 United States of America in 1861,  
 298  
 Utah, organized as a territory,  
 266; admitted as state, 388  
 Utrecht, treaty of, 101  
  
 Valentia Bay, Ireland, 363  
 Valley Forge, 152, 155  
 Van Buren, Martin, Vice-Presi-  
 dent, 241; President, 244-246;  
 defeated for reëlection, 252;  
 Free-Soil candidate, 265  
 Van Dorn, Earl, 304, 307, 323  
 Van Rensselaer, General, 215  
 Vasco da Gama, 11  
 Venezuela, boundary dispute with,  
 386  
 Verá Cruz, 259  
 Vermont, admitted as a state, 196  
 Verrazano, 14  
 Vespuccius, Americus, 10-12  
 Vicksburg, capture of, 322, 326,  
 332  
 Vincennes, 88, 157  
 Virginia and Kentucky resolu-  
 tions, 199  
 Virginia, charters, 26, 27, 32;  
 university of, 210; Valley of,  
 308, 311  
*Virginia*, battles with *Monitor*,  
 308, 309  
*Virginus*, the, 393, *footnote*  
  
 Walker, Dr. Thomas, 98  
 Walker, Robert J., 262, 272  
 War of 1812, 215, 216  
 Washington, Bushrod, 227  
 Washington, George, in campaign  
 against French and Indians,  
 102; defeated at Great Mea-  
 dows, 103; in Braddock's cam-  
 paign, 104; retires from army,  
 170; President, 184-193; fare-  
 well address of, 196; death of,  
 196  
 Washington, William, 164  
 Washington City, capital located  
 at, 200, *footnote*; capture of,  
 219; capitol building at, 362  
 Washington, state of, admitted,  
 382  
 Washington, treaty of, 365  
*Wasp*, defeats *Frolic*, 215  
 Wayne, Anthony, 158, 167, 195  
 Weaver, J. B.; nominated for  
 President, 385  
 Webster, Daniel, 239, 240, 241  
 Wesley, John and Charles, 83  
 Western emigration, 123, 225; ex-  
 plorations, map of, 206  
 West India trade, 124  
 West Point, 203, *footnote*  
 West Virginia, formation of, 320,  
 321; admitted as a state, 356  
 Weyler, Captain General, of  
 Spain, 393  
 Wheeler, Gen. Joseph, 342, 397  
 Wheeler, William A., Vice-Presi-  
 dent, 369  
 Whig party, 233, 243  
 Whiskey insurrection, 196  
 Whitefield, George, 83, 84  
 White Plains, battle of, 149  
 Whitney, Eli, 194, 195  
 Wilderness campaign, 337, 338  
 William III, 96  
 William and Mary, college of, 41  
 Williams, Roger, 53  
 Williamsburg, 140, 312  
 Wilmot Proviso, 264  
 Wilson-Gorman tariff, 386  
 Wilson, Henry, Vice-President,  
 367  
 Wilson, Wm. L., tariff bill of, 386  
 Wilson's Creek; *see* Oak Hill  
 Winchester, General, 217  
 Winchester, battle of, 328  
 Winder, General, 219  
 Winnebagoes, 244  
 Winthrop, John, 52

- Wirt, William, nominated for President, 241  
Wisconsin, admitted as a state, 264  
Wolfe, General, 105-107  
Wood, Leonard, leader of Rough Riders, 397; *footnote*; in Cuba, 403  
Woodford, Gen. Stewart, 394  
Woodford, Gen. William, 140  
World's Fair at Chicago, 386  
Wright, Luke E., 400  
Writs of Assistance, 124  
Wyoming, admitted as a state, 382  
Wyoming Massacre, 158  
Yorktown, surrender of, 166, 167; centennial anniversary of surrender, 378  
Young, Brigham, Governor of Utah, 278  
Zollicoffer, Gen. F. K., 303, 304